SIEMENS



SINAMICS

SINAMICS G150

Cabinet converter units 75 kW ... 1500 kW

Operating Instructions

Edition 04/2014

Answers for industry.

SIEMENS

SINAMICS

SINAMICS G150
Converter cabinet units

Operating Instructions

Foreword

Safety information 1

Device overview 2

Mechanical installation 3

Electrical installation 4

Commissioning 5

Operation 6

Setpoint channel and closed-loop control 7

Output terminals 8

Functions, monitoring, and protective functions 9

Diagnosis / faults and alarms 10

Maintenance and servicing 11

Technical specifications 12

Appendix A

Control version V4.7

04/2014

A5E03263466A

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

⚠DANGER
indicates that death or severe personal injury **will** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠WARNING
indicates that death or severe personal injury **may** result if proper precautions are not taken.

⚠CAUTION
indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.

NOTICE
indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

⚠WARNING
Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Siemens AG
Industry Sector
Postfach 48 48
90026 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

A5E03263466A
℗ 08/2014 Subject to change

Copyright © Siemens AG 2003 - 2014.
All rights reserved

Foreword

Structure of this documentation

The customer documentation comprises general and individual documentation.

The general documentation describes the topics that apply to all cabinet units:

- **Operating Instructions**
  The Operating Instructions consist of the following sections:
  - Device description
  - Mechanical installation
  - Electrical installation
  - Commissioning guide
  - Description of function
  - Maintenance instructions
  - Technical data
- **Overview diagrams**
  These provide a general overview of the functionality of the cabinet units.
- **List Manual**
  The List Manual consists of the following sections:
  - Parameter list
  - Function diagrams
  - Fault / warning list
- **Documentation for Drive Control Chart (DCC)**
  - Programming and Operating Manual: DCC Editor description
  - Function Manual: Description of the standard DCC blocks

The individual documentation describes precisely one customized cabinet unit and contains the following:

- **Dimension drawing**
  The dimension drawing documents the dimensions of the ordered cabinet unit.
- **Layout diagram**
  The components installed in the ordered cabinet units are shown in the layout diagram with the equipment and location codes.
- **Circuit diagram**
  The circuit diagram shows the electrical components installed in the ordered cabinet unit with the equipment and location codes, their interconnections and the customer interfaces.
- **Terminal diagram**
  The terminal diagram shows all the customer terminals in the ordered cabinet unit, and the associated internal wiring in the cabinet unit. This diagram documents the line-side target wiring.
- **Spare parts list**
  All of the available spare parts for the ordered cabinet units are listed in the spare parts list with the equipment and the location codes.
- **Additional operating instructions**
  The instructions for supplier components installed in the ordered cabinet unit are included as original documentation.

Documentation in the Internet

The documentation for SINAMICS G150 can be found on the Internet at:
http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/11735760/133300

Technical support

Time zone Europe/Africa	
Phone	+49 (0) 911 895 7222
Fax	+49 (0) 911 895 7223
Internet	http://www.siemens.com/automation/support-request

Time zone America	
Phone	+1 423 262 2522
Fax	+1 423 262 2200
Internet	techsupport.sea@siemens.com

Time zone Asia/Pacific	
Phone	+86 1064 757 575
Fax	+86 1064 747 474
Internet	support.asia.automation@siemens.com

Spare parts

Spare parts are available on the Internet at:
http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/16612315

The spare parts available for the ordered drive can be found in the spare parts list. These are provided on the customer DVD.

Internet address

Information about SINAMICS can be found on the Internet at the following address:
http://www.siemens.com/sinamics

EMC limit values for South Korea

이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
For sellers or other user, please keep in mind that this device in an A-grade electromagnetic wave device.
This device is intended to be used in areas other than home.

The EMC limit values that have to be observed for South Korea correspond to the limit values of the EMC product standard for variable-speed electric drives EN 61800-3 of category C2 or of limit value class A, Group 1 according to EN 55011.
With suitable additional measures, the limit values of category C2 or of limit class A, Group 1, are maintained. Additional measures, such as the use of an additional RFI suppression filter (EMC filter), may be necessary.
In addition, measures for a correct EMC-compliant configuration of the plant are described in detail in this manual and the "SINAMICS Low-Voltage Configuration Manual".

Certifications

The following certifications are included in the documentation folder:

- EC declaration of conformity
- Declaration of compliance with the order
- Machinery directive

Table of contents

Foreword 5

1 Safety information 19

1.1 General safety instructions 19

1.2 Safety instructions for electromagnetic fields (EMF) 22

1.3 Handling electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD) 23

1.4 Industrial security 24

1.5 Residual risks of power drive systems 25

2 Device overview 27

2.1 Chapter content 27

2.2 Applications, features 27
2.2.1 Field of applications 27
2.2.2 Characteristics, quality, service 28

2.3 Design 29
2.3.1 Version A 30
2.3.2 Version C 33

2.4 Wiring principle 34

2.5 Type plate 39

3 Mechanical installation 45

3.1 Chapter content 45

3.2 Transportation and storage 45

3.3 Assembly 47
3.3.1 Mechanical installation: checklist 48
3.3.2 Preparation 49
3.3.2.1 Requirements on the installation location 49
3.3.2.2 Requirements on the levelness of the floor 50
3.3.2.3 Shipping and handling monitors 51
3.3.2.4 Unpacking 53
3.3.2.5 Required tools 53
3.3.3 Installation 54
3.3.3.1 Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet 54
3.3.3.2 Removing the crane transport aids 56
3.3.3.3 Connection to the foundation 57
3.3.4 Mechanical connection of units that are connected in parallel 58
3.3.5 Fitting additional canopies (option M21) or hoods (option M23, M43, M54) 62
3.3.6 Line connection from above (option M13), motor connection from above (option M78) 67

4 Electrical installation 69

4.1 Chapter content 69

4.2 Checklist for electrical installation 70

4.3 Important safety precautions 76

4.4 Introduction to EMC 77

4.5 EMC compliant design 79

4.6 Electrical connection of units that are connected in parallel 82
4.6.1 Connecting the PE busbars 83
4.6.2 Establishing the DC link connections 84
4.6.3 Connecting the power supply and the signal cables 85
4.6.4 The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected 85

4.7 Power connections 86
4.7.1 Cable lugs 86
4.7.2 Connection cross-sections, cable lengths 87
4.7.3 Connecting the motor and power cables 89
4.7.4 Adjusting the fan voltage (-T1-T10) 91
4.7.5 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system) 93

4.8 External Supply of the Auxiliary Supply from a Secure Line 97
4.8.1 230 V AC auxiliary supply 99
4.8.2 24 V DC auxiliary supply 99

4.9 Signal connections 99
4.9.1 Control Unit CU320-2 DP 99
4.9.2 Customer terminal module TM31 (-A60) (option G60) 116

4.10 Other connections 125
4.10.1 Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact (Option L01) 126
4.10.2 dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07) 129
4.10.3 dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10) 133
4.10.4 Main Contactor (Option L13) 137
4.10.5 Sinusoidal filter (option L15) 137
4.10.6 Connection for External Auxiliary Equipment (Option L19) 140
4.10.7 Overvoltage limitation (option L21) 142
4.10.8 Main switch incl. fuses or circuit breaker (option L26) 143
4.10.9 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door (option L45) 145
4.10.10 Cabinet illumination with service socket (option L50) 146
4.10.11 Cabinet anti-condensation heating (option L55) 147
4.10.12 EMERGENCY OFF category 0; 230 V AC or 24 V DC (option L57) 148
4.10.13 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 230 V AC (option L59) 149
4.10.14 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 24 V DC (option L60) 151
4.10.15 25 kW Braking Unit (Option L61); 50 kW Braking Unit (Option L62) 152
4.10.15.1 Commissioning 156
4.10.15.2 Diagnosis and duty cycles 157
4.10.15.3 Threshold switch 158
4.10.16 Option L01 Quick starting (option L76) 162
4.10.17 Thermistor Motor Protection Unit (Option L83/L84) 162
4.10.18 PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86) 163
4.10.19 Insulation Monitor (Option L87) 164

4.10.20 CBC10 CAN Communication Board (option G20) 166
4.10.21 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20 (Option G33) 169
4.10.22 TM150 temperature sensor module (option G51) 172
4.10.22.1 Description 172
4.10.22.2 Connecting 173
4.10.22.3 Connection examples 176
4.10.23 SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50) 178
4.10.23.1 Description 178
4.10.23.2 Connection 182
4.10.23.3 Connection examples 186
4.10.24 Voltage Sensing Module for determining the actual motor speed and the phase angle (option K51) 187
4.10.25 Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52) 188
4.10.26 Customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) 188
4.10.27 Additional customer terminal block TM31 (option G61) 189
4.10.28 Terminal Board TB30 (option G62) 189
4.10.29 Safety license for 1 axis (option K01) 195
4.10.30 Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74) 196
4.10.31 Terminal module for activation of "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1" (option K82) 198
4.10.32 Terminal Module TM54F (option K87) 199
4.10.33 Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC (option K88) 201
4.10.34 Control Unit CU320-2 PN (option K95) 202
4.10.35 NAMUR terminal block (option B00) 216
4.10.36 Separate 24 V DC power supply for NAMUR (option B02) 218
4.10.37 Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment for NAMUR (option B03) 218

5 Commissioning 219

5.1 Chapter content 219

5.2 STARTER commissioning tool 220
5.2.1 Installing the STARTER commissioning tool 222
5.2.2 Layout of the STARTER user interface 223

5.3 Procedure for commissioning via STARTER 224
5.3.1 Creating the project 224
5.3.2 Configure the drive unit 232
5.3.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel 256
5.3.4 Transferring the drive project 257
5.3.5 Commissioning with STARTER via Ethernet 260

5.4 The AOP30 operator panel 266

5.5 First commissioning with the AOP30 267
5.5.1 Initial ramp-up 267
5.5.2 Basic commissioning 269
5.5.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel 278

5.6 Status after commissioning 280

5.7 Commissioning an encoder with gear factor 281

5.8 Parameter reset to factory settings 281

6 Operation 283

6.1 Chapter content 283

6.2 General information about command and setpoint sources 284

6.3 Basic information about the drive system 285
6.3.1 Parameters 285
6.3.2 Drive objects 288
6.3.3 Data Sets 289
6.3.4 BICO technology: interconnecting signals 295
6.3.5 Propagation of faults 300

6.4 Command sources 301
6.4.1 "PROFIdrive" default setting 301
6.4.2 "TM31 terminals" default setting 303
6.4.3 "NAMUR" default setting 305
6.4.4 "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting 307

6.5 Setpoint sources 309
6.5.1 Analog inputs 309
6.5.2 Motorized potentiometer 311
6.5.3 Fixed speed setpoints 312

6.6 Control via the operator panel 314
6.6.1 Operator panel (AOP30) overview and menu structure 314
6.6.2 Operation screen menu 316
6.6.3 Parameterization menu 317
6.6.4 Menu: Fault/alarm memory 319
6.6.5 Menu commissioning / service 320
6.6.5.1 Drive commissioning 320
6.6.5.2 Device commissioning 320
6.6.5.3 Drive diagnostics 321
6.6.5.4 AOP settings 323
6.6.5.5 AOP diagnostics 329
6.6.6 Sprachauswahl/Language selection 331
6.6.7 Operation via the operator panel (LOCAL mode) 331
6.6.7.1 LOCAL/REMOTE key 332
6.6.7.2 ON key / OFF key 332
6.6.7.3 Switching between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation 333
6.6.7.4 Jog 333
6.6.7.5 Increase setpoint / decrease setpoint 333
6.6.7.6 AOP setpoint 334
6.6.7.7 Timeout monitoring 335
6.6.7.8 Operator input inhibit / parameterization inhibit 335
6.6.8 Faults and alarms 337
6.6.9 Saving the parameters permanently 339
6.6.10 Parameterization errors 339

6.7 Communication according to PROFIdrive 340
6.7.1 General information 340
6.7.2 Application classes 342
6.7.3 Cyclic communication 347
6.7.3.1 Telegrams and process data 347
6.7.3.2 Structure of the telegrams 350
6.7.3.3 Overview of control words and setpoints 350

6.7.3.4 Overview of status words and actual values 351
6.7.4 Acyclic communication 351
6.7.4.1 Structure of requests and responses 353
6.7.4.2 Determining the drive object numbers 359
6.7.4.3 Example 1: Reading parameters 359
6.7.4.4 Example 2: Writing parameters (multi-parameter request) 361
6.7.5 Further information about PROFIdrive communication 365

6.8 Communication via PROFIBUS DP 365
6.8.1 PROFIBUS connection 365
6.8.2 Control via PROFIBUS 370
6.8.3 Monitoring: Telegram failure 372
6.8.4 Further information about communication via PROFIBUS DP 373

6.9 Communication via PROFINET IO 374
6.9.1 Activating online operation: STARTER via PROFINET IO 374
6.9.2 General information about PROFINET IO 378
6.9.2.1 General information about PROFINET IO for SINAMICS 378
6.9.2.2 Real-time (RT) and isochronous real-time (IRT) communication 379
6.9.2.3 Addresses 380
6.9.2.4 Data transmission 382
6.9.2.5 Communication channels 383
6.9.3 PROFIenergy 384
6.9.3.1 Description 384
6.9.3.2 Tasks of PROFIenergy 386
6.9.3.3 PROFIenergy - properties of the drive system 387
6.9.3.4 PROFIenergy commands 387
6.9.3.5 PROFIenergy measured values 388
6.9.3.6 PROFIenergy energy-saving mode 389
6.9.3.7 Transition into the energy-saving mode from the PROFIdrive operating state (S4) 389
6.9.3.8 Inhibit PROFIenergy 389
6.9.3.9 PROFIenergy applications 389
6.9.3.10 Function diagrams and parameters 390
6.9.4 Further information about communication via PROFINET IO 390

6.10 Communication via SINAMICS Link 391
6.10.1 Basic principles of SINAMICS Link 391
6.10.2 Topology 393
6.10.3 Configuring and commissioning 394
6.10.4 Example 398
6.10.5 Communication failure when booting or in cyclic operation 400
6.10.6 Transmission times for SINAMICS Link 401
6.10.7 Function diagrams and parameters 402

6.11 Communication services and used port numbers 402

6.12 Parallel operation of communication interfaces 405

6.13 Engineering Software Drive Control Chart (DCC) 408

7 Setpoint channel and closed-loop control 409

7.1 Chapter content 409

7.2 Setpoint channel 410
7.2.1 Setpoint addition 410
7.2.2 Direction reversal 411
7.2.3 Skip frequency bands and minimum speed 412
7.2.4 Speed limitation 413
7.2.5 Ramp-function generator 414

7.3 V/f control 418
7.3.1 Voltage Boost 421
7.3.2 Resonance damping 424
7.3.3 Slip compensation 425

7.4 Vector speed/torque control with/without encoder 427
7.4.1 Vector control without encoder 428
7.4.2 Vector control with encoder 435
7.4.3 Actual speed value filter 436
7.4.4 Speed controller 437
7.4.4.1 Speed controller pre-control (integrated pre-control with balancing) 440
7.4.4.2 Reference model 443
7.4.4.3 Speed controller adaptation 444
7.4.4.4 Droop function 446
7.4.4.5 Open actual speed value 447
7.4.5 Closed-loop torque control 449
7.4.6 Torque limiting 452
7.4.7 Current setpoint filters 453
7.4.8 Permanent-magnet synchronous motors 454

8 Output terminals 459

8.1 Chapter content 459

8.2 Analog outputs 460
8.2.1 List of signals for the analog signals 461

8.3 Digital outputs 463

9 Functions, monitoring, and protective functions 465

9.1 Chapter content 465

9.2 Drive Functions 466
9.2.1 Motor data identification and automatic speed controller optimization 466
9.2.1.1 Motor data identification 467
9.2.1.2 Rotating measurement and speed controller optimization 470
9.2.1.3 Shortened rotating measurement 472
9.2.1.4 Parameters 473
9.2.2 Efficiency optimization 473
9.2.3 Fast magnetization for induction motors 475
9.2.4 Vdc control 477
9.2.5 Automatic restart function 482
9.2.6 Flying restart 485
9.2.6.1 Flying restart without encoder 486
9.2.6.2 Flying restart with encoder 489
9.2.6.3 Parameters 490

9.2.7 Motor changeover/selection 491
9.2.7.1 Description 491
9.2.7.2 Example of changing over between two motors 491
9.2.7.3 Function diagram 492
9.2.7.4 Parameters 493
9.2.8 Friction characteristic curve 493
9.2.9 Armature short-circuit braking, DC braking 495
9.2.9.1 General 495
9.2.9.2 External armature short-circuit braking 495
9.2.9.3 Internal armature short-circuit braking 497
9.2.9.4 DC braking 498
9.2.10 Increasing the output frequency 500
9.2.10.1 Description 500
9.2.10.2 Default pulse frequencies 501
9.2.10.3 Increasing the pulse frequency 501
9.2.10.4 Maximum output frequency achieved by increasing the pulse frequency 502
9.2.10.5 Parameters 502
9.2.11 Derating behavior at increased pulse frequency 503
9.2.12 Pulse frequency wobbling 504
9.2.13 Runtime (operating hours counter) 506
9.2.14 Simulation operation 507
9.2.15 Direction reversal 509
9.2.16 Unit changeover 510
9.2.17 Simple brake control 512
9.2.18 Synchronization 514
9.2.19 Energy saving indicator for pumps, fans, and compressors 516
9.2.20 Write protection 519
9.2.21 Know-how protection 521
9.2.21.1 Description 521
9.2.21.2 Activating know-how protection 523
9.2.21.3 Deactivating know-how protection 524
9.2.21.4 Changing the know-how protection password 525
9.2.21.5 OEM exception list 525
9.2.21.6 Memory card copy protection 526
9.2.21.7 Replacing devices for know-how protection with copy protection 526
9.2.21.8 Overview of important parameters 527
9.2.22 Essential service mode 528
9.2.23 Web server 531
9.2.23.1 Description 531
9.2.23.2 Starting the web server 533
9.2.23.3 Web server configuration 535
9.2.23.4 Display areas 536
9.2.23.5 Overview of important parameters 538

9.3 Extended functions 538
9.3.1 Technology controller 538
9.3.2 Bypass function 541
9.3.2.1 Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1) 542
9.3.2.2 Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2) 544
9.3.2.3 Bypass without synchronizer (p1260 = 3) 546
9.3.2.4 Function diagram 548
9.3.2.5 Parameters 549
9.3.3 Extended brake control 550

9.3.4 Extended monitoring functions ... 554

9.4 Monitoring and protective functions ... 557
9.4.1 Protecting power components ... 557
9.4.2 Thermal monitoring and overload responses ... 558
9.4.3 Block protection ... 560
9.4.4 Stall protection (only for vector control) ... 561
9.4.5 Thermal motor protection ... 562
9.4.5.1 Description ... 562
9.4.5.2 Temperature sensor connection at the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) ... 562
9.4.5.3 Temperature sensor connection at a Sensor Module (option K50) ... 563
9.4.5.4 Temperature sensor connection directly to the Control Interface Module ... 563
9.4.5.5 Temperature sensor evaluation ... 564
9.4.5.6 Thermal motor models ... 565
9.4.5.7 Function diagram ... 567
9.4.5.8 Parameters ... 567
9.4.6 Temperature measurement via TM150 (option G51) ... 568
9.4.6.1 Description ... 568
9.4.6.2 Measurement with up to 6 channels ... 570
9.4.6.3 Measurement with up to 12 channels ... 570
9.4.6.4 Forming groups of temperature sensors ... 571
9.4.6.5 Evaluating temperature channels ... 572
9.4.6.6 Function diagram ... 573
9.4.6.7 Parameter ... 573

10 Diagnosis / faults and alarms ... 575

10.1 Chapter content ... 575

10.2 Diagnosis ... 576
10.2.1 Diagnostics using LEDs ... 576
10.2.2 Diagnostics via parameters ... 584
10.2.3 Indicating and rectifying faults ... 588

10.3 Overview of warnings and faults ... 589
10.3.1 "External alarm 1" ... 590
10.3.2 "External fault 1" ... 590
10.3.3 "External fault 2" ... 591
10.3.4 "External fault 3" ... 591

11 Maintenance and servicing ... 593

11.1 Chapter content ... 593

11.2 Maintenance ... 594
11.2.1 Cleaning ... 594

11.3 Maintenance ... 595
11.3.1 Installation device ... 597
11.3.2 Using crane lifting lugs to transport power blocks ... 598

11.4 Replacing components ... 600
11.4.1 Replacing the filter mats ... 600
11.4.2 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX ... 601
11.4.3 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX ... 603
11.4.4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX ... 605
11.4.5 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX ... 607

11.4.6 Replacing the power block (type FX) 609
11.4.7 Replacing the power block (type GX) 612
11.4.8 Replacing the power block (type HX) 615
11.4.9 Replacing the power block (type JX) 620
11.4.10 Replacing the fan (type FX) 625
11.4.11 Replacing the fan (type GX) 627
11.4.12 Replacing the fan (type HX) 629
11.4.13 Replacing the fan (type JX) 633
11.4.14 Replacing cylindrical fuses 637
11.4.15 Replacing the LV HRC fuses 638
11.4.16 Replacing the cabinet operator panel 640
11.4.17 Replacing the Backup Battery for the Cabinet Operator Panel 640
11.5 Forming the DC link capacitors 642
11.6 Messages after replacing DRIVE-CLiQ components 643
11.7 Upgrading the cabinet unit firmware 644
11.8 Load the new operator panel firmware from the PC. 645
12 Technical specifications 647
12.1 Chapter content 647
12.2 General data 647
12.2.1 Derating data 649
12.2.1.1 Current derating as a function of the ambient temperature 649
12.2.1.2 Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m above sea level 649
12.2.1.3 Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency 651
12.2.2 Overload capability 653
12.3 Technical specifications 654
12.3.1 Cabinet unit version A, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC 655
12.3.2 Cabinet unit version C, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC 663
12.3.3 Cabinet unit version A, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC 669
12.3.4 Cabinet unit version C, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC 677
12.3.5 Cabinet unit version A, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC 683
12.3.6 Cabinet unit version C, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC 695
A Appendix 705
A.1 List of abbreviations 705
A.2 Parameter macros 707
Index 719

Safety information

1

1.1 General safety instructions



⚠ DANGER

Danger to life due to live parts and other energy sources

Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched.

- Only work on electrical equipment if you are appropriately qualified.
- Always observe the country-specific safety rules for all work.

Generally, six steps apply when establishing safety:

1. Prepare for shutdown and notify all those who will be affected by the procedure.
2. Disconnect the machine from the supply.
   - Switch off the machine.
   - Wait until the discharge time specified on the warning labels has elapsed.
   - Check that it really is in a zero-voltage state, from phase conductor to phase conductor and phase conductor to protective conductor.
   - Check that every auxiliary circuit is de-energized.
   - Ensure that the motors cannot move.
3. Identify all other dangerous energy sources, e.g. compressed air, hydraulic systems or water.
4. Isolate or neutralize all hazardous energy sources by closing switches, grounding or short-circuiting or closing valves, for example.
5. Take measures to prevent reconnection of the energy sources.
6. Ensure that the correct machine is completely interlocked.

After you have completed the work, restore the operational readiness by following the above steps in the reverse order.



⚠ WARNING

Danger to life through a hazardous voltage when connecting an unsuitable power supply

Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched in the event of a fault.

- Only use power supplies that provide SELV (Safety Extra Low Voltage) or PELV (Protective Extra Low Voltage) output voltages for all connections and terminals of the electronics modules.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life when live parts are touched on damaged devices

Improper handling of devices can cause damage.

For damaged devices, hazardous voltages can be present at the enclosure or at exposed components; if touched, this can result in death or severe injury.

- Ensure compliance with the limit values specified in the technical data during transport, storage and operation.
- Do not use any damaged devices.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life through electric shock due to unconnected cable shields

Hazardous touch voltages can occur through capacitive cross-coupling due to unconnected cable shields.

- As a minimum, connect cable shields and the cores of power cables that are not used at one end at the grounded housing potential.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock when not grounded

For missing or incorrectly implemented protective conductor connection for devices with protection class I, high voltages can be present at open, exposed parts, which when touched, can result in death or severe injury.

- Ground the device in compliance with the applicable regulations.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock when opening plug connections in operation

When opening plug connections in operation, arcs can result in severe injury or death.

- Only open plug connections when the equipment is in a voltage-free state, unless it has been explicitly stated that they can be opened in operation.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to fire spreading if the housing is inadequate

Fire and smoke can cause severe injury or material damage.

- Install devices without a protective housing in a metal control cabinet (or protect the device by another equivalent measure) in such a way that contact with fire inside and outside the device is prevented.
- Ensure that smoke can escape via designated paths.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life through unexpected movement of machines when using mobile wireless devices or mobile phones

Using mobile radios or mobile phones with a transmit power > 1 W closer than approx. 2 m to the components may cause the devices to malfunction, influence the functional safety of machines therefore putting people at risk or cause material damage.

- When close to components, switch off all wireless devices and mobile phones.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to the motor catching fire in the event of insulation overload

There is a greater load on the motor insulation as a result of a ground fault in an IT system. A possible result is the failure of the insulation with a risk for personnel as a result of fire and smoke.

- Use a monitoring device that signals an insulation fault.
- Correct the fault as quickly as possible so the motor insulation is not overloaded.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to fire if overheating occurs because of insufficient ventilation clearances

Inadequate ventilation clearances can cause overheating with a risk for personnel as a result of fire and smoke. This can also result in increased downtime and reduced service lives of devices/systems.

- Ensure compliance with the specified minimum clearances as ventilation clearance for the respective component. They can be found in the dimension drawings or in the "Product-specific safety instructions" at the start of the respective section.

⚠WARNING

Danger of an accident occurring due to missing or illegible warning labels

Missing or illegible warning labels can result in death or serious injury.

- Check the warning labels are complete based on the documentation.
- Attach any missing warning labels to the components, in the national language if necessary.
- Replace illegible warning labels.

NOTICE

Device damage caused by incorrect voltage/insulation tests

Incorrect voltage/insulation tests can damage the device.

- Before carrying out a voltage/insulation check of the system/machine, disconnect the devices as all converters and motors have been subject to a high-voltage test by the manufacturer, and therefore it is not necessary to perform an additional test within the system/machine.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life when safety functions are inactive

Safety functions that are inactive or that have not been adjusted accordingly can cause operational faults on machines that could lead to serious injury or death.

- Observe the information in the appropriate product documentation before commissioning.
- Carry out a safety inspection for functions relevant to safety on the entire system, including all safety-related components.
- Ensure that the safety functions used in your drives and automation tasks are adjusted and activated through appropriate parameterizing.
- Perform a function test.
- Only put your plant into live operation once you have absolutely guaranteed that the functions relevant to safety are operating correctly.

Note

Important safety notices for Safety Integrated functions

If you want to use Safety Integrated functions, you must observe the safety notices in the Safety Integrated manuals.

1.2 Safety instructions for electromagnetic fields (EMF)



⚠WARNING

Danger to life from electromagnetic fields

Electromagnetic fields (EMF) are generated by the operation of electrical power equipment such as transformers, converters or motors.

People with pacemakers or implants are at a special risk in the immediate vicinity of these devices/systems.

- Ensure that the persons involved are the necessary distance away (minimum 2 m).

1.3 Handling electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD)

Electrostatic sensitive devices (ESD) are individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices that may be damaged by either electric fields or electrostatic discharge.



NOTICE

Damage through electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electric fields or electrostatic discharge can cause malfunctions through damaged individual components, integrated circuits, modules or devices.

- Only pack, store, transport and send electronic components, modules or devices in their original packaging or in other suitable materials, e.g conductive foam rubber of aluminum foil.
- Only touch components, modules and devices when you are grounded by one of the following methods:
  - Wearing an ESD wrist strap
  - Wearing ESD shoes or ESD grounding straps in ESD areas with conductive flooring
- Only place electronic components, modules or devices on conductive surfaces (table with ESD surface, conductive ESD foam, ESD packaging, ESD transport container).

The necessary ESD protective measures are clearly illustrated in the following diagram:

- a = conductive floor surface
- b = ESD table
- c = ESD shoes
- d = ESD overall
- e = ESD wristband
- f = cabinet ground connection
- g = contact with conductive flooring

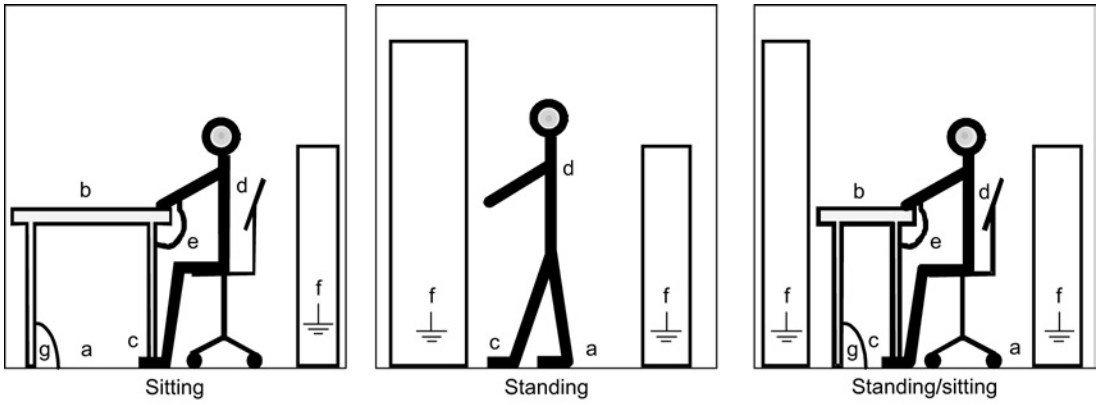


Figure 1-1 ESD protective measures

1.4 Industrial security

Note

Industrial security

Siemens provides products and solutions with industrial security functions that support the secure operation of plants, solutions, machines, equipment and/or networks. They are important components in a holistic industrial security concept. With this in mind, Siemens' products and solutions undergo continuous development. Siemens recommends strongly that you regularly check for product updates.

For the secure operation of Siemens products and solutions, it is necessary to take suitable preventive action (e.g. cell protection concept) and integrate each component into a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept. Third-party products that may be in use should also be considered. For more information about industrial security, visit http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity.

To stay informed about product updates as they occur, sign up for a product-specific newsletter. For more information, visit http://support.automation.siemens.com.

WARNING

Danger as a result of unsafe operating states resulting from software manipulation

Software manipulation (e.g. by viruses, Trojan horses, malware, worms) can cause unsafe operating states to develop in your installation which can result in death, severe injuries and/or material damage.

- Keep the software up to date.
  You will find relevant information and newsletters at this address (http://support.automation.siemens.com).
- Incorporate the automation and drive components into a holistic, state-of-the-art industrial security concept for the installation or machine.
  You will find further information at this address (http://www.siemens.com/industrialsecurity).
- Make sure that you include all installed products into the holistic industrial security concept.

1.5 Residual risks of power drive systems

The control and drive components of a drive system are approved for industrial and commercial use in industrial line supplies. Their use in public line supplies requires a different configuration and/or additional measures.

These components may only be operated in closed housings or in higher-level control cabinets with protective covers that are closed, and when all of the protective devices are used.

These components may only be handled by qualified and trained technical personnel who are knowledgeable and observe all of the safety information and instructions on the components and in the associated technical user documentation.

When assessing the machine's risk in accordance with the respective local regulations (e.g. EC Machinery Directive), the machine manufacturer must take into account the following residual risks emanating from the control and drive components of a drive system:

1. Unintentional movements of driven machine components during commissioning, operation, maintenance, and repairs caused by, for example:
   - Hardware defects and/or software errors in the sensors, controllers, actuators, and connection system
   - Response times of the controller and drive
   - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside what has been specified
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - Parameterization, programming, cabling, and installation errors
   - Use of radio devices/cellular phones in the immediate vicinity of the control system
   - External influences/damage
2. In the event of a fault, exceptionally high temperatures, including an open fire, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. can occur inside and outside the converter, e.g.:
   - Component malfunctions
   - Software errors
   - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside what has been specified
   - External influences/damage

   Converters of the Open Type/IP20 degree of protection must be installed in a metal control cabinet (or protected by another equivalent measure) such that contact with fire inside and outside the converter is not possible.

3. Hazardous shock voltages caused by, for example:
   - Component malfunctions
   - Influence of electrostatic charging
   - Induction of voltages in moving motors
   - Operating and/or ambient conditions outside what has been specified
   - Condensation/conductive contamination
   - External influences/damage
4. Electrical, magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated in operation that can pose a risk to people with a pacemaker, implants or metal replacement joints, etc., if they are too close
5. Release of environmental pollutants or emissions as a result of improper operation of the system and/or failure to dispose of components safely and correctly.

Note

The components must be protected against conductive contamination, e.g. by installing them in a control cabinet with degree of protection IP54 according to IEC 60529 or NEMA 12.

Assuming that conductive contamination at the installation site can definitely be excluded, a lower degree of cabinet protection may be permitted.

For more information about residual risks of the components in a drive system, see the relevant sections in the technical user documentation.

Device overview

2

2.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Introduction to the cabinet units
- The main components and features of the cabinet unit
- The cabinet unit wiring
- Explanation of the type plate

2.2 Applications, features

2.2.1 Field of applications

SINAMICS G150 drive converter cabinet units are specially designed to meet the requirements of drives with a quadratic and constant load characteristic, medium performance requirements, and no regenerative feedback. Applications include:

- Pumps and fans
- Compressors
- Extruders and mixers
- Mills

2.2.2 Characteristics, quality, service

Features

The accuracy of sensorless vector control ensures that the system can be used for a wide variety of applications and, as a result, an additional speed sensor is not required.

Optionally, applications with system-specific requirements for an encoder can use an encoder evaluator.

SINAMICS G150 takes this into account and, as a result, offers a low-cost drive solution tailored to actual requirements.

In addition, factors have been considered to ensure easy handling of the drive from the planning and design phase through to operation. These factors include:

- Compact, modular, service-friendly design
- Straightforward planning/design and commissioning thanks to the SIZER and STARTER tools.
- Ready to connect to facilitate the installation process
- Quick, menu-driven commissioning with no complex parameterization
- Clear and convenient drive monitoring/diagnostics, commissioning and operation via a user-friendly graphical operator panel with measured values displayed in plain text or in a quasi-analog bar display.
- SINAMICS is an integral part of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA). The TIA concept offers an optimized range of products for automation and drive technology. This concept is characterized by planning / design, communication, and data management procedures that are consistent throughout the product range. SINAMICS is totally integrated in the TIA concept.
  Separate S7/PCS7 blocks and faceplates for WinCC are available.
- Integration in SIMATIC H systems is possible via a Y link.
- Drive Control Chart (DCC)
  Drive Control Chart (DCC) expands the facility for the simplest possible configuring of technological functions for the SINAMICS drive system.
  The block library encompasses a large selection of closed-loop, arithmetic and logic function blocks, as well as more comprehensive open-loop and closed-loop control functions. The user-friendly DCC editor enables easy graphical configuration and a clear representation of control loop structures as well as a high degree of reusability of existing diagrams. DCC is an add-on to the STARTER commissioning tool.

Quality

The SINAMICS G150 drive converter cabinet units are manufactured to meet high standards of quality and exacting demands.

This results in a high level of reliability, availability, and functionality for our products.

The development, design, and manufacturing processes, as well as order processing and the logistics supply center have been certified to DIN ISO 9001 by an independent authority.

Service

Our worldwide sales and service network offers our customers consulting services tailored to their needs, provides support with planning and design, and offers a range of training courses.

For detailed contact information and the current link to our Internet pages, refer to chapter "Diagnosis / faults and alarms", section "Service and Support".

2.3 Design

The SINAMICS G150 cabinet units are characterized by their compact, modular, and service-friendly design.

A wide range of electrical and mechanical components enable the drive system to be optimized for the appropriate requirements.

Two cabinet unit versions are available depending on the options that are chosen.

2.3.1 Version A

All the required power supply connection components, such as the main circuit breaker, circuit breakers, main contactor, line fuses, radio interference suppression filter, motor components, and additional protection and monitoring devices, can be installed as required.

The cabinet unit comprises up to two cabinet panels with a total width of between 800 and 1600 mm, depending on the output, and 3200 mm for units connected in parallel.

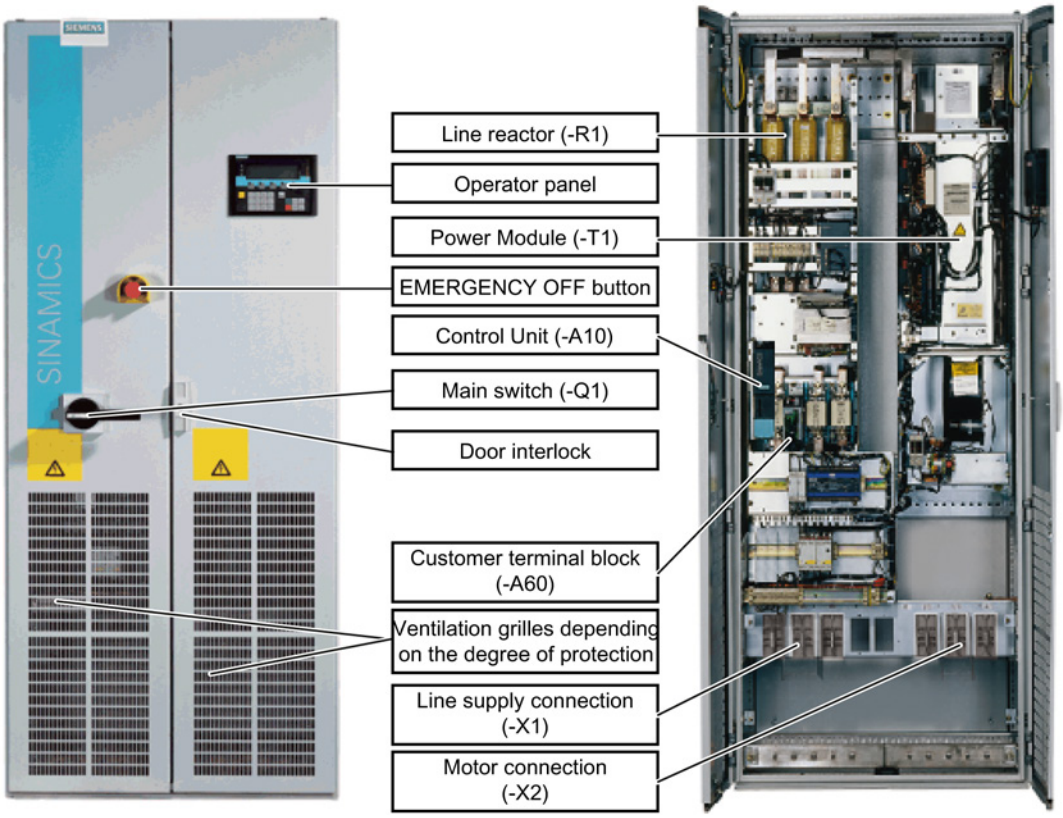


Figure 2-1 Example of the cabinet drive, version A (e.g., 132 kW, 400 V 3 AC) (layout and components shown may vary according to version)

Version A, units connected in parallel

For very high power ratings, the cabinet drive comprises two cabinet units that combined drive a motor in a parallel connection:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

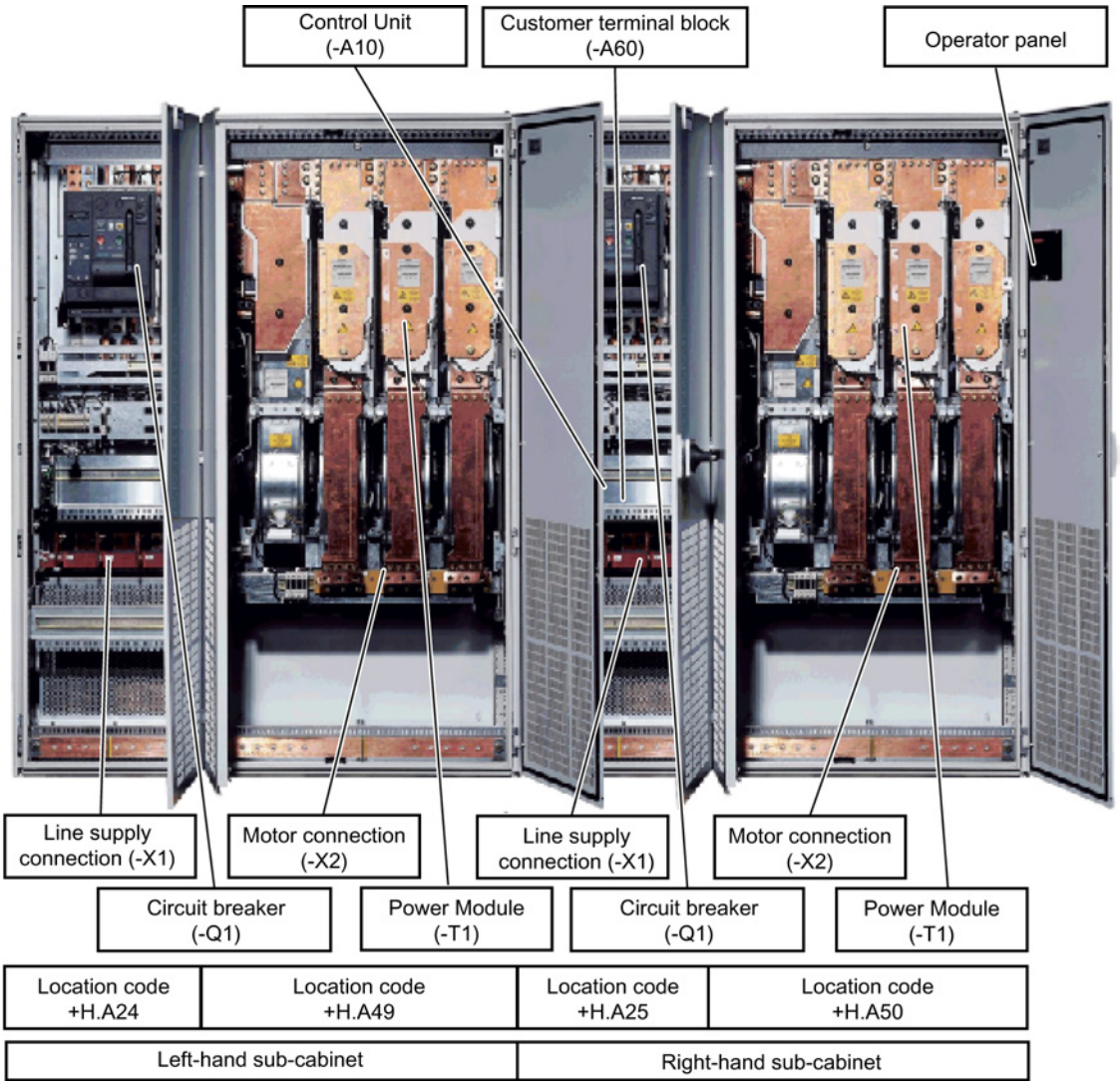


Figure 2-2 Example of the cabinet drive, version A (e.g., 1500 kW, 690 V 3 AC) (layout and components shown may vary according to version)

Special features when connecting-up and operating units connected in parallel

The DC links of the sub-cabinets connected in parallel must always be connected by the connecting cables (cable numbers -W001 and -W002).

The cabinet drive units can be connected to the line supply in either a 6-pulse or 12-pulse connection.

For a 12-pulse connection, the following special considerations must be taken into account:

- The 12-pulse connection to the line supply is only possible using a double-tier transformer with three winding systems.
  Transformer vector groups Dy5d0 or Dy11d0 should preferably be selected.
  When using sub-windings that are electrically offset with respect to one another, the line harmonics are reduced with respect to the 6-pulse infeed.

  Requirements for the transformer:

  – The no-load voltages of the two secondary windings must not differ from each other by more than 0.5% (with reference to the rated voltage).
  – The differences between the short-circuit voltages of the two secondary windings must be less than 5% of the rated value.
  – The minimum short-circuit voltage of the transformer should be 4%.
- The checkback contacts of the main contactors and the circuit breakers are connected in series in the factory and wired to digital input 5 of the Control Unit.
  When the drive unit is being commissioned, the checkback signal monitoring function must be activated.
  This is realized using parameter p0860{VECTOR} = 722.5{CONTROL_UNIT}.

Motors with two electrically isolated winding systems and also motors with one winding system can be used.

- When connecting a motor with one winding system, the following special considerations must be taken into account:
  – The motor connections of the Power Modules can be connected to one another at the motor per phase. Parameter p7003 (winding system) must be set to "0" (one winding system).
  – If a motor reactor is not being used (option L08), the minimum cable lengths must be complied with (see "Electrical installation").
- When connecting a motor with separate winding systems, the following special considerations must be taken into account:
  – Every Power Module motor connection must be connected to its own winding system. Parameter p7003 (winding system) must be set to "1" (multiple separate winding systems or motors).



⚠WARNING

Danger to life from live parts and components for devices connected in parallel

Touching live components of sub-cabinets associated with devices connected in parallel can result in death or severe injury.

- When connecting, installing and repairing, electrically disconnect both partial cabinets from the line supply.

2.3.2 Version C

This version is particularly compact in design with an in-built line reactor.

This version can be used, for example, when the power supply connection components, such as the main contactor and main circuit-breaker with fuses for conductor protection and semi-conductor protection, are installed in an existing central low-voltage distribution unit.

Line fuses are required for conductor protection. Line fuses can protect the semiconductors of the converter.

NOTICE
Damage to the device by incorrect line fuses Cabinet devices can be damaged by incorrect line fuses. • Preferably install type 3NE line fuses for the cabinet devices. The recommended fuses can be found in the technical data.

The cabinet unit simply comprises a single cabinet with a width of 400 mm, 600 mm, or 1000 mm.

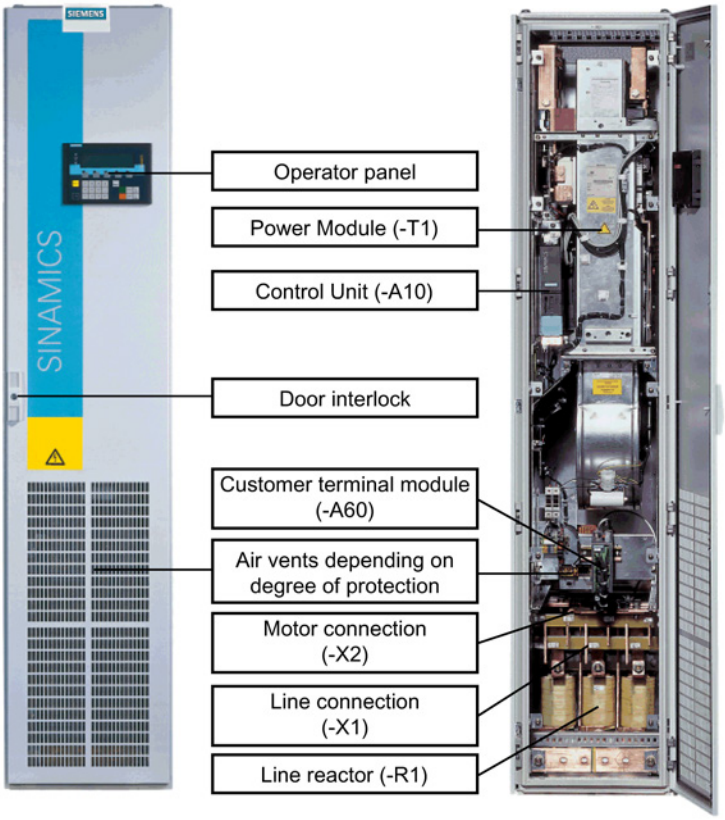
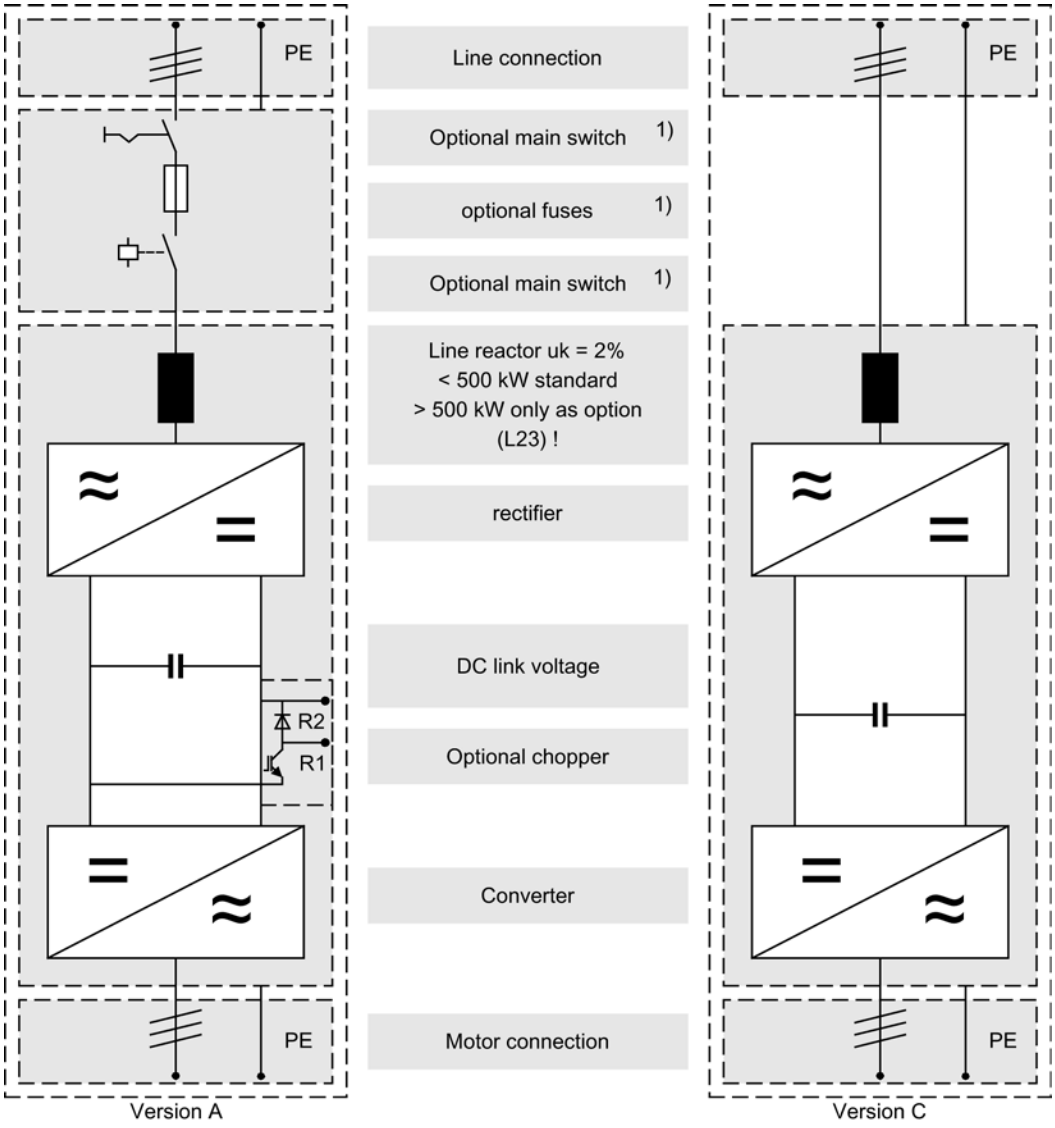


Figure 2-3 Example of the cabinet drive, version C (e.g. 3-phase 315 kW, 690 VAC) (layout and components shown may vary according to version)

2.4 Wiring principle

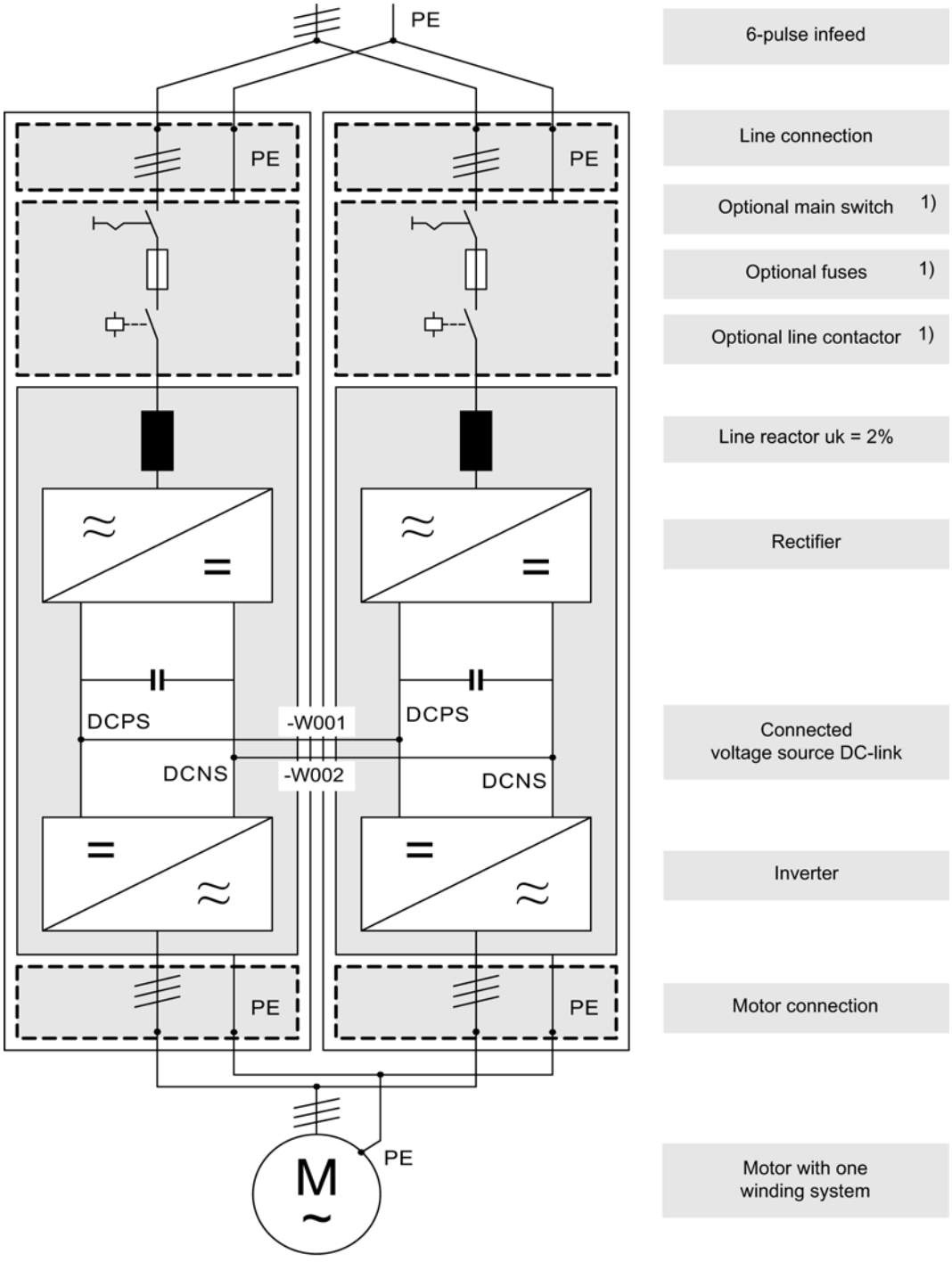
Circuit principle, versions A and C



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for output currents > > 800 A.

Figure 2-4 Circuit principle, versions A and C

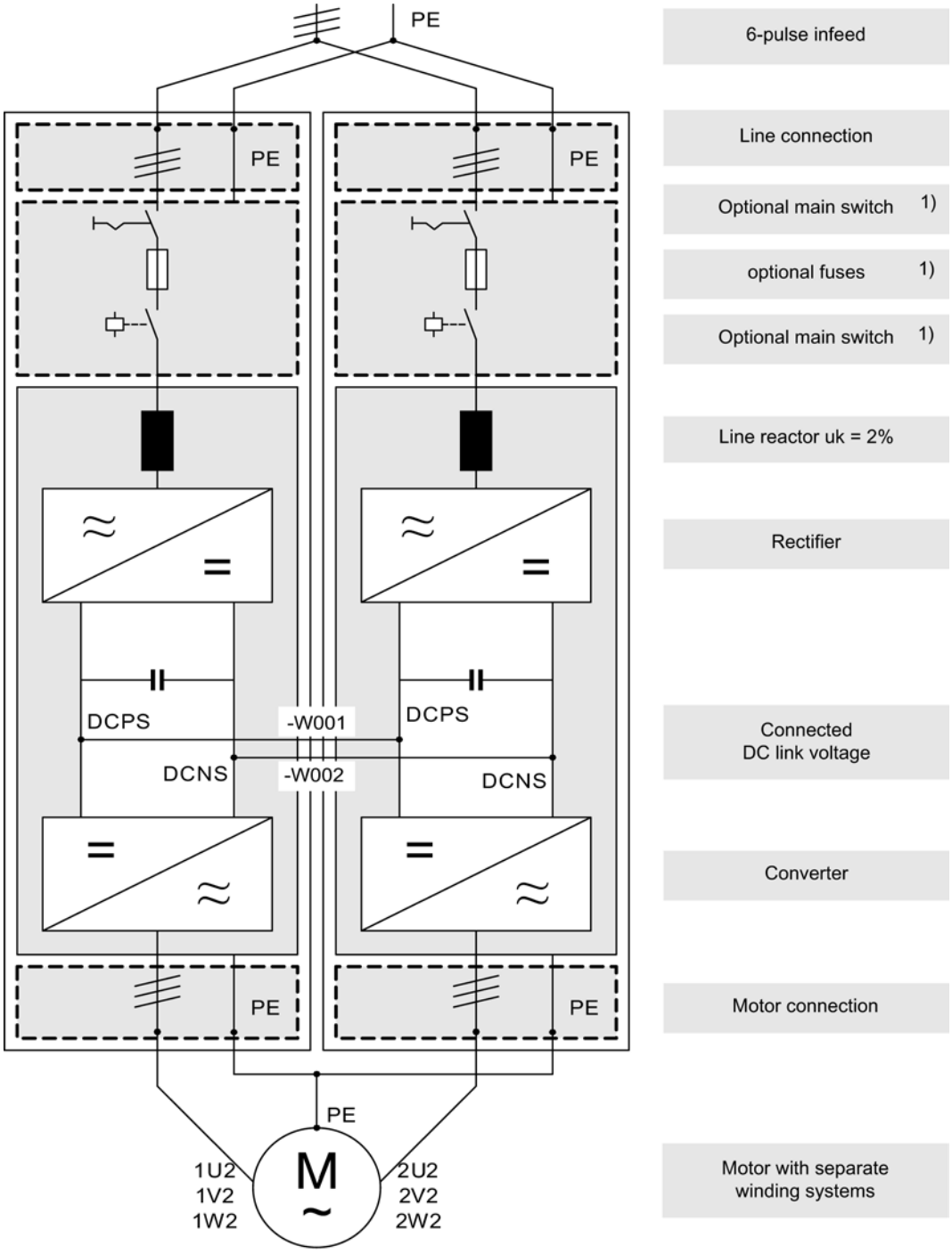
Circuit principle for version A, units that are connected in parallel with 6-pulse infeed, motor with one winding system



1) The functions mains switch, fuses and line contactor are implemented by means of a circuit breaker for output current of > 800 A.

Figure 2-5 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 6-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with one winding system

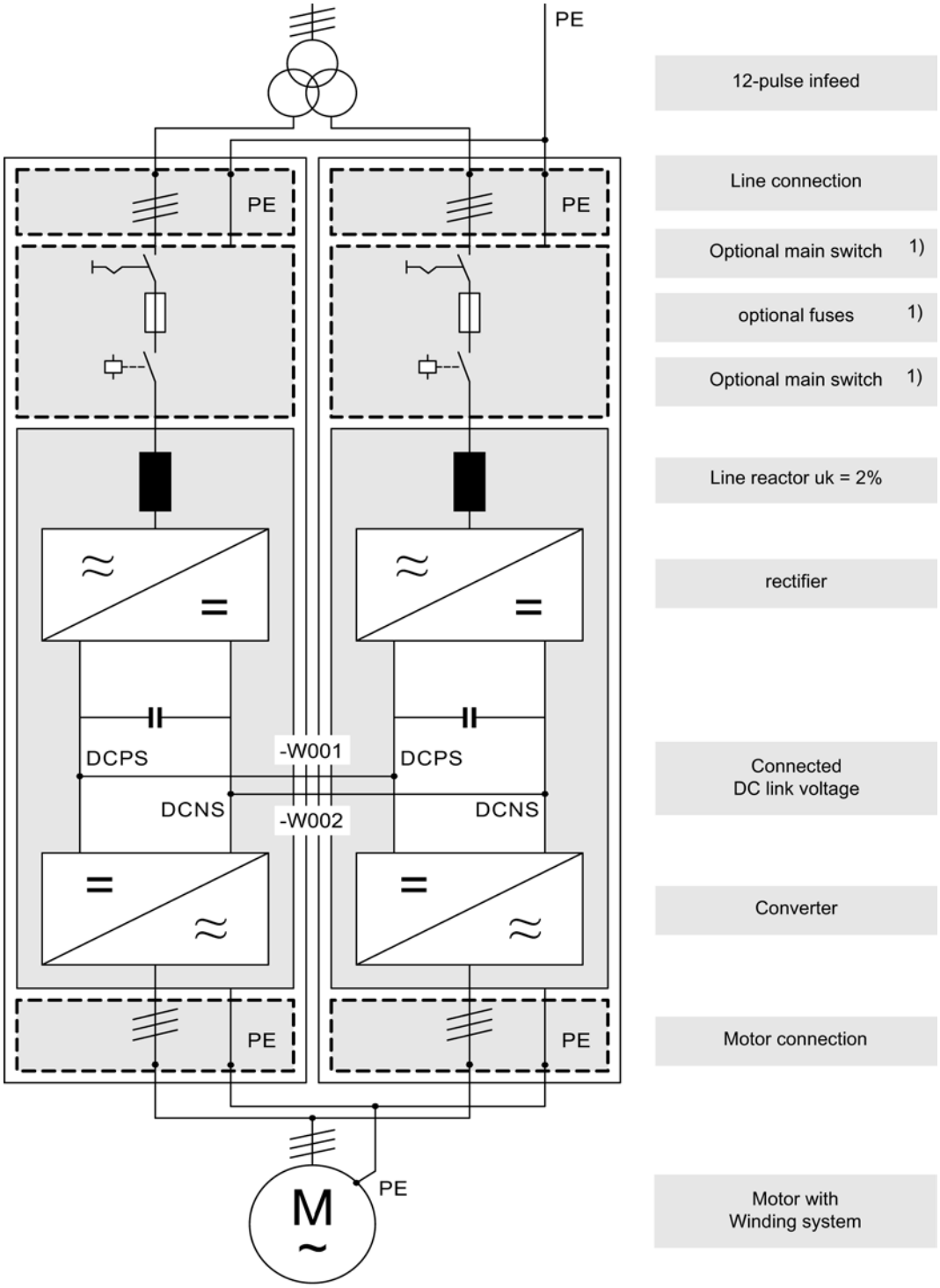
Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection with 6-pulse infeed, motor with separate winding systems



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for circuit breaker for output currents ≥ 1500 A.

Figure 2-6 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 6-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with separate winding systems

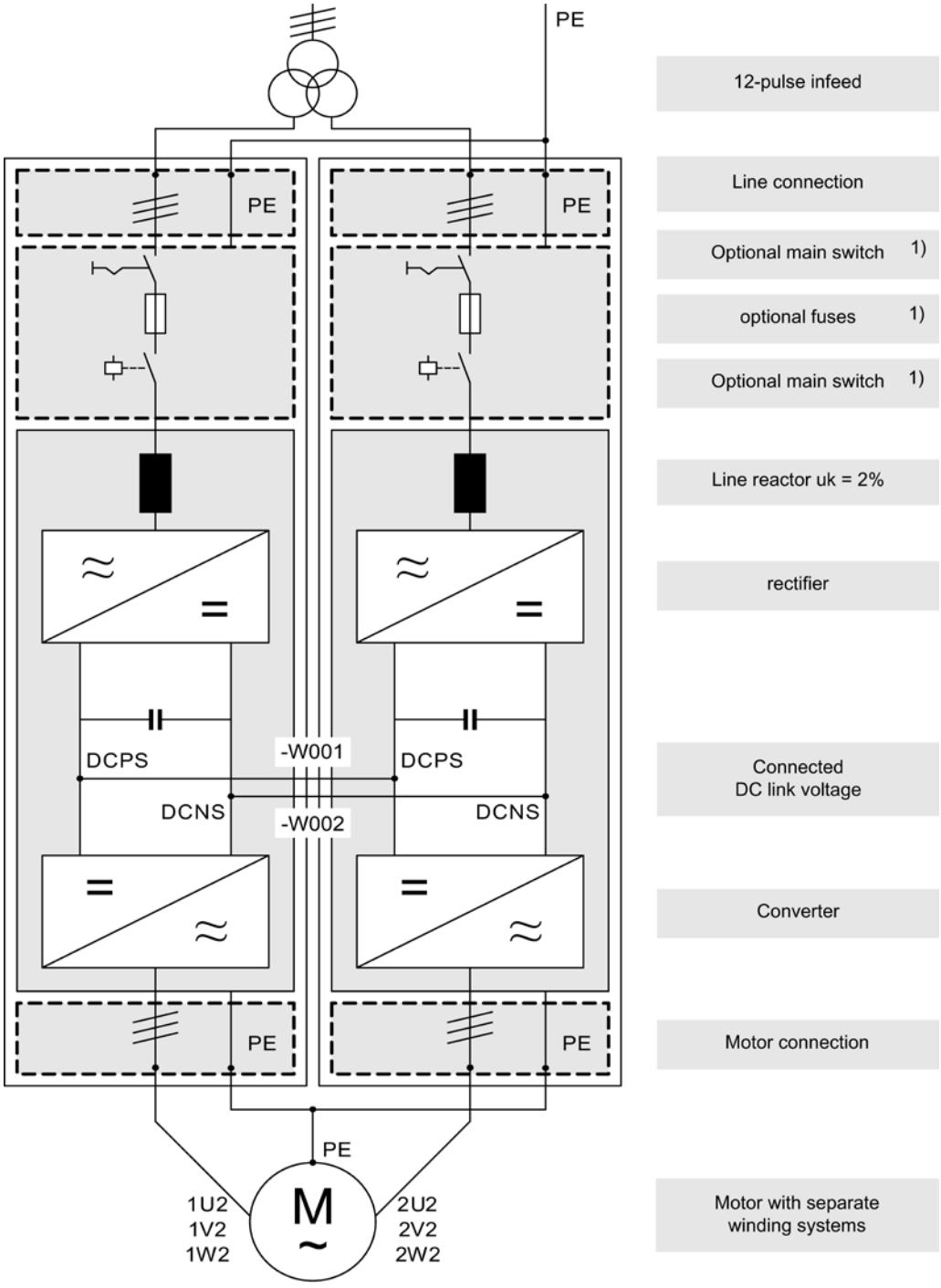
Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection with 12-pulse infeed, motor with one winding system



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for circuit breaker for output currents ≥ 1500 A.

Figure 2-7 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 12-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with one winding system

Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection with 12-pulse infeed, motor with separate winding systems



1) The main switch, fuse and main contactor functions are performed by a circuit breaker for circuit breaker for output currents ≥ 1500 A.

Figure 2-8 Circuit principle for version A, parallel connection, 12-pulse infeed, connected to one motor with separate winding systems

Note

PE connection of the motor

The PE connection at the motor must be fed back directly to the cabinet unit.

2.5 Type plate

Specifications on the type plate

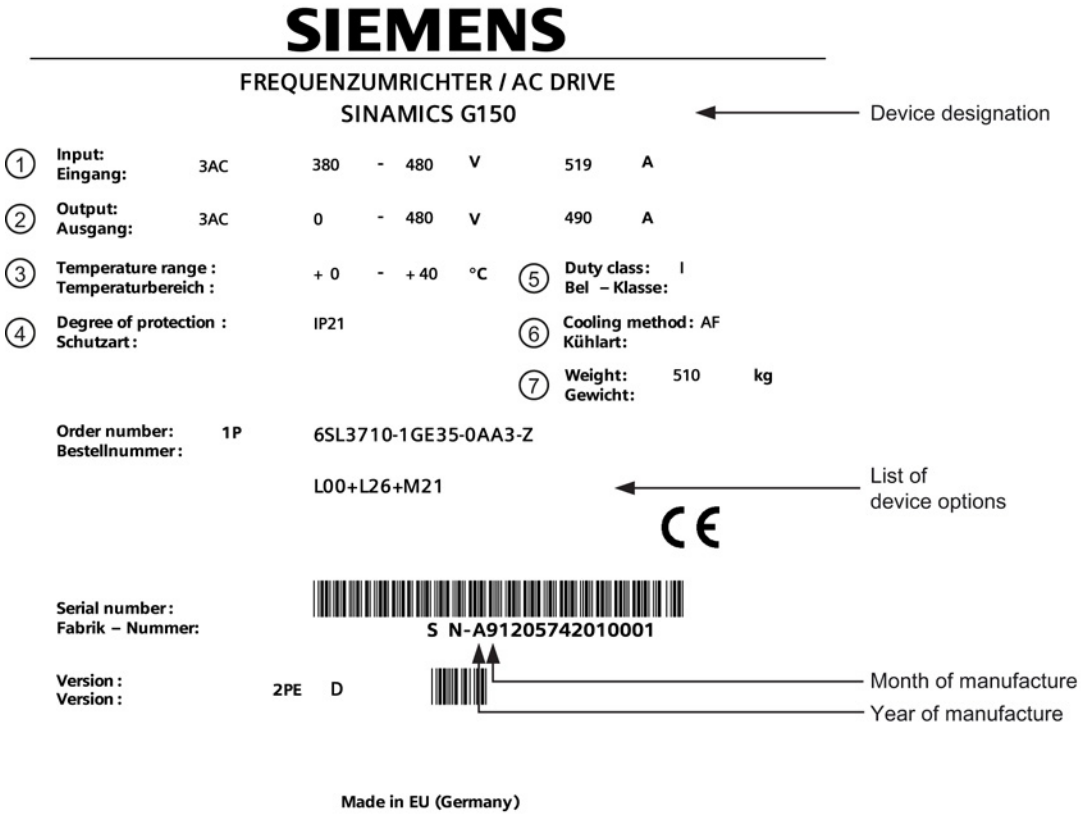


Figure 2-9 Type plate for the cabinet unit

Type plate specifications (from type plate above)

Position	Specification	Value	Explanation
①	Input	3 AC 380 ... 480 V 519 A	Three-phase connection Rated input voltage Rated input current
②	Output	3 AC 0 ... 480 V 490 A	Three-phase connection Rated output voltage Rated output current
③	Temperature range	0 ... 40 °C	Ambient temperature range within which the enclosed drive can operate under 100 % load
④	Degree of protection	IP21	Degree of protection
⑤	Duty class load class	I	I: Duty class I to EN 60146-1-1 = 100 % (continuously) (with the specified current values, the cabinet unit can operate continuously under 100 % load)
⑥	Cooling method	AF	A: Cooling medium: air F: Circulation method: forced cooling, drive unit (fan) in the device
⑦	Weight	510 kg	Weight of the enclosed drive

Date of manufacture

The date of manufacture can be determined as follows:

Table 2- 1 Production year and month

Letter/number	Year of manufacture		Letter/number	Month of manufacture
C	2012		1 ... 9	January to September
D	2013		O	October
E	2014		N	November
F	2015		D	December
H	2016			
J	2017			

Explanation of the option short codes

Table 2- 2 Explanation of the option short codes

		Version A	Version C
Line-side options			
L00	Line filter in the first environment according to EN 61800-3, category C2 (TN/TT systems with grounded neutral point)	✓	–
L01	Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact	✓	–
L13	Main contactor	✓	–
L21	Surge suppression	✓	–
L22	Line reactor not included in scope of delivery	✓	✓
L23	Line reactor uk = 2%	✓	✓
L26	Main circuit-breaker (incl. fuses / circuit-breakers)	✓	–
L76	Option L01 Quick starting	✓	–
Motor-side options			
L07	dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter	✓	–
L08	Motor reactor	✓	–
L10	dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter	✓	–
L15	Sine-wave filter (only for 3-phase 380 to 480 VAC up to 250 kW and for 3-phase 500 to 600 VAC up to 132 kW)	✓	–
Line-side and motor-side options			
M70	EMC shield bus	✓	✓
Motor protection and safety functions			
L45	EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door	✓	–
L57	EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 VAC or 24 VDC	✓	–
L59	EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 230 VAC	✓	–
L60	EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 24 VDC	✓	–
L83	Thermistor motor protection unit (alarm)	✓	–
L84	Thermistor motor protection unit (shutdown)	✓	–
L86	PT100 evaluation unit	✓	–
L87	Insulation monitoring	✓	–
M60	Additional shock protection	✓	✓
Increase in degree of protection			
M21	Degree of protection IP21	✓	✓
M23	Degree of protection IP23	✓	✓
M43	Degree of protection IP43	✓	✓
M54	Degree of protection IP54	✓	✓
Mechanical options			
M06	Base 100 mm high, RAL 7022	✓	✓
M07	Cable compartment 200 mm high, RAL 7035	✓	✓
M13	Line connection from above	✓	–
M78	Motor connection from above	✓	–
M90	Crane transport assembly (top-mounted)	✓	✓

		Version A	Version C
Safety Integrated			
K01	Safety license for 1 axis	✓	–
K52	Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	✓	–
K82	Terminal Module for controlling the "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" safety functions	✓	–
K87	TM54F Terminal Module	✓	–
K88	SBA Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC	✓	–
Other options			
G20	CBC10 Communication Board	✓	✓
G33	CBE20 Communication Board	✓	✓
G51	TM150 temperature sensor module	✓	✓
G60	TM31 customer terminal block	✓	✓
G61	Additional TM31 customer terminal block	✓	–
G62	TB30 Terminal Board	✓	✓
K50	SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted	✓	✓
K51	VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module Cabinet-Mounted	✓	–
K74	Auxiliary power supply, 230 VAC	✓	–
K95	CU320-2 PN Control Unit	✓	✓
L19	Connection for external auxiliary equipment	✓	–
L50	Cabinet lighting with service socket	✓	–
L55	Cabinet anti-condensation heating	✓	✓
L61	Braking unit 25 kW / 125 kW	✓	–
L62	Braking unit 50 kW / 250 kW	✓	–
Y09	Special paint finish for cabinet	✓	✓
Documentation (standard: English / German)			
D02	Customer documentation (circuit diagram, terminal diagram, layout diagram) in DXF format	✓	✓
D04	Customer documentation as hard copy	✓	✓
D14	Draft of customer documentation	✓	✓
D58	Documentation language: English / French	✓	✓
D60	Documentation language: English / Spanish	✓	✓
D80	Documentation language: English / Italian	✓	✓
D91	Documentation language: English/Chinese	✓	✓
D94	Documentation language: English/Russian	✓	✓
Languages (standard: English / German)			
T58	Type plate data in English / French	✓	✓
T60	Type plate data in English / Spanish	✓	✓
T80	Type plate data in English / Italian	✓	✓
T85	Type plate data in English / Russian	✓	✓
T91	Type plate data in English / Chinese	✓	✓

		Version A	Version C
Industry-specific options (chemicals)			
B00	NAMUR terminal block	✓	–
B02	Protective separation for 24 V supply (PELV)	✓	–
B03	Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment (uncontrolled)	✓	–
Options specific to the shipbuilding industry			
M66	Marine version	✓	✓
E11	Individual certificate from Germanischer Lloyd (GL)	✓	✓
E21	Individual certificate from Lloyds Register (LR)	✓	✓
E31	Individual certificate from Bureau Veritas (BV)	✓	✓
E51	Individual certificate from Det Norske Veritas (DNV)	✓	✓
E61	Individual certificate from American Bureau of Shipping (ABS)	✓	✓
E71	Individual certificate from Chinese Classification Society (CCS)	✓	✓
Converter acceptance in customer's absence (not shown on the type plate)			
F03	Visual acceptance	✓	✓
F71	Function test of the converter without motor connected	✓	✓
F75	Function test of the converter with test bay motor (no load)	✓	✓
F77	Insulation test on converter	✓	✓
F97	Customer-specific converter acceptance inspections (on request)	✓	✓

✓ indicates that this option is available for that version.

– indicates that this option is not available for that version.

Mechanical installation 3

3.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- The conditions for transporting, storing, and installing the cabinet unit
- Preparing and installing the cabinet unit

3.2 Transportation and storage

Transport

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to incorrectly transporting the unit

The unit can tip over if you transport it incorrectly – or if you use transport equipment that is not permitted for the purpose. Death, serious injury, or material damage can result.

- Ensure that only trained personnel transport the device with approved transport equipment and lifting tools.
- Observe the center of gravity specifications. A label or stamp is attached to each transportation unit and precisely shows the center of gravity of the cabinet.
- Transport the unit only in the original marked upright position. Do not tilt the device or allow it to fall.
- The forks of the truck must protrude at the rear of the transport pallet. The floor panels of the transport units cannot be loaded or stressed.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life through the use of non-approved fork-lift trucks

If the forks are too short, this can cause the transport unit/cabinet to tip over resulting in death, serious injury or damage to the cabinet.

- The forks of the truck must protrude at the rear of the transport pallet. The floor panels of the transport units cannot be loaded or stressed.
- Only use fork-lift trucks approved for this purpose to transport the units.

Note

Notes regarding transportation

- The devices are packaged by the manufacturer in accordance with the climatic conditions and stress encountered during transit and in the recipient country.
- The notes on the packaging for transportation, storage, and proper handling must be observed.
- For transportation using forklifts, the devices must be set down on a wooden pallet.
- When the devices are unpacked, they can be transported using the optional transport eyebolts (option M90) or rails on the cabinet unit. The load must be distributed evenly. Heavy blows or impacts must be avoided during transit and when the devices are being set down, for example.
- Shock / tilt indicators are affixed to the packaging to detect unacceptable impact or tilting of the cabinet unit during transport (see Chapter "Transport Indicators").
- Permissible ambient temperatures:
  Ventilation: -25° to +70° C, class 2K3 according to IEC 60721-3-2
  Briefly down to -40° C for max. 24 hours

Note

Notes regarding damage in transit

- Carry out a thorough visual inspection of the device before accepting the delivery from the transportation company. Pay special attention to transport damage that is not readily apparent but indicated by the tilt and shock indicators.
- Ensure that you have received all the items specified on the delivery note.
- Notify the transportation company immediately of any missing components or damage.
- If you identify any hidden defects or damage, contact the transportation company immediately and ask them to examine the device.
- If you fail to contact them immediately, you may lose your right to claim compensation for the defects and damage.
- If necessary, you can request the support of your local Siemens office.

Storage

The devices must be stored in clean, dry rooms. Temperatures between -25° C and +55° C are permissible (class 1K4 according to EN 60721-3-1). Temperature variations greater than 20 K per hour are not permitted.

If the cabinet is stored for a prolonged period once it has been unpacked, cover it or take other appropriate measures to ensure that it does not become dirty and that it is protected against environmental influences. If such measures are not taken, the warranty becomes invalid in the event of a claim for damages.

NOTICE
Material damage to the canopies caused by impermissible mechanical loading The separately delivered canopies may be damaged if they are subjected to mechanical loads before being installed on the cabinets. • Do not apply any mechanical loads to the canopies.

3.3 Assembly

⚠ WARNING
Danger to life if the general safety instructions and remaining risks are not carefully observed If the general safety instructions and remaining risks are not observed, accidents can occur involving severe injuries or death. • Observe the general safety instructions. • When assessing the risk, take into account residual risks.

3.3.1 Mechanical installation: checklist

Use the following checklist to guide you through the mechanical installation procedure for the cabinet unit. Read the "Safety instructions" section at the start of these Operating Instructions before you start working on the device.

Note

Checking the checklist

Check the boxes accordingly in the right-hand column if the activity applies to the cabinet unit in your scope of supply. In the same way, check the boxes once you have finished the installation procedure to confirm that the activities are complete.

Item	Activity	Yes	Completed
1	Check the shipping and handling monitors prior to assembly. Refer to "Mechanical installation/Assembly/Preparatory steps/Shipping and handling monitors".	☐	☐
2	The ambient conditions must be permissible. See "Technical data/General technical data". The cabinet unit must be firmly attached to the fixing points provided. With version C with a width of 400 mm, the cabinet unit can, if required, be secured to a non-flammable vertical surface by means of the wall support supplied (see "Mechanical installation/preparation"). The cooling air can flow unobstructed.	☐	☐
3	The minimum ceiling height (for unhindered air outlet) specified in the Operating Instructions must be observed. The cooling air supply must be not be obstructed (see "Mechanical installation/preparation").	☐	☐
4	Transport units separately shipped must be connected to one another (refer to Chapter "Mechanical installation / Mechanically connecting units connected in parallel").	☐	☐
5	Components that are supplied separately for transport reasons (drip plate or hood) must be fitted (see "Mechanical installation/Fitting additional drip plates (option M21) or canopies (option M23, M43, M54)").	☐	☐
6	The clearance around an open door (escape route) specified in the applicable accident prevention guidelines must be observed.	☐	☐
7	With option M13/M78: Choose the required metric screw connections or conduit thread connections on the basis of the cable cross-section and drill the required holes in the mounting plates. When the cable is fed in from above, ensure that enough room is available if the cable has to be bent because of the cable feeder and cross-sections. The cable entries should be fed in vertically to minimize transverse forces on the entries (see "Mechanical installation / line connection from above (option M13), motor connection from above (option M78)").	☐	☐

3.3.2 Preparation

3.3.2.1 Requirements on the installation location

The cabinet units are designed for installation in closed, electrical operating areas in compliance with EN 61800-5-1. A closed electrical operating area is a room or area containing electrical equipment that can be accessed by trained personnel only. Access is controlled by a door or other form of barrier that can be opened only by means of a key or other tool. The room or area is also clearly marked with appropriate warning notices.

The operating areas must be dry and free of dust. The air supplied must not contain any electrically conductive gas, vapors, or dust, which could impair operation. It may be necessary to filter the air supplied to the room where the equipment is installed. If the air contains dust, filter mats (option M54) can be installed in front of the ventilation grills of the cabinet doors and also in front of the optional canopies. Option M54 offers additional protection against water sprayed against the housing from any direction and corresponds to degree of protection IP54.

The permissible values for climatic ambient conditions must be taken into account.

At temperatures > 40°C (104°F) and altitudes > 2000 m, the devices must be derated.

The basic version of the cabinet units complies with the IP20 degree of protection in accordance with EN 60529.

Installation is realized in accordance with the dimension drawings supplied. The clearance between the top of the cabinet and the ceiling is also specified in the dimension drawings.

The cooling air for the power unit is drawn in from the front through the ventilation grills in the lower part of the cabinet doors. The hot air is discharged through the perforated top cover or the ventilation grilles in the top cover (with option M13/M23/M43/M54/M78). Cooling air can also be supplied from below through raised/intermediate floors or air ducts, for example. To allow this, openings must be made in the 3-section bottom panel or individual bottom panels must be removed.

According to EN 61800-3, the cabinet units are not intended for use in low-voltage public line supplies that supply residential buildings. High-frequency interference may occur if it is used in this type of line supply.
Additional measures (e.g. line filter, option L00) can be fitted for use in the first environment according to EN 61800--3 Category C2.

Note

Interference to wireless services caused by high-frequency disturbances in residential environments

This product can cause high-frequency interferences in a residential environment that can require radio interference suppression measures.

This device is not designed for general use in the first environment (residential area) and must not be used there without appropriate radio interference suppression measures.

- Have the installation and commissioning with appropriate radio interference suppression measures preformed by qualified personnel.

3.3.2.2 Requirements on the levelness of the floor

The foundation at the installation location must be horizontal and level, to ensure proper functioning of the cabinet units.

- Care must be taken to ensure that the doors can be opened and closed and that the locking systems work properly.
- Flat sections (such as doors, side panels and canopies) must be sealed correctly to ensure compliance with the specified degree of protection.
- When cabinets are connected (e.g. transport units), air must be prevented from entering through the gaps.

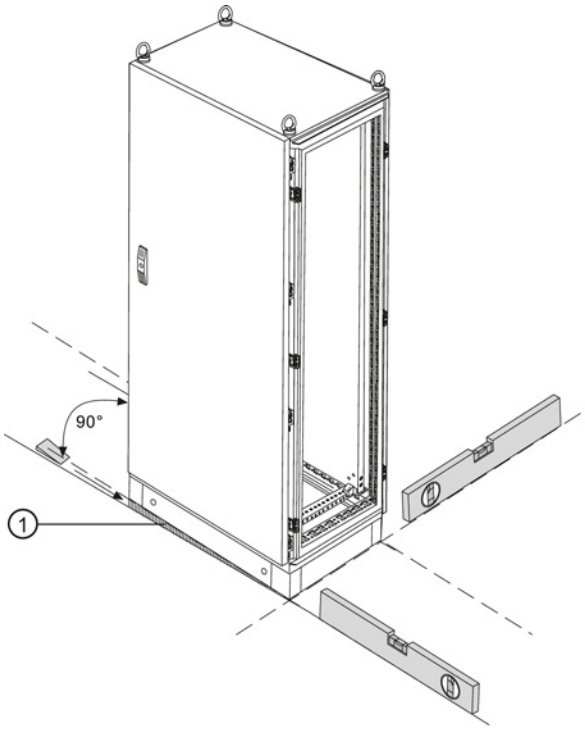


Figure 3-1 Requirements on the levelness of the floor

The following points must be observed to ensure full functionality of the cabinet units:

- The foundation must be level and horizontal.
- Irregularities must be leveled out.
- Gaps where air can enter caused by leveling measures (e.g. ① in the diagram) must be sealed.

3.3.2.3 Shipping and handling monitors

The cabinet units are equipped with tilt and shock indicators to monitor for damage during transit.



Figure 3-2 Tilt indicator



Figure 3-3 Shock indicator

Position of the shipping and handling monitors

The tilt indicators are affixed to the top of the cabinet unit inside the doors.

The shock indicators are affixed to the bottom of the cabinet unit inside the doors.

Checking the shipping and handling monitors prior to commissioning

It is essential to check the shipping and handling monitors prior to commissioning the converter.



Figure 3-4 Tilt indicator tripped

The tilt indicator provides immediate visible evidence of whether the cabinet units have been handled and stored upright. Blue-colored quartz sand begins to flow into the arrow-shaped indicator area. The tilt indicator has tripped when the blue color extends beyond the middle line of the arrowhead.



Figure 3-5 Shock indicator tripped

The shock indicator shows if an acceleration has exceeded 98.1 m/s^2 (10 x g) and indicates the direction of acceleration. The black color of the arrows indicates that an impermissible shock load has occurred in the direction of the arrow.

⚠ WARNING

Danger to life caused by device damage when shock or tilt indicators have tripped

If a shock or tilt indicator has tripped, safe operation of the device cannot be guaranteed.

Death, serious injury, or material damage can result.

- Terminate the commissioning if one of the shock or tilt indicators has tripped.
- Contact Technical Support immediately for clarification.

Removing the shipping and handling monitors prior to commissioning

NOTICE
Material damage caused by transport indicators remaining in the device during operation If transport indicators remain in the device during operation, material damage can result from falling off or through temperature damage. • Remove the transport indicators before commissioning the converter.

Ethyl alcohol can be used to remove any remains of adhesive after removing the transport indicators from the control cabinet.

3.3.2.4 Unpacking

Unpacking

Check the delivery against the delivery note to ensure that all the items have been delivered. Check that the cabinet is intact and has not been damaged.

The packaging material must be disposed of in accordance with the applicable country-specific guidelines and rules.

3.3.2.5 Required tools

You require the following tools for installation:

- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench from 5 Nm to 50 Nm
- Screwdriver, size 2
- Screwdriver Torx T20
- T25 torx screwdriver
- Screwdriver Torx T30

A socket wrench set with two long extensions is recommended.

3.3.3 Installation

3.3.3.1 Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet

Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet

The applicable local guidelines regarding the transportation of the cabinet from the transport palette to the installation location must be observed.

A crane transport assembly (option M90) can also be fitted on the top of the cabinet.

The fixing screws of the transport pallets can be removed without having to lift the cabinet unit. The positions of the fixing screws are indicated by red markings on the outside of the pallets.



Figure 3-6 Lifting from the transport pallet (left: without base; right: with base)

For cabinet units without base (in the figure on the left), the fixing screws of the transport pallets must be removed from the underside of the pallet.
For cabinet units with base (in the figure on the right), the fixing screws of the transport pallet are accessible only after the cover is opened. They can then be loosened and removed directly from the front.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life caused by the non-observance of restrictions concerning the weight and the center of gravity

The non-observance of restrictions concerning the weight and the center of gravity can cause death or severe injury during lifting and transport activities.

- The weight specified on the packaging and the designated center of gravity must always be taken into account when the cabinet is lifted and transported.
- This potential hazard must be taken into account particularly once you have unscrewed the cabinet units from the transport pallet.

Center of gravity of the cabinet

The diagram below shows the center of gravity of the cabinet (for all sizes), which must always be taken into account when lifting and installing the cabinet.

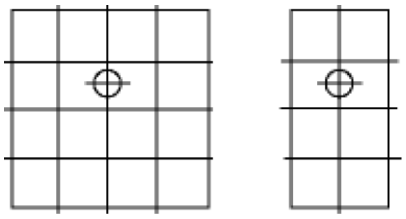


Figure 3-7 Center of gravity of the cabinet

Note

Center of gravity of the cabinet

A label with the precise position of the center of gravity of the cabinet is attached to each cabinet or each transport unit.

3.3.3.2 Removing the crane transport aids

With option M90 (crane transport aids), the cabinet units are equipped with either transport eyebolts or beams.



Figure 3-8 Option M90, transport beams

Removal

The transport eyebolts can be unscrewed and removed. Depending on the length of the cabinet or transport unit, the support rails can have a varying number of fastening screws. These must be unscrewed and removed before the rails can be removed.

⚠WARNING

Danger of an accident occurring due to improper handling of carrying rails

The improper handling of heavy carrying rails during disassembly can cause injuries or material damage.

- Ensure careful handling of the carrying rails during disassembly.
- Prevent screws from falling into the unit during disassembly and so causing damage during operation.

Original roof screws



Figure 3-9 Original roof screws, accessory kit

After removing the crane transport aids, the removed transport eyebolts or the fixing screws of the transport beam must be replaced by the original roof screws from the accessories pack supplied in order to ensure compliance with the degree of protection and proper grounding of the cabinet.

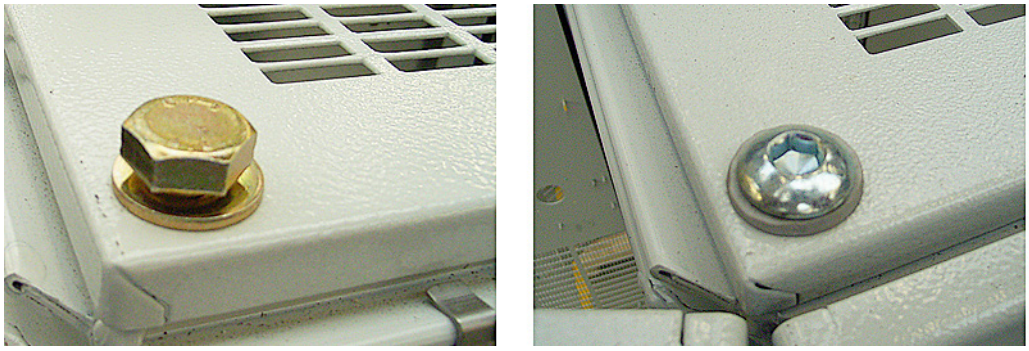


Figure 3-10 Delivery state (left), original roof screws (right)

3.3.3.3 Connection to the foundation

Connection to the foundation

Four holes for M12 screws are provided on each cabinet panel to secure the cabinet to the foundation. The fixing dimensions are specified in the dimension drawings.

Every cabinet panel must be attached to the ground using at least two opposing attachment points (1 screw each in the front and rear part of the cabinet panel).
If this is not possible for reasons of accessibility, then the attachment points of the adjacent cabinet panels must be correspondingly raised.
Generally, as many attachment points as possible should be used.

Two wall supports for attaching the top of the cabinet to the wall are also supplied for 400 mm-wide cabinets to provide extra security.

3.3.4 Mechanical connection of units that are connected in parallel

The following cabinet units (units connected in parallel) are supplied in two separate transport units:

- 3 AC 380 up to 480 V:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- 3 AC 500 up to 600 V:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- 3 AC 660 up to 690 V:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

The left-hand sub-cabinet has the locator code "+H.A24" and "+H.A49" and the right-hand sub-cabinet has the locator code "+H.A25" and "+H.A50". The cabinet operator panel is also mounted here.

An accessories kit is provided with each transport unit for mechanically connecting the sub-cabinet units. The table below shows the content of this accessories kit for connecting the cabinet units.

Table 3- 1 Content of the accessories kit for connecting the cabinet units

Quantity	Material	Fig.	Notes
1 x	Sealing strip		The sealing strip must be attached to the cabinets before connecting them together.
3 x	Outer cabinet connector including mounting material		The cabinet connector is attached from the outside and screwed tight from the outside. Tightening torque: 9 Nm
3 x	Inner cabinet connector including mounting material		The cabinet connector is attached using 4 screws. Tightening torque: 5 Nm

Mounting

1. Attach the sealing strip to the cabinet frames of the cabinets to be connected.
2. Push the cabinets together, they must completely come together at the front and the rear sides. The distance between the cabinets must be approximately 3 mm.
3. Mount the cabinet connectors at the outside and inside corresponding to the following drawing.
4. If necessary, reattach the protective covers and doors. The ground connections must also be attached to the doors.

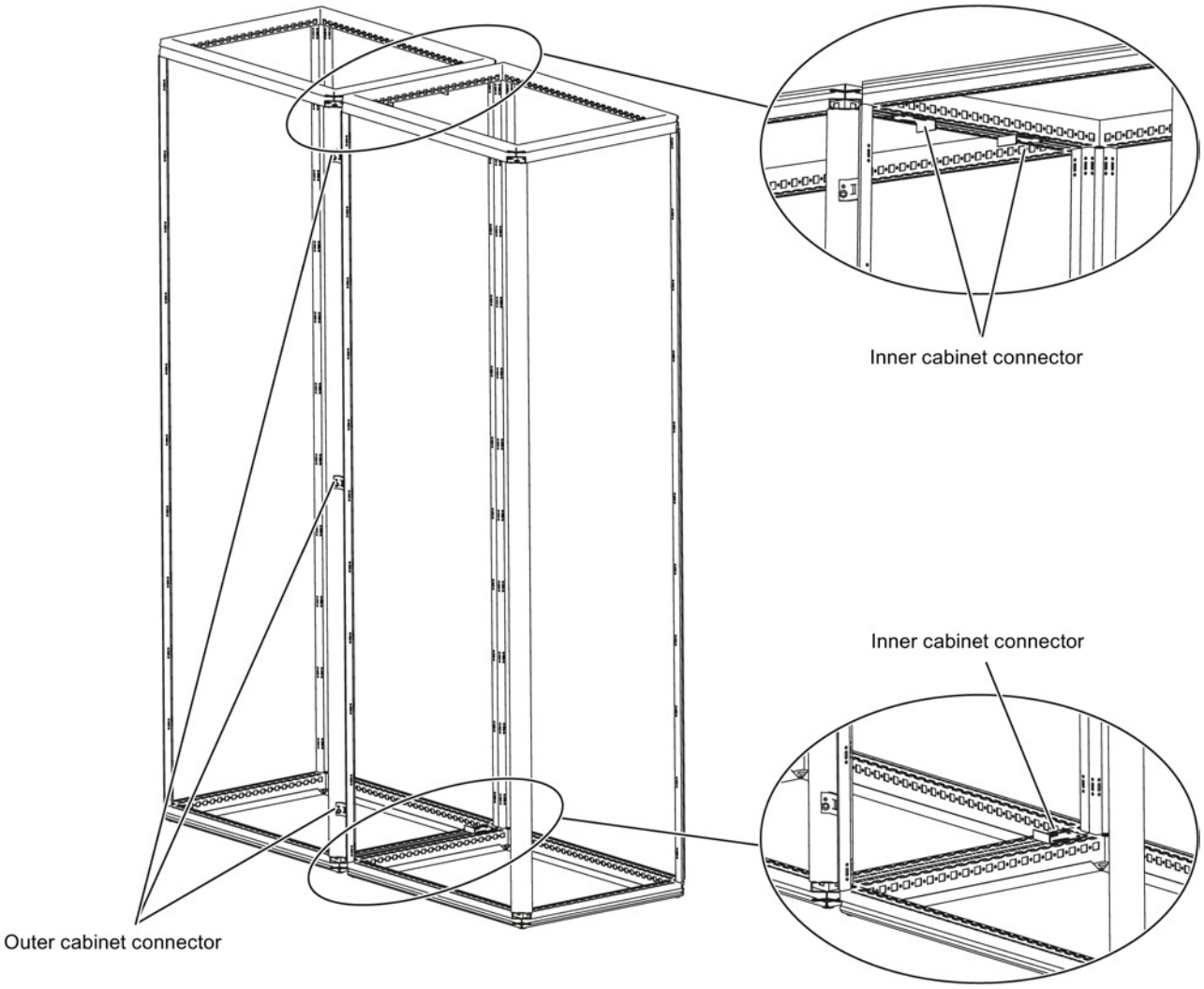


Figure 3-11 Positions of the cabinet connectors

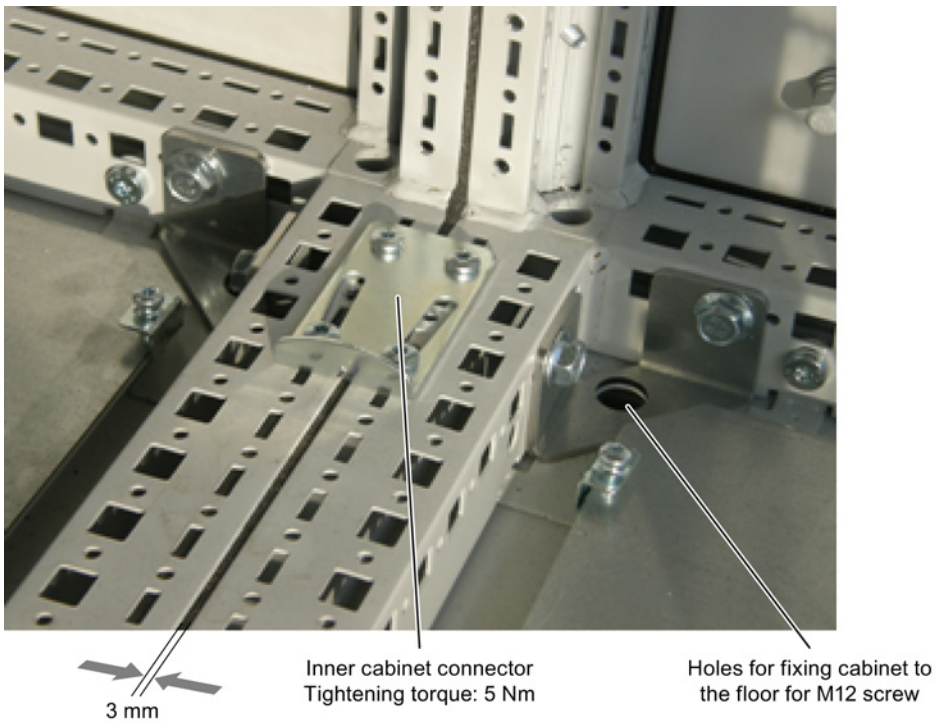


Figure 3-12 Cabinet connectors at the inside at the lower cabinet frame

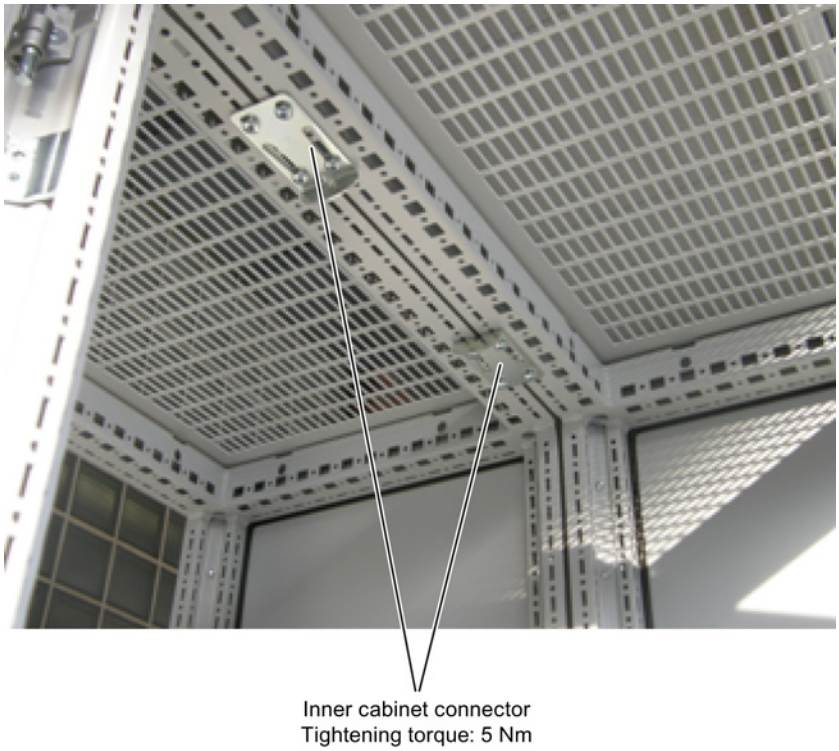


Figure 3-13 Cabinet connectors at the inside at the upper cabinet frame



Figure 3-14 Outer cabinet connector

3.3.5 Fitting additional canopies (option M21) or hoods (option M23, M43, M54)

To increase the degree of protection of the cabinets from IP20 (standard) to IP21, IP23, IP43, or IP54, additional canopies or hoods are supplied. These must be fitted once the cabinets have been installed.

Description

Degree of protection IP21

The degree of protection can be increased to IP21 by fitting an additional canopy. The canopy is mounted protruding above the cabinet on spacers, 250 mm above the top cover of the cabinet. Fitting a canopy increases the height of all cabinets by 250 mm.

Degree of protection IP23

Cabinet units with degree of protection IP23 are supplied with additional hoods, as well as plastic ventilation grilles and braided plastic in the air inlet (doors) and outlet (hoods). The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back. The hood is secured via the four crane hook holes in the cabinet. Hoods increase the height of the cabinet by 400 mm.

Degree of protection IP43

Cabinet units with degree of protection IP43 are supplied with additional hoods, as well as plastic ventilation grilles and close-meshed braided plastic in the air inlet (doors) and outlet (hoods). The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back. The hood is secured via the four crane hook holes in the cabinet. Attaching the hoods increases the height of the cabinet units by 400 mm.
Compliance with degree of protection IP43 requires an intact filter medium, which must be serviced at regular intervals depending on the prevailing ambient conditions.

Degree of protection IP54

Cabinet units with degree of protection IP54 are supplied with additional hoods, plastic ventilation grilles, and a filter medium in the air inlet (doors) and outlet (hoods). The hoods are flush with the cabinets at the side and front and have a recess at the rear so that air can escape even if the cabinet is wall mounted. Air escapes from the front and back. The hood is secured via the four crane hook holes in the cabinet. Hoods increase the height of the cabinet by 400 mm.
Compliance with degree of protection IP54 requires an intact filter medium, which must be replaced at regular intervals dependiing on the prevailing ambient conditions. Filters can be fitted and replaced from outside the cabinet relatively easily.

Note

Early mounting of the canopy or hood!

It is recommended to attach the canopy or hood at an early stage to prevent foreign matter entering the cabinet devices.

Attaching a canopy to increase the degree of protection to IP21 (option M21)

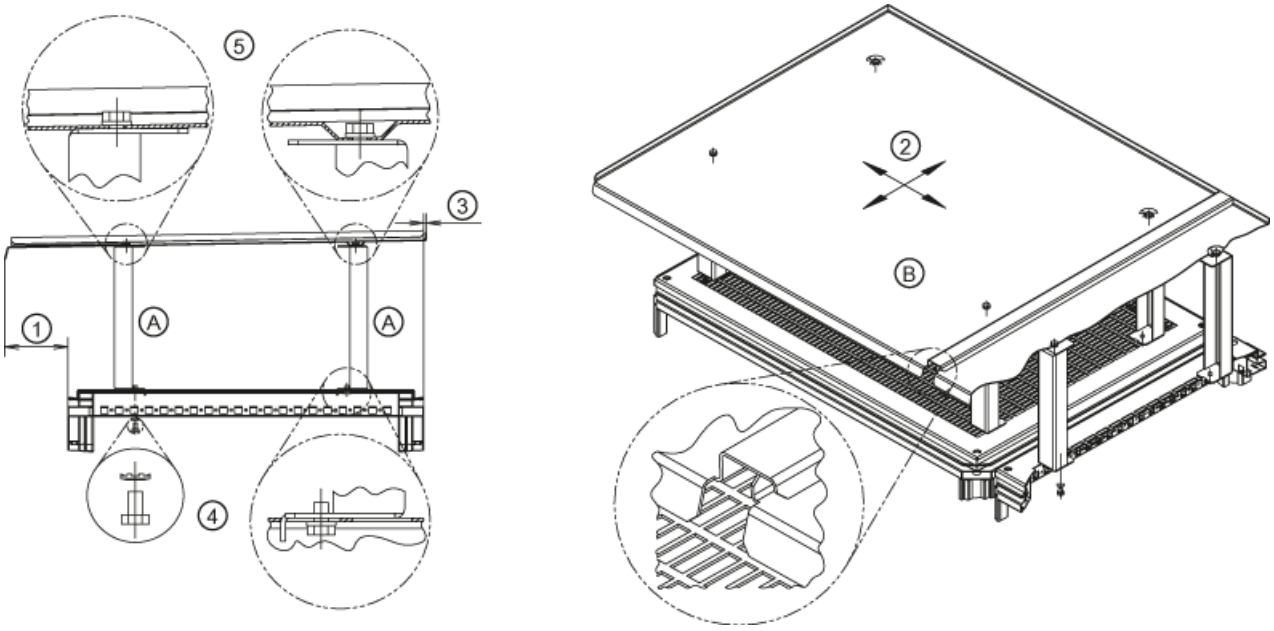


Figure 3-15 Fitting a canopy

The canopy ② can be installed variably in both directions (on the side and to the front or back) on the top of the cabinet.
The arrangement can be adapted to the various installation conditions for the cabinets. This produces an adjustable protrusion of the canopy at the front ① and rear ③.
In this way, it is possible to have a circumferential protrusion of the canopy, or direct contact with the wall or between the canopies in back-to-back installation. If necessary, the contact point with the wall or back-to-back installation must be sealed.

- Remove any existing crane transport assemblies.
- Attach the spacers (A) to the roof of the cabinet at the positions specified.
  Tighten the screws ④ with contact discs applied from the bottom through the protective guard (tightening torque: 13 Nm for M6).

Note

Mounting the protective guard

The protective guard is fastened to the cabinet unit from the top using four screws. To facilitate assembly, it may be necessary to remove the protective guard, which must be reattached on completion of assembly work.

- Install the canopy (B) on the spacers.
  Attach the screws ⑤ with the contact washers from above through the canopy (tightening torque: 13 Nm for M6).

Note

Installing the canopies with cabinets connected in series

There are overlaps on the sides of the canopies to prevent water dripping into the spaces between cabinets connected in series. When fitting the canopies, make sure these overlaps engage.

Fitting a hood to increase the degree of protection to IP23/IP43/IP54 (option M23/M43/M54)

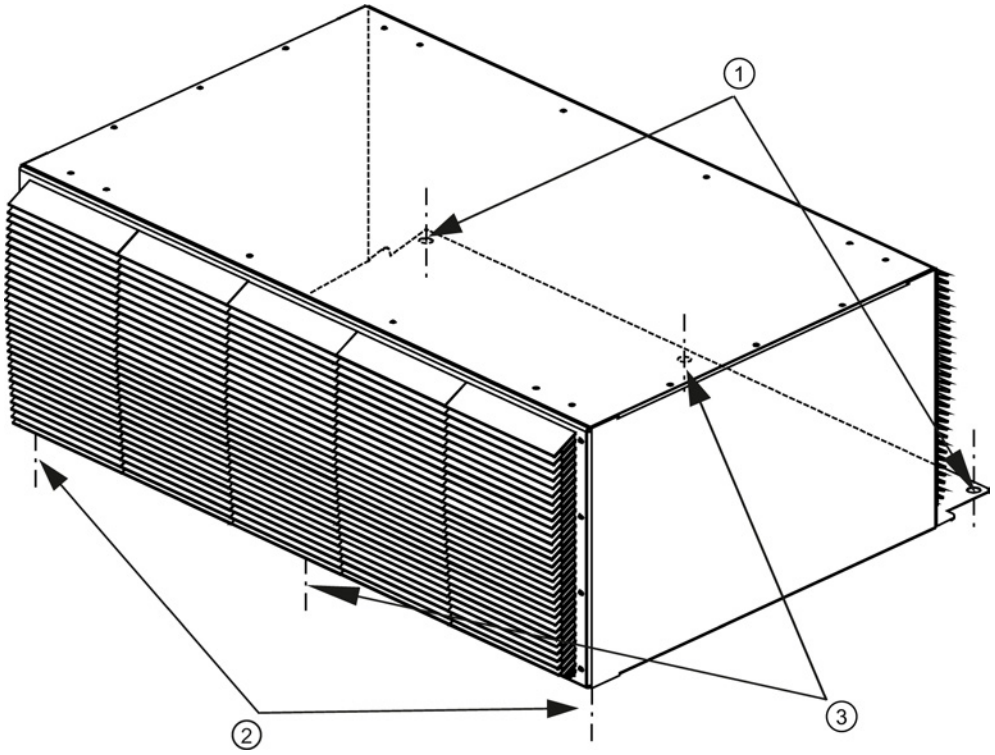


Figure 3-16 Attaching a hood

1. Remove the crane transport assembly (if fitted).
2. Make sure that a perforated top cover is not fitted on the top of the cabinet (depending on production requirements, this can be fitted at a later stage). If a top cover is installed, it must be removed.
3. Options M43 and M54 only:
   Use the sealing tape provided to attach the contact surfaces of the hood to the top of the cabinet.



Figure 3-17 Hood with attached sealing tape

4. Place the washers of the original roof screws between the cabinet upper side and the hood at the contact points of the cabinet front side. This prevents the hood from being pressed down too far when the screws are tightened and so the opening of the doors blocked.

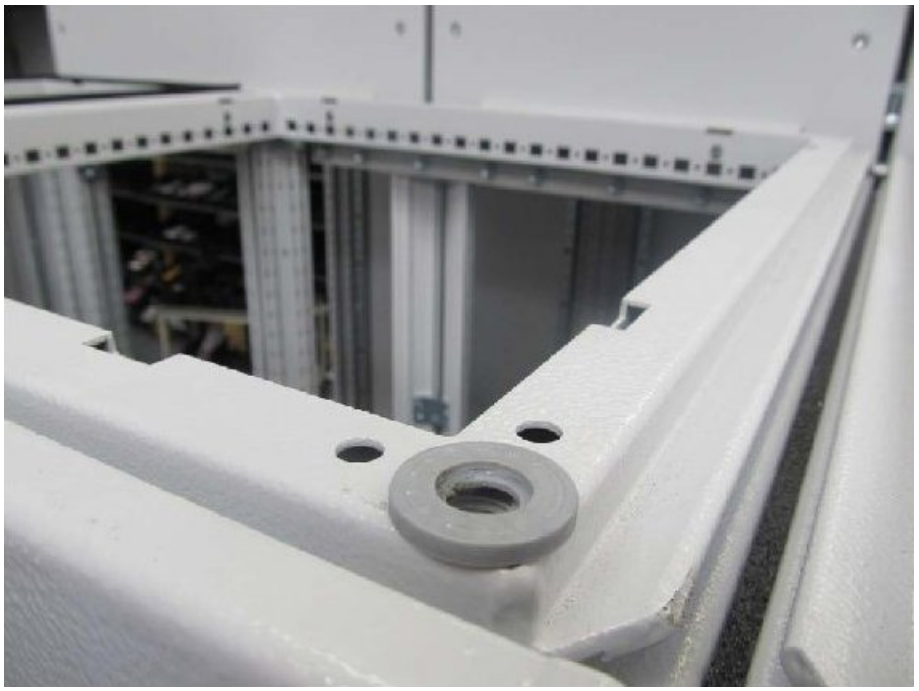


Figure 3-18 Attaching the washers

5. Attach the hood to the cabinet roof at the specified positions.
6. Attach the original M12 ① roof screws from above at the rear side.
7. Attach the M6 screws and washers at the front side (sequence: screw, spring-lock element, small washer, large washer) ② from below.
8. If the hood is very wide, insert additional screws in the center of the hood (front and rear) ③.



Figure 3-19 View with opened cabinet door



Figure 3-20 View with closed cabinet door

3.3.6 Line connection from above (option M13), motor connection from above (option M78)

Description

With options M13 and M78, the cabinet unit is equipped with an additional hood. The connection straps for the power cables, the clamping bar for mechanically securing the cables, an EMC shield bus, and a PE busbar are located within the hood.

The hood adds an extra 405 mm to the cabinet height. The busbars for connection from above are fully mounted when the system is delivered. For transport reasons, the hoods are delivered separately and must be mounted on site. With options M23, M43 and M54, plastic ventilation grilles and filter mats are also supplied.

A 5 mm aluminum mounting plate (with no holes) is fitted in the roof of the cover for feeding in the cables. Depending on the number of cables and the cross-sections used, holes for attaching cable glands for feeding in the cables must be drilled in this mounting plate on site.

Note

Connecting the control cables

The control cables and optional brake resistors are connected as before from below.

Attaching the Hood

1. Remove the crane transport assembly (if fitted).
2. Options M43 and M54 only:
   Use the sealing tape provided to attach the contact surfaces of the hood to the top of the cabinet.
3. Fit the hood to the roof of the cabinet at the positions specified (fixing points for the crane transport assembly).
4. To secure the power cables, remove the front panel of the hood.

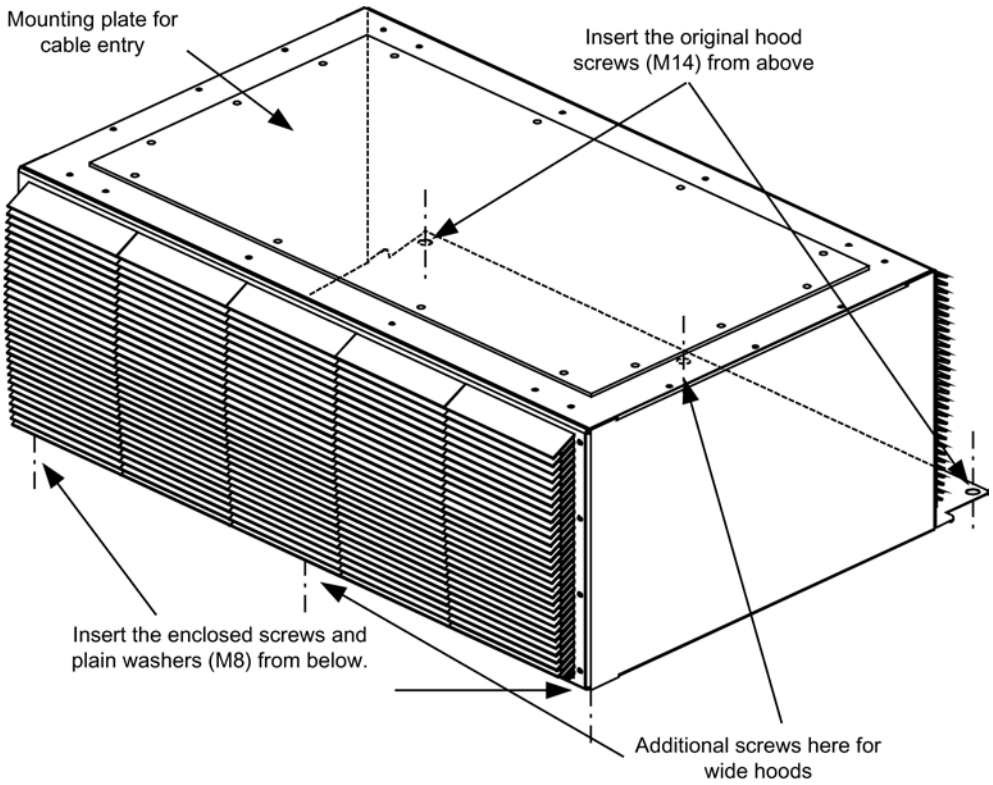


Figure 3-21 Attaching the hood with M13 / M78

Electrical installation

4

4.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Establishing the electrical connections for the cabinet unit
- Adjusting the fan voltage and the internal power supply to local conditions (supply voltage)
- The customer terminal block and its interfaces
- The interfaces for additional options

4.2 Checklist for electrical installation

Use the following checklist to guide you through the electrical installation procedure for the cabinet unit. Read the "Safety instructions" section at the start of these Operating Instructions before you start working on the device.

Note

Checking the checklist

Check the boxes accordingly in the right-hand column if the activity applies to the cabinet unit in your scope of supply. In the same way, check the boxes once you have finished the installation procedure to confirm that the activities are complete.

Item	Activity	Yes	Completed
Power connections			
1	The electrical connections of the two sub-cabinets must be established for transport units that have been shipped separately (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Electrical connection of units connected in parallel").	☐	☐
2	The line-side and motor-side power cables must be dimensioned and routed in accordance with the ambient and routing conditions. The maximum permissible cable lengths between the converter and motor must be observed depending on the type of cable used (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Connection cross-sections and cable lengths"). The correct and uniform phase sequence must be observed in both sub-cabinets when connecting cabinet units in parallel. The PE ground at the motor must be fed back directly to the cabinet unit. The cables must be properly connected to the cabinet unit terminals and tightened with a torque of 50 Nm. The cables for the motor and low-voltage switchgear must also be connected and tightened with the required torques.	☐	☐
3	For units connected in parallel, the connecting cables (-W001, -W002) for the DC links on the two sub-cabinets must be closed (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Connection of DC-link connectors").	☐	☐
4	The cables between the low-voltage switchgear and the cabinet unit must be protected with line fuses to provide adequate conductor protection (DIN VDE 100, Part 430 and/or IEC 60364-4-43). With version C, combined fuses must be used for conductor and semi-conductor protection (EN 60269-4). See "Technical data" for the appropriate fuses.	☐	☐
5	For strain relief, the cables must be clamped on the cable propping bar (C-type mounting bar).	☐	☐
6	When EMC-shielded cables are used, screwed glands that connect the shield to ground with the greatest possible surface area must be provided on the motor terminal box. On the cabinet, the cables must be grounded with the clips supplied with the EMC shield bus with the greatest possible surface area (shield bus supplied with option L00 or can be ordered separately with option M70 – see "Electrical installation / EMC-compliant installation").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
7	The cable shields must be properly applied and the cabinet properly grounded at the appropriate points (see "Electrical installation / EMC-compliant installation").		☐	☐
8	The voltage of the fan transformer (-T1-T10) must be adapted to the supply voltage for the cabinet unit. Larger cabinet units have two fan transformers (-T1 -T10/-T20), which must be set together. For units connected in parallel, the fan transformers must be set together in each sub-cabinet (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / Adjusting the fan voltage (-T1 -T10)").		☐	☐
9	A yellow warning label is attached to the basic interference suppression module at each connection clip. • The warning label must removed from the connection clip (by pulling it off) if the connection clip is to remain in the unit (operation on a grounded line supply). • The warning label must be removed together with the connection clip if the unit is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system). (See "Electrical installation/Power connections/Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on a non-grounded line supply (IT system)").		☐	☐
10	The type plate allows you to ascertain the date of manufacture. If the period from the date of manufacture to initial commissioning or the cabinet unit downtime is less than two years, the DC-link capacitors do not have to be formed. If the downtime period is longer than two years, they must be formed in accordance with the description found in the section "Maintenance and servicing / forming the DC-link capacitors".		☐	☐
11	With an external auxiliary supply, the cable for the 230 VAC supply must be connected to terminal –X40, while the cable for the 24 VDC supply must be connected to terminal –X9 (see "Electrical installation / Power connections / External supply of the auxiliary supply from a secure line").		☐	☐
12	Option L07 dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter	During commissioning, the filter must be selected via STARTER or AOP30. You are advised to check the selection by ensuring that p0230 is set to 2. The required parameters are set automatically (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07)").	☐	☐
13	Option L10 dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter	During commissioning, the filter must be selected via STARTER or AOP30. You are advised to check the selection by ensuring that p0230 is set to 2. The required parameters are set automatically (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10)").	☐	☐
14	Option L15 Sine-wave filter	During commissioning, the filter must be selected via STARTER or AOP30. You are advised to check the selection by ensuring that p0230 is set to 3. The required parameters are set automatically (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/Sine-wave filter (option L15)").	☐	☐
15	Option L19 Connection for external auxiliary equipment	To supply auxiliary equipment (e.g. separately-driven fan for motor), the drive must be properly connected to terminals -X155:1 (L1) to -X155:3 (L3). The supply voltage of the auxiliary equipment must match the input voltage of the cabinet unit. The load current must not exceed 10 A and must be set at -Q155 in accordance with the load connected (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Connection for external auxiliary equipment (option L19)").	☐ Set value: _____	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
16	Option L21 Surge suppression	The monitoring of the surge arresters and the upstream fuses must be connected to terminal -X700 (see "Electrical installation / other connections / overvoltage limitation (option L21)"). Point 9 must also be observed: "Before the drive is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system), the connecting clip to the basic interference suppression module must be removed" (see "Electrical installation/Power connections/Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on non-grounded line supplies (IT systems)").	☐	☐
17	Option L26 Main circuit-breaker (incl. fuses / circuit-breakers)	In equipment with main circuit-breaker, the release current must be set to match the installation requirements (see "Electrical Installation / Other connections / Main switch incl. fuses or main circuit-breaker (option L26)").	☐	☐
18	Option L50 Cabinet lighting with service socket	The 230 V auxiliary supply for the cabinet lighting with an integrated service socket must be connected to terminal -X390 and protected with a fuse (max. 10 A) on site (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Cabinet lighting with service socket (option L50)").	☐	☐
19	Option L55 Cabinet anti-condensation heating	The 230 V auxiliary supply for the anti-condensation heating for the cabinet (230 V / 50 Hz, 100 W / or 230 V / 50 Hz 2 x 100 W for cabinets with a width of 800 ... 1200 mm) must be connected to terminals -X240: 1 to 3 and protected with fuses (max. 16 A) (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Anti-condensation heating for cabinet (option L55)").	☐	☐
20	Option K74 Auxiliary power supply, 230 VAC	The voltage of the auxiliary power supply (-T10) must be adapted to the supply voltage of the cabinet unit (see "Electrical installation/additional connections/auxiliary power supply, 230 VAC (option K74)").	☐	☐
Signal connections				
20	Cabinet unit operation by higher-level controller / control room. The control cables must be connected in accordance with the interface assignment and the shield applied. Taking into account electrical interference and the distance from power cables, the digital and analog signals must be routed with separate cables.		☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
21	Option G60 TM31 customer terminal block	The TM31 Terminal Module extends the customer terminals. This provides the following additional interfaces: • 8 digital inputs • 4 bidirectional digital inputs/outputs • 2 relay outputs with changeover contact • 2 analog inputs • 2 analog outputs • 1 temperature sensor input (KTY84-130/PTC) Integration of the interfaces takes place via pre-interconnections prepared in the factory, which can be selected during commissioning. When the analog inputs on the TM31 are used as current or voltage inputs, selectors S5.0 and S5.1 must be set accordingly (see "Electrical installation / Signal connections / Customer terminal module (-A60)").	☐	☐
22	Option K50 SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted	The SMC30 Sensor Module determines the actual motor speed. In conjunction with SINAMICS G150, the following encoders are supported by the SMC30 Sensor Module: • TTL encoder • HTL encoder The motor temperature can also be detected using KTY84-130 or PTC thermistors. In the factory setting, an HTL encoder is bipolar with 1024 pulses per revolution (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50)").	☐	☐
23	Option K52 Additional SMC30 Sensor Module	For reliable actual value acquisition when using the Safety Integrated Extended Functions, the additional SMC30 Sensor Module is used (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52)").	☐	☐
Connecting protection and monitoring devices				
24	Option G51 TM150 Temperature Sensor Module	The TM150 Terminal Module can be connected to a maximum of 12 temperature sensors (PT100, PT1000, KTY84, PTC, bimetallic NC contact) (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/TM150 Temperature Module (option G51)").	☐	☐
25	Option L45 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door	The contacts for the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton are available at terminal -X120 and can be picked off so that they can be integrated in an on-site higher-level protection concept (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton, integrated in the door of the cabinet unit (option L45)").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
26	Option L57 EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 VAC or 24 VDC	EMERGENCY OFF category 0 stops the drive in an uncontrolled manner. No additional wiring is necessary when implemented in conjunction with option L45. If the cabinet unit is integrated in an external safety circuit, however, the contact must be looped in via terminal block -X120 (see "Electrical installation/Other connections/EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 VAC / 24 VDC (option L57)").	☐	☐
27	Option L59 EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 230 VAC	EMERGENCY STOP category 1 stops the drive in a controlled manner. It may be necessary to use braking units because of the load characteristic and the required shutdown times. No additional wiring is necessary when implemented in conjunction with option L45. If the cabinet unit is integrated in an external safety circuit, however, the contact must be looped in via terminal block –X120. The timer relay at -K121 must be adapted to match system requirements (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 230 VAC (option L59)").	☐	☐
28	Option L60 EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 24 VDC	EMERGENCY STOP category 1 stops the drive in a controlled manner. It may be necessary to use braking units because of the load characteristic and the required shutdown times. No additional wiring is necessary when implemented in conjunction with option L45. If the cabinet unit is integrated in an external safety circuit, however, the contact must be looped in via terminal block -X120. The timer relay at -K120 must be adapted to match system requirements (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / EMERGENCY STOP category 1, 24 VDC (option L60)").	☐	☐
29	Option L61/L62 Braking unit 25 kW/125 kW 50 kW/250 kW	The connecting cables and ground for the braking resistor must be connected to terminal block –X5: 1/2. The braking resistor thermostatic switch and customer terminal block –A60 or the Control Unit must be connected. When commissioning via AOP30, the settings for evaluating "external fault 3" must be made. The settings for evaluating the thermostatic switch as "external fault 2" must be made (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Braking unit 25 kW / 125 kW (option L61); braking unit 50 kW / 250 kW (option L62)").	☐	☐
30	Option L83 Thermistor motor protection device (alarm)	The PTC thermistor sensors (PTC resistor type A) must be connected to the thermistor motor protection unit -F127 at terminals T1 and T2 for alarms (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Thermistor motor protection device (option L83/L84)").	☐	☐
31	Option L84 Thermistor motor protection device (shutdown)	The PTC thermistor sensors (PTC resistor type A) must be connected to the thermistor motor protection unit -F125 at terminals T1 and T2 for shutdown (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Thermistor motor protection device (option L83/L84)").	☐	☐

Item	Activity		Yes	Completed
32	Option L86 PT100 evaluation unit	The resistor thermometers must be connected to evaluation units -B140, -B141 for the PT100 evaluation. A two-wire or three-wire system can be used here to connect the PT100 sensors. The sensors are divided into two groups (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / PT100 evaluation unit (option L86)"). This must be taken into account for the evaluation (factory setting).	☐	☐
33	Option L87 Insulation monitoring	The insulation monitor can only be operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system). Only one insulation monitor can be used in an electrically-connected network. For in-plant control, the signaling relays must be connected accordingly or, with individual drives (the cabinet unit is fed via a converter transformer assigned to the cabinet unit), integrated in the cabinet unit alarm chain (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Insulation monitoring (option L87)"). Point 9 must also be observed: "Before the drive is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system), the connecting clip to the basic interference suppression module must be removed" (see "Electrical installation/Power connections/Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on ungrounded line supplies (IT systems)").	☐	☐
Safety Integrated				
34	Option K01 Safety license for 1 axis	A license is required for each axis with safety functions in the case of Safety Integrated Extended Functions. With Option K01, the safety license for 1 axis is contained in and activated on the compact flash card (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Safety license for 1 axis (option K01)").	☐	☐
35	Option K82 "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" safety functions	The terminal block -X41 must be connected on site, the safety functions must be activated prior to use via parameter assignment, in addition an acceptance test must be performed and an acceptance report must be drawn up (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / Terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1" (option K82)").	☐	☐
36	Option K87 TM54F Terminal Module	The terminal blocks of TM54F Terminal Module must be connected line-side; the Safety Integrated Extended Functions must be activated prior to use via parameter assignment; in addition an acceptance test must be performed and an acceptance report must be drawn up (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / TM54F Terminal Module (option K87)").	☐	☐
37	Option K88 Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC	To control the brake, a connection must be established between -X14 on the Safe Brake Adapter and the holding brake (see "Electrical installation / Other connections / SBA Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC (option K88)").	☐	☐

Required tools

To install the connections, you will require:

- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench up to 50 Nm
- Screwdriver, size 2
- Screwdriver Torx T20
- T25 torx screwdriver
- Screwdriver Torx T30

4.3 Important safety precautions

⚠WARNING

Danger to life if the general safety instructions and remaining risks are not carefully observed

If the general safety instructions and remaining risks are not observed, accidents can occur involving severe injuries or death.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- When assessing the risk, take into account residual risks.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock when using unsuitable fuses

If unsuitable fuses are used, an electric shock can cause severe injury or death.

- Use only fuses recommended in the technical data.
- Observe the necessary minimum short circuit current for the relevant fuse.



⚠DANGER

Danger to life through electric shock due to the residual charge of the DC-link capacitors

Because of the DC-link capacitors, a hazardous voltage is still present for a period of time after the power supply has been switched off.

Contact with live parts can result in death or serious injury.

- Open the unit only after the time specified on the warning label has elapsed.
- Before starting work, check the absence of voltage by measuring all poles/phases, also to ground.

NOTICE

Material damage resulting from switching on the device without forming the DC-link capacitors

After a storage time exceeding two years, switching on the device without forming the DC-link capacitors can damage it.

- Before switching on the device, it should be formed after a storage time exceeding two years, see "Maintenance and servicing".

Note

Touch protection

When the cabinet door is opened, cabinet units have touch protection according to BGV A3 and EN 50274.

For versions that are equipped with option M60, additional protective covers are fitted. When the cabinet door is open, these provide increased protection against touching live components.

These protective covers may need to be removed during installation and connection procedures. Once work has been completed, the protective covers must be properly refitted.

4.4 Introduction to EMC

What is meant by EMC?

Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) describes the capability of an electrical device to function satisfactorily in an electromagnetic environment without itself causing interference unacceptable for other devices in the environment.

EMC therefore represents a quality feature for the

- Internal noise immunity: Resistance to internal electrical disturbances
- External noise immunity: resistance against external electromagnetic disturbances
- Noise emission level: environmental effects caused by electromagnetic emissions

To ensure that the cabinet unit functions satisfactorily in the system, the environment subject to interference must not be neglected. For this reason, special requirements exist regarding the structure and the EMC of the system.

Operational reliability and noise immunity

In order to achieve the greatest possible operational reliability and immunity to noise of a complete system (converter, automation, drive machines etc.), measures must be taken by the converter manufacturer and the user. Only when all these measures are fulfilled can the faultless functioning of the converter be guaranteed and the specified legal requirements (2004/108/EC) be met.

Noise emissions

Product standard EN 61800–3 outlines the EMC requirements for variable-speed drive systems. It specifies requirements for converters with operating voltages of less than 1000 V. Different environments and categories are defined depending on where the drive system is installed.

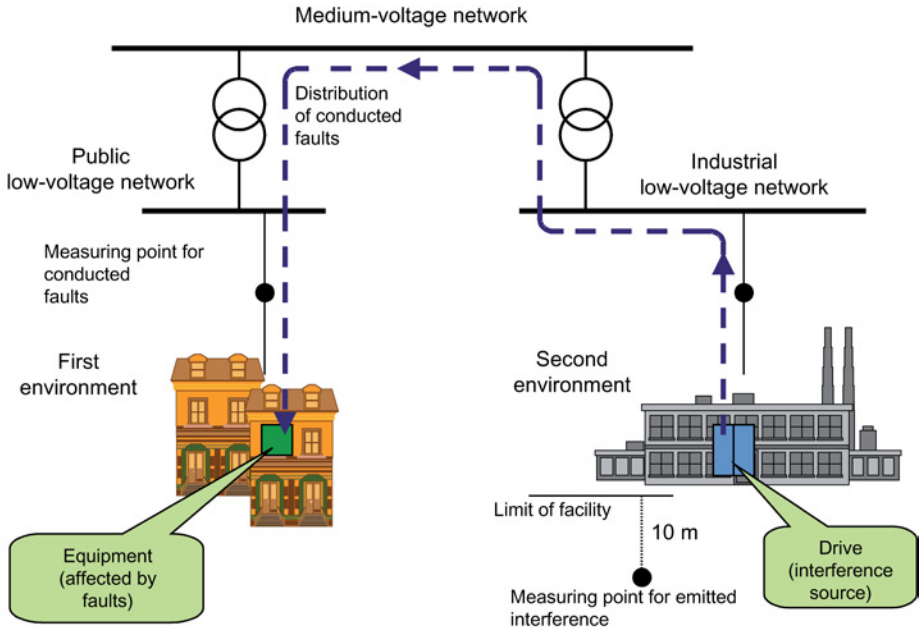


Figure 4-1 Definition of the first and second environments

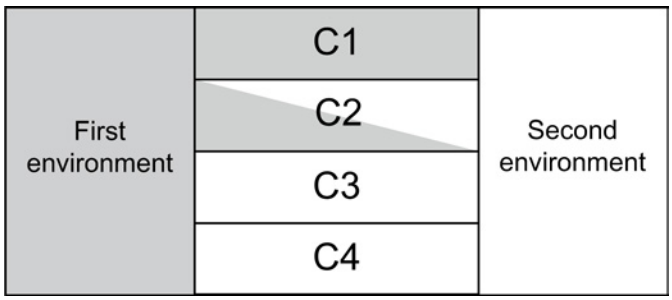


Figure 4-2 Definition of categories C1 to C4

Table 4- 1 Definition of the first and second environments

Definition of the first and second environments	
First environment	Residential buildings or locations at which the drive system is connected to a public low-voltage supply network without a transformer.
Second environment	Industrial locations supplied by a medium-voltage network via a separate transformer.

Table 4- 2 Definition of categories C1 ... C4

Definition of categories C1 ... C4	
Category C1	Rated voltage <1000 V; unrestricted use in the first environment.
Category C2	Rated voltage for stationary drive systems <1000 V; for use in the second environment. For use in the first environment only when sold and installed by skilled personnel.
Category C3	Rated voltage <1000 V; use in the second environment only.
Category C4	Rated voltage ≥1000 V or for rated currents ≥ 400 A in complex systems in the second environment.

4.5 EMC compliant design

The following section provides some basic information and guidelines that will help you comply with the EMC and CE guidelines.

Cabinet assembly

- Connect painted or anodized metal components using toothed self-locking screws or remove the insulating layer.
- Use unpainted, de-oiled mounting plates.
- Establish a central connection between ground and the protective conductor system (ground).

Shield gaps

- Bridge shield gaps (at terminals, circuit breakers, contactors, and so on) with minimum impedance and the greatest possible surface area.

Using large cross-sections

- Use underground and grounding cables with large cross-sections or, better still, with litz wires or flexible cables.

Laying the motor supply cable separately

- The distance between the motor cable and signal cable should be > 20 cm. Do not lay signal cables and motor cables in parallel to each other.

Laying the equipotential bonding cable

- It is recommended to lay the equipotential bonding cable parallel to the control lines with a minimum cross-section of 16 mm^2.

Use anti-interference elements

- If relays, contactors, and inductive or capacitive loads are connected, the switching relays or contactors must be provided with anti-interference elements.

Cable installation

- Cables that are subject to or sensitive to interference should be laid as far apart from each other as possible.
- All cables are to be laid as close as possible to grounded enclosure parts such as mounting plates or cabinet frames. This reduces both noise radiation and interference injection.
- Reserve cores of signal and data cables must be grounded at both ends to achieve an additional shielding effect.

- Long cables should be shortened or laid in noise resistant areas to avoid additional connecting points.
- If it is impossible to avoid crossing cables, conductors or cables that carry signals of different classes must cross at right angles, especially if they carry sensitive signals that are subject to interference.
  - Class 1:
    unshielded cables for ≤ 60 V DC
    unshielded cables for ≤ 25 V AC
    shielded analog signal cables
    shielded bus and data cables
    operator panel interfaces, incremental/absolute encoder lines
  - Class 2:
    unshielded cables for > 60 VDC and ≤ 230 VDC
    unshielded cables for > 25 VAC and ≤ 230 VAC
  - Class 3:
    unshielded cables for > 230 VAC/VDC and ≤ 1000 VAC/VDC

Shield connection

- Shields must not be used to conduct electricity. In other words, they must not simultaneously act as neutral or PE conductors.
- Apply the shield so that it covers the greatest possible surface area. You can use ground clamps, ground terminals, or ground screw connections.
- Avoid extending the shield to the grounding point using a wire (pigtail) because this will reduce the effectiveness of the shield by up to 90%.
- Attach the shield to a shield bar directly after the line inlet into the cabinet. Insulate the entire shielded cable and route the shield up to the device connection, but do not connect it again.

I/O interfacing

- Create a low-impedance ground connection for additional cabinets, system components, and distributed devices with the largest possible cross-section (at least 16 mm²).
- Ground unused lines at one end in the cabinet.
- Select the highest possible distance between the power and signal cables, with a minimum of 20 cm at the very least. The greater the distance over which the cables are routed in parallel, the greater the clearance must be. If a sufficient clearance cannot be maintained, you must install additional shields.
- Avoid unnecessarily long cable loops.

Filtering cables

- Line supply cables and power supply cables for devices and modules may have to be filtered in the cabinet to reduce incoming or outgoing disturbances.
- To reduce emissions, the device is equipped with a radio interference suppression filter as standard (in accordance with the limit values defined in category C3). Optional filters can be fitted for use in the first environment (category C2).

Protective ground conductors

- According to EN 61800-5-1, Section. 6.3.6.7, the minimum cross-section of the protective ground conductor must conform to the local safety regulations for protective ground conductors for equipment with a high leakage current.

4.6 Electrical connection of units that are connected in parallel

Description

After the mechanical installation has been completed, the following electrical connections must be established between the right-hand and left-hand sub-cabinets for units connected in parallel:

- Connecting the PE busbars
- Connecting the DC link connections
- The 24 V DC, 230 V AC power supply and signal cables must be connected
- The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected



⚠WARNING

Danger to life from live parts and components for devices connected in parallel

Touching live components of sub-cabinets associated with devices connected in parallel can result in death or severe injury.

- When connecting, installing and repairing, electrically disconnect both partial cabinets from the line supply.

4.6.1 Connecting the PE busbars

A connector jumper is provided loose to connect the PE buses of the two sub-cabinets.

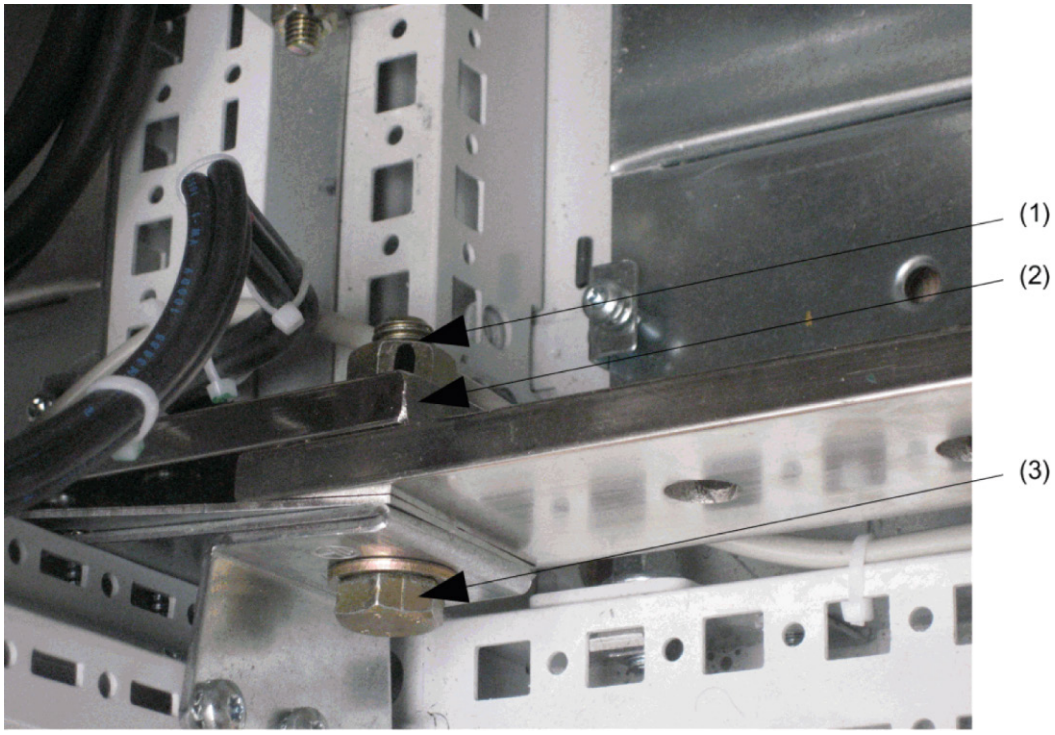


Figure 4-3 Connecting the PE busbars

Establishing the connection

1. At the right-hand side of the left sub-cabinet, release 1 x M12 nut of the PE busbar.
2. Remove the nut, washer ① and screw ③.
3. At the left-hand side of the right sub-cabinet, release 1 x M12 nut of the PE busbar.
4. Remove the nut, washer and screw.
5. Locate the connection clip ② at the rear of the PE busbars of the sub-cabinets to be connected.
6. Insert the bolts from the front into the grounding lugs of the PE buses.
7. Reattach the washers and nuts.
8. Tighten the nuts (tightening torque: 50 Nm).

4.6.2 Establishing the DC link connections

Connecting the DC-link connections

The DC-link connection of the two sub-cabinets must be made using preassembled cables; these must be connected from the right-hand sub-cabinet (+H.A25/50) to the left-hand sub-cabinet (+H.A49).

The following connecting cables must be connected:

- Cable number -W001:
  Connection from the DCPS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A25/50 to the DCPS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A49.
- Cable number -W002:
  Connection from the DCNS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A25/50 to the DCNS connection at Power Module -T1 in sub-cabinet +H.A49.

Brackets to connect connecting cables are provided at the DCPS and DCNS connections in sub-cabinet +H.A49. The cables must be connected at the top of the brackets. When routing cables it must be ensured that sufficient voltage clearances are always maintained.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life through electric shock caused by interchanging or short-circuiting device connections

Interchanging or short-circuiting the DC-link connections will damage the device that can cause death or severe injuries.

- Ensure that the DCPS / DCNS connections in the right-hand sub-cabinet are correctly connected with the DCPS / DCNS connections in the left-hand sub-cabinet.

⚠WARNING

Risk of fire due to ground fault/short-circuit

Inadequate installation of the DC-link connections between the two sub-cabinets can result in a ground fault/short-circuit and endanger persons as a result of the associated smoke and fire.

- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.
- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- In addition, apply one of the following measures:
  – Use cables with double insulation.
  – Maintain adequate clearance, e.g. by using spacers.
  – Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

4.6.3 Connecting the power supply and the signal cables

Connecting the power supply and the signal cables

The connecting cables for 24 V DC and 230 V AC to supply the left-hand sub-cabinet with power and for the signal cables must be connected. Depending on the installed options, this will involve up to 3 connecting cables that must be connected from the right-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet panel +H.A25) to the lower connector sections in the left-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet panel +H.A24):

1. Connecting cable with the connector designation –X97 in the lower connector section –X97.
2. Connecting cable with the connector designation –X98 in the lower connector section –X98.
3. Connecting cable with the connector designation –X99 in the lower connector section –X99.

The cables must be routed so that the connecting cables are not disturbed by interference from the power cables.
To achieve this, the cables should be routed along the PE busbar in cabinet panel +H.A49 and then along the cabinet frame up to the respective connection points.

4.6.4 The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected

The DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected

The DRIVE-CLiQ connection from the Control Unit (cabinet field +H.A25) to the Power Module in the left-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet field +H.A49) must be established.

The DRIVE-CLiQ cable (cable number –W003) is inserted in the factory in the DRIVE-CLiQ socket –X100 of the Control Unit (in cabinet panel +H.A25), and must be inserted in the DRIVE-CLiQ socket –X400 of the Power Module in the left-hand sub-cabinet (cabinet panel +H.A49). The cables must be routed so that the DRIVE-CLiQ connection is not disturbed by interference from the power cables.
To achieve this, the cables should be routed along the PE busbar in cabinet panel +H.A49 and then along the cabinet frame up to the DRIVE-CLiQ socket -X400.

4.7 Power connections

⚠WARNING

Danger to life through electric shock caused by interchanging or short-circuiting device connections

Interchanging the line connections and motor connections or short-circuiting the DC-link connections will damage the device that can cause death or severe injuries.

- Do not interchange input and output terminals of the device.
- Do not interchange or short-circuit the DC-link terminals.

Note

Ground-fault circuit interrupter

The device must not be operated via a ground-fault circuit interrupter (EN 61800-5-1).

4.7.1 Cable lugs

Cable lugs

The cable connections on the devices are designed for cable lugs according to DIN 46234 or DIN 46235.

For connection of alternative cable lugs, the maximum dimensions are listed in the table below.
These cable lugs are not to exceed these dimensions, as mechanical fastening and adherence to the voltage distances is not guaranteed otherwise.

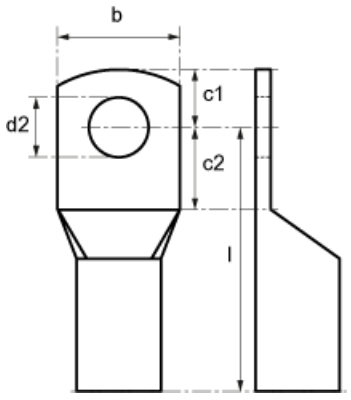


Figure 4-4 Dimensions of the cable lugs

Table 4- 3 Dimensions of the cable lugs

Screw / bolts	Connection cross-section [mm²]	d2 [mm]	b [mm]	l [mm]	c1 [mm]	c2 [mm]
M8	70	8.4	24	55	13	10
M10	185	10.5	37	82	15	12
M10	240	13	42	92	16	13
M12	95	13	28	65	16	13
M12	185	13	37	82	16	13
M12	240	13	42	92	16	13
M16	240	17	42	92	19	16

4.7.2 Connection cross-sections, cable lengths

Connection cross-sections

The connection cross-sections for the line connection, motor connection, and ground connection for your device are specified in the tables provided in the "Technical specifications" section.

Cable lengths

The maximum permissible cable lengths are specified for standard cable types or cable types recommended by SIEMENS. Longer cables can only be used after consultation.

The listed cable length represents the actual distance between the converter and the motor, taking account factors such as parallel laying, current-carrying capacity, and the laying factor.

- Unshielded cable (e.g. Protodur NYY): max. 450 m
- Shielded cable (e.g., Protodur NYCWY, Protoflex EMV 3 Plus): max. 300 m.

Note

Cable lengths

The cable lengths specified are also valid if a motor choke is in use (option L08).

Note

Shielded cables

The PROTOFLEX-EMV-3 PLUS shielded cable recommended by Siemens is the protective conductor and comprises three symmetrically-arranged protective conductors. The individual protective conductors must each be provided with cable eyes and be connected to ground. The cable also has a concentric flexible braided copper shield. To comply with EN 61800-3 regarding radio interference suppression, the shield must be grounded at both ends with the greatest possible surface area.

On the motor side, cable glands that contact the shield with the greatest possible surface area are recommended for the terminal boxes.

Minimum cable lengths for motor connection to a motor with one-winding system for units connected in parallel

For units connected in parallel for connection to a motor with one-winding system, the following minimum cable lengths must be adhered to, if a motor reactor (option L08) is not being used. It must also be ensured that the individual cables have the same length.

Table 4- 4 Minimum cable lengths

Order number	Unit rating [kW]	Minimum cable length [m]
3 AC 380 ... 480 V		
6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx	630	13
6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx	710	10
6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx	900	9
3 AC 500 ... 600 V		
6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx	630	18
6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx	710	15
6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx	1000	13
3 AC 660 ... 690 V		
6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx	1000	20
6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx	1350	18
6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx	1500	15

4.7.3 Connecting the motor and power cables

Connecting the motor and power cables on the cabinet unit

Note

Position of the connections

For the location of the connections, see the layout diagrams.

1. Open the cabinet, remove the covers (if necessary) in front of the connection panel for motor cables (terminals U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3; X2) and power cables (terminals U1/L1, V1/L2, W1/L3; X1).
2. Move or remove the bottom plate below the connection panel through which the motor cables are fed.
3. Screw the protective earth (PE) into the appropriate terminal (with earth symbol) (50 Nm for M12) at the points provided in the cabinet.

   Note

   Connection sequence for version C

   With version C, connect the power cables first and then the motor cables.

4. Connect the motor cables to the connections.
   Make sure that you connect the conductors in the correct sequence: U2/T1, V2/T2, W2/T3 and U1/L1, V1/L2, W1/L3!

NOTICE

Material damage due to loose power connections

Insufficient tightening torques or vibration can result in faulty electrical connections. This can result in damage due to fire or malfunctions.

- Tighten all power connections with the specified tightening torques, e.g. line supply connection, motor connection, DC link connections.
- Regularly check all power connections by retightening them with the specified tightening torque. This applies in particular after transport.

Note

PE connection of the motor

The PE connection on the motor must be guided back directly to the cabinet unit and connected there.

Direction of motor rotation

EN 60034-7 defines the two ends of an electric motor as follows:

- DE (Drive End): usually the drive end of the motor
- NDE (Non-Drive End): usually the non-drive end of the motor

An electric motor will rotate clockwise if the shaft is turning clockwise when looking at the DE side.

For electric motors with 2 shaft ends, the direction of rotation must be determined based on the shaft end specified as the drive end.

For clockwise rotation, the electric motor must be connected according to the following table.

Table 4- 5 Cabinet unit and motor connection terminals

Cabinet unit (connection terminals)	Motor (connection terminals)
U2/T1	U
V2/T2	V
W2/T3	W

In contrast to the connection for the clockwise phase sequence, two phases have to be reversed with a counter-clockwise phase sequence (looking at the drive shaft).

Note

Information on the phase sequence

If an incorrect phase sequence was connected when the motor was connected, p1821 (phase sequence direction reversal) can be used to correct the incorrect phase sequence without physically changing it over (see "Functions, monitoring and protective functions/direction reversal").

The correct phase sequence must be observed in both sub-cabinets when connecting cabinet units in parallel, since it is not possible to use converter functions to correct different connection sequences in the two sub-cabinets at a later stage.

With motors that can be star-connected or delta-connected, it must be ensured that the windings are interconnected consistent with the operating voltage indicated on the rating plate or in the motor documentation. Make sure that the winding insulation of the connected motor has sufficient insulation strength to meet the requirements for converter operation.

4.7.4 Adjusting the fan voltage (-T1-T10)

The power supply for the device fan (230 V 1 AC) in the Power Module (-T1 -T10) is drawn from the line supply system through a transformer.
The location of the transformer is indicated in the layout diagrams supplied.
The transformer is fitted with primary taps so that it can be fine-tuned to the line voltage.

If necessary, the connection fitted in the factory, shown with a dashed line, must be reconnected to the actual line voltage.

Note

Cabinet units with two transformers

Two transformers (-T1, -T10, and -T20) are installed in the following cabinet units. The two primary terminals on these devices must be set together.

- for 3 AC 380 ... 480 V: 6SL3710-1GE41-0_Ax
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC: 6SL3710-1GF37-4_Ax, 6SL3710-1GF38-1_Ax
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC: 6SL3710-1GH37-4_Ax, 6SL3710-1GH38-1_Ax

Note

Units connected in parallel

For units connected in parallel, the setting terminals must be set jointly in both sub-cabinets:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

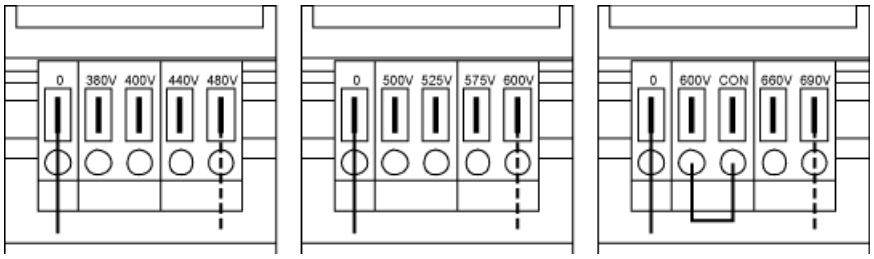


Figure 4-5 Setting terminals for the fan transformer
(380 to 480 V 3 AC / 500 to 600 V 3 AC / 660 to 690 V 3 AC)

The line voltage assignments for making the appropriate setting on the fan transformer are indicated in the following tables.

Note

Fan transformer for 660 to 690 V 3 AC

With the 660 V to 690 V 3 AC fan transformer, a jumper is inserted between the "600 V" terminal and "CON" terminal. The "600V" and "CON" terminals are for internal use.

⚠WARNING

Danger of fire due to overheating resulting from insufficient device fan voltage

If the terminals are not reconnected to correspond with the actual line voltage, overheating and risks to personnel due to smoke and fire may result.
This can also cause the fan fuses to rupture due to overload.

- Set the terminals in accordance with the actual line voltage.

Note

Order numbers for fan fuses

The order numbers for fan fuses that have blown can be found in the spare parts list.

Table 4- 6 Line voltage assignment for the setting at the fan transformer (380 ... 480 V 3 AC)

Line voltage	Taps of the fan transformer (-T1 -T10)
380 V ± 10%	380 V
400 V ± 10%	400 V
440 V ± 10%	440 V
480 V ± 10%	480 V

Table 4- 7 Line voltage assignment for the setting at the fan transformer (500 ... 600 V 3 AC)

Line voltage	Taps of the fan transformer (-T1 -T10)
500 V ± 10%	500 V
525 V ± 10%	525 V
575 V ± 10%	575 V
600 V ± 10%	600 V

Table 4- 8 Line voltage assignment for the setting at the fan transformer (660 ... 690 V 3 AC)

Line voltage	Taps of the fan transformer (-T1 -T10)
660 V ± 10%	660 V
690 V ± 10%	690 V

4.7.5 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)

If the cabinet unit is operated on an ungrounded line supply (IT system), the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module of the converter (-T1) must be removed.

Note

Warning label on the connection clip

A yellow warning label is attached to each connection clip so that it is easier to find.

- The warning label must removed from the connection clip (by pulling it off) if the connection clip is to remain in the unit (operation on a grounded line supply).
- The warning label must be removed together with the connection clip if the unit is operated on a non-grounded line supply (IT system).



Figure 4-6 Warning label on the connection clip

NOTICE

Damage to the device through not removing the connection clip with a non-grounded line supply

Failure to remove the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module on a non-grounded line supply (IT system) can cause significant damage to the device.

- With a non-grounded line supply (IT system), remove the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module.

Note

Connection bracket in units connected in parallel

For units connected in parallel, the connection bracket must be removed in both sub-cabinets:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

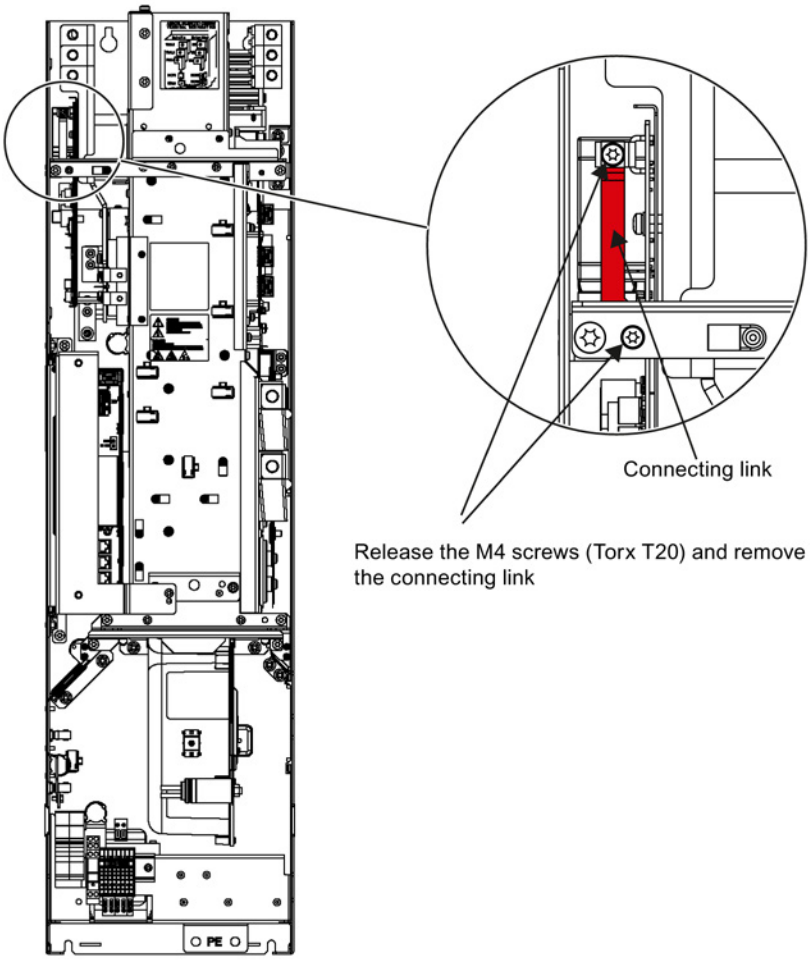


Figure 4-7 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size FX

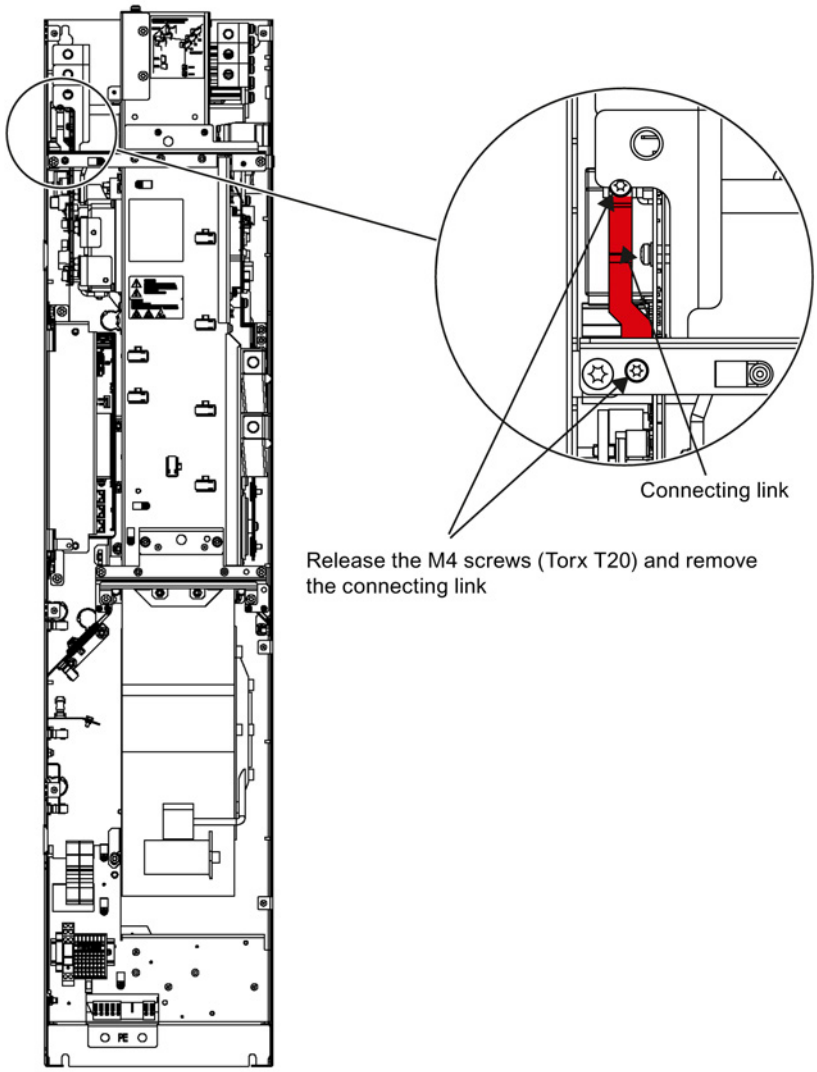


Figure 4-8 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size GX

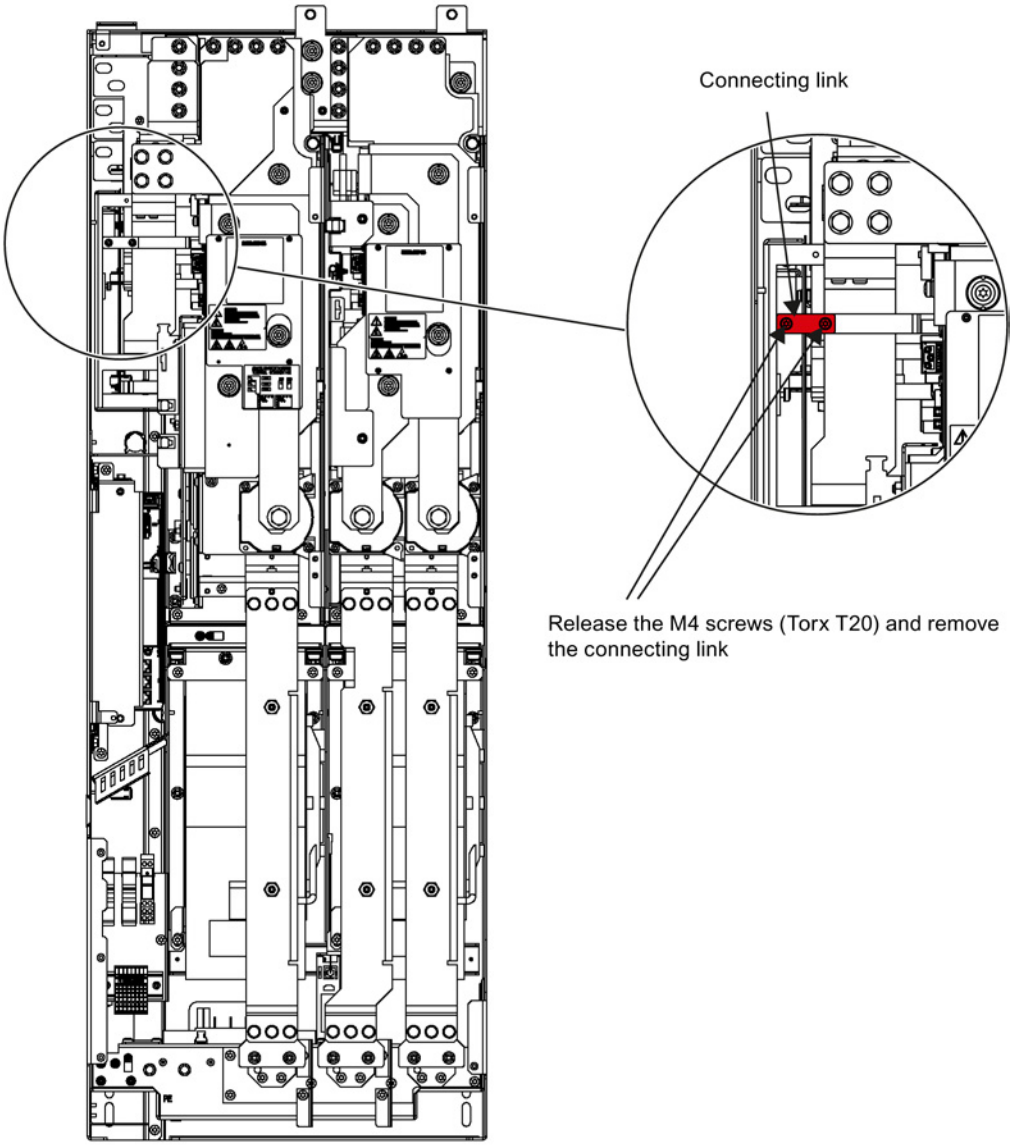


Figure 4-9 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size HX

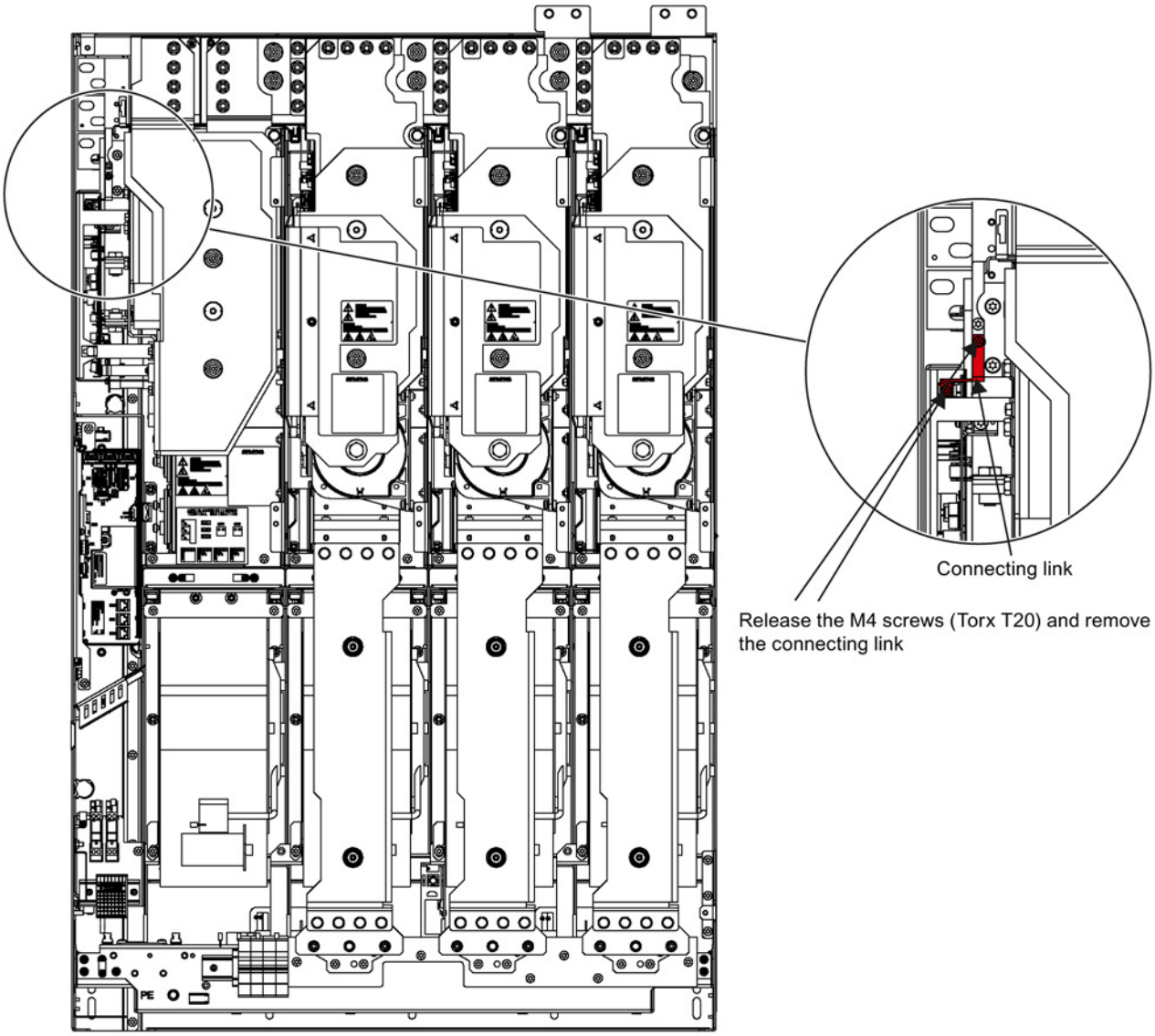


Figure 4-10 Removing the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module, frame size JX

4.8 External Supply of the Auxiliary Supply from a Secure Line

Description

An external auxiliary supply is always recommended if communication and closed-loop control are to be independent of the supply system. An external auxiliary supply is particularly recommended for low-power lines susceptible to short-time voltage dips or power failures.

With an external supply independent of the main supply, warnings and fault messages may still be displayed on the operator panel and internal protection and monitoring devices if the main supply fails.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to dangerous electrical voltage from an external auxiliary supply

When the external auxiliary supply is connected, dangerous voltages are present in the cabinet unit even when the main switch is open. Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched.

- Observe the general safety rules when working on the device.

Note

External auxiliary supply for automatic restart

An external auxiliary supply (infeed) must always be used if the automatic restart (WEA) function is to be used with integrated EMERGENCY OFF option (L57) or EMERGENCY STOP option (L59, L60).
Otherwise, the automatic restart function does not work.

Table 4- 9 Connection options for the external auxiliary voltage depending on the selected options.

Cabinet unit option	External supply of auxiliary voltage independent of the main supply			
	24 V DC Terminal –X9	230 V AC Terminal –X40	230 V AC (terminal –X40) [1]	230 V AC (terminal –X40) with options L13 / L26 (when I > 800 A)
- With no further options - Version C	X			
L13		X		
L26 (when I > 800 A)		X		
L83			X	X
L84			X	X
L86			X	X
L87			X	X

[1] This is required not only when the open and closed-loop control but also when 230 V AC loads (thermistor motor protection, PT100 evaluation, or insulation monitor) are to remain in operation if the main supply fails.

4.8.1 230 V AC auxiliary supply

The fuse must not exceed 16 A.

The connection is protected inside the cabinet with 3 A or 5 A.

Connection

- On terminal block -X40, remove the jumpers between terminals 1 and 2 as well as 5 and 6.
- Connect the external 230 V AC supply to terminals 2 (L1) and 6 (N).

Maximum connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

4.8.2 24 V DC auxiliary supply

The fuse must not exceed 10 A.

The power requirement is 5 A.

Connecting

Connect the external 24 V DC supply to terminals 1 (P 24 V) and 2 (M_{ext}) of terminal block –X9.

Maximum connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

4.9 Signal connections

4.9.1 Control Unit CU320-2 DP

In the standard version, the cabinet unit contains a CU320-2 DP control unit, which handles the communication and open-loop/closed-loop control functions.

A PROFIBUS interface is available for higher-level communication.

Connection overview

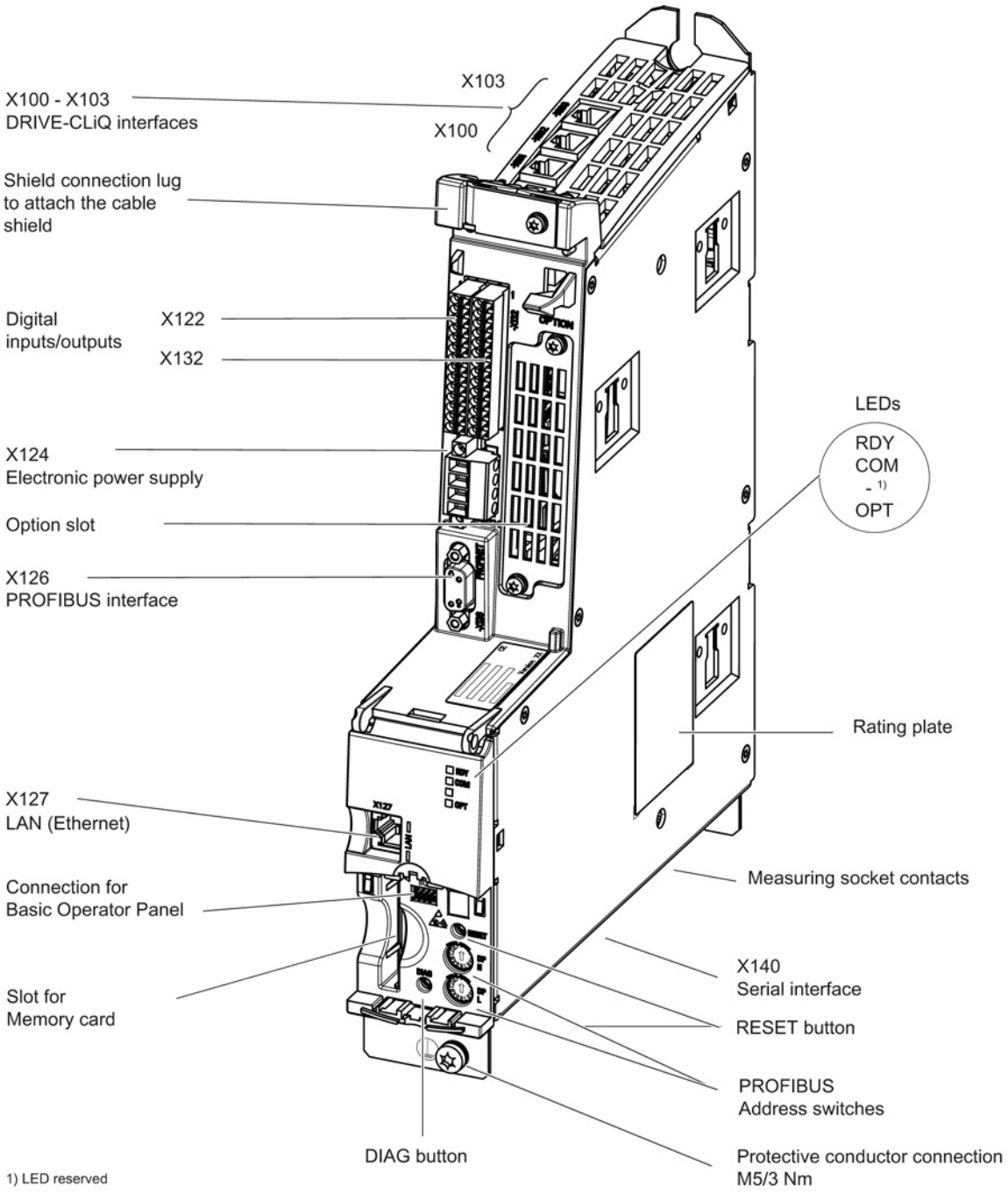


Figure 4-11 Connection overview of the CU320-2 DP Control Unit (without cover)

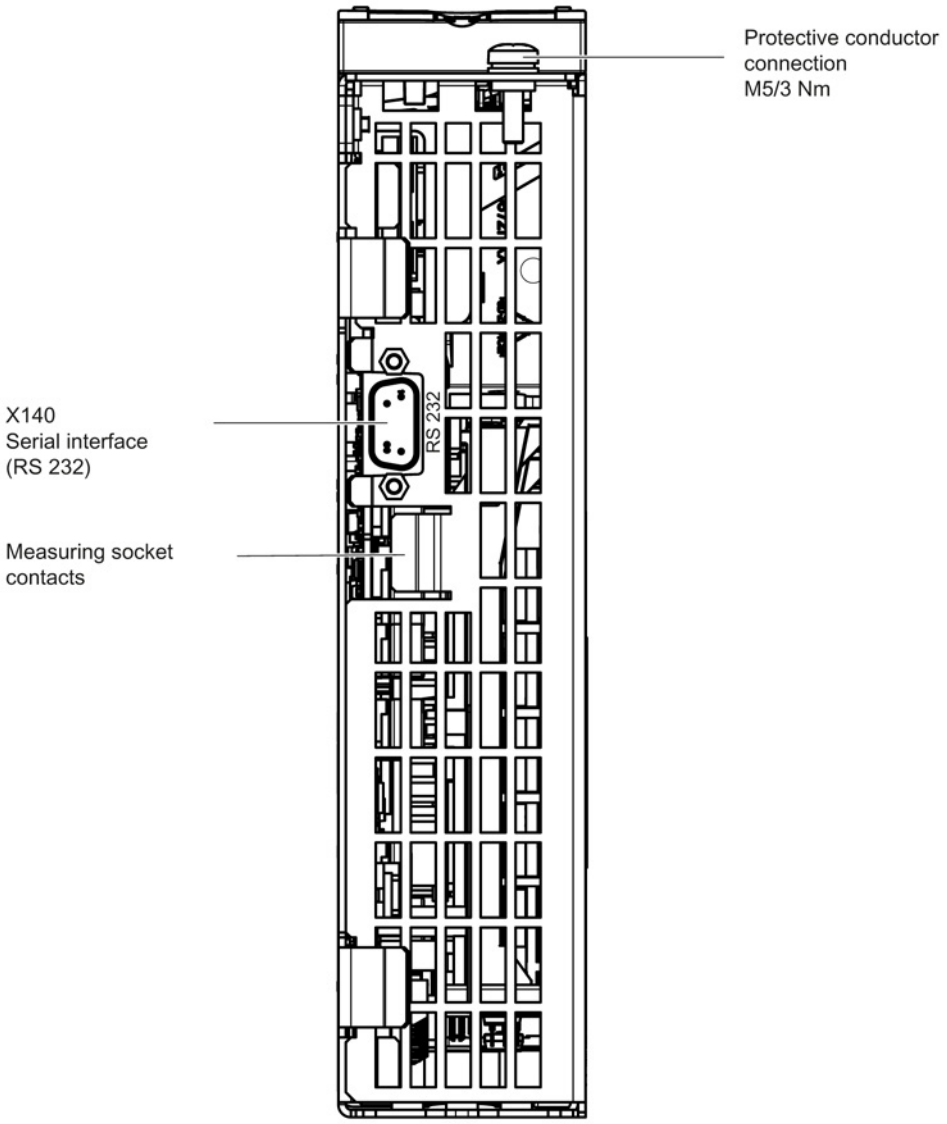


Figure 4-12 Interface X140 and measuring sockets T0 to T2 - CU320-2 DP (view from below)

NOTICE
Malfunctions or damage to the option board by inserting and withdrawing in operation Withdrawing and inserting the option board in operation can damage it or cause it to malfunction. • Only withdraw or insert the Option Board when the Control Unit is in a no-current condition.

Connection example

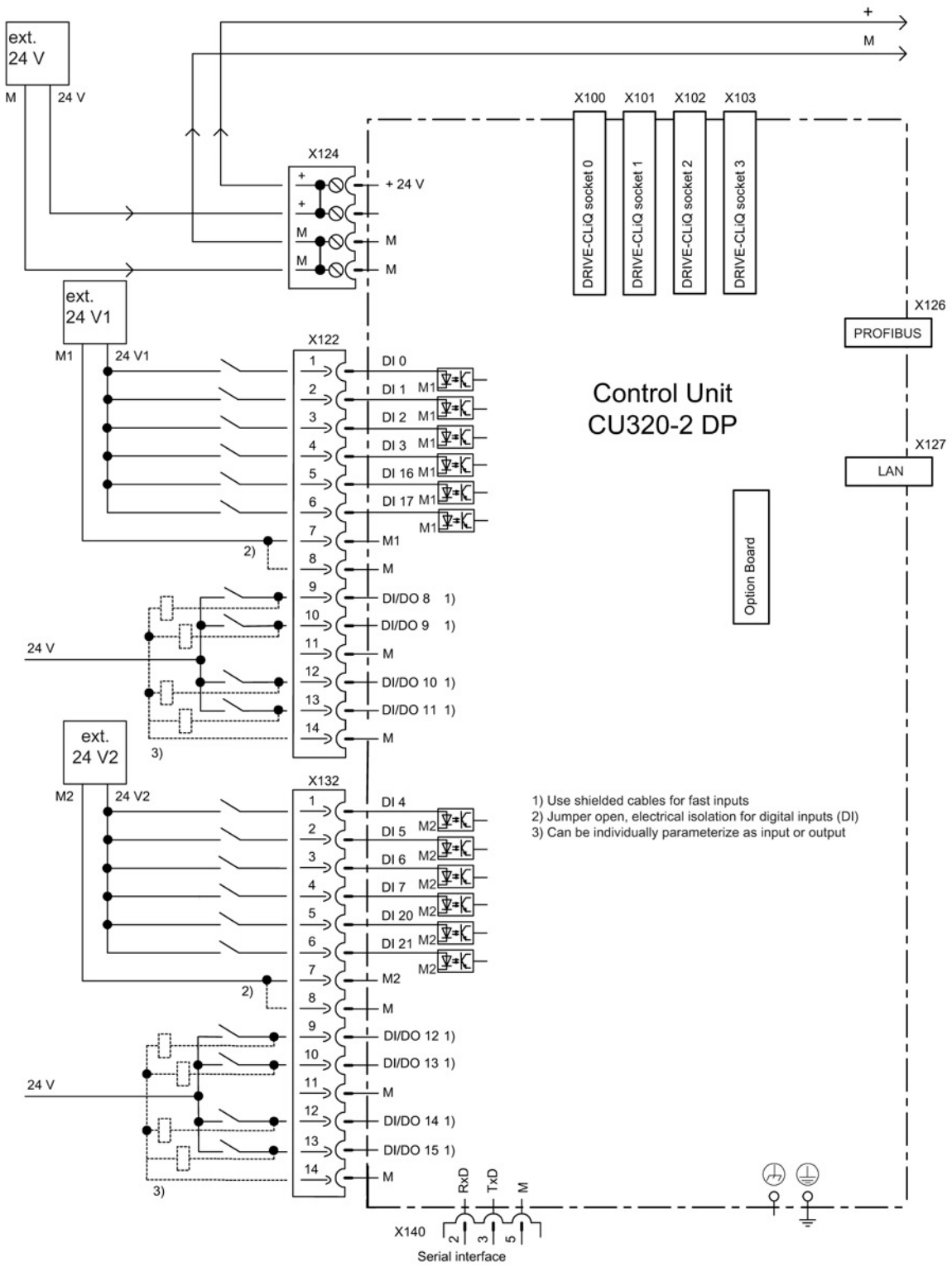
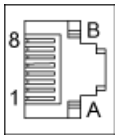


Figure 4-13 Connection example of CU320-2 DP

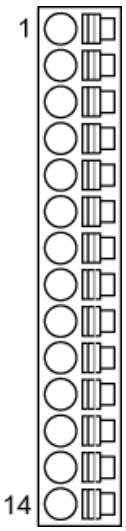
X100 to X103: DRIVE-CLiQ interface

Table 4- 10 DRIVE-CLiQ interface X100 – X103

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	A	+ (24 V)	Power supply
	B	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Connector type: RJ45 socket Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) Order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0			

X122: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 11 Terminal block X122

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 0	Voltage (max.): -3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Electrical isolation: reference potential is terminal M1 Level (with ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -3 ... +5 V Input delay (typ.): For "0" → "1": 50 µs For "1" → "0": 150 µs
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	DI 16	
	6	DI 17	
	7	M1	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Electronics ground
	9	DI/DO 8	**As input**: Voltage: -3 … +30 VDC Current consumption, typical: 9 mA at 24 V Signal level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low level: -3 … +5 V DI/DO 8, 9, 10, and 11 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.) For "0" → "1": 5 µs For "1" → "0": 50 µs **As output**: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Continuous short-circuit proof Output delay (typ./max):[3] For "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs For "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For ohmic load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 9	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 10	
	13	DI/DO 11	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground M1: reference potential

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

[3] Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

The maximum cable length that can be connected is 30 m.

Note

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

Terminal M1 must be connected so that the digital inputs (DI) can function.

This is achieved through one of the following measures:

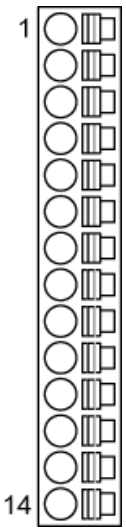
1. Also route the reference ground of the digital inputs.
2. A jumper to terminal M (**Please observe:** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X132: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 12 Terminal block X132

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 4	Voltage (max.): -3 … +30 VDC Current consumption, typical: 9 mA at 24 V Electrical isolation: The reference potential is terminal M2 Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low signal level: -3 … +5 V Input delay (typ.): For "0" → "1": 50 µs For "1" → "0": 150 µs
	2	DI 5	
	3	DI 6	
	4	DI 7	
	5	DI 20	
	6	DI 21	
	7	M2	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Electronics ground
	9	DI/DO 12	**As input**: Voltage: -3 … +30 VDC Current consumption, typical: 9 mA at 24 V Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low signal level: -3 … +5 V DI/DO 12, 13, 14, and 15 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.): For "0" → "1": 5 µs For "1" → "0": 50 µs **As output**: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Continuous short-circuit proof Output delay (typ./max):[3] For "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs For "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For ohmic load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 13	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 14	
	13	DI/DO 15	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground; M2: reference potential

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark

[3] Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

The maximum cable length that can be connected is 30 m.

Note

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M2 must be connected.

This is achieved through one of the following measures:

1. Also route the reference ground of the digital inputs.
2. A jumper to terminal M (**Please observe:** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

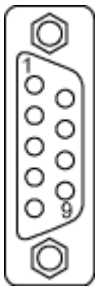
Note

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X126: PROFIBUS connection

The PROFIBUS is connected by means of a 9-pin SUB D socket (X126). The connections are electrically isolated.

Table 4- 13 PROFIBUS interface X126

	Pin	Signal name	Meaning	Range
	1	-	Not assigned	
	2	M24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice, ground	0 V
	3	RxD/TxD–P	Receive/transmit data P (B)	RS485
	4	CNTR–P	Control signal	TTL
	5	DGND	PROFIBUS data reference potential	
	6	VP	Supply voltage plus	5 V ± 10%
	7	P24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice, + (24 V)	24 V (20.4 ... 28.8 V)
	8	RxD/TxD–N	Receive/transmit data N (A)	RS485
	9	-	Not assigned	

A teleservice adapter can be connected to the PROFIBUS interface for remote diagnostics. The power supply for the teleservice (terminals 2 and 7) can have a load of up to 150 mA.

NOTICE

Damage to the Control Unit or other PROFIBUS nodes due to high leakage currents

Significant leakage currents can flow along the PROFIBUS cable if a suitable equipotential bonding conductor is not used and destroy the Control Unit or other PROFIBUS nodes.

- An equipotential bonding conductor with a cross-section of at least 25 mm² must be used between components in a system that are located at a distance from each other.

NOTICE

Damage to the Control Unit or other CAN bus nodes due to the connection of a CAN cable

If a CAN cable is connected to the X126 interface, this can destroy the Control Unit or other CAN bus nodes.

- Do not connect any CAN cables to the X126 interface.

PROFIBUS connector

For the first and last participants in a bus line, the terminating resistors must be switched in, otherwise, data transmission will not function correctly.

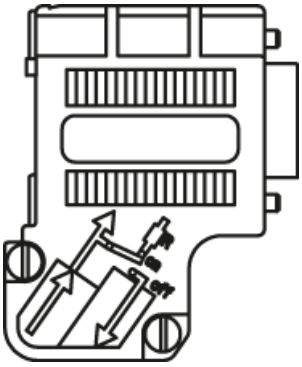
The terminating resistors are activated in the connector.

The cable shield must be connected at both ends and over a large surface area.

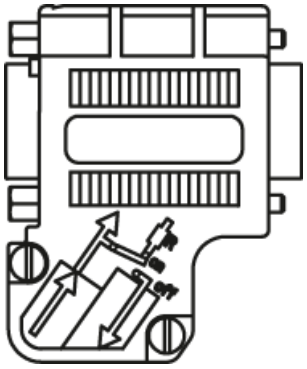
Connectors

The cables must be connected via PROFIBUS connectors as they contain the necessary terminating resistors.

The figure below shows suitable PROFIBUS connectors with/without a PG/PC connector.



PROFIBUS connector
without PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0



PROFIBUS connector
with PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0

Bus terminating resistor

The bus terminating resistor must be switched on or off depending on its position in the bus, otherwise the data will not be transmitted properly.

The terminating resistors for the first and last nodes in a line must be switched on; the resistors must be switched off at all other connectors.

The cable shield must be connected at both ends over large-surface area contacts.

Note

Connector type

Depending on the connector type, the correct assignment of the connector must be ensured (IN/OUT) in conjunction with the terminating resistor.

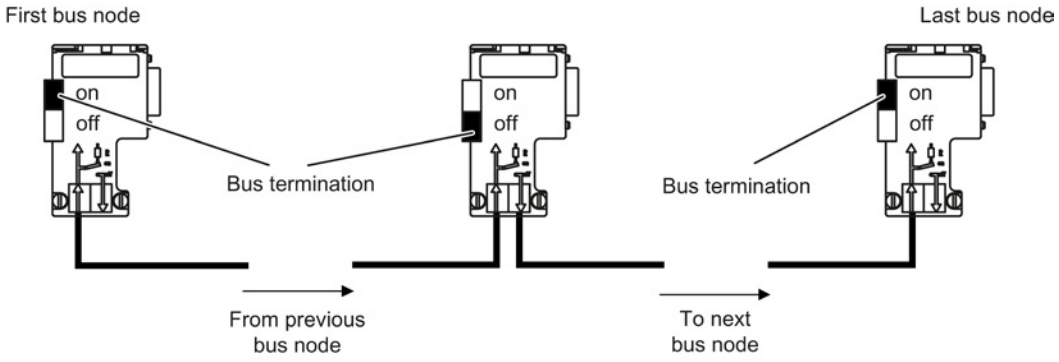
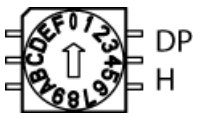
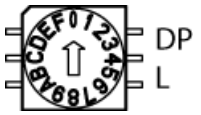


Figure 4-14 Position of the bus terminating resistors

PROFIBUS address switches

The PROFIBUS address is set as a hexadecimal value via two rotary coding switches. Values between 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$) can be set as the address. The upper rotary coding switch (H) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^1 and the lower rotary coding switch (L) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^0.

Table 4- 14 PROFIBUS address switches

Rotary coding switches	Significance	Examples		
		21_{dec}	**35_{dec}**	**126_{dec}**
		15_{hex}	**23_{hex}**	**$7E_{hex}$**
	$16^1 = 16$	1	2	7
	$16^0 = 1$	5	3	E

Setting the PROFIBUS address

The factory setting for the rotary coding switches is 0_{dec} (00_{hex}).

There are two ways to set the PROFIBUS address:

1. Via p0918
   - To set the bus address for a PROFIBUS node using STARTER, first set the rotary code switches to 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$).
   - Then use parameter p0918 to set the address to a value between 1 and 126.
2. Via the PROFIBUS address switches on the Control Unit
   - The address is set manually to values between 1 and 126 using the rotary coding switches. In this case, p0918 is only used to read the address.

Note

The rotary coding switches used to set the PROFIBUS address are located beneath the cover.

Note

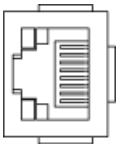
Address 126 is used for commissioning. Permitted PROFIBUS addresses are 1 ... 126.

When several Control Units are connected to a PROFIBUS line, you set the addresses differently than for the factory setting. Each PROFIBUS address in a PROFIBUS line can only be assigned once. Either set the PROFIBUS address in absolute terms using the rotary coding switches – or selectively in parameter p0918. Each change made to the bus address is not effective until POWER ON.

The currently set address of the rotary coding switch is displayed in parameter r2057.

X127: LAN (Ethernet)

Table 4- 15 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	TXP	Ethernet transmit data +
	2	TXN	Ethernet transmit data -
	3	RXP	Ethernet receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Ethernet receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: RJ45 socket			

Note

The LAN (Ethernet) interface does not support Auto MDI(X). For this reason, only crossover cables may be used to connect devices.

For diagnostic purposes, the X127 LAN interface features a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

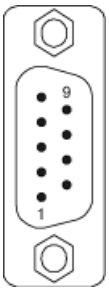
Table 4- 16 LED statuses for the X127 LAN interface

LED	Color	State	Description
Link port	-	Off	Missing or faulty link
	Green	Continuous light	10 or 100 Mbit link available
Activity port	-	Off	No activity
	Yellow	Flashing light	Sending or receiving

X140: serial interface (RS232)

The AOP30 operator panel for operating/parameterizing the device can be connected via the serial interface. The interface is located on the underside of the Control Unit.

Table 4- 17 Serial interface (RS232) X140

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	2	RxD	Receive data
	3	TxD	Transmit data
	5	Ground	Ground reference
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector			

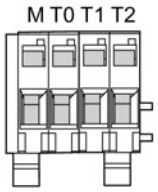
Note

Connecting cable to the AOP30

The connection cable to AOP30 may only contain the three contacts which are shown in the drawing; a completely allocated cable may not be used.

T0, T1, T2: Measuring socket contacts

Table 4- 18 Measuring socket contacts T0, T1, T2

	Socket	Function	Technical data
	M	Ground	Voltage: 0… 5 V Resolution: 8 bits Load current: max. 3 mA Continuous short-circuit proof The reference potential is terminal M
	T0	Measuring socket contact 0	
	T1	Measuring socket contact 1	
	T2	Measuring socket contact 2	
PCB plug connector from Phoenix Contact, type: ZEC 1.0/ 4-ST-3.5 C1 R1.4, order number: 1893708			

Note

Cable cross section

The measuring socket contacts are only suitable for cable cross-sections of 0.2 mm^2 to 1 mm^2.

Note

Using the measuring socket contacts

The measuring socket contacts support commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

DIAG button

The DIAG pushbutton is reserved for service functions.

Slot for the memory card



Figure 4-15 Slot for the memory card

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to software manipulation when using exchangeable storage media

Storing files onto exchangeable storage media amounts to an increased risk of infection, e.g. with viruses and malware. As a result of incorrect parameterization, machines can malfunction, which in turn can lead to injuries or death.

- Protect files stored on exchangeable storage media from malicious software by with suitable protection measures, e.g. virus scanners.

Note

Possible plant standstill by withdrawing or inserting the memory card in operation

If the memory card is withdrawn or inserted during operation, then data can be lost, possibly resulting in a plant standstill.

- Only withdraw and insert the memory card when the Control Unit is in a no-voltage condition.

Note

Insertion direction for the memory card

Only insert the memory card as shown in the photo above (arrow at top right).



NOTICE

Memory card damage caused by electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electrical fields or electrostatic discharge may result in the memory card being damaged and so cause malfunctions.

- When removing and inserting the memory card, always observe the ESD regulations.

Note

Possible data loss when returning the Control Unit with memory card

When returning a defective Control Unit for repair or testing, the data on the memory card (parameters, firmware, licenses, etc.) could be lost.

- Do not return the memory card as well, but rather keep it in a safe place so that it can be inserted in the replacement unit.

Note

Please note that only SIEMENS memory cards can be used to operate the Control Unit.

4.9.2 Customer terminal module TM31 (-A60) (option G60)

Note

Preassignment and position of the customer terminal block

The factory setting and description of the customer terminal blocks can be found in the circuit diagrams.

The location of the customer terminal block in the cabinet unit is indicated in the layout diagram.

Shield support

The shield connection of shielded control cables on the customer terminal block –A60 is established in the immediate vicinity of the terminal block. For this purpose, the customer terminal block –A60 and the mounting plates have cut-out sections which are used to snap the enclosed shield springs into place. The shields of incoming and outgoing cables must be applied directly to these shield connections. It is important here to establish the greatest possible area of contact and a good conductive connection.

Note

Shield springs

These shield springs can be used for all control cables in the cabinet unit because all the shield connections are identical in design.

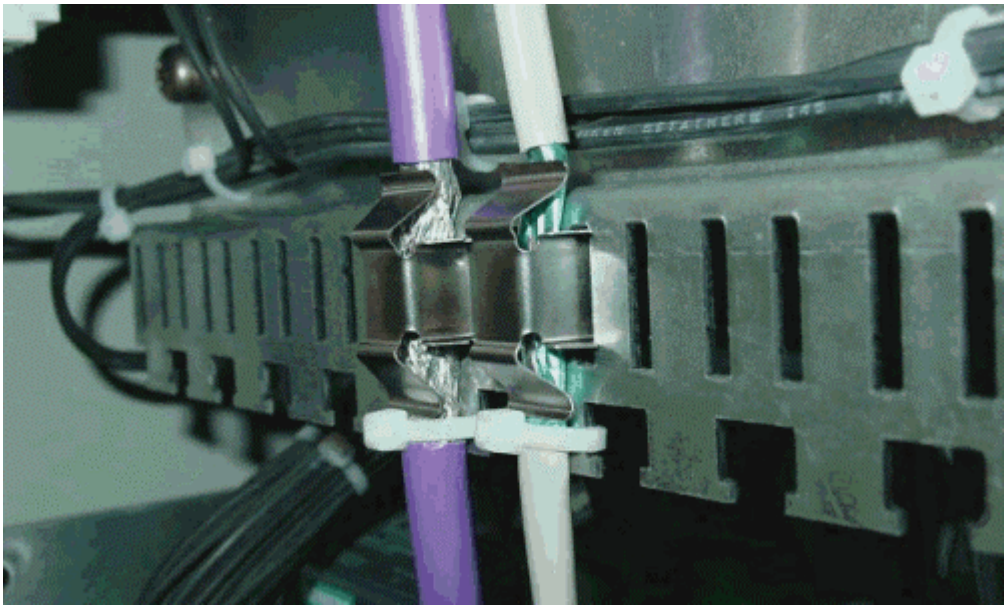


Figure 4-16 Shield support

Overview

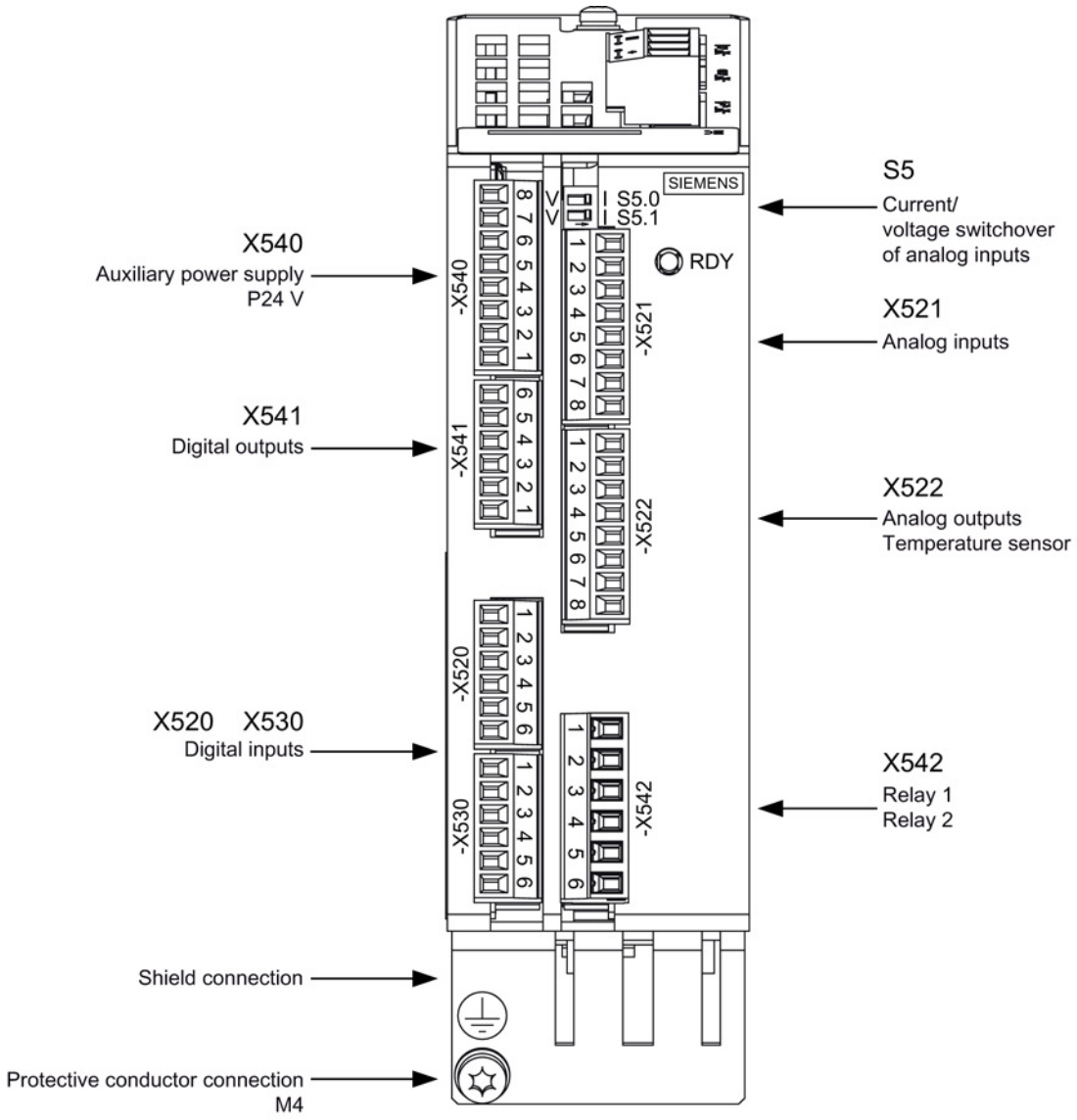


Figure 4-17 TM31 customer terminal block

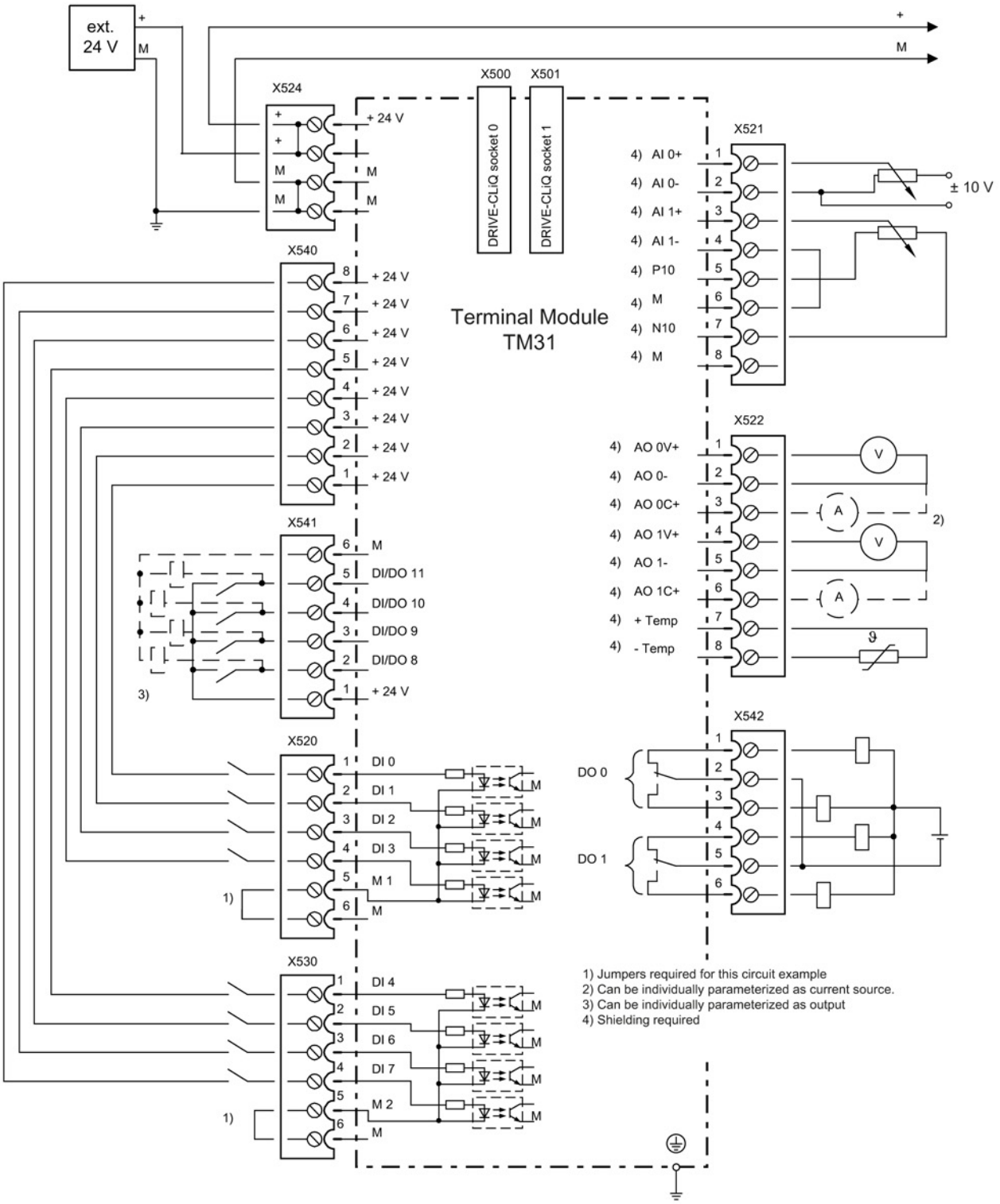
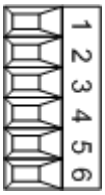


Figure 4-18 Connection overview of TM31 customer terminal block

X520: 4 digital inputs

Table 4- 19 Terminal block X520

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 0	**Voltage**: - 3 … +30 V **Current consumption** Typical: 10 mA at 24 V DC **Input delay**: For "0" to "1": Typ. 50 µs max. 100 µs For "1" to "0": Typ. 130 µs, max. 150 µs **Electrical isolation**: Reference potential is terminal M1 **Signal level** (including ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low signal level: -3 … +5 V
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	M1	
	6	M	

[1] DI: digital input; M1: ground reference; M: Electronics ground

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Note

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

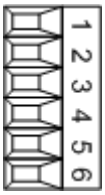
Terminal M1 must be connected so that the digital inputs (DI) can function.

This is achieved through one of the following measures:

1. Also route the reference ground of the digital inputs.
2. A jumper to terminal M (**Please observe:** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

X530: 4 digital inputs

Table 4- 20 Terminal block X530

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 4	**Voltage**: - 3 … +30 V **Current consumption** Typical: 10 mA at 24 V DC **Input delay**: For "0" to "1": Typ. 50 µs max. 100 µs For "1" to "0": Typ. 130 µs, max. 150 µs **Electrical isolation**: Reference potential is terminal M2 **Signal level** (including ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low signal level: -3 … +5 V
	2	DI 5	
	3	DI 6	
	4	DI 7	
	5	M2	
	6	M	

[1] DI: digital input; M2: ground reference; M: Electronics ground

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Note

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

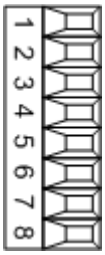
To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M2 must be connected.

This is achieved through one of the following measures:

1. Also route the reference ground of the digital inputs.
2. A jumper to terminal M (**Please observe:** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

X521: 2 analog inputs (differential inputs)

Table 4- 21 Terminal block X521

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	AI 0+	The analog inputs can be toggled between current and voltage input using switches S5.0 and S5.1. **As voltage input**: -10 ... +10 V; R_i > 100 kΩ Resolution: 11 bits + sign **As current input**: -20 ... +20 mA; R_i = 250 kΩ Resolution: 10 bits + sign
	2	AI 0-	
	3	AI 1+	
	4	AI 1-	
	5	P10	**Auxiliary voltage**: P10 = 10 V N10 = -10 V Continuously short-circuit proof
	6	M	
	7	N10	
	8	M	

[1] AI: analog input; P10/N10: auxiliary voltage, M: Ground reference

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

NOTICE

Damage or malfunctions through impermissible voltage values

If a current exceeding ±35 mA flows through the analog current input, then the component could be destroyed.

The common mode range must not be violated in order to avoid incorrect analog-digital conversion results.

- The input voltage may only be in the range between -30 V and +30 V (destruction limit).
- The common mode voltage may only be in the range between -10 V and +10 V (error limit).
- The back EMF at the auxiliary voltage connections may only be in the range between -15 V and +15 V.

Note

The power supply for the analog inputs can be taken internally or from an external power supply unit.

S5: Selector for voltage/current AI0, AI1

Table 4- 22 Selector for voltage/current S5

	Switch	Function
	S5.0	Selector voltage (V) / current (I) AI0
	S5.1	Selector voltage (V) / current (I) AI1

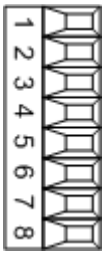
Note

Delivery condition

When delivered, both switches are set to current measurement (switch set to "I").

X522: 2 analog outputs, temperature sensor connection

Table 4- 23 Terminal block X522

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	AO 0V+	You can set the following output signals using parameters: **Voltage**: -10 … +10 V (max. 3 mA) **Current 1**: 4 … 20 mA (max. load resistance ≤ 500 Ω) **Current 2**: -20 … +20 mA (max. load resistance ≤ 500 Ω) **Current 3**: 0 … 20 mA (max. load resistance ≤ 500 Ω) Resolution: 11 bits + sign Continuously short-circuit proof
	2	AO 0-	
	3	AO 0C+	
	4	AO 1V+	
	5	AO 1-	
	6	AO 1C+	
	7	+Temp	Temperature sensor KTY84-1C130/PTC Measuring current via temperature sensor connection: 2 mA
	8	-Temp	

[1] AO xV: analog output voltage; AO xC: Analog output current

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock in the event of voltage flashovers at the temperature sensor

Voltage flashovers in the signal electronics can occur in motors without safe electrical separation of the temperature sensors.

- Use temperature sensors that fully comply with the specifications of the safety isolation.

NOTICE

Damage or malfunctions through impermissible voltage values

If the back EMF is impermissible then damage and malfunctions may occur on the components.

- The back EMF at the outputs may only be in the range between -15 V and +15 V.

NOTICE

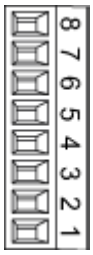
Damage to motor in the event of incorrectly connected KTY temperature sensor

A KTY temperature sensor connected with incorrect polarity cannot detect if the motor overheats. Overheating can cause damage to the motor.

- Connect a KTY temperature sensor with the correct polarity.

X540: Joint auxiliary voltage for the digital inputs

Table 4- 24 Terminal block X540

	Terminal	Designation	Technical data
	8	+24 V	Voltage: +24 V DC Max. total load current of +24 V auxiliary voltage for terminals X540 and X541 combined: 150 mA Continuously short-circuit proof
	7	+24 V	
	6	+24 V	
	5	+24 V	
	4	+24 V	
	3	+24 V	
	2	+24 V	
	1	+24 V	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Note

Use of the power supply

This voltage supply is only for powering the digital inputs.

X541: 4 non-floating digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 25 Terminal strip X541

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	6	M	**Auxiliary voltage:** Voltage: +24 V DC Max. total load current of +24 V auxiliary voltage of terminals X540 and X541 combined: 150 mA **As input**: Voltage: -3 … 30 V Current consumption, typical: 10 mA at 24 V Input delay: for "0" to "1": Typ. 50 µs for "1" to "0". Typ. 100 µs **As output**: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Max. total current of outputs (including currents to the inputs): 100 mA / 1 A (can be parameterized) Continuously short-circuit proof **Output delay**: for "0" to "1": typ. 150 µs at 0.5 A resistive load (500 µs maximum) for "1" to "0": Typically 50 µs at 0.5 A resistive load **Switching frequency**: For ohmic load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	5	DI/DO 11	
	4	DI/DO 10	
	3	DI/DO 9	
	2	DI/DO 8	
	1	+24 V	

[1] DI/DO: Digital input/output: M: Electronics ground

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm^2

Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as "low".

Note

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X542: 2 relay outputs (two-way contact)

Table 4- 26 Terminal block X542

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DO 0.NC	Contact type: Changeover contact max. load current: 8 A Max. switching voltage: 250 V_{AC}, 30 V_{DC} Max. switching power at 250 V_{AC}: 2000 VA (cosϕ = 1) Max. switching power at 250 V_{AC}: 750 VA (cosϕ = 0.4) Max. switching power at 30 V_{DC}: 240 W (resistive load) Required minimum current: 100 mA Output delay: ≤ 20 ms [2] Overvoltage category: Class II acc. to EN 60664-1
	2	DO 0.COM	
	3	DO 0.NO	
	4	DO 1.NC	
	5	DO 1.COM	
	6	DO 1.NO	

[1] DO: digital output, NO: normally-open contact, NC: normally-closed contact, COM: mid-position contact

[2] Depending on the parameterization and the supply voltage (P24) of the TM31

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Note

Additional protective conductor

If 230 V AC is applied to the relay outputs, the Terminal Module must also be grounded via a 6 mm² protective conductor.

4.10 Other connections

Depending on the options installed, further connections have to be established, for example, dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter, main contactor, sine-wave filter, connection for external auxiliary equipment, main circuit-breaker including fuses or circuit-breaker, EMERGENCY OFF button, cabinet illumination with service socket, anti-condensation heating for cabinet, contactor safety combinations (EMERGENCY OFF / EMERGENCY STOP), thermistor motor protection unit, braking unit, PT100 evaluation unit, insulation monitor, communication modules, encoder evaluator, and NAMUR option.

Detailed information on connecting individual options with interfaces can be found on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.1 Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact (Option L01)

Description

Line Harmonics Filter compact reduce the converter's low-frequency line harmonic to a level that complies with standard EN 61000-2-4, Class 2 and correspond to IEEE 519:1992.

Installation location, total width and total weight for Option L01

The Line Harmonics Filter compact is installed fully wired in an auxiliary cabinet. A 400 mm or 600 mm wide cabinet is used depending on the unit rating and the voltage level. This therefore increases the total width and the total weight of the cabinet.

Table 4- 27 Total width and total weight for Option L01

Order number	Unit rating of the converter [kW]	Overall width [mm]	Total weight [kg]
Line voltage 3-phase 380 VAC -10% to 480 V +10% at 50 Hz 3-phase 380 VAC -10% to 480 V +8% at 60 Hz			
6SL3710-1GE32-1AAx	110	1200	540
6SL3710-1GE32-6AAx	132	1200	540
6SL3710-1GE33-1AAx	160	1200	640
6SL3710-1GE33-8AAx	200	1400	730
6SL3710-1GE35-0AAx	250	1400	770
6SL3710-1GE36-1AAx	315	1800	1300
6SL3710-1GE37-5AAx	400	1800	1345
6SL3710-1GE38-4AAx	450	1800	1555
6SL3710-1GE41-0AAx	560	2200	1840
6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx	630	3600	2580
6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx	710	3600	2670
6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx	900	3600	3090

Order number	Unit rating of the converter [kW]	Overall width [mm]	Total weight [kg]
Line voltage 3-phase 500 VAC -10% to 600 V +10% at 50 Hz 3-phase 500 VAC -10% to 600 V +10 % at 60 Hz			
6SL3710-1GF31-8AAx	110	1200	670
6SL3710-1GF32-2AAx	132	1200	670
6SL3710-1GF32-6AAx	160	1200	710
6SL3710-1GF33-3AAx	200	1200	710
6SL3710-1GF34-1AAx	250	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GF34-7AAx	315	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GF35-8AAx	400	1200	1340
6SL3710-1GF37-4AAx	500	2200	2000
6SL3710-1GF38-1AAx	560	2200	2040
6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx	630	3600	2660
6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx	710	3600	2660
6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx	1000	4400	3980
Line voltage 3-phase 660 VAC -10% to 690 V +10% at 50 Hz 3-phase 660 VAC -10% to 690 V +8% at 60 Hz			
6SL3710-1GH28-5AAx	75	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-0AAx	90	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-2AAx	110	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-5AAx	132	1200	550
6SL3710-1GH31-8AAx	160	1200	670
6SL3710-1GH32-2AAx	200	1200	670
6SL3710-1GH32-6AAx	250	1200	710
6SL3710-1GH33-3AAx	315	1200	710
6SL3710-1GH34-1AAx	400	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GH34-7AAx	450	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GH35-8AAx	560	1800	1340
6SL3710-1GH37-4AAx	710	2200	2000
6SL3710-1GH38-1AAx	800	2200	2040
6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx	1000	3600	2660
6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx	1350	4400	3980
6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx	1500	4400	4060

Line system configurations

The Line Harmonics Filter compact may be connected to grounded TN/TT line supplies or non-grounded IT line supplies according to IEC 60364-1.

Restrictions

Note

Relative short-circuit power RSC

The relative short-circuit power (RSC) of the supply system must be at least equal to the value of RSC = 10.

Note

Supply systems with a grounded phase conductor and a line voltage >600 VAC

On systems with a grounded phase conductor and a line voltage >600 VAC, line-side components should be installed to limit overvoltages to overvoltage category II in accordance with IEC 61800-5-1.

NOTICE

Material damage caused by switching on too frequently

The Power Module can be severely damaged if it is switched on too frequently.

- Observe the maximum switch-on frequency (1x every 3 min.) specified in the technical data.

Note

Observe the waiting time when restarting

After the converter has been switched off, a wait time of at least 30 seconds must be maintained before switching on again. This wait time is implemented using an internal timer relay, which prevents the unit from being switched on again.

If a restart command is given before the waiting period has expired, fault F30027 "Power unit: Time monitoring for DC-link pre-charging" is issued.

The wait time is not required with the additional option L76 (option L01, fast start-up).

Note

Operation with high voltages

The Line Harmonics Filter increases the input voltage of the Power Module slightly compared to the connection voltage.
For a connection voltage in the uppermost tolerance range (480 V +8%, 600 V +10% or 690 V +8%), the internal monitoring of the DC-link voltage can initiate fault F06310.
Use parameters p2118 and p2119 to reparameterize this fault as an alarm.

Note

Operation with braking unit (option L61 / L62)

If a braking unit is deployed and the connection voltage lies in the uppermost tolerance range (480 V +8%, 600 V +10% or 690 V +8%), the threshold value switch must only be set to the high response threshold in each case.
The chopper could otherwise trip inadvertently during normal operation.

Temperature evaluation

The Line Harmonics Filter compact is forced cooled via fans. In the event of fan failure, the integrated temperature sensors protect the Line Harmonics Filter compact against overheating.

- The temperature sensor for triggering the warning level is interconnected to digital input DI0 of the Control Unit. When the temperature sensor trips, "external alarm 1" (A7850) is triggered.
- The temperature sensor for triggering the fault threshold is interconnected to the line contactor or circuit-breaker via a contactor relay. When the temperature sensor trips, the cabinet unit is shut down.
  The signal from the temperature sensor is also interconnected to digital input DI1 of the Control Unit. In this way, if the temperature sensor trips, "external fault 1" (F7860) is triggered.

4.10.2 dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07)

Description

The dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter comprises two components: the dv/dt reactor and the voltage-limiting network (Voltage Peak Limiter), which cuts off the voltage peaks and feeds back the energy into the DC link. The dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is designed for use with motors for which the voltage strength of the insulation system is unknown or insufficient.

The dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage load on the motor cables to values in accordance with the limit value curve A in compliance with IEC/TS 60034-25:2007.

The rate of voltage rise is limited to < 1600 V/µs, the peak voltages are limited to < 1400 V.

Restrictions

The following constraints should be noted when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to no more than 150 Hz.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
  - Shielded cable: max. 100 m
  - Unshielded cable: max. 150 m

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter compact by exceeding the maximum output frequency

The maximum permissible output frequency when using a dv/dt filter compact is 150 Hz. The dv/dt filter compact can be damaged if the output frequency is exceeded.

- Operate the dv/dt filter compact with a maximum output frequency of 150 Hz.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter compact during continuous operation with low output frequencies

Uninterrupted duty at an output frequency less than 10 Hz can result in thermal destruction of the dv/dt filter.

- Do not operate the drive when using a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter continuously with an output frequency less than 10 Hz.
- You may operate the drive for a maximum load duration of 5 minutes at an output frequency less than 10 Hz, provided that you then select operation with an output frequency higher than 10 Hz for a period of 5 minutes.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter compact by exceeding the maximum pulse frequency

The maximum permissible pulse frequency when using a dv/dt filter compact is 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz. The dv/dt filter compact can be damaged if the pulse frequency is exceeded.

- When using the dv/dt filter compact, operate the Power Module with a maximum pulse frequency of 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter compact if it is not activated during commissioning

The dv/dt filter compact may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning.

- Activate the dv/dt filter compact during commissioning using parameter p0230 = 2.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter compact if a motor is not connected

dv/dt filters compact which are operated without a motor being connected can be damaged or destroyed.

- Never operate a dv/dt filter compact connected to the Power Module without a connected motor.

Note

Setting pulse frequencies

It is permissible to set pulse frequencies in the range between the rated pulse frequency and the relevant maximum pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used. "Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency" of the converter must be observed here (refer to the Technical data).

Table 4- 28 Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 2 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE32-1AAx	110	210	4 kHz
1GE32-6AAx	132	260	4 kHz
1GE33-1AAx	160	310	4 kHz
1GE33-8AAx	200	380	4 kHz
1GE35-0AAx	250	490	4 kHz

Table 4- 29 Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE36-1AAx	315	605	2.5 kHz
1GE37-5AAx	400	745	2.5 kHz
1GE38-4AAx	450	840	2.5 kHz
1GE41-0AAx	560	985	2.5 kHz
2GE41-1AAx	630	1120	2.5 kHz
2GE41-4AAx	710	1380	2.5 kHz
2GE41-6AAx	900	1580	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 500 ... 600 V AC			
1GF31-8AAx	110	175	2.5 kHz
1GF32-2AAx	132	215	2.5 kHz
1GF32-6AAx	160	260	2.5 kHz
1GF33-3AAx	200	330	2.5 kHz
1GF34-1AAx	250	410	2.5 kHz
1GF34-7AAx	315	465	2.5 kHz
1GF35-8AAx	400	575	2.5 kHz
1GF37-4AAx	500	735	2.5 kHz
1GF38-1AAx	560	810	2.5 kHz
2GF38-6AAx	630	860	2.5 kHz
2GF41-1AAx	710	1070	2.5 kHz
2GF41-4AAx	1000	1360	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 660 ... 690 V AC			
1GH28-5AAx	75	85	2.5 kHz
1GH31-0AAx	90	100	2.5 kHz
1GH31-2AAx	110	120	2.5 kHz
1GH31-5AAx	132	150	2.5 kHz
1GH31-8AAx	160	175	2.5 kHz
1GH32-2AAx	200	215	2.5 kHz
1GH32-6AAx	250	260	2.5 kHz
1GH33-3AAx	315	330	2.5 kHz
1GH34-1AAx	400	410	2.5 kHz
1GH34-7aAx	450	465	2.5 kHz
1GH35-8AAx	560	575	2.5 kHz
1GH37-4AAx	710	735	2.5 kHz
1GH38-1aAx	800	810	2.5 kHz
2GH41-1AAx	1000	1070	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1350	1360	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1500	1500	2.5 kHz

Commissioning

During commissioning, the dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be logged on using STARTER or the AOP30 operator panel (p0230 = 2).

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

When the factory settings are restored, parameter p0230 is reset.
The parameter must be reset if the system is commissioned again.

4.10.3 dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10)

Description

The dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter comprises two components: the dv/dt reactor and the **V**oltage **P**eak **L**imiter, which cuts off the voltage peaks and returns the energy to the DC link.

The dv/dt filters plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be used for motors for which the proof voltage of the insulation system is unknown or insufficient. Standard motors of the 1LA5, 1LA6 and 1LA8 series only require them at supply voltages > 500 V +10%.

The dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter limits the voltage gradient to values < 500 V/µs and the typical transients to the values below (with motor cable lengths of < 150 m):

- < 1000 V at U_{line} < 575 V
- < 1250 V at 660 V < U_{line} < 690 V.

Depending on the converter power, option L10 can be accommodated in the drive converter cabinet unit or an additional cabinet with a width 400 mm is required.

Table 4- 30 Accommodating the voltage limiting network in the cabinet or in an additional cabinet

Voltage range	Installation of the dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter within the converter cabinet unit	Installation of the VPL in an additional cabinet
3 AC 380 ... 480 V	6SL3710-1GE32-1AAx 6SL3710-1GE32-6AAx 6SL3710-1GE33-1AAx 6SL3710-1GE33-8AAx 6SL3710-1GE35-0AAx	6SL3710-1GE36-1AAx 6SL3710-1GE37-5AAx 6SL3710-1GE38-4AAx 6SL3710-1GE41-0AAx 6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx [1]
3 AC 500 ... 600 V	6SL3710-1GF31-8AAx 6SL3710-1GF32-2AAx 6SL3710-1GF32-6AAx 6SL3710-1GF33-3AAx	6SL3710-1GF34-1AAx 6SL3710-1GF34-7AAx 6SL3710-1GF35-8AAx 6SL3710-1GF37-4AAx 6SL3710-1GF38-1AAx 6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx [1]
3 AC 660 ... 690 V	6SL3710-1GH28-5AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-0AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-2AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-5AAx 6SL3710-1GH31-8AAx 6SL3710-1GH32-2AAx 6SL3710-1GH32-6AAx 6SL3710-1GH33-3AAx	6SL3710-1GH34-1AAx 6SL3710-1GH34-7AAx 6SL3710-1GH35-8AAx 6SL3710-1GH37-4AAx 6SL3710-1GH38-1AAx 6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx [1] 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx [1]

[1] With units that are connected in parallel, each individual sub-cabinet has a separate auxiliary cabinet for the Voltage Peak Limiter.

Restrictions

The following restrictions should be noted when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to no more than 150 Hz.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
  - Shielded cable: max. 300 m
  - Unshielded cable: max. 450 m

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter by exceeding the maximum output frequency

The maximum permissible output frequency when using a dv/dt filter is 150 Hz. The dv/dt filter can be damaged if the output frequency is exceeded.

- Operate the dv/dt filter with a maximum output frequency of 150 Hz.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter by exceeding the maximum pulse frequency

The maximum permissible pulse frequency when using a dv/dt filter is 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz. The dv/dt filter can be damaged if the pulse frequency is exceeded.

- When using the dv/dt filter, operate the Power Module with a maximum pulse frequency of 2.5 kHz or 4 kHz.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter if it is not activated during commissioning

The dv/dt filter may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning.

- Activate the dv/dt filter during commissioning using parameter p0230 = 2.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter if a motor is not connected

dv/dt filters which are operated without a motor being connected can be damaged or destroyed.

- Never operate a dv/dt filter connected to the Power Module without a connected motor.

Note

Setting pulse frequencies

It is permissible to set pulse frequencies in the range between the rated pulse frequency and the relevant maximum pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used. When so doing, take into account the "Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency; see Technical data.

Table 4- 31 Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 2 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE32-1AAx	110	210	4 kHz
1GE32-6AAx	132	260	4 kHz
1GE33-1AAx	160	310	4 kHz
1GE33-8AAx	200	380	4 kHz
1GE35-0AAx	250	490	4 kHz

Table 4- 32 Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used in units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order no. 6SL3710-...	Unit rating [kW]	Output current for a pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz [A]	Max. pulse frequency when a dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter is used
Supply voltage 380 ... 480 V AC			
1GE36-1AAx	315	605	2.5 kHz
1GE37-5AAx	400	745	2.5 kHz
1GE38-4AAx	450	840	2.5 kHz
1GE41-0AAx	560	985	2.5 kHz
2GE41-1AAx	630	1120	2.5 kHz
2GE41-4AAx	710	1380	2.5 kHz
2GE41-6AAx	900	1580	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 500 ... 600 V AC			
1GF31-8AAx	110	175	2.5 kHz
1GF32-2AAx	132	215	2.5 kHz
1GF32-6AAx	160	260	2.5 kHz
1GF33-3AAx	200	330	2.5 kHz
1GF34-1AAx	250	410	2.5 kHz
1GF34-7AAx	315	465	2.5 kHz
1GF35-8AAx	400	575	2.5 kHz
1GF37-4AAx	500	735	2.5 kHz
1GF38-1AAx	560	810	2.5 kHz
2GF38-6AAx	630	860	2.5 kHz
2GF41-1AAx	710	1070	2.5 kHz
2GF41-4AAx	1000	1360	2.5 kHz
Supply voltage 660 ... 690 V AC			
1GH28-5AAx	75	85	2.5 kHz
1GH31-0AAx	90	100	2.5 kHz
1GH31-2AAx	110	120	2.5 kHz
1GH31-5AAx	132	150	2.5 kHz
1GH31-8AAx	160	175	2.5 kHz
1GH32-2AAx	200	215	2.5 kHz
1GH32-6AAx	250	260	2.5 kHz
1GH33-3AAx	315	330	2.5 kHz
1GH34-1AAx	400	410	2.5 kHz
1GH34-7aAx	450	465	2.5 kHz
1GH35-8AAx	560	575	2.5 kHz
1GH37-4AAx	710	735	2.5 kHz
1GH38-1aAx	800	810	2.5 kHz
2GH41-1AAx	1000	1070	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1350	1360	2.5 kHz
2GH41-4AAx	1500	1500	2.5 kHz

Commissioning

During commissioning, the dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter must be logged on using STARTER or the AOP30 operator panel (p0230 = 2).

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

When the factory settings are restored, parameter p0230 is reset.
The parameter must be reset if the system is commissioned again.

4.10.4 Main Contactor (Option L13)

Description

The cabinet unit is designed as standard without a line contactor. Option L13 (main contactor) is needed if a switching element is required for disconnecting the cabinet from the supply (necessary with EMERGENCY OFF). The contactor is energized and supplied within the cabinet.

Connection

Table 4- 33 Terminal block X50 – checkback contact "main contactor closed"

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical specifications
4	NO	Max. load current: 10 A
5	NC	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC
6	COM	Max. switching capacity: 250 VA
		Required minimum load: ≥1 mA

[1] NO: normally-open contact, NC: normally-closed contact, COM: mid-position contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

4.10.5 Sinusoidal filter (option L15)

Description

The sine-wave filter limits the voltage gradient and the capacitive charge/discharge currents which usually occur with converter operation. It also prevents additional noise caused by the pulse frequency. The service life of the motor is as long as that attained with direct mains operation.

Restrictions

The following restrictions must be taken into account when a sine-wave filter is used:

- The output frequency is limited to max. 115 Hz (at 500 to 600 V) and 150 Hz (at 380 to 480 V).
- The modulation type is permanently set to space-vector modulation without overmodulation.
- The maximum output frequency is limited to 85% of the input frequency.
- Maximum permissible motor cable lengths:
  - Unshielded cable: max. 450 m
  - Shielded cable: max. 300 m
- During commissioning, the pulse frequency rises to double the factory setting. This induces current derating, which must be applied to the cabinet unit rated currents listed in the technical data.

NOTICE
Damage to the Motor Module by using components that have not been released
When using components that have not been released, damage or malfunctions can occur at the devices or the system itself. • Only use sine-wave filters that SIEMENS has released for SINAMICS.

NOTICE
Risk of damaging sine-wave filter by exceeding the maximum output frequency
The maximum permissible output frequency when sine-wave filters are used is 150 Hz. The sine-wave filter can be damaged if the output frequency is exceeded. • Operate the sine-wave filter with a maximum output frequency of 150 Hz.

NOTICE
Damage to the sine-wave filter if it is not activated during commissioning
The sine-wave filter may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning. • Activate the sine-wave filter during commissioning via parameter p0230 = 3.

NOTICE
Damage to the sine-wave filter if a motor is not connected
Sine-wave filters, which are operated without a motor being connected, can be damaged or destroyed. • Never operate a sine-wave filter connected to the Power Module without a connected motor.

Note

No sine-wave filter possible

If a sine-wave filter cannot be parameterized (p0230 ≠ 3), this means that a filter has not been provided for the cabinet unit. In this case, the cabinet unit must not be operated with a sine-wave filter.

Table 4- 34 Technical data for sine-wave filters with SINAMICS G150

Order no. SINAMICS G150	Voltage [V]	Pulse frequency [kHz]	Output current [A] 1).
6SL3710-1GE32-1AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	172 A
6SL3710-1GE32-6AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	216 A
6SL3710-1GE33-1AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	273 A
6SL3710-1GE33-8AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	331 A
6SL3710-1GE35-0AAx	3 AC 380 ... 480	4	382 A
6SL3710-1GF31-8AAx	3 AC 500 ... 600	2.5	152 A
6SL3710-1GF32-2AAx	3 AC 500 ... 600	2.5	187 A

1) The values apply to operation with a sine-wave filter and do not correspond with the rated current on the type plate.

Commissioning

When commissioning using the STARTER or AOP30, the sine-wave filter must be activated by means of appropriate selection screenforms or dialog boxes (p0230 = 3), see section "Commissioning".

The following parameters are changed automatically during commissioning.

Table 4- 35 Parameter settings for sine-wave filters

Parameter	Name	Setting
p0230	Drive filter type, motor side	3: Siemens sine-wave filter
p0233	Power unit motor reactor	Filter inductance
p0234	Power unit sine-wave filter capacitance	Filter capacitance
p0290	Power unit overload response	Disable pulse frequency reduction
p1082	Maximum speed	Fmax filter / pole pair number
p1800	Pulse frequency	Nominal pulse frequency of the filter (see previous table)
p1802	Modulator mode	Space-vector modulation without overmodulation
p1811	Pulse frequency wobbling amplitude	Amplitude of the statistical wobbulation signal
p1909	Motor data identification, control word	Rs measurement only

Note

Reset when establishing the factory setting

When the factory settings are restored, parameter p0230 is reset.
The parameter must be reset if the system is commissioned again.

4.10.6 Connection for External Auxiliary Equipment (Option L19)

Description

This option includes an outgoing circuit fused at max. 10 A for external auxiliary equipment (e.g. separately-driven fan for motor). The voltage is tapped at the converter input upstream of the main contactor/circuit-breaker and, therefore, has the same level as the supply voltage. The outgoing circuit can be switched within the converter or externally.

Connecting

Table 4- 36 Terminal block X155 - Connection for external auxiliary equipment

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	L1	3 AC 380 ... 480 V 3 AC 500 ... 600 V 3 AC 660 ... 690 V
2	L2	
3	L3	
11	Contactor control	230 V AC
12		
13	NO: Checkback motor circuit breaker	230 V AC / 0.5 A 24 V DC / 2 A
14		
15	NO: Checkback from contactor	240 V AC / 6 A
16		
PE	PE	PE

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Note

Protection setting

The connection for external auxiliary equipment must be set in accordance with the connected consumer (-Q155).

Circuit proposal for controlling the auxiliary contactor from within the converter

Circuit proposal as standard

A free digital output of the Control Unit can be used to control the auxiliary contactor; it uses a line-side relay to control auxiliary contactor -K155.

Signal r0899.11 (pulses enabled) must also be interconnected to the selected digital output of the Control Unit.

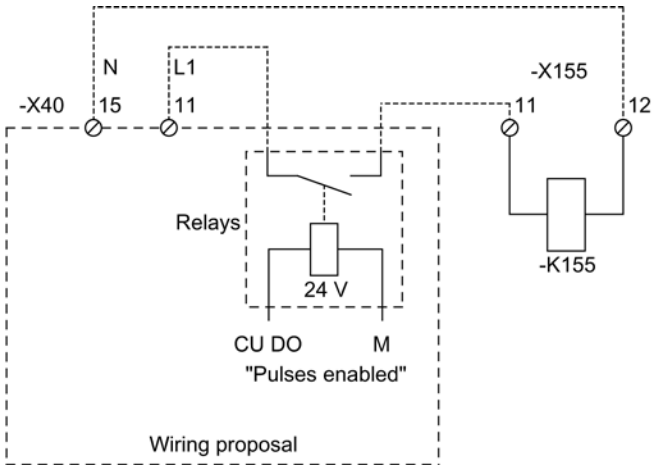


Figure 4-19 Circuit proposal for control via the Control Unit

Circuit proposal with customer terminal module TM31 (option G60)

The following circuit proposal can be used to control the auxiliary contactor for example. The "Pulses enabled" signal at terminal-X542 of the TM31 is then no longer available for other purposes.

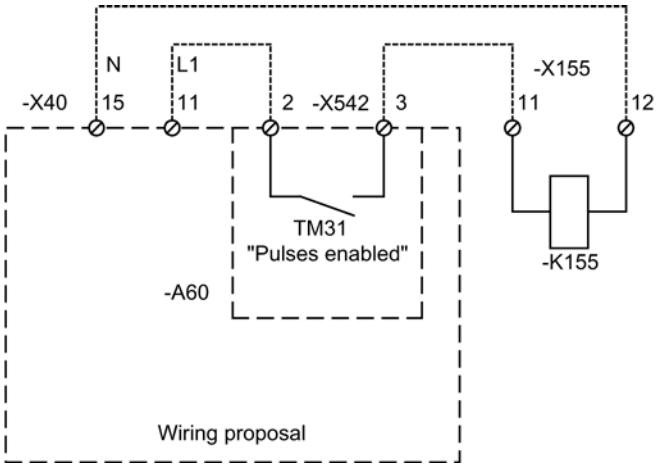


Figure 4-20 Circuit proposal for control via the TM31

Note

Additional protective conductor

If 230 V AC is applied to the relay outputs, the TM31 must also be grounded via a 6 mm² protective conductor.

4.10.7 Overvoltage limitation (option L21)

Description

The option includes the installation of surge arresters and upstream fuses for every phase. The signaling contacts of the surge arrester and fuse monitoring are connected in series and connected to a customer interface.

Safety instruction

Note

Remove the connection clip for the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an IT supply

For operation on an IT supply, the connection clip for the interference suppression capacitor must be removed (see "Electrical installation / removing the connection clip for the interference suppression capacitor for operation on a non-grounded supply system (IT supply)").

X700 - monitoring surge arresters and fuses

Table 4- 37 Terminal block X700, monitoring surge arresters and fuses

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	NC	Max. load current: - At 24 VDC: 1 A - At 230 VAC: 0.5 A
4	NC	
Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²		

[1] NC: normally-closed contact

Reason why the monitoring responded

After the monitoring function responds at terminal block X700:1/4, the cause must be identified:

- Surge arresters (-A703, -A704-, A705) have a display showing the operating state.
- The upstream fuses (-Q700) are monitored using phase failure monitoring (-B700), which has an LED status display. In the event of a fault as a result of a defective fuse, the fuses (-Q700) must be checked, and if required, replaced after removing the fault.

Replacement of the surge arresters

In the event of a fault, the surge arresters must be replaced:

- Cabinet units 3-phase 380 ... 480 VAC:
  Remove the insert (protection module) by withdrawing the defective insert and inserting the replacement part.
- Cabinet units 3-phase 500 ... 600 VAC and 3-phase 660 ... 690 VAC:
  Replacing the complete surge arrester.

4.10.8 Main switch incl. fuses or circuit breaker (option L26)

Description

For rated currents up to 800 A (single units) and up to 1380 A (units that are connected in parallel), a switch disconnector with externally-mounted fuses is used as the main circuit breaker. For rated currents above 800 A (single units) and above 1380 A (units that are connected in parallel), the standard circuit breaker is used to disconnect the voltage and provide overload and short-circuit protection. The circuit breaker is controlled and supplied within the converter.

NOTICE
Material damage caused by switching on too frequently The cabinet unit can be damaged if it is switched on too frequently. • Do not switch on the cabinet unit more frequently than every 3 minutes.

Connecting

Table 4- 38 Terminal block X50 – checkback contact "main/circuit breaker closed"

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	NO	Max. load current: 10 A
2	NC	Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC
3	COM	Max. switching capacity: 250 VA
		Required minimum load: ≥ 1mA

[1] NO: normally-open contact, NC: normally-closed contact, COM: mid-position contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to dangerous electrical voltage from an external auxiliary supply

For rated currents of more than 800 A (single units) and above 1380 A (units that are connected in parallel) and with a live line voltage, dangerous voltages are present in the cabinet unit even when the circuit breaker is open. Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched.

- Observe the general safety rules when working on the device.

Setting the release current for the circuit breaker

When delivered, the circuit breakers are set to the rated current of the cabinet unit on the line side. Depending on the plant configuration, it can make sense to set lower values. The appropriate specifications are given in the operating instructions supplied with the circuit breaker.

In the delivery condition, the tripping current is set as follows:

Table 4- 39 Delivery condition of the overcurrent tripping unit

Order number	Output current	Overcurrent trip (L)	Short-circuit trip, non-delayed (I)
6SL3710-1GE38-4AAx	840 A	1.0	2
6SL3710-1GE41-0AAx	985 A	0.9	2
6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx	1560 A	1.0 (both switches)	2 (both switches)
6SL3710-1GF38-1AAx	810 A	1.0	2
6SL3710-1GH38-1AAx	810 A	1.0	2
6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx	1500 A	0.9 (both switches)	2 (both switches)

Note

Consequences when the circuit breaker is incorrectly set

The settings specified above should be checked. Incorrect settings can cause unwanted or delayed tripping of the circuit breaker and result in damage to the cabinet unit.

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults are described in the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.9 EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton installed in the cabinet door (option L45)

Description

The EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton with protective collar is integrated in the door of the cabinet unit. The contacts of the pushbutton are connected to terminal block –X120. In conjunction with options L57, L59, and L60, EMERGENCY OFF of category 0 and EMERGENCY STOP of category 1 can be activated.

A braking unit may be necessary to achieve the required shutdown times.

Note

Pressing the EMERGENCY OFF button

When the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton is pressed, the motor coasts to a standstill and the main motor voltage is disconnected (to EN 60204-1 (VDE 0113)) in conjunction with options L57, L59 and L60. Auxiliary voltages (e.g. for separately-driven fans or anti-condensation heating) may still be present. Certain sections of the converter (e.g., the closed-loop controller or any auxiliary equipment) may also remain live. If all the voltages have to be completely disconnected, the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton must be integrated in a protection concept, which must be implemented on the line side. For this purpose, an NC contact is installed at terminal block -X120.

Connecting

Table 4- 40 Terminal block X120 –checkback contact "EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the cabinet door"

Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
1	NC 1	Checkback contacts of EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in cabinet door Max. load current: 10 A Max. switching voltage: 250 V AC Max. switching capacity: 250 VA Required minimum load: ≥1 mA
2		
3	NC 2 [2]	
4		

[1] NC: Normally-closed contact

[2] Factory setting in converter for options L57, L59, and L60

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

4.10.10 Cabinet illumination with service socket (option L50)

Description

Option L50 includes cabinet lighting with an additional service socket for grounding socket-outlet (connector type F) according to CEE 7/4. The power supply for the cabinet lighting and the service socket is external and must be fuse-protected for max. 10 A.

It is an LED flashlight with an on/off switch, magnetic holders, and an approx. 3-m connecting cable. In the as-delivered condition, the flashlight is already positioned at the defined marks in the cabinet door and the connecting cable is wound on the holder.

Note

During operation of the cabinet unit, the cabinet lighting must remain attached in its position on the cabinet door. The position on the cabinet door is marked by an adhesive label. The connecting cable must be wound on its holder.

Connection

Table 4- 41 Terminal block X390 – connection for cabinet lighting with service socket

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	L1	230 V AC power supply
2	N	
3	PE	Protective conductor

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

4.10.11 Cabinet anti-condensation heating (option L55)

Description

The anti-condensation heating is used at low ambient temperatures and high levels of humidity to prevent condensation forming.

One 100 W heater is installed for a 400 mm and 600 mm cabinet panel, and two 100 W heaters for an 800/1000 and 1200 mm cabinet panel. The power supply (110 to 230 V AC) must be provided externally and protected with a fuse of up to 16 A.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to dangerous electrical voltage from an external auxiliary supply

When the external supply voltage for the cabinet anti-condensation heating is connected, dangerous voltages are present in the cabinet unit even when the main switch is open. Death or serious injury can result when live parts are touched.

- Observe the general safety rules when working on the device.



⚠CAUTION

Danger of injury through contact with hot surfaces on the cabinet anti-condensation heating

In operation, the cabinet anti-condensation heating can reach high temperatures, which can cause burns if touched.

- Allow the cabinet anti-condensation heating to cool down before starting any work.
- Use the appropriate personnel protection equipment, e.g. gloves.

Note

Provide a temperature controlled supply voltage

The supply voltage can be provided using a temperature control to avoid unnecessarily operating the anti-condensation heating for higher ambient temperatures.

Connecting

Table 4- 42 Terminal block X240 – connection for cabinet anti-condensation heating

Terminal	Designation	Technical data
1	L1	110 to 230 V AC Power supply
2	N	
3	PE	Protective conductor

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm^2

4.10.12 EMERGENCY OFF category 0; 230 V AC or 24 V DC (option L57)

Description

EMERGENCY OFF category 0 for uncontrolled stop according to EN 60204-1. This function disconnects the cabinet unit from the power supply via the line contactor, while bypassing the electronics by means of a safety combination according to EN 60204-1. The motor then coasts to a stop. To prevent the main contactor from switching under load, an OFF2 is triggered simultaneously. The operational status is indicated by means of three LEDs (-K120).

When delivered, the type with 230 V AC pushbutton circuit is set.

Note

Pressing the EMERGENCY OFF button

When the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton is pressed, an uncontrolled stop of the motor takes place and the main motor voltage is disconnected in accordance with EN 60204-1. Auxiliary voltages (e.g. for separately-driven fans or anti-condensation heating) may still be present. Certain sections of the converter (e.g., the closed-loop controller or any auxiliary equipment) also remain live. If all the voltages have to be completely disconnected, the EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton must be integrated in a protection concept, which must be implemented on the line side. For this purpose, an NC contact is installed at terminal -X120.

Connecting

Table 4- 43 Terminal block X120 – connection for EMERGENCY OFF category 0, 230 V AC and 24 V DC

Terminal	230 V AC and 24 V DC button circuit
4	Jumper wired in the factory
5	
7	Loop in EMERGENCY OFF button from line side, remove jumpers 7-8 and connect button
8	
9	Jumper wired in the factory
10	
11	Jumper wired in the factory
14	
12	Jumper wired in the factory
13	
15	"On" for monitored start: Remove jumpers 15–16 and connect button
16	
17	NO [1]: Checkback "trip safety combination"
18	

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Reconnection to the 24 V DC Button Circuit

When using the 24 V DC pushbutton circuit, you must remove the following jumpers at terminal block -X120:

- 4-5, 9-10, and 11-14

You must also insert the following jumpers at terminal block -X120:

- 4-11, 5-10, and 9-14

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -K120) are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions" of the Operating Instructions.

4.10.13 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 230 V AC (option L59)

Description

EMERGENCY STOP category 1 for controlled stopping according to EN 60204-1. This function stops the drive by means of a quick stop along a deceleration ramp that must be parameterized. The cabinet unit is then disconnected from the power supply via the line contactor, while bypassing the electronics by means of a safety combination (according to EN 60204-1).
The operating state and the function are indicated by eight LEDs (-K120, -K121).

Connecting

Table 4- 44 Terminal block X120 – connection for EMERGENCY STOP category 1 (230 V AC)

Terminal	Technical data
4	Jumper wired in the factory
5	
7	Loop in EMERGENCY OFF button from line side, remove jumpers 7-8 and connect button
8	
9	Jumper wired in the factory
10	
11	Jumper wired in the factory
14	
12	Jumper wired in the factory
13	
15	"On" for monitored start: Remove jumpers 15–16 and connect button.
16	
17	NO [1]: Checkback "trip safety combination"
18	

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Setting

The time (0.5 to 30 s) set for the contactor safety combination (-K121) should be longer than (or at least equal to) the time that the drive requires to reach a standstill via the quick stop (OFF3 ramp-down time, p1135), as the converter is disconnected from the power supply when the time expires (at -K121).

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -K120, -K121) are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions" of the Operating Instructions.

4.10.14 EMERGENCY STOP category 1; 24 V DC (option L60)

Description

EMERGENCY STOP category 1 for controlled stopping according to EN 60204-1. This function stops the drive by means of a quick stop along a deceleration ramp that must be parameterized. The cabinet unit is then disconnected from the power supply via the line contactor, while bypassing the electronics by means of a safety combination in accordance with EN 60204-1).
The operating state and the function are indicated by five LEDs (-K120).

Connecting

Table 4- 45 Terminal block X120 – connection for EMERGENCY STOP category 1 (24 V DC)

Terminal	Technical data
4	Jumper wired in the factory
11	
5	Jumper wired in the factory
10	
7	Loop in EMERGENCY OFF button from line side, remove jumpers 7-8 and connect button
8	
9	Jumper wired in the factory
14	
12	Jumper wired in the factory
13	
15	"On" for monitored start: Remove jumpers 15–16 and connect button.
16	
17	NO [1]: Checkback "trip safety combination"
18	

[1] NO: NO contact

Max. connectable cross-section: 4 mm²

Setting

The time (0.5 to 30 s) set for the contactor safety combination (-K120) should be longer than (or at least equal to) the time that the drive requires to reach a standstill via the quick stop (OFF3 ramp-down time, p1135), as the converter is disconnected from the power supply when the time expires (at -K120).

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -K120) are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions" of the Operating Instructions.

4.10.15 25 kW Braking Unit (Option L61); 50 kW Braking Unit (Option L62)

Description

Braking units are used when regenerative energy occurs occasionally and briefly, for example when the brake is applied to the drive (EMERGENCY STOP). The braking units comprise a chopper power unit and a load resistor, which must be attached externally. To monitor the braking resistor, it has an integrated thermostatic switch, which is included in the shutdown circuit of the cabinet unit.

Table 4- 46 Load data for the braking units

Line voltage	Continuous chopper power P_{DB}	Peak chopper output P_{15}	Chopper P_{20} output P_{20}	Chopper P_{40} output P_{40}	Braking resistor R_B	Max. current
380 V ... 480 V	25 kW	125 kW	100 kW	50 kW	4.4 Ω ± 7.5%	189 A
380 V ... 480 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	2.2 Ω ± 7.5%	378 A
500 V ... 600 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	3.4 Ω ± 7.5%	306 A
660 V ... 690 V	25 kW	125 kW	100 kW	50 kW	9.8 Ω ± 7.5%	127 A
660 V ... 690 V	50 kW	250 kW	200 kW	100 kW	4.9 Ω ± 7.5%	255 A

Installing the braking resistor

The braking resistor should not be installed in the vicinity of the converter. The installation location must fulfill the following conditions:

- The braking resistors are only suitable for floor mounting.
- The maximum cable length between the cabinet unit and braking resistor is 100 m.
- Sufficient space must be available for dissipating the energy converted by the braking resistor.
- A sufficient distance from flammable objects must be maintained.
- The braking resistor must be installed as a free-standing unit.
- Objects must not be placed on or anywhere above the braking resistor.
- The braking resistor should not be installed underneath fire detection systems, since these could be triggered by the resulting heat.
- For outdoor installation, a hood must be provided to protect the braking resistor from precipitation (in accordance with degree of protection IP20).

⚠ WARNING

Danger to life due to fire when incorrectly installed

If incorrectly installed (non-observance of the cooling clearances or inadequate clearances to flammable objects), there is the danger of fire damage with death or severe injury.

- It is essential that you maintain a cooling clearance of 200 mm on all sides of the braking resistor with ventilation grills.
- Maintain sufficient clearance to objects that can burn.



⚠ CAUTION

Danger of injury due to touching hot surfaces on the braking resistor

In operation, the braking resistor can reach high temperatures, which can cause burns if touched.

- Allow the braking resistor to cool down before starting any work.
- Wear the appropriate personnel protection equipment, e.g. gloves.

Table 4- 47 Dimensions of the braking resistors

	Unit	25 kW resistor (option L61)	50 kW resistor (option L62)
Width	mm	740	810
Height	mm	605	1325
Depth	mm	485	485

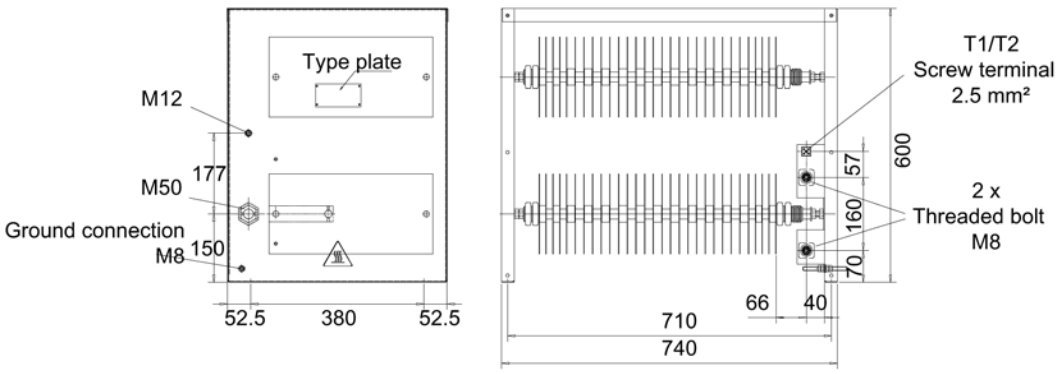


Figure 4-21 Dimension drawing for braking resistor (25 kW)

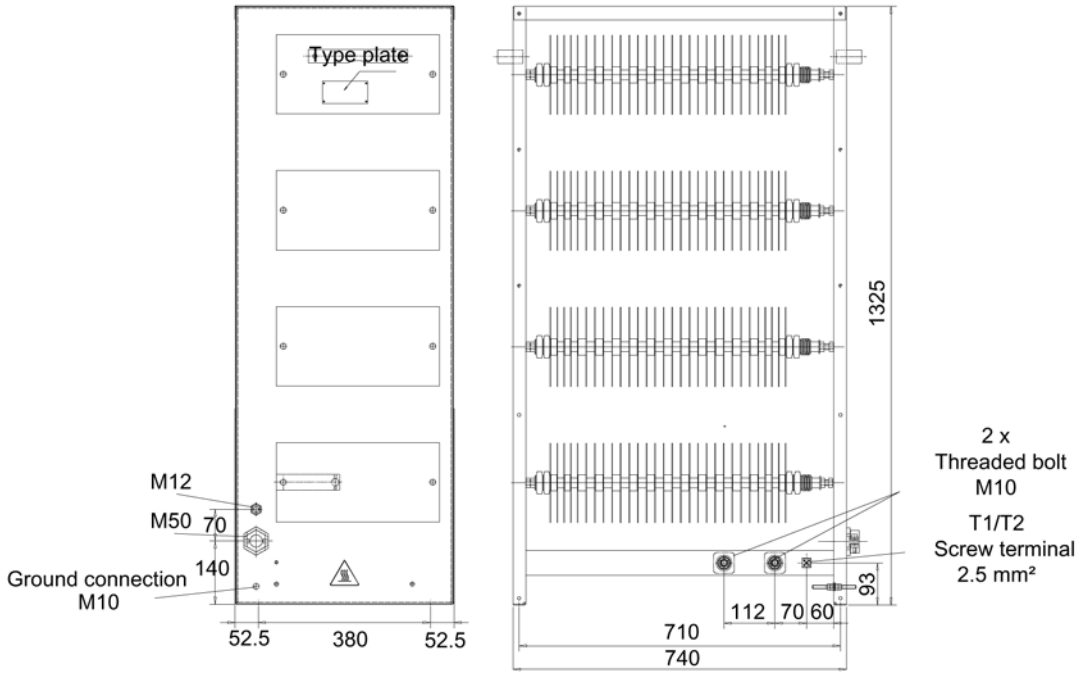


Figure 4-22 Dimension drawing for braking resistor (50 kW)

Connecting the braking resistor

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to fire caused by ground fault / short-circuit for non-protected connections to the braking resistor

Non-protected connections to the braking resistor can cause fire with smoke in the event of a short-circuit or ground fault that can cause severe injuries or death.

- Route the cables to the braking resistor so that a ground fault or short-circuit can be ruled out.
- Comply with local installation regulations that enable this fault to be ruled out.
- Protect the cables from mechanical damage.
- Apply one of the following measures:
  - Use cables with double insulation.
  - Maintain adequate clearance, e.g. using spacers.
  - Route the cables in separate cable ducts or pipes.

NOTICE
Material damage when exceeding the maximum permitted cable length Exceeding the maximum permitted cable length to the braking resistor can cause material damage in the event of component failure. • Observe the maximum cable length between the cabinet unit and the braking resistor of 100 m.

Table 4- 48 Terminal block -X5 – connection for external braking resistor

Terminal	Description of function
1	Braking resistor connection
2	Braking resistor connection

Max. connectable cross-section: 70 mm²

Recommended cable cross-sections:

- For L61 (25 kW): 35 mm²
- For L62 (50 kW): 50 mm²

Connecting the thermostatic switch

Table 4- 49 Installing the thermostatic switch for the external braking resistor in the monitoring circuit of the cabinet unit by connecting to the Control Unit (without option G60)

Terminal	Description of function
T1	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X132:9 (DO12)
T2	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X122:5 (DI16)

Max. connectable cross-section (due to CU320-2): 1.5 mm²

Table 4- 50 Installing the thermostatic switch for the external braking resistor in the monitoring circuit of the cabinet unit by connecting to the TM31 (with option G60)

Terminal	Description of function
T1	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X541:1 (P24 V)
T2	Thermostatic switch connection: connection with terminal X541:5 (DI11)

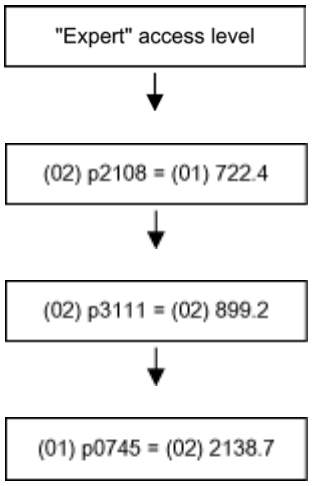
Max. connectable cross-section (due to TM31): 1.5 mm²

4.10.15.1 Commissioning

Commissioning

When commissioning via STARTER, parameters are assigned to "external fault 3" and acknowledged automatically when option L61 or L62 are selected.

When commissioning via AOP30, the parameter entries required have to be set subsequently.



Set the "Expert" access level on the operator panel
<Key pushbutton> - <Access level> - Set "Expert" and confirm.

Connect digital input 4 (DI4) on the Control Unit to the first input of "External fault 3."

Connect the "Operation" signal to the second input of "External fault 3."

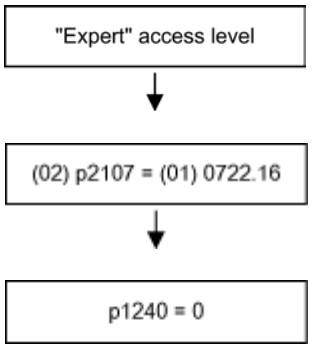
Connect "Acknowledge fault" to digital output 15 (DO15) on the Control Unit.

Cabinet unit settings

If the thermostatic switch for the braking resistor is connected, appropriate settings have to be made so that the drive is brought to a standstill if a fault occurs.

Once the device has been successfully commissioned, you have to make the following changes:

Connect the thermostatic switch of the braking resistor to DI 16 of the Control Unit



Set the "Expert" access level on the operator panel
<Key pushbutton> - <Access level> - Set "Expert" and confirm.

Interconnect external fault 2 to DI 16 of the Control Unit.

Disabling the Vdc-max controller
When the brake chopper is used, the Vdc-max controller must be switched off.

Connect the thermostatic switch of the braking resistor to DI 11 of the TM31 (option G60)

"Expert" access level

↓

(02) p2107 = (03) 4022.11

↓

p1240 = 0

Set the "Expert" access level on the operator panel
<Key pushbutton> - <Access level> - Set "Expert" and confirm.

Interconnect external fault 2 to DI 11 of the TM31.

Disabling the Vdc-max controller
When the brake chopper is used, the Vdc-max controller must be switched off.

4.10.15.2 Diagnosis and duty cycles

Diagnosis

If the thermostat is opened due to a thermal overload on the braking resistor, fault F7861 ("External Fault 2") is triggered and the drive is switched off with OFF2.

If the brake chopper triggers a fault, fault F7862 "External fault 3" is triggered in the drive.

You can acknowledge malfunctions in the braking unit by pressing the "Acknowledge" button on the operator panel when the DC link voltage is present).

Duty cycles

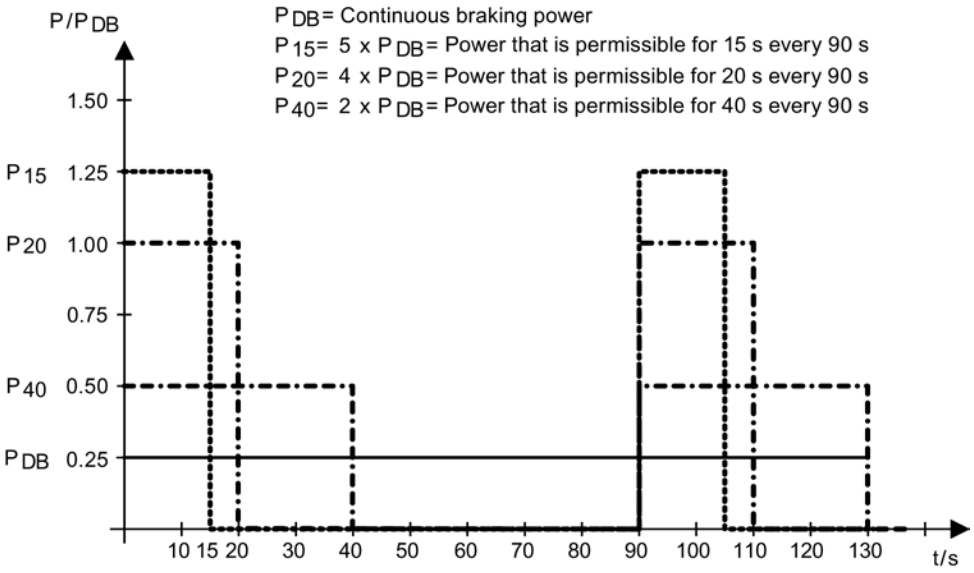


Figure 4-23 Duty cycles for the braking resistors

4.10.15.3 Threshold switch

The response threshold at which the braking unit is activated and the DC link voltage generated during braking are specified in the following table.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock when operating threshold switches

Operating the threshold switch when a voltage is present can cause death or serious injury.

- Only operate the threshold switch when the cabinet unit is switched off and the DC link capacitors are discharged.

Table 4- 51 Response thresholds of the braking units

Rated voltage	Response threshold	Switch position	Comment
3 AC 380 ... 480 V	673 V	1	774 V is the default factory setting. For line voltages of between 3 AC 380 V and 400 V, the response threshold can be set to 673 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (673/774)² = 0.75. Therefore, the maximum possible braking power is 75 %.
	774 V	2	
3 AC 500 ... 600 V	841 V	1	967 V is the default factory setting. With a supply voltage of 500 V 3 AC, the response threshold can be set to 841 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (841/967)² = 0.75. Therefore, the maximum possible braking power is 75 %.
	967 V	2	
3 AC 660 ... 690 V	1070 V	1	1158 V is the default factory setting. With a supply voltage of 660 V 3 AC, the response threshold can be set to 1070 V to reduce the voltage stress on the motor and converter. This does, however, reduce the possible braking power with the square of the voltage (1070/1158)² = 0.85. Therefore, the maximum possible braking power is 85 %.
	1158 V	2	

Position of the threshold switch

The Braking Module is located in the top section of the cabinet unit in the discharged air duct of the Power Module. The position of the threshold switch can be taken from the figures below.

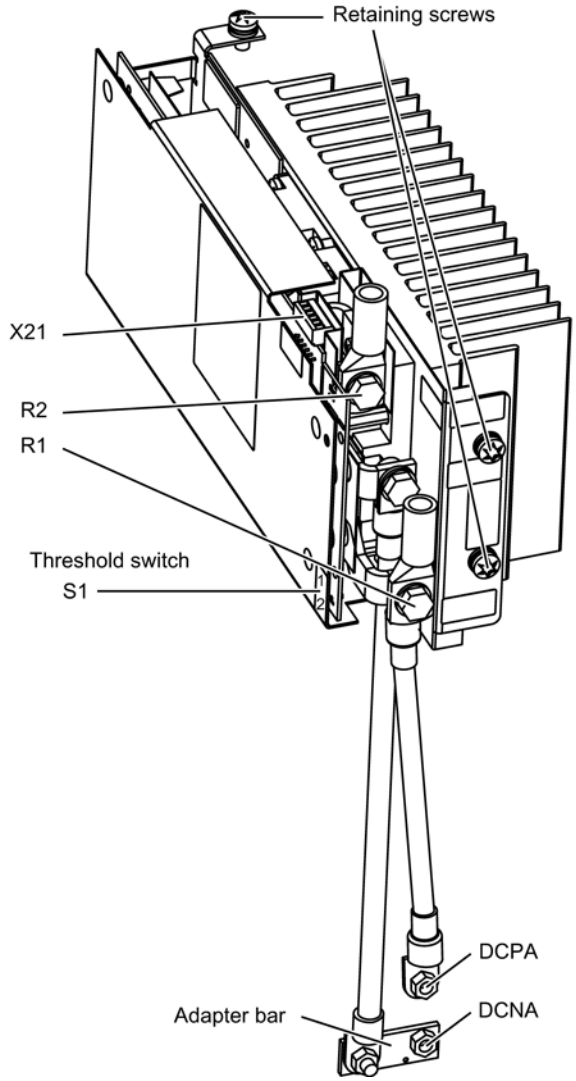


Figure 4-24 Braking Modules for frame size FX

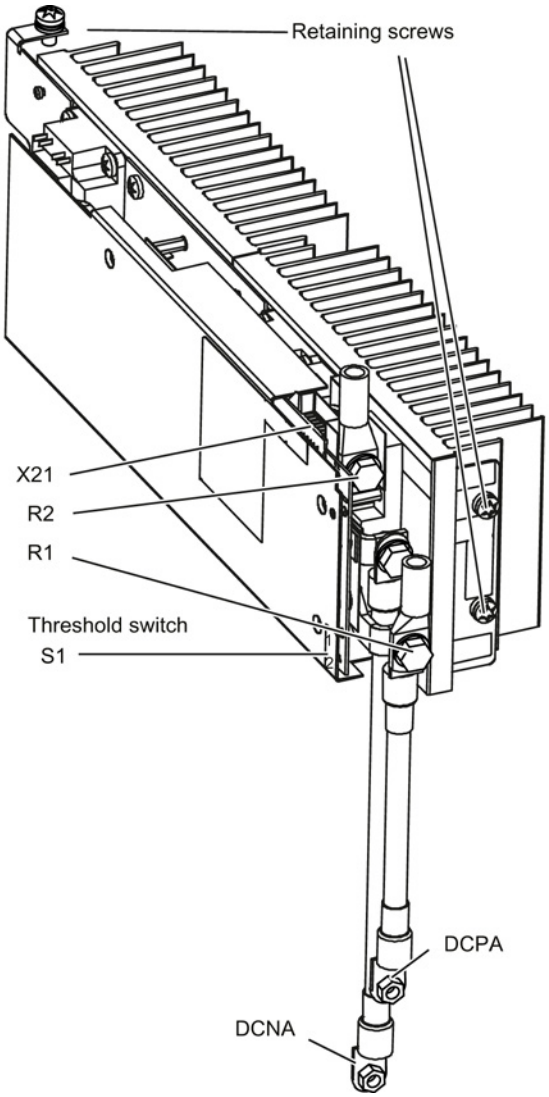


Figure 4-25 Braking Modules for frame size GX

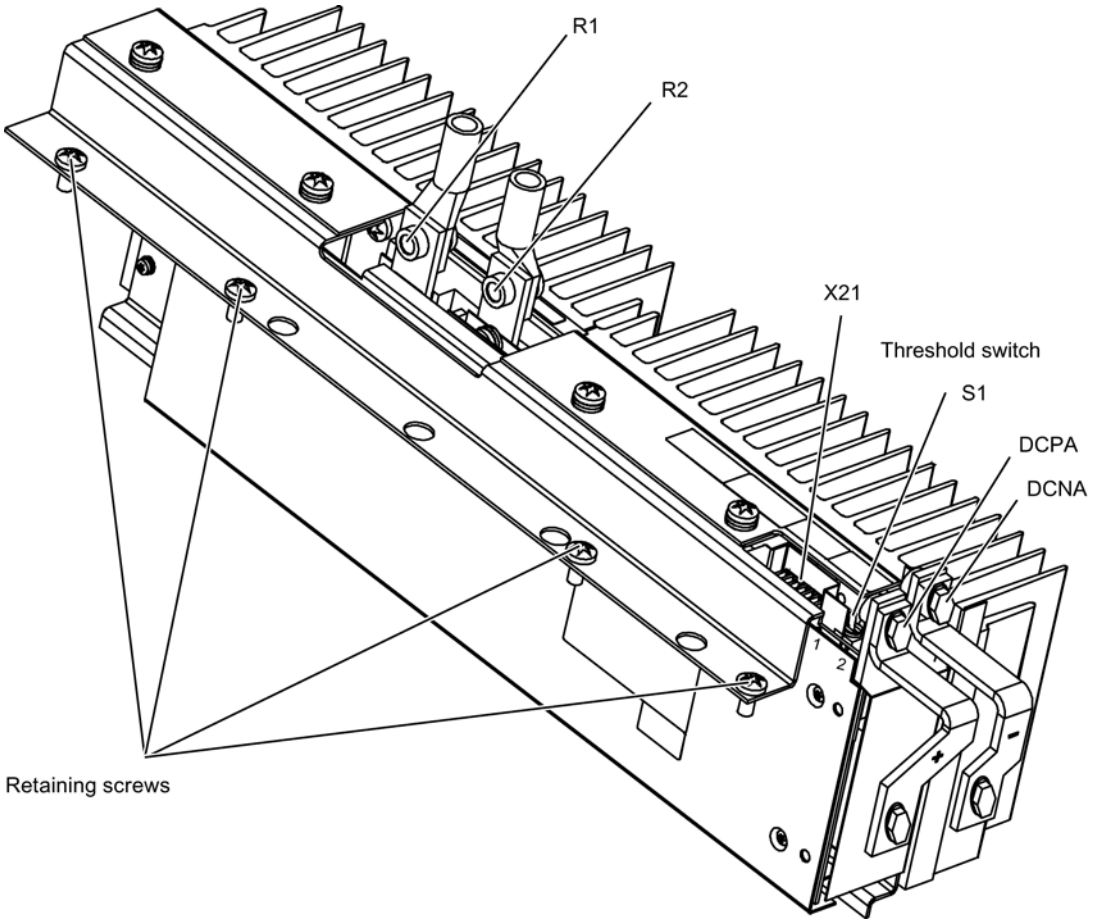


Figure 4-26 Braking Modules for frame sizes HX and JX

Position of the threshold switch

Note

Switch positions

The threshold switches for the Braking Modules are positioned on the panel as follows:

- Braking Modules for frame sizes FX and GX: position "1" is up; position "2" is down
- Braking Modules for frame sizes HX and JX: position "1" is back; position "2" is front

4.10.16 Option L01 Quick starting (option L76)

Description

If L01 (line harmonics filter) is in use, after the converter has been switched off, as a result of the principle of operation, a waiting period of at least 30 seconds must be allowed to elapse before switching on again. If a restart command is given before the waiting period has expired, fault F30027 "Power unit: time monitoring for DC link pre-charging" is output.

With option L76, the additional waiting period before the next switch-on is not required.

4.10.17 Thermistor Motor Protection Unit (Option L83/L84)

Description

This option includes the thermistor motor protection unit (with PTB approval) for PTC thermistor sensors (PTC resistor type A) for warning and shutdown. The power supply for the thermistor motor protection unit is provided inside the converter where the evaluation is also performed.

Option L83 triggers the "external alarm 1" (A7850) if a fault occurs.

Option L84 triggers the "external fault 1" (F7860) if a fault occurs.

Connection

Table 4- 52 -B127/B125 – connection for thermistor motor protection device

Equipment designation	Description of function
-B127: T1, T2	Thermistor motor protection (alarm)
-B125: T1, T2	Thermistor motor protection (shutdown)

The PTC thermistor sensors are connected directly to terminals T1 and T2 of the evaluation unit.

Table 4- 53 Maximum cable length for the sensor circuit

Line cross-section in mm²	Line length in m
2.5	2 x 2800
1.5	2 x 1500
0.5	2 x 500

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -B125, -B127) are described in the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the equipment.

4.10.18 PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86)

Description

Note

Additional operating instructions

The PT100 evaluation unit and the parameters for the measurement channels are described in the "Additional Operating Instructions".

The PT100 evaluation unit can monitor up to six sensors. The sensors can be connected in a two or three-wire system. With the two-wire system, inputs xT1 and xT3 must be assigned. With the three-wire system, input xT2 must also be connected to -B140, -B141 (x = 1, 2, 3). The limit values can be freely programmed for each channel. Shielded signal cables are recommended. If this is not possible, the sensor cables should have at least have twisted-pair wires.

In the delivery condition, the measurement channels are divided into two groups of 3 channels each. With motors, for example, this means that three PT100s in the stator windings and two PT100s in the motor bearings can be monitored. Unused channels can be suppressed via parameters.

The output relays are integrated in the internal fault and alarm train of the cabinet unit. The power for the PT100 evaluation unit is supplied and the evaluation itself executed within the converter.

When the temperature set for "alarm" is exceeded, "external alarm 1" (A7850) is triggered. When the temperature set for "fault" is exceeded, "external fault 1" (F7860) is triggered.

Connecting

Table 4- 54 Terminals -B140, -B141 – connection for PT100 evaluation unit

Terminal	Technical data
-B140: 1T1-1T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 1; group 1
-B140: 2T1-2T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 2; group 1
-B140: 3T1-3T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 3; group 1
-B141: 1T1-1T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 1; group 2
-B141: 2T1-2T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 2; group 2
-B141: 3T1-3T3	24 ... 240 V AC/DC; PT100; sensor 3; group 2

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Diagnostics

Messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -B140, B141) are described in the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.19 Insulation Monitor (Option L87)

Description

In non-grounded systems (IT systems), the insulation monitor checks the entire electrically-connected circuit for insulation faults. The insulation resistance as well as all the insulation faults from the mains supply to the motor in the cabinet are detected. Two response values (between 1 kΩ and 10 MΩ) can be set. If a response value in undershot, an alarm is output to the terminal. A system fault is output via the signaling relay system.

When the cabinet unit is delivered, the plant configuration (one or several loads in one electrically-connected network) and the protection philosophy (immediate shutdown in the event of an insulation fault or restricted continued motion) can vary. This means that the signaling relays of the insulation monitor must be integrated by the customer in the fault and warning sequence.

Safety information

Note

Number of insulation monitors

Only one insulation monitor can be used within the same electrically-connected network.

Note

Removing the connection bracket for the interference-suppression capacitor

When the insulation monitor is used, the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor must be removed (see "Electrical installation / Removing the connection clip to the interference suppression capacitor with operation from an ungrounded line supply (IT system)").

Controls and displays on the insulation monitor

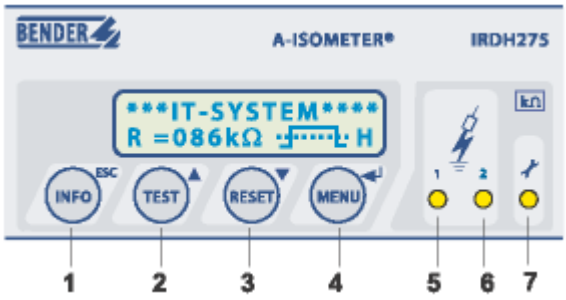


Figure 4-27 Controls and displays on the insulation monitor

Table 4- 55 Meaning of the controls and displays on the insulation monitor

Position	Meaning
1	INFO key: To request standard information/ ESC key: Back menu function
2	TEST key: Call up self-test Arrow key up: Parameter change, scroll
3	RESET button: Delete insulation and fault messages Arrow key down: Parameter change, scroll
4	Menu key: Call up menu system Enter key: Confirm parameter change
5	Alarm LED 1 lights up: Insulation fault, first alarm threshold reached
6	Alarm LED 2 lights up: Insulation fault, second alarm threshold reached
7	LED lights up: System error present

Connecting

Table 4- 56 Connections on insulation monitor

Terminal	Technical data
A1	Supply voltage via 6 A melting fuse: 88 to 264 V AC, 77 to 286 V DC
A2	
L1	Connection of the 3 AC system to be monitored
L2	
AK	Connection to coupling device
KE	PE connection
T1	External test button
T2	External test button
R1	External reset key (NC contact or wire jumper otherwise the fault code is not stored)
R2	External reset key (NC contact or wire jumper)
F1	STANDBY with aid of F1, F2 function input:
F2	
M+	External kΩ display, analog output (0 ... 400 µA)
M-	External kΩ display, analog output (0 ... 400 µA)
A	Serial interface RS 485 (termination by means of 120 ohm resistor)
B	
11	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (mid-position contact)
12	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (NC contact)
14	Signaling relay ALARM 1 (NO contact)
21	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (mid-position contact)
22	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (NC contact)
24	Signaling relay ALARM 2 (NO contact)

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Diagnostics

For a description of messages output during operation and in the event of faults (meaning of LEDs on -B101), consult the Operating Instructions in the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.20 CBC10 CAN Communication Board (option G20)

Description

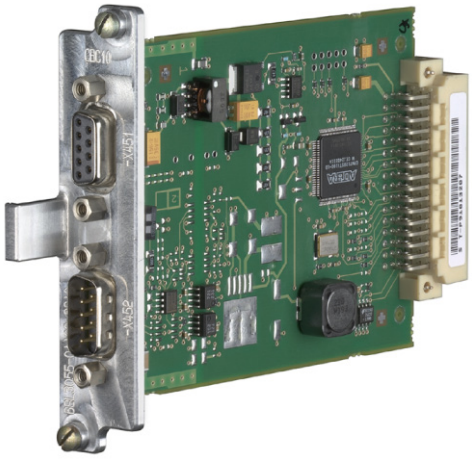


Figure 4-28 CAN CBC10 Communication Board

The CBC10 CANopen communication board (CAN Communication Board) is used to connect drives in the SINAMICS drive system to higher-level automation systems with a CAN bus.

The CANopen Option Board uses two 9-pin SUB D connectors for the connection to the CAN bus system.

The connectors can be used as inputs or outputs. Unused pins are plated through.

Among others, the following transmission rates are supported: 10, 20, 50, 125, 250, 500, 800 kBaud, and 1 Mbaud.

NOTICE
Damage or malfunctions to the Option Board by inserting and withdrawing in operation Withdrawing and inserting Option Boards during operation can damage them or cause the Option Boards to malfunction. • Only withdraw or insert Option Boards when the Control Unit is in a no voltage state.

The module is inserted in the option slot of the Control Unit at the factory.

Interface overview

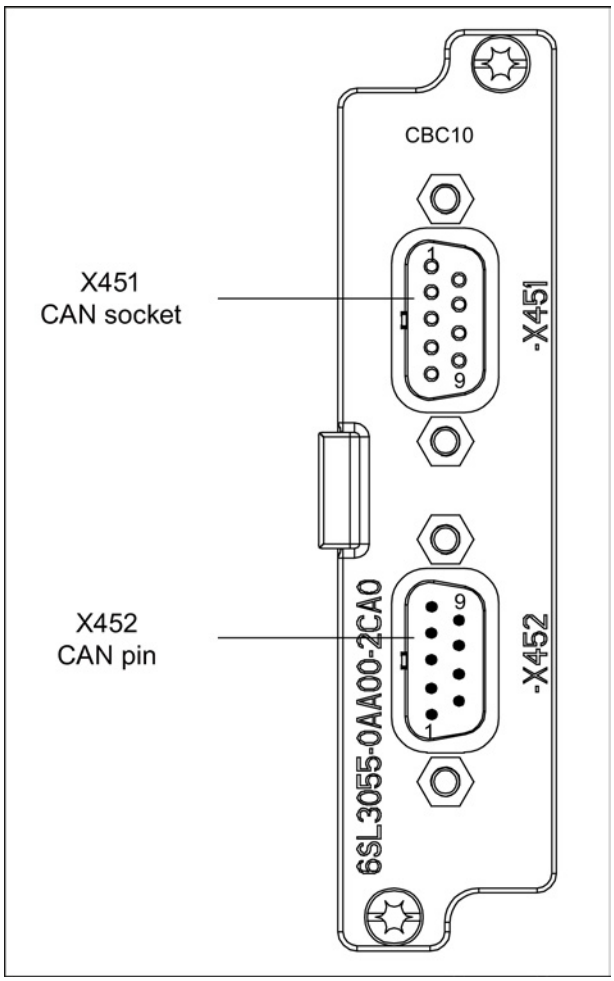
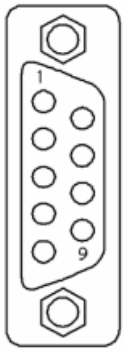


Figure 4-29 CAN CBC10 Communication Board

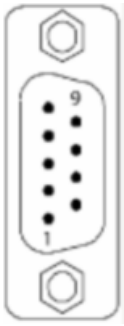
CAN bus interface -X451

Table 4- 57 CAN bus interface -X451

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	Reserved, do not use	
	2	CAN_L	CAN signal (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	CAN ground
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	CAN_SHLD	Optional shield
	6	GND	CAN ground
	7	CAN_H	CAN signal
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	9	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: 9-pin Sub-D socket			

CAN bus interface -X452

Table 4- 58 CAN bus interface -X452

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	Reserved, do not use	
	2	CAN_L	CAN signal (dominant low)
	3	CAN_GND	CAN ground
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	CAN_SHLD	Optional shield
	6	GND	CAN ground
	7	CAN_H	CAN signal
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	9	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector (pins)			

Further information about communication via CAN bus

Note

Further information

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the CANopen interface can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the accompanying customer DVD.

4.10.21 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20 (Option G33)

Description

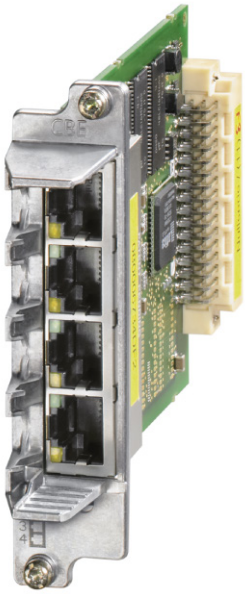


Figure 4-30 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20

Interface module CBE20 is used for communication via PROFINET.

The module is inserted in the option slot of the Control Unit at the factory.

4 Ethernet interfaces are available on the module. Diagnosis of the function mode and communication are possible via LEDs.

Interface overview

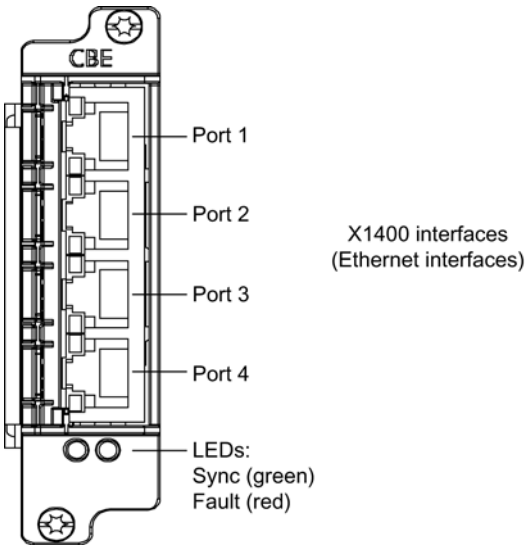


Figure 4-31 Communication Board Ethernet CBE20

MAC address

The MAC address of the Ethernet interfaces is indicated on the upper side of the CBE20. The plate is not visible when the module is installed.

Note

Note the MAC address

Remove the module from the option slot of the Control Unit and note down the MAC address so that it is available during subsequent commissioning.

Removal/installation

NOTICE
Damage or malfunctions to the Option Board by inserting and withdrawing in operation Withdrawing and inserting Option Boards during operation can damage them or cause the Option Boards to malfunction. • Only withdraw or insert Option Boards when the Control Unit is in a no voltage state.

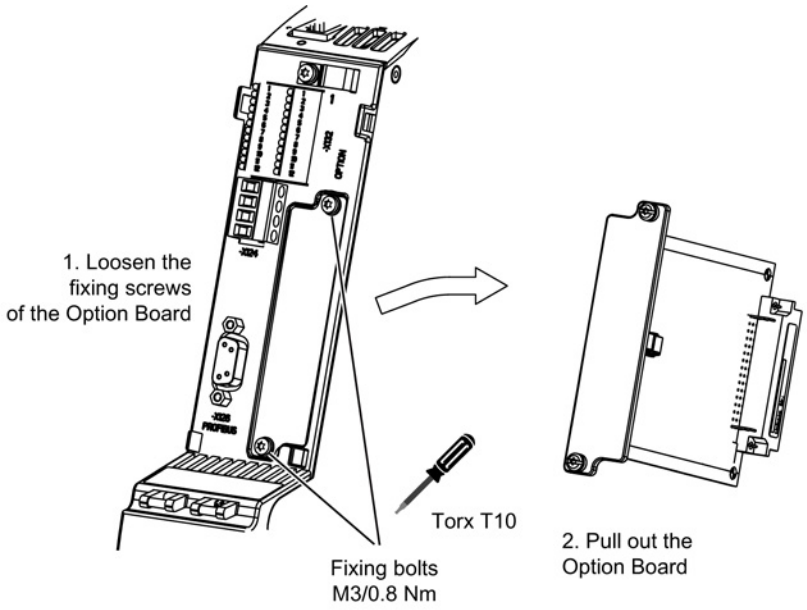
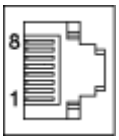


Figure 4-32 Removing the CBE20 from the option slot on the Control Unit

X1400 Ethernet interface

Table 4- 59 Connector X1400, port 1 - 4

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	RX+	Receive data +
	2	RX-	Receive data -
	3	TX+	Transmit data +
	4	---	Reserved, do not use
	5	---	Reserved, do not use
	6	TX-	Transmit data -
	7	---	Reserved, do not use
	8	---	Reserved, do not use
	Screened backshell	M_EXT	Screen, permanently connected

4.10.22 TM150 temperature sensor module (option G51)

4.10.22.1 Description

Terminal Module TM150 is used for sensing and evaluating several temperature sensors. The temperature is measured in a temperature range from -99 °C to +250 °C for the following temperature sensors:

- PT100 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- PT1000 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- KTY84 (with monitoring for wire breakage and short-circuit)
- PTC (with short-circuit monitoring)
- Bimetallic NC contact (without monitoring)

For the temperature sensor inputs, for each terminal block the evaluation can be parameterized for 1x2-wire, 2x2-wire, 3-wire or 4-wire. There is no galvanic isolation in the TM150.

A maximum of 12 temperature sensors can be connected at the TM150 Terminal Module.

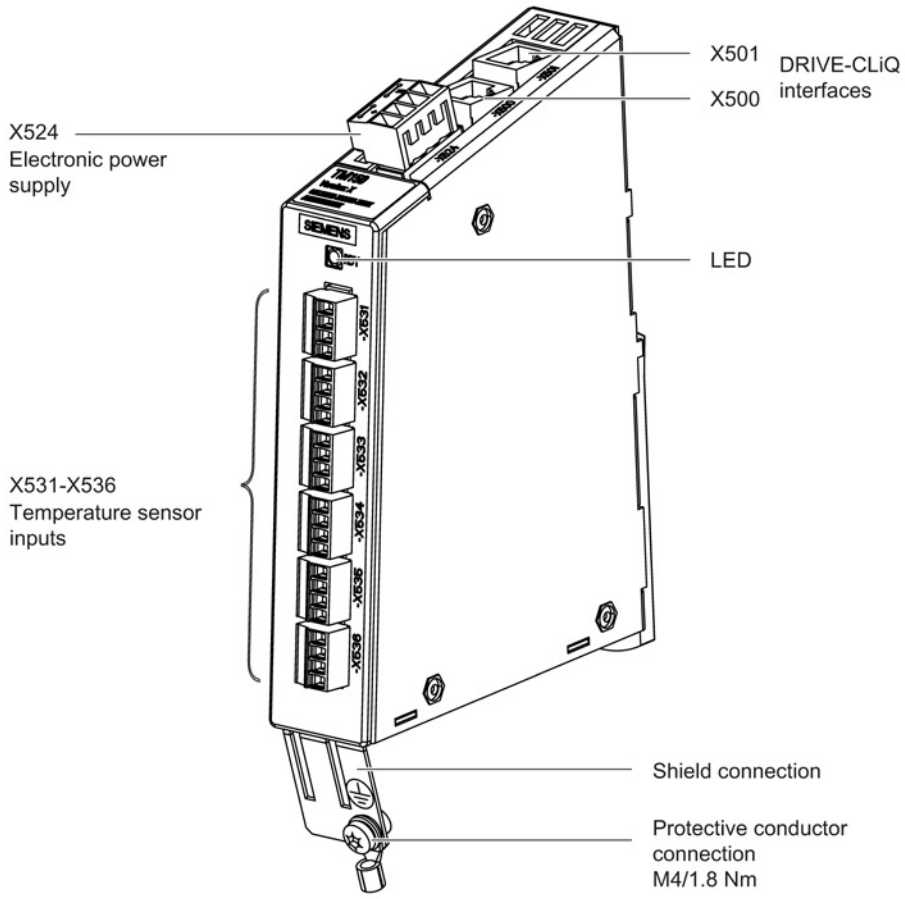
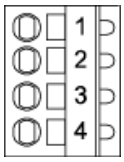


Figure 4-33 Terminal Module TM150

4.10.22.2 Connecting

Temperature sensor connections

Table 4- 60 X531-X536 temperature sensor inputs

	Terminal	Function 1x2-/2x2-wire	Function 3 and 4-wire	Technical data
	1	+ Temp (channel x)	+ (channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 1x2 wires Connection of the 2nd measurement cable for sensors with 4-wires
	2	- Temp (channel x)	- (channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 1x2 wires Connection of the 1st measurement cable for sensors with 3 and 4-wires.
	3	+ Temp (channel y)	+ I_c (constant current, positive channel x)	Temperature sensor connection for sensors with 2x2, 3 and 4-wires
	4	- Temp (channel y)	- I_c (constant current, negative channel x)	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm^2

Measuring current via temperature sensor connection: approx. 0.83 mA

When connecting temperature sensors with 3 wires, a jumper must be inserted between X53x.2 and X53x.4.

Table 4- 61 Channel assignment

Terminal	Channel number [x] for 1x2, 3 and 4-wires	Channel number [y] for 2x2 wires
X531	0	6
X532	1	7
X533	2	8
X534	3	9
X535	4	10
X536	5	11



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock in the event of voltage flashovers at the temperature sensor

Voltage flashovers in the signal electronics can occur in motors without safe electrical separation of the temperature sensors.

- Use temperature sensors that fully comply with the specifications of the safety isolation.

NOTICE

Damage to the motor in the event of incorrectly connected KTY temperature sensor

A KTY temperature sensor connected with incorrect polarity cannot detect if the motor overheats. Overheating can cause damage to the motor.

- Connect a KTY temperature sensor with the correct polarity.

NOTICE

Overheating of the motor through jumpering the temperature sensor connections

Jumpering of the temperature sensor connections "+ Temp" and "- Temp" results in incorrect measurement results. Damage to the motor can result if the overheating is not detected.

- When using several temperature sensors, separately connect the individual sensors to "+ Temp" and "- Temp".

NOTICE

Overheating of the motor through cables with too high a resistance

Cable length and cable cross-section can falsify the temperature measurement (10 Ω cable resistance for a PT100 can falsify the measurement result by 10%). Damage to the motor can result if the overheating is not detected.

- Use only cable lengths ≤ 300 m.
- For cable lengths >100 m, use cables with a cross-section of ≥1 mm^2.

NOTICE

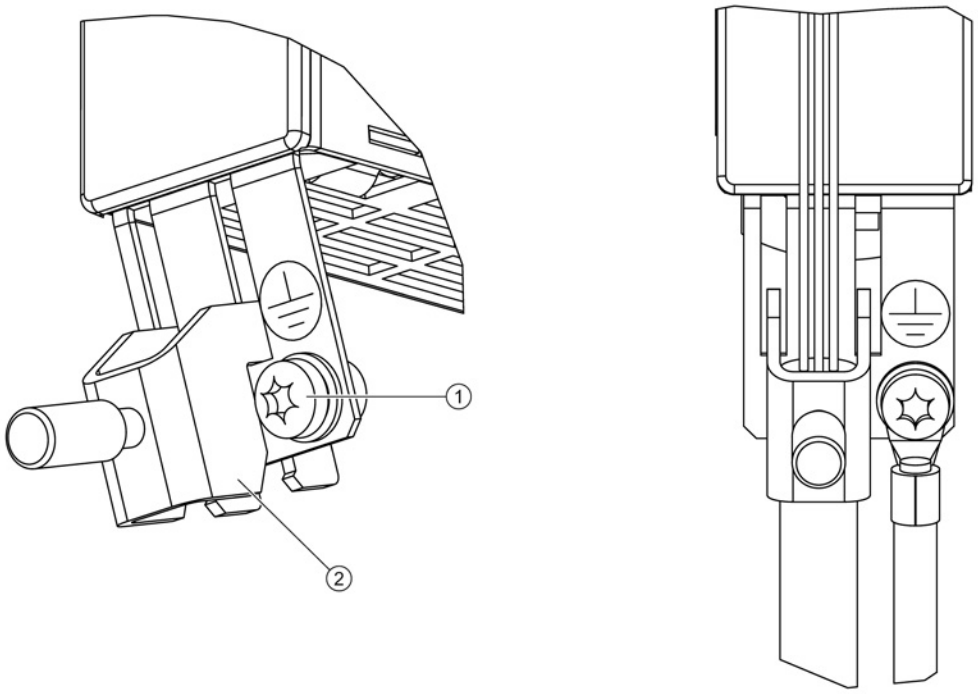
Device failure as a result of unshielded or incorrectly routed cables to temperature sensors

Unshielded or incorrectly routed cables to temperature sensors can result in interference being coupled into the signal processing electronics from the power side. This can result in significant disturbance of all signals (fault messages) up to failure of individual components (destruction of the devices).

- Only use shielded cables as temperature sensor cables.
- If temperature sensor cables are routed together with the motor cable, use separately shielded cables twisted in pairs.
- Connect the cable shield to ground potential through a large surface area.
- Recommendation: Use suitable Motion Connect cables.

Protective conductor connection and shield support

The following diagram shows a typical Weidmüller shield connection clamp for the shield supports.



① Protective conductor connection M4/1.8 Nm
② Shield connection terminal, Weidmüller company, type: KLBÜ CO1, order number: 1753311001

Figure 4-34 Shield support and protective conductor connection of the TM150

4.10.22.3 Connection examples

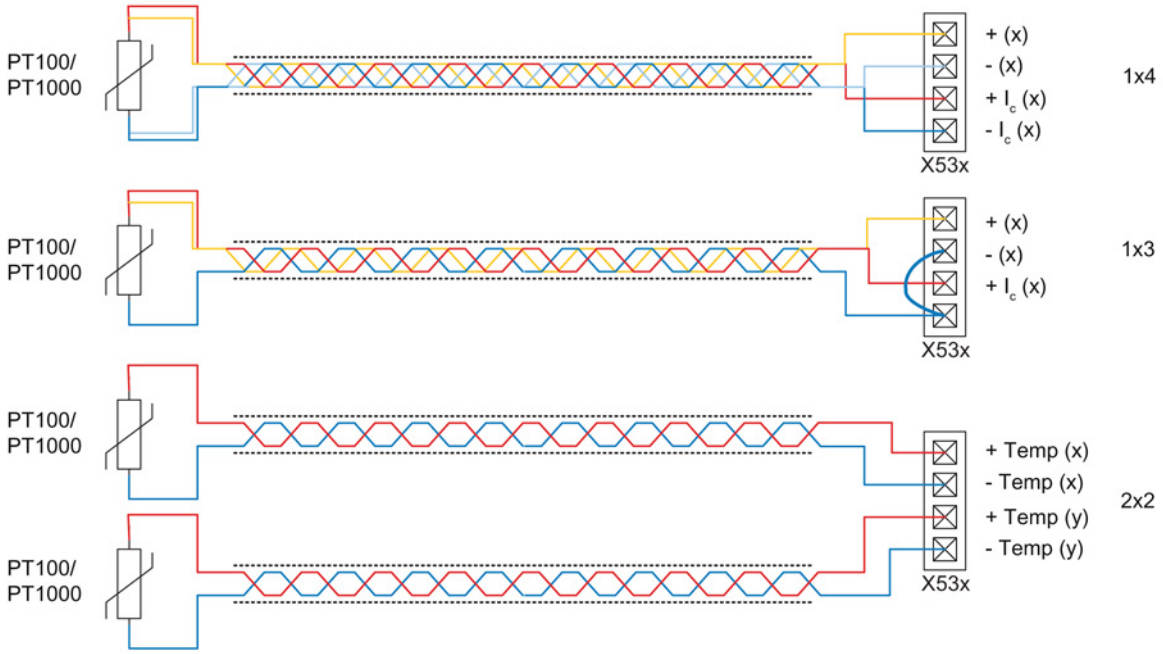


Figure 4-35 Connecting a PT100/PT1000 with 2x2, 3 and 4-wires to the temperature sensor inputs X53x of Terminal Module TM150

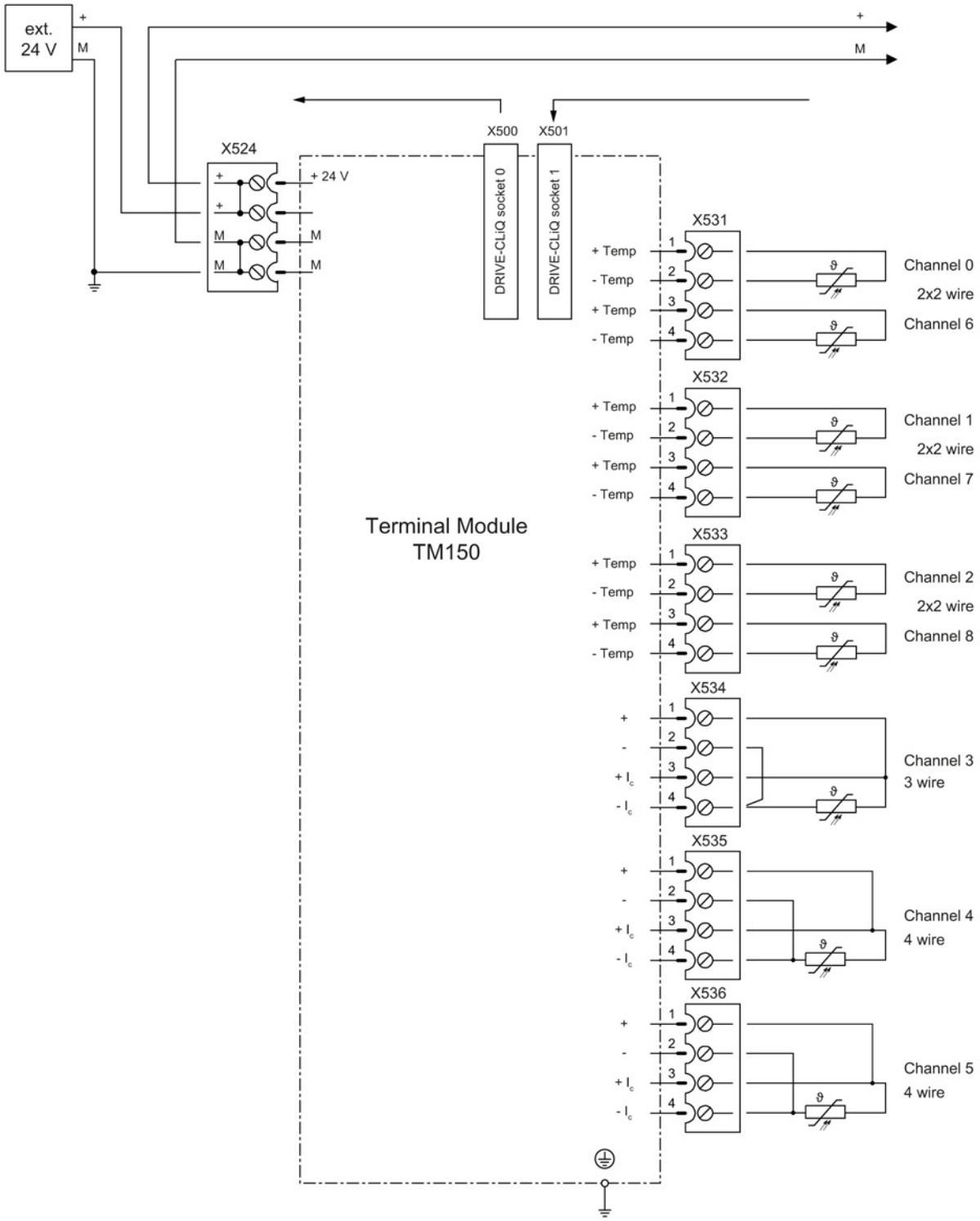


Figure 4-36 Connection example for a Terminal Module TM150

4.10.23 SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50)

4.10.23.1 Description

The SMC30 Sensor Module is used for determining the actual motor speed. The signals emitted by the rotary pulse encoder are converted here and made available to the closed-loop controller via the DRIVE-CLiQ interface for evaluation purposes.

In conjunction with SINAMICS G150 the following encoders can be connected to the SMC30 Sensor Module:

- TTL encoder
- HTL encoder
- KTY or PTC temperature sensor

Table 4- 62 Connectable encoders with supply voltage

Encoder type	X520 (SUB-D)	X521 (terminal)	X531 (terminal)	Open-circuit monitoring	Remote sense
HTL bipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
HTL unipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
TTL bipolar 24 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
TTL bipolar 5 V	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	To X520
TTL unipolar	No	No	No	No	No

Table 4- 63 Maximum signal cable lengths

Encoder type	Maximum signal cable length in m
TTL	100
HTL unipolar	100
HTL bipolar	300

Note

Prefer a bipolar connection

Because the physical transmission media is more robust, the bipolar connection should always be used for HTL encoders. The unipolar connection should only be used if the encoder type does not output push-pull signals.

Note

Only connect one encoder system

Only one encoder system may be connected to the encoder module, either at X520 or at X521/X531. The corresponding unused interface must not be used.

Table 4- 64 Specification of measuring systems that can be connected

Parameter	Designation	Threshold [4]	Min.	Max.	Unit
High signal level (TTL bipolar at X520 or X521/X531) [1]	U_{Hdiff}		2	5	V
Low signal level (TTL bipolar to X520 or X521/X531) [1]	U_{Ldiff}		-5	-2	V
High signal level (HTL unipolar)	U_H [4]	High	17	V_{CC}	V
		Low	10	V_{CC}	V
Low signal level (HTL unipolar)	U_L [4]	High	0	7	V
		Low	0	2	V
High signal level (HTL bipolar) [2]	U_{Hdiff}		3	V_{CC}	V
Low signal level (HTL bipolar) [2]	U_{Ldiff}		$-V_{CC}$	-3	V
Signal frequency	f_S		-	300	kHz
Edge spacing	t_{min}		100	-	ns
Zero pulse inactive time (before and after A=B=high)	t_{Lo}		640	$(t_{ALo-BHi} - t_{Hi})/2$ [3]	ns
Zero pulse active time (while A=B=high and beyond)	t_{Hi}		640	$t_{ALo-BHi} - 2 \times t_{Lo}$ [3]	ns

[1] Other signal levels according to the RS 422 standard.

[2] The absolute level of the individual signals varies between 0 V and V_{CC} of the measuring system.

[3] $t_{ALo-BHi}$ is not a specified value, but is the time between the falling edge of track A and the next but one rising edge of track B.

[4] The threshold can be set via p0405.04 (switching threshold); the setting on delivery is "Low."

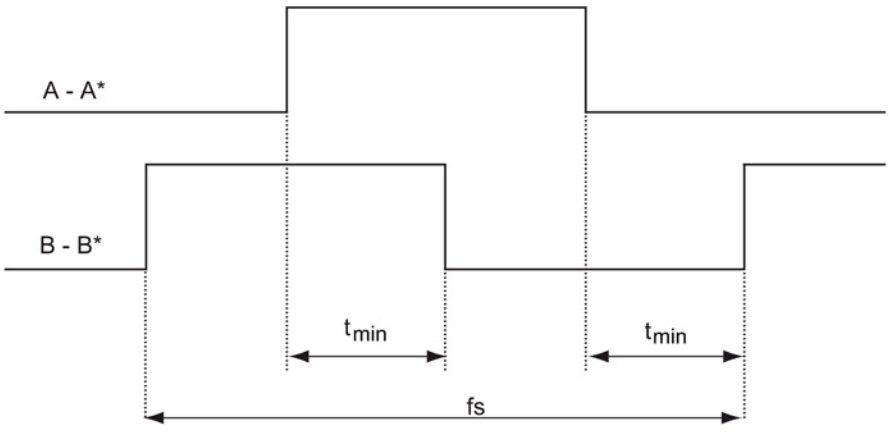


Figure 4-37 Signal characteristic of the A and B track between two edges: time between two edges with pulse encoders

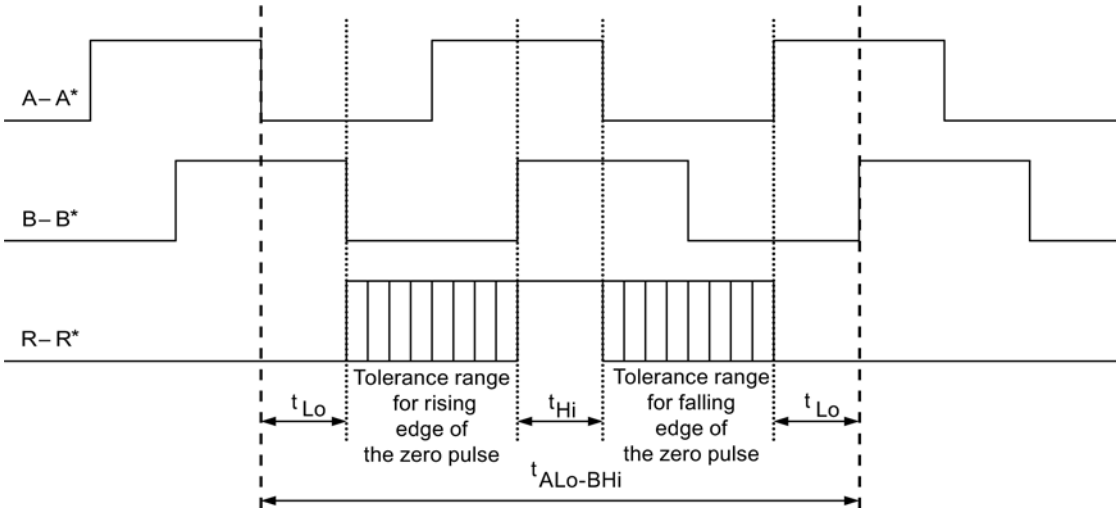


Figure 4-38 Position of the zero pulse to the track signals

For encoders with a 5-V supply at X521/X531, the cable length is dependent on the encoder current (this applies cable cross-sections of 0.5 mm²):

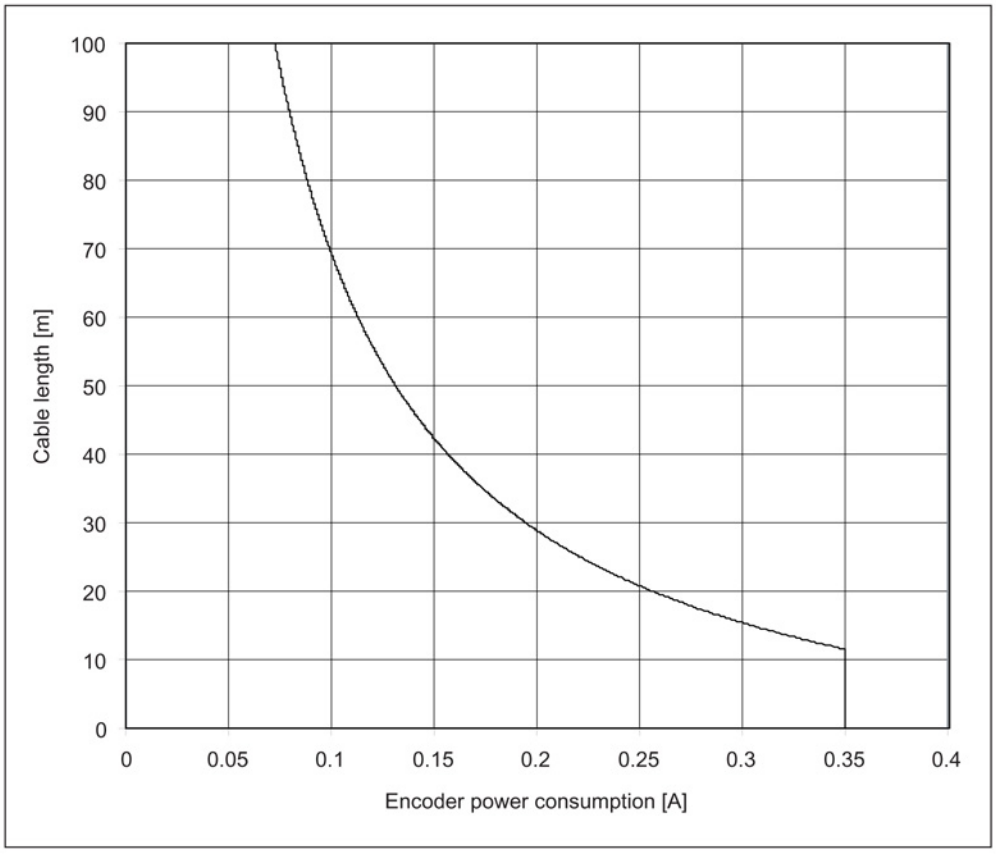


Figure 4-39 Signal cable length as a function of the encoder current consumption

For encoders without Remote Sense the permissible cable length is restricted to 100 m (reason: the voltage drop depends on the cable length and the encoder current).

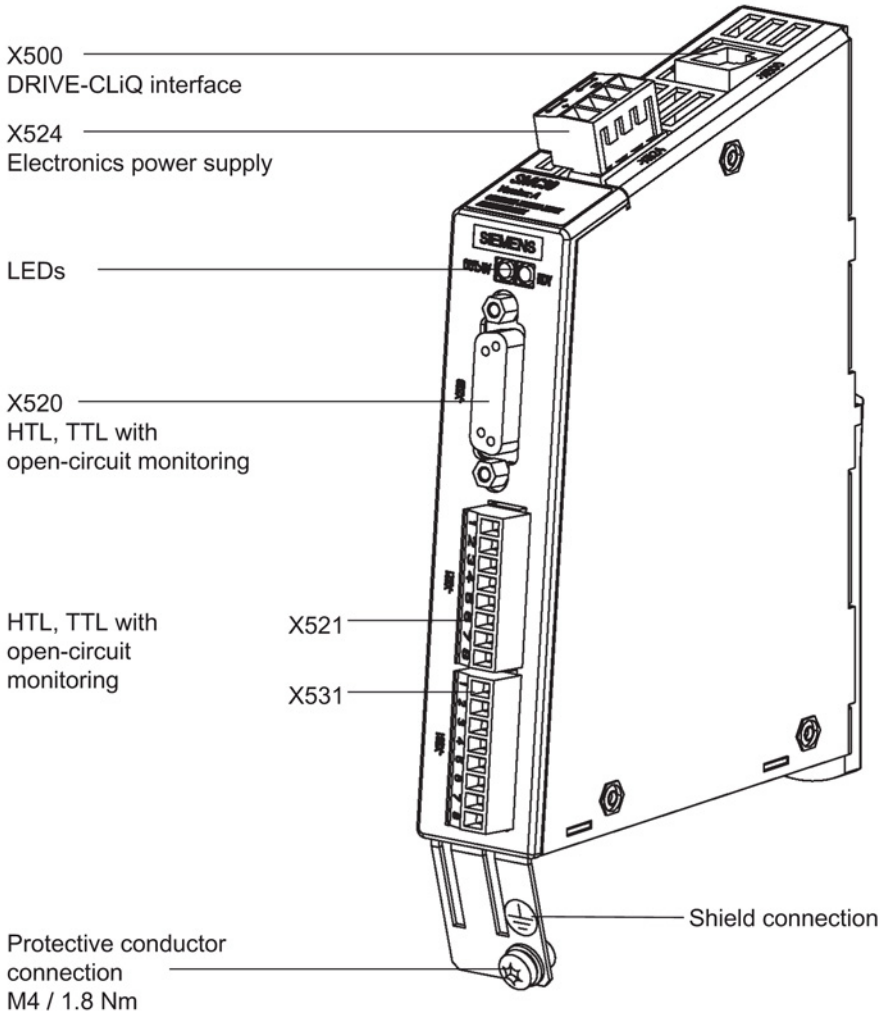
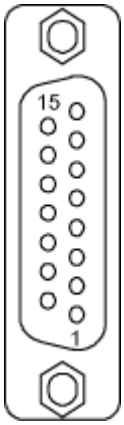


Figure 4-40 SMC30 Sensor Module

4.10.23.2 Connection

X520: Encoder connection 1 for HTL/TTL encoder with open-circuit monitoring

Table 4- 65 Encoder connection X520

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	+Temp [1]	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	2	Reserved, do not use	
	3	Reserved, do not use	
	4	P encoder 5 V/24 V	Encoder supply
	5	P encoder 5 V/24 V	Encoder supply
	6	P sense	Sense input encoder power supply
	7	M encoder (M)	Ground for encoder power supply
	8	-Temp [1]	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	9	M sense	Ground sense input
	10	R	Reference signal R
	11	R*	Inverse reference signal R
	12	B*	Inverse incremental signal B
	13	B	Incremental signal B
	14	A*	Inverse incremental signal A
	15	A	Incremental signal A
Connector type: 15-pin Sub-D socket			
Measuring current via temperature sensor connection: 2 mA			

[1] Accuracy of temperature measurement:
- KTY: ±7° C (including evaluation)
- PTC: ±5° C (including evaluation)



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock in the event of voltage flashovers at the temperature sensor

Voltage flashovers in the signal electronics can occur in motors without safe electrical separation of the temperature sensors.

- Only use temperature sensors that fully comply with the specifications of the safety isolation.

NOTICE

Device failure as a result of unshielded or incorrectly routed cables to temperature sensors

Unshielded or incorrectly routed cables to temperature sensors can result in interference being coupled into the signal processing electronics from the power side. This can result in significant disturbance of all signals (fault messages) up to failure of individual components (destruction of the devices).

- Only use shielded cables as temperature sensor cables.
- If temperature sensor cables are routed together with the motor cable, use separately shielded cables twisted in pairs.
- Connect the cable shield to ground potential through a large surface area.
- Recommendation: Use suitable Motion Connect cables.

NOTICE

Damage to the motor in the event of incorrectly connected KTY temperature sensor

A KTY temperature sensor connected with incorrect polarity cannot detect if the motor overheats. Overheating can cause damage to the motor.

- Connect a KTY temperature sensor with the correct polarity.

NOTICE

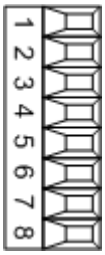
Damage to the encoder due to incorrect supply voltage

The encoder power supply can be parameterized to 5 V or 24 V. The encoder may be damaged for an incorrect parameterization.

- Select the appropriate supply voltage.

X521 / X531: Encoder connection 2 for HTL/TTL encoder with open-circuit monitoring

Table 4- 66 Encoder connection X521

	Terminal	Signal name	Technical data
	1	A	Incremental signal A
	2	A*	Inverse incremental signal A
	3	B	Incremental signal B
	4	B*	Inverse incremental signal B
	5	R	Reference signal R
	6	R*	Inverse reference signal R
	7	CTRL	Control signal
	8	M	Ground via inductivity

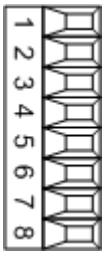
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Note

Operation of unipolar HTL encoders

When unipolar HTL encoders are used, A*, B*, and R* on the terminal block must be jumpered with M_Encoder (X531).

Table 4- 67 Encoder connection X531

	Terminal	Signal name	Technical data
	1	P encoder 5 V/24 V	Encoder supply
	2	M encoder	Ground for encoder power supply
	3	-Temp [1)]	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	4	+Temp [1)]	Temperature sensor connection KTY84-1C130/PTC
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	Reserved, do not use	
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	

Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²

Measuring current via temperature sensor connection: 2 mA

1) Accuracy of temperature measurement:
- KTY: ±7° C (including evaluation)
- PTC: ±5° C (including evaluation)



⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to electric shock in the event of voltage flashovers at the temperature sensor

Voltage flashovers in the signal electronics can occur in motors without safe electrical separation of the temperature sensors.

- Only use temperature sensors that fully comply with the specifications of the safety isolation.

NOTICE

Device failure as a result of unshielded or incorrectly routed cables to temperature sensors

Unshielded or incorrectly routed cables to temperature sensors can result in interference being coupled into the signal processing electronics from the power side. This can result in significant disturbance of all signals (fault messages) up to failure of individual components (destruction of the devices).

- Only use shielded cables as temperature sensor cables.
- If temperature sensor cables are routed together with the motor cable, use separately shielded cables twisted in pairs.
- Connect the cable shield to ground potential through a large surface area.
- Recommendation: Use suitable Motion Connect cables.

NOTICE

Damage to the motor in the event of incorrectly connected KTY temperature sensor

A KTY temperature sensor connected with incorrect polarity cannot detect if the motor overheats. Overheating can cause damage to the motor.

- Connect a KTY temperature sensor with the correct polarity.

NOTICE

Damage to the encoder due to incorrect supply voltage

The encoder power supply can be parameterized to 5 V or 24 V. The encoder may be damaged for an incorrect parameterization.

- Select the appropriate supply voltage.

Note

Cable shield for the encoder connection via terminals

Note that when the encoder is connected via terminals, the cable shield must be applied to the module.

4.10.23.3 Connection examples

Connection example 1: HTL encoder, bipolar, without zero marker -> p0405 = 9 (hex)

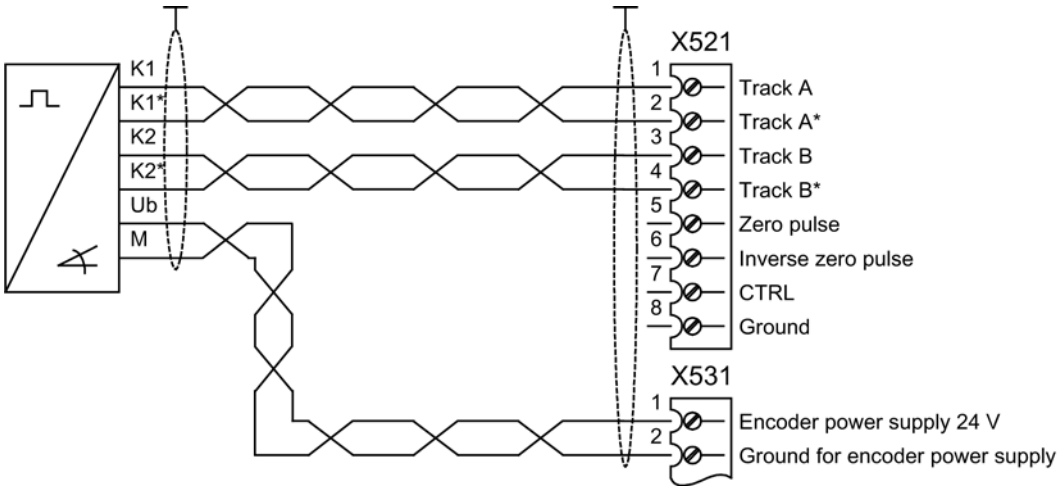


Figure 4-41 Connection example 1: HTL encoder, bipolar, without zero marker

Connection example 2: TTL encoder, unipolar, without zero marker -> p0405 = A (hex)

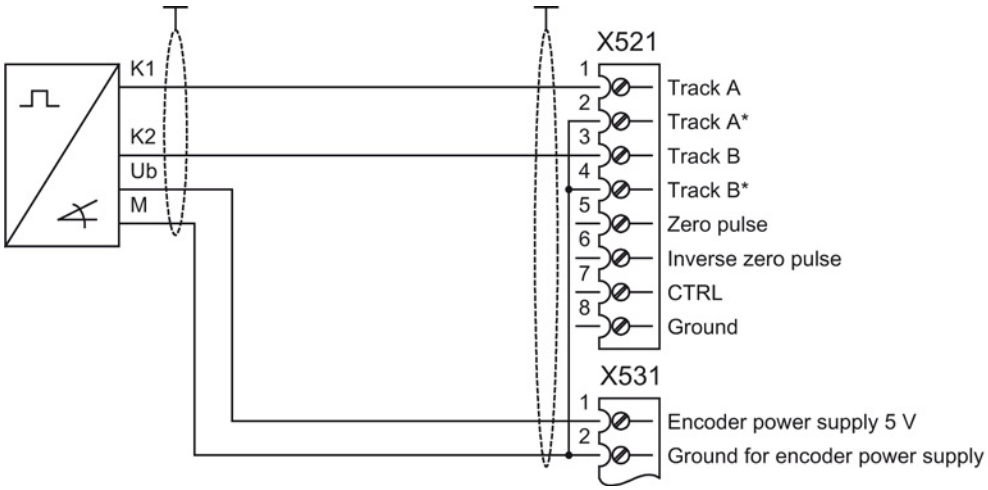


Figure 4-42 Connection example 2: TTL encoder, unipolar, without zero marker

4.10.24 Voltage Sensing Module for determining the actual motor speed and the phase angle (option K51)

Description

The VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module can operate a permanent-magnet synchronous machine without an encoder with the requirement for switching to a machine which is already rotating (capture function).

The terminals on the Voltage Sensing Module (-B51) are pre-assigned in the factory and must not be changed by the customer.

To commission the function, the permanent-field synchronous machine without encoder must be input and "Flying restart" activated with p1200.

Removing the connector jumper in the VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module

The connector jumper in terminal X530 on the lowerside of the component must be removed if you are using the cabinet unit on a non-grounded line supply (IT system) on the Voltage Sensing Module (VSM10).

Use two screwdrivers or a suitable tool in order to relieve the holding springs in the terminal and then withdraw the connector jumper.



Terminal X530 with connector jumper



Relieve the springs and withdraw the connector jumper

Note

False tripping caused by not removing the connection clip with a non-grounded line supply

Failure to remove the connection clip to the basic interference suppression module on a non-grounded line supply (IT system) can cause false tripping for a sensitive IT system monitoring.

- Remove the connection kit for a non-grounded line supply (IT system).

4.10.25 Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52)

Description

With option K50, an SMC30 Sensor Module is included in the cabinet unit. The additional SMC30 Sensor Module enables reliable actual-value acquisition when using Safety Integrated Extended Functions (requires a license: option K01).

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

A detailed description of the full functionality and handling of the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.26 Customer terminal block TM31 (option G60)

Description

With option G60, a TM31 interface module (customer terminal block –A60) is already installed in the cabinet unit. This provides the following interfaces:

- 8 digital inputs
- 4 bidirectional digital inputs/outputs
- 2 relay outputs with changeover contact
- 2 analog inputs
- 2 analog outputs
- 1 temperature sensor input (KTY84-130/PTC)

The description of the interfaces is given in the Chapter "Electrical Installation/Signal connections"

Integration of the interfaces takes place using pre-interconnections prepared in the factory, which can be selected during commissioning.

4.10.27 Additional customer terminal block TM31 (option G61)

Description

With option G60, a TM31 interface module (customer terminal block –A60) is already installed in the cabinet unit. A second module (–A61) provides the following additional digital and analog inputs/outputs in the drive system:

- 8 digital inputs
- 4 bidirectional digital inputs/outputs
- 2 relay outputs with changeover contact
- 2 analog inputs
- 2 analog outputs
- 1 temperature sensor input (KTY84-130/PTC)

The second TM31 must be installed on the system side. Default settings are not provided.

4.10.28 Terminal Board TB30 (option G62)

Description

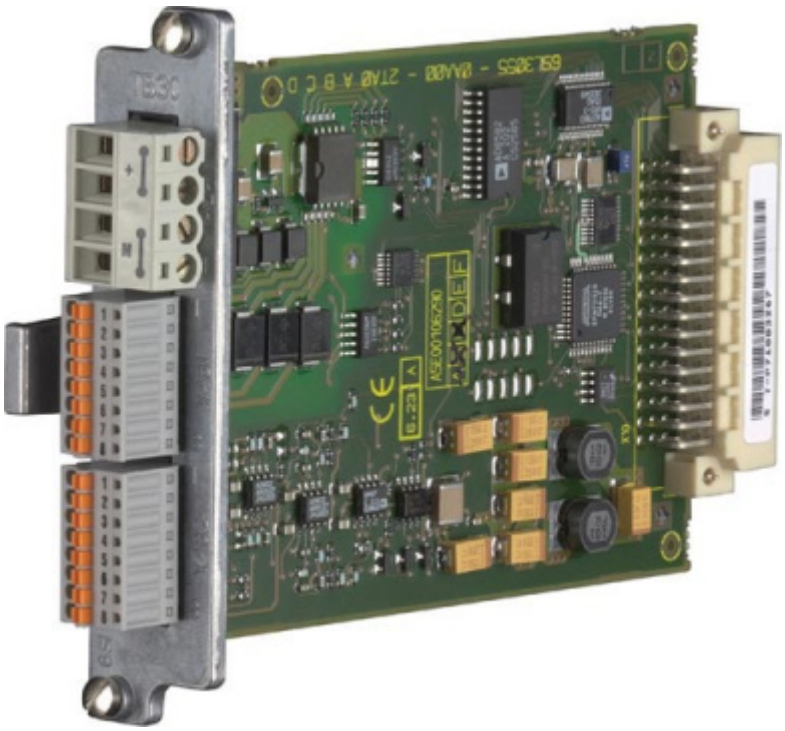


Figure 4-43 TB30 Terminal Board

The TB30 Terminal Board supports the addition of digital inputs/digital outputs and analog inputs/analog outputs to the Control Unit.

The following are located on the TB30 Terminal Board:

- Power supply for digital inputs/digital outputs
- 4 digital inputs
- 4 digital outputs
- 2 analog inputs
- 2 analog outputs

The TB30 Terminal Board plugs into the option slot on the Control Unit.

A shield connection for the signal cable shield is located on the Control Unit.

NOTICE
Damage or malfunctions to the Option Board by inserting and withdrawing in operation
Withdrawing and inserting Option Boards during operation can damage them or cause the Option Boards to malfunction. • Only withdraw or insert Option Boards when the Control Unit is in a no voltage state.

The module is inserted in the option slot of the Control Unit at the factory.

Interface overview

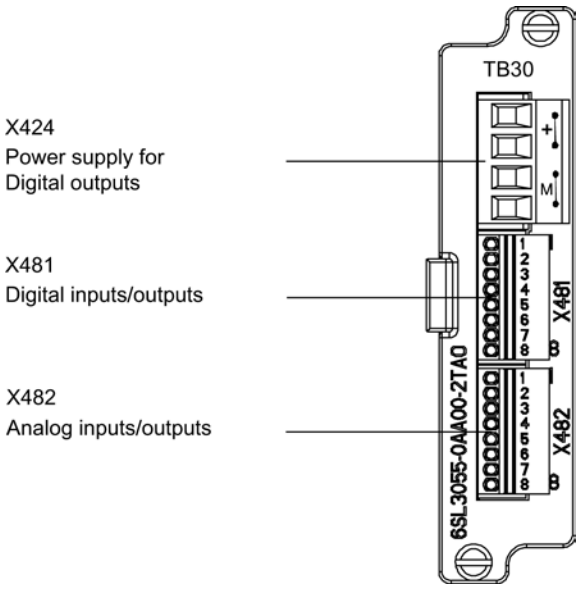


Figure 4-44 TB30 Terminal Board interface overview

Connection overview

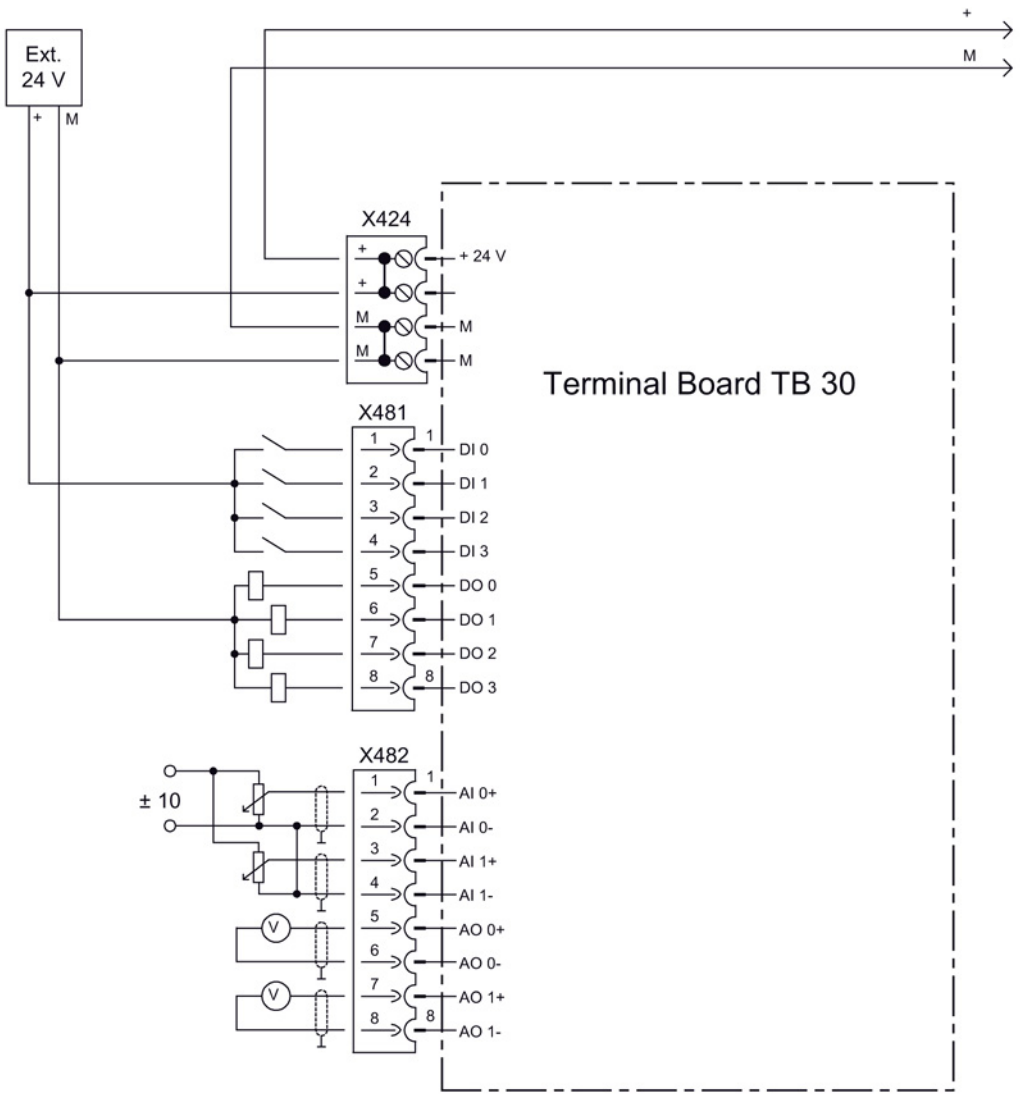
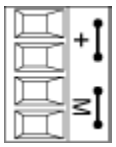


Figure 4-45 Connection overview TB30 Terminal Board

X424 power supply, digital outputs

Table 4- 68 Terminal block X424

	Terminal	Function	Technical data
	+	Power supply	Voltage: 24 V DC (20.4 ... 28.8 V) Current consumption: Max. 4 A (per digital output max. 0.5 A) Max. current via jumper in connector: 20 A (15 A according to UL/CSA)
	+	Power supply	
	M	Ground	
	M	Ground	

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm^2

The maximum cable length that can be connected is 10 m.

Note

The two "+" and "M" terminals are jumpered in the connector. This ensures that the supply voltage is looped through.

This power supply is required for the digital outputs only.
The electronics power supply and the power supply for the analog inputs/outputs are taken from the option slot of the Control Unit.

Note

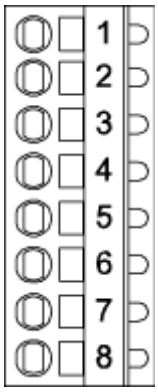
The power supply of the digital outputs and the electronic power supply of the Control Unit are isolated.

Note

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X481 Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 69 Terminal block X481

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 0	Voltage: - 3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 10 mA at 24 V DC Ground reference: X424. M Input delay: - For "0" to "1": 20 µs - For "1" to "0": 100 µs Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 ... 30 V Low level: -3 ... 5 V
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	DO 0	Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Ground reference: X424.M Continued-short-circuit-proof Output delay: - For "0" to "1": Typ. 150 µs at 0.5 A resistive load (500 µs maximum) - For "1" to "0": Typically 50 µs at 0.5 A resistive load Switching frequency: - For resistive load: Max. 100 Hz - For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz - For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	6	DO 1	
	7	DO 2	
	8	DO 3	

Max. connectable cross-section: 0.5 mm^2

[1] DI: digital input, DO: Digital output

Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as "low".

The power supply and the digital inputs/outputs are isolated from the Control Unit.

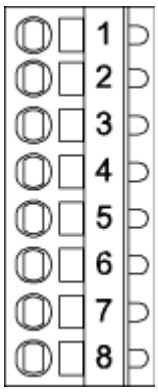
Note

Transient voltage interruptions

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X482 Analog inputs/outputs

Table 4- 70 Terminal block X482

	Terminal	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	AI 0+	Analog inputs (AI) **Voltage**: -10 … +10 V; R_i: 65 kΩ **Common-mode range**: ± 30 V **Resolution**: 13 bits + sign
	2	AI 0-	
	3	AI 1+	
	4	AI 1-	
	5	AO 0+	Analog outputs (AO) **Voltage range**: -10 … +10 V **Load current**: max. -3 … +3 mA **Resolution**: 11 bit + signed Continuous short-circuit proof
	6	AO 0-	
	7	AO 1+	
	8	AO 1-	

Max. connectable cross-section: 0.5 mm^2

[1] AI: analog input, AO: Analog output

Note

Permissible voltage values

In order to avoid incorrect results of the analog-digital conversion, the analog differential voltage signals can have a maximum offset voltage of +/-30 V with respect to ground potential.

Note

Open input

An open input is interpreted as approximately "0 V".

The power supply of the analog inputs/outputs is drawn via the option slot of the Control Unit and not via X424.

The shield is connected to the Control Unit.

Shield connection of the TB30 on the Control Unit

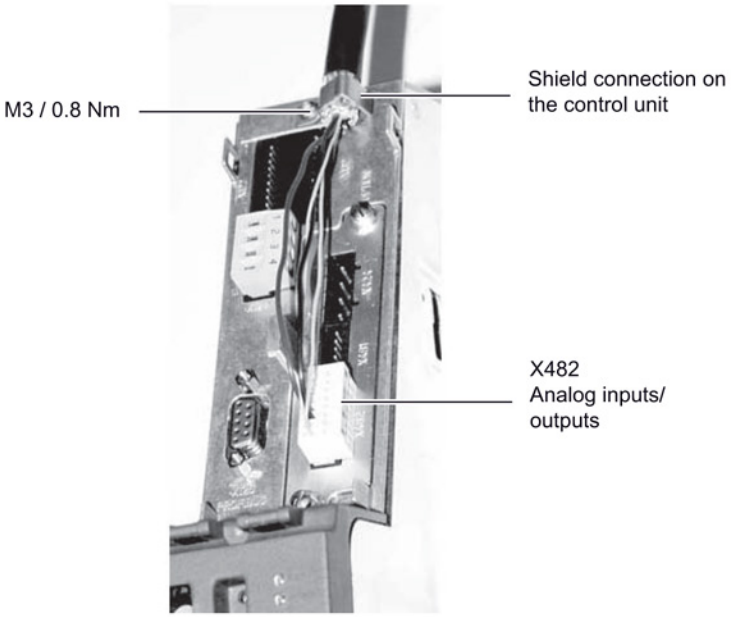


Figure 4-46 TB30 shield connection

The permissible bending radii for the cables must not be exceeded when the cables are being installed.

4.10.29 Safety license for 1 axis (option K01)

Description

The Safety Integrated Basic functions do not require a license. A license is, however, required for each axis with safety functions in the case of Safety Integrated Extended functions. It is irrelevant which safety functions are used and how many.

With option K01, the Safety license for 1 axis is included on the CompactFlash Card and activated.

Licenses

The required license can optionally be ordered with the CompactFlash card.

Subsequent licensing is realized in the Internet using the "WEB License Manager" by generating a license key:
http://www.siemens.com/automation/license

Activation

The associated license key is entered into parameter p9920 in the ASCII code. The license key can be activated via parameter p9921=1.

Diagnostics

An insufficient license is indicated via the following alarm and LED:

- Alarm A13000 → License not sufficient
- LED READY → Flashes green/red at 0.5 Hz

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.30 Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74)

Description

The auxiliary power supply provides the auxiliary voltages required for external control circuits of the cabinet unit on the plant side.

Adapting the auxiliary power supply (-T10)

A transformer is installed in the Lne Connection Module (-T10) to produce the auxiliary voltages of the cabinet unit. The location of the transformer is indicated in the layout diagrams supplied.

When delivered, the taps are always set to the highest level. The line-side terminals of the transformer may need to be reconnected according to the existing line voltage.

The tables below show the appropriate transformer setting for the control power supply based on the existing line voltage.

Table 4- 71 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (380 to 480 V AC, 3 phase)

Line voltage range	Tap	Adaptation transformer taps (-T10) LH1 – LH2
342 ... 390 V	380 V	1 - 2
391 ... 410 V	400 V	1 – 3
411 ... 430 V	415 V	1 – 4
431 ... 450 V	440 V	1 – 5
451 ... 470 V	460 V	1 – 6
471 ... 528 V	480 V	1 – 7

Table 4- 72 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (500 to 600 V AC, 3 phase)

Line voltage range	Tap	Adaptation transformer taps (-T10) LH1 – LH2
450 ... 515 V	500 V	1 - 8
516 ... 540 V	525 V	1 – 9
541 ... 560 V	550 V	1 – 10
561 ... 590 V	575 V	1 – 11
591 ... 670 V	600 V	1 – 12

Table 4- 73 Line voltage assignment for the internal power supply (660 to 690 V AC, 3 phase)

Line voltage range	Tap	Adaptation transformer taps (-T10) LH1 – LH2
591 ... 630 V	600 V	1 – 12
631 ... 680 V	660 V	1 – 14, terminals 12 and 13 are jumpered
681 ... 759 V	690 V	1 – 15, terminals 12 and 13 are jumpered

Once the jumpers have been set, the secondary voltage should be 230 VAC.

NOTICE

Material damage when the voltage is set too high

If the terminals are not reconnected corresponding to the actual line voltage, this can damage the device if the voltage is set too high.

- Set the terminals in accordance with the actual line voltage.

4.10.31 Terminal module for activation of "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe STOP 1" (option K82)

Description

Option K82 (terminal module for activating "Safe Torque Off" and "Safe Stop 1") is used for isolated activation via a variable control-voltage range of the safety functions already present in the standard version, which can also be used without option K82.

Use option K82 to activate the following Safety Integrated functions (terminology according to EN 61800-5-2):

- Safe torque off (STO)
- Safe Stop 1 (SS1, time-controlled)

Note

Standards requirements

The integrated safety functions, starting from the Safety Integrated (SI) input terminals of the SINAMICS components (Control Unit, Power Module), satisfy the requirements according to EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) for Performance Level (PL) d and EN 61508 SIL 2.

In combination with option K82, the requirements specified in EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1 as well as in EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) are satisfied for Performance Level (PL) d and EN 61508 SIL 2.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

Detailed and comprehensive instructions and information for the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.32 Terminal Module TM54F (option K87)



Figure 4-47 TM54F Terminal Module (option K87)

Description

The TM54F Terminal Module is a terminal expansion module with safe digital inputs and outputs for controlling the Safety Integrated Extended functions of SINAMICS.

The TM54F is directly connected to a Control Unit via DRIVE-CLiQ.

TM54F features the following interfaces:

Table 4- 74 Overview of the TM54F interfaces

Type	Quantity
Fail-safe digital outputs (F-DO)	4
Fail-safe digital inputs (F-DI)	10
Sensor[1] power supplies, dynamic response supported [2]	2
Sensor[1] power supply, no dynamic response	1
Digital inputs to check F_DO for a test stop	4

[1] Sensors: Fail-safe devices to issue commands and sense, for example, emergency stop pushbuttons and safety locks, position switches and light arrays/light curtains.

[2] Dynamic response: The sensor power supply is switched on and off by the TM54F when the forced dormant error detection is active for the sensors, cable routing, and the evaluation electronics.

The TM54F provides 4 fail-safe digital outputs and 10 fail-safe digital inputs. A fail-safe digital output consists of a 24 VDC switching output, a ground switching output, and a digital input for checking the switching state. A fail-safe digital input comprises two digital inputs.

Note

Rated values of the F-DO

The rated values of the F-DO meet the requirements of EN 61131-2 for digital DC outputs with 0.5 A rated current.

The operating ranges of the F-DI meet the requirements of EN 61131-2 for Type 1 digital inputs.

Note

Shielding cables

Please note that the F-DIs must take the form of shielded cables if they are > 30 m in length.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

A detailed description of the full functionality and handling of the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.33 Safe Brake Adapter SBA 230 V AC (option K88)

Description

Safe Brake Control (SBC) is a safety function that is used in safety-related applications. In the no-current state, the brake acts on the motor of the drive using spring force. The brake is released (opened) when current flows through it (=low active).

The Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC is installed in the cabinet unit in the factory. An infeed is connected to terminal -X12 on the Safe Brake Adapter for the power supply. For control, a connection is established between the Safe Brake Adapter and the Control Interface Module via a cable harness installed in the factory.

For controlling the brake, a connection must be established on site between terminal -X14 on the Safe Brake Adapter and the rectifier of the brake. Direct connection of AC brakes is not permissible.

NOTICE

Device failure caused by connecting a 24 VDC brake

When a 24 VDC brake is connected to option K88 (Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC) this can damage the Safe Brake Adapter and cause the device to fail (when the brake closes this is not displayed on an LED, the fuses can then rupture, the relay contact service life is reduced).

- Do not connect a 24 VDC brake to the 230 VAC Safe Brake Adapter.

Note

Maximum cable length of the brake control

The maximum permissible cable length of 300 m between the Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC and the brake must be observed. To accurately calculate the maximum cable length, see the SINAMICS Low Voltage Configuration Manual on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

Fast de-energization

Some brake rectifier types are equipped with two additional connections for switching the brake load on the DC side. This allows the brake coil to be quickly de-energized, i.e. braking starts earlier.

The Safe Brake Adapter supports such a fast de-energization using the two additional connections -X15:1 and -X15:2. This function does not belong to the safe brake control.

Notes

Note

Replacement fuses

The order numbers for spare fuses can be taken from the spare parts list supplied.

Note

Standards requirements

The integrated safety functions, starting from the Safety Integrated (SI) input terminals of the SINAMICS components (Control Unit, Motor Module), satisfy the requirements according to EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN 954-1) for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL2.

With the Safe Brake Adapter (option K88), the requirements specified in EN 61800-5-2, EN 60204-1, DIN EN ISO 13849-1 Category 3 (formerly EN954-1) as well as for Performance Level (PL) d and IEC 61508 SIL 2 are fulfilled.

Note

Safety Integrated Function Manual

A detailed description of the full functionality and handling of the Safety Integrated functions can be found in the accompanying Function Manual. This manual is available as additional documentation on the customer DVD supplied with the device.

4.10.34 Control Unit CU320-2 PN (option K95)

With Option K95, the cabinet unit contains a CU320-2 PN control unit, which handles the communication and open-loop/closed-loop control functions.

A PROFINET interface is available for higher-level communication.

Connection overview

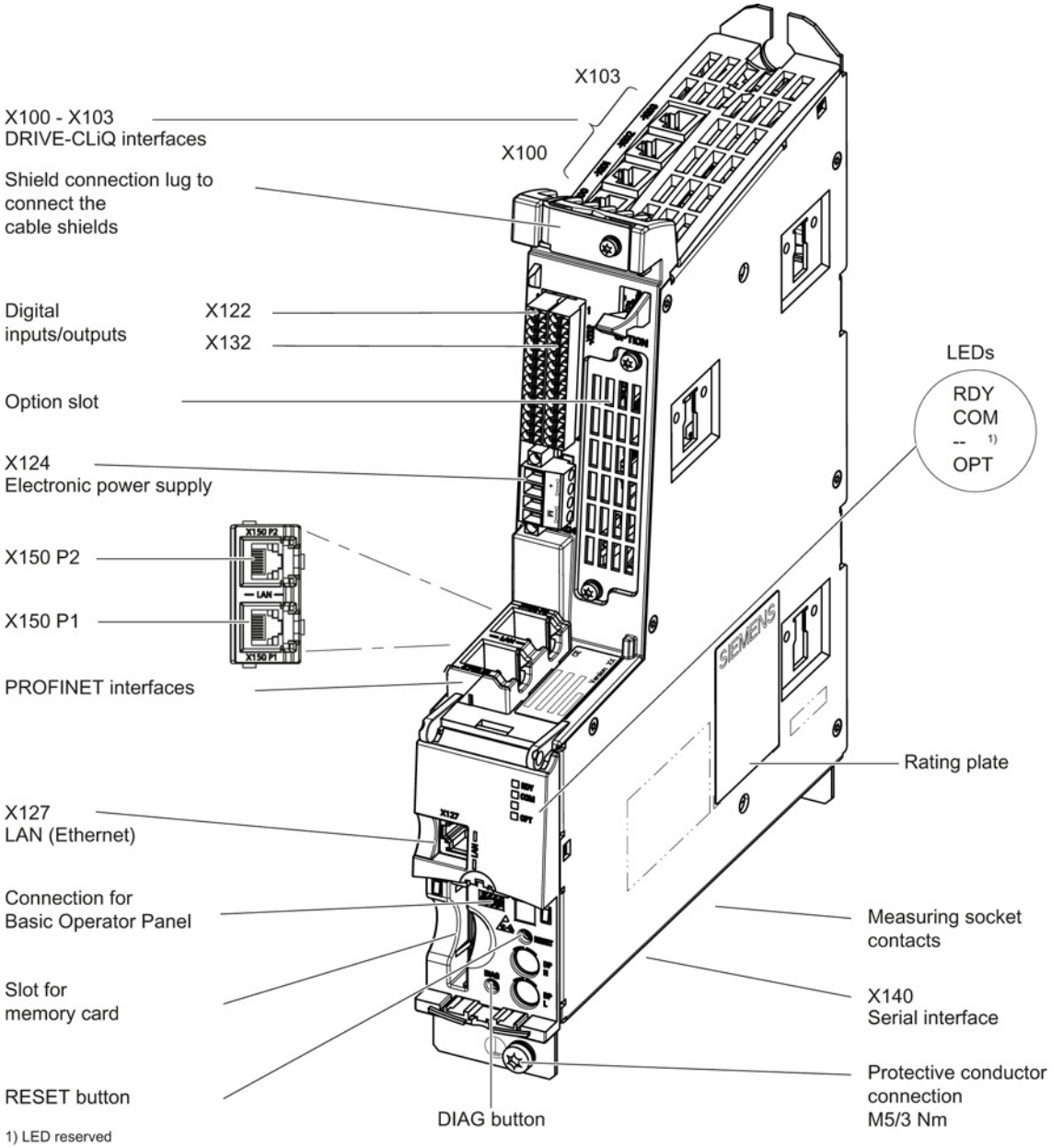


Figure 4-48 Connection overview of CU320-2 PN Control Unit (without cover)

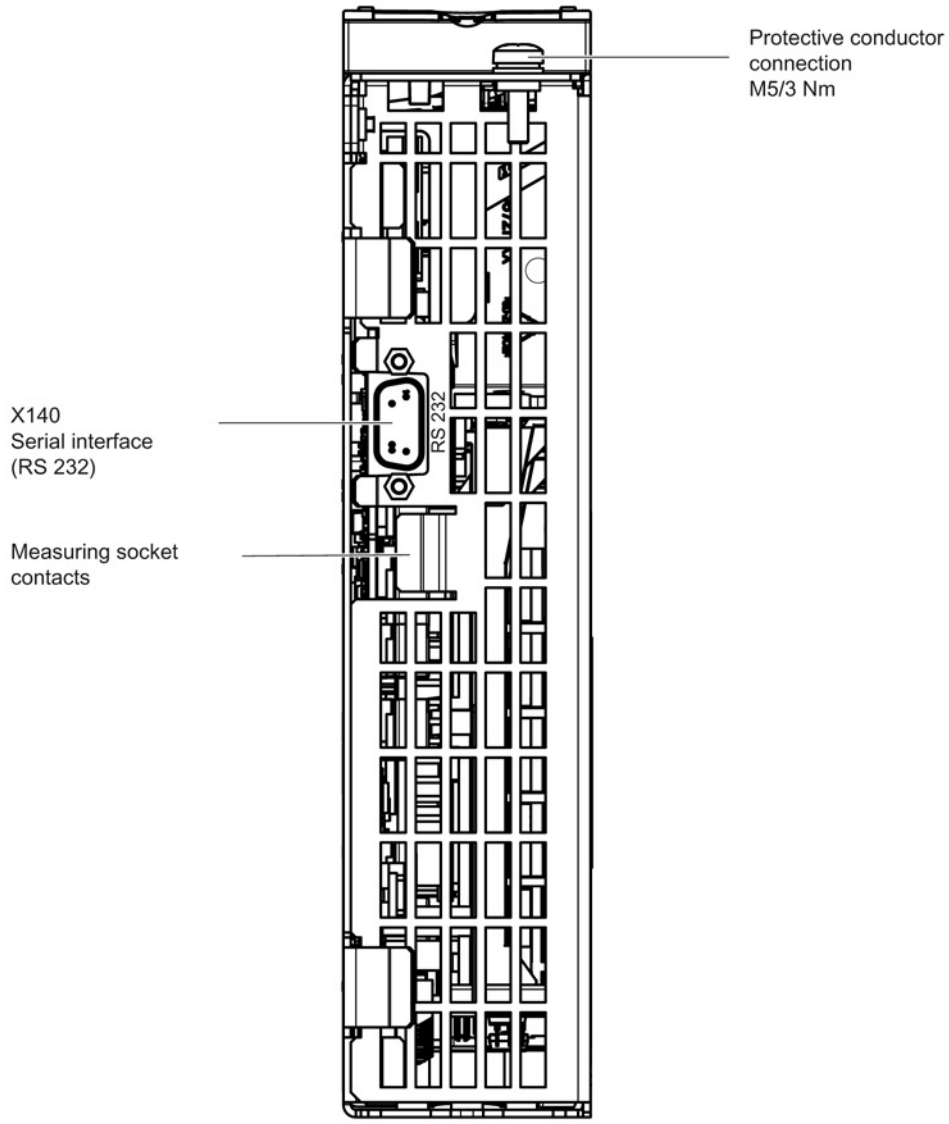


Figure 4-49 Interface X140 and measuring sockets T0 to T2 - CU320-2 PN (view from below)

NOTICE
Malfunctions or damage to the option board by inserting and withdrawing in operation Withdrawing and inserting the option board in operation can damage it or cause it to malfunction. • Only withdraw or insert the Option Board when the Control Unit is in a no-current condition.

Connection example

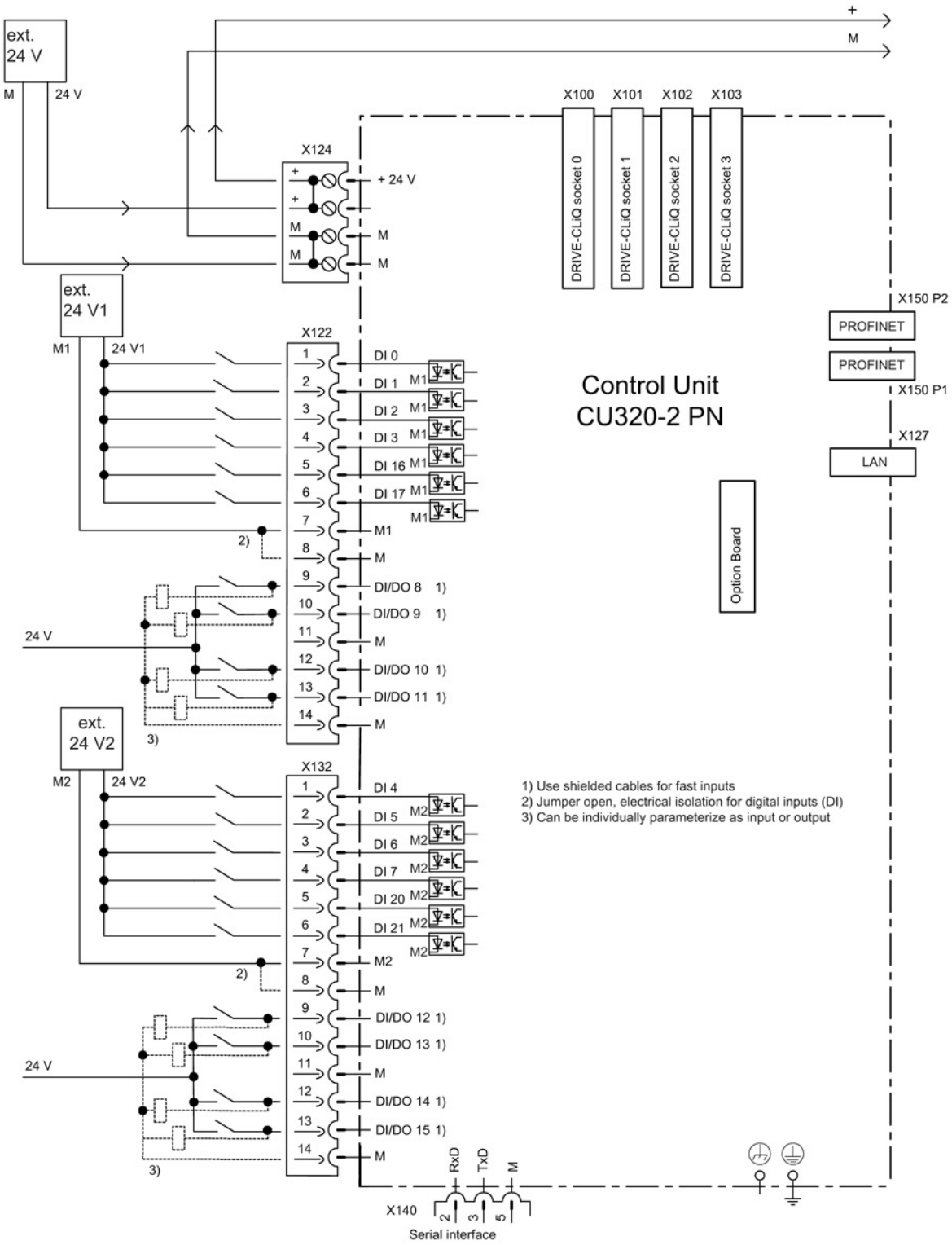
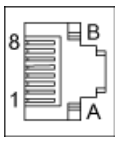


Figure 4-50 Connection example, CU320-2 PN

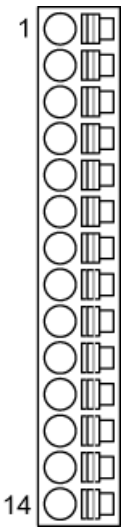
X100 to X103: DRIVE-CLiQ interface

Table 4- 75 DRIVE-CLiQ interface X100 – X103

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	TXP	Transmit data +
	2	TXN	Transmit data -
	3	RXP	Receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
	A	+ (24 V)	Power supply
	B	M (0 V)	Electronics ground
Connector type: RJ45 socket Blanking plate for DRIVE-CLiQ interfaces (50 pcs.) Order number: 6SL3066-4CA00-0AA0			

X122: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 76 Terminal block X122

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 0	Voltage (max.): -3 ... 30 V Current drain, typical: 9 mA at 24 V DC Electrical isolation: reference potential is terminal M1 Level (with ripple) High level: +15 ... +30 V Low level: -3 ... +5 V Input delay (typ.): For "0" → "1": 50 µs For "1" → "0": 150 µs
	2	DI 1	
	3	DI 2	
	4	DI 3	
	5	DI 16	
	6	DI 17	
	7	M1	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Electronics ground
	9	DI/DO 8	**As input**: Voltage: -3 … +30 VDC Current consumption, typical: 9 mA at 24 V Signal level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low level: -3 … +5 V DI/DO 8, 9, 10, and 11 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.) For "0" → "1": 5 µs For "1" → "0": 50 µs **As output**: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Continuous short-circuit proof Output delay (typ./max):[3] For "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs For "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For ohmic load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 9	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 10	
	13	DI/DO 11	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground M1: reference potential

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark.

[3] Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

The maximum cable length that can be connected is 30 m.

Note

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

Terminal M1 must be connected so that the digital inputs (DI) can function.

This is achieved through one of the following measures:

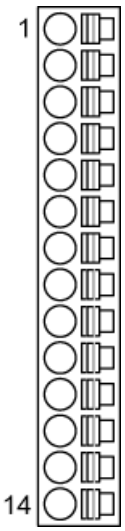
1. Also route the reference ground of the digital inputs.
2. A jumper to terminal M (**Please observe:** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X132: Digital inputs/outputs

Table 4- 77 Terminal block X132

	Pin	Designation [1]	Technical data
	1	DI 4	Voltage (max.): -3 … +30 VDC Current consumption, typical: 9 mA at 24 V Electrical isolation: The reference potential is terminal M2 Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low signal level: -3 … +5 V Input delay (typ.): For "0" → "1": 50 µs For "1" → "0": 150 µs
	2	DI 5	
	3	DI 6	
	4	DI 7	
	5	DI 20	
	6	DI 21	
	7	M2	Reference potential for terminal 1 ... 6
	8	M	Electronics ground
	9	DI/DO 12	**As input**: Voltage: -3 … +30 VDC Current consumption, typical: 9 mA at 24 V Level (incl. ripple) High level: 15 … 30 V Low signal level: -3 … +5 V DI/DO 12, 13, 14, and 15 are "rapid inputs" [2] Input delay (typ.): For "0" → "1": 5 µs For "1" → "0": 50 µs **As output**: Voltage: 24 V DC Max. load current per output: 500 mA Continuous short-circuit proof Output delay (typ./max):[3] For "0" → "1": 150 µs / 400 µs For "1" → "0": 75 µs / 100 µs Switching frequency: For ohmic load: Max. 100 Hz For inductive load: Max. 0.5 Hz For lamp load: Max. 10 Hz Maximum lamp load: 5 W
	10	DI/DO 13	
	11	M	
	12	DI/DO 14	
	13	DI/DO 15	
	14	M	
Max. connectable cross-section: 1.5 mm²			

[1] DI: digital input; DI/DO: bidirectional digital input/output; M: Electronics ground; M2: reference potential

[2] The rapid inputs can be used as probe inputs or as inputs for the external zero mark

[3] Data for: V_{cc} = 24 V; load 48 Ω; high ("1") = 90% V_{out}; low ("0") = 10% V_{out}

The maximum cable length that can be connected is 30 m.

Note

Ensuring the function of digital inputs

An open input is interpreted as "low".

To enable the digital inputs (DI) to function, terminal M2 must be connected.

This is achieved through one of the following measures:

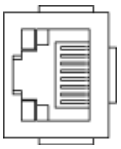
1. Also route the reference ground of the digital inputs.
2. A jumper to terminal M (**Please observe:** This removes the electrical isolation for these digital inputs.)

Note

If the 24 V supply is briefly interrupted, then the digital outputs are deactivated during this time.

X127: LAN (Ethernet)

Table 4- 78 X127 LAN (Ethernet)

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	1	TXP	Ethernet transmit data +
	2	TXN	Ethernet transmit data -
	3	RXP	Ethernet receive data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	RXN	Ethernet receive data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: RJ45 socket			

Note

The LAN (Ethernet) interface does not support Auto MDI(X). For this reason, only crossover cables may be used to connect devices.

For diagnostic purposes, the X127 LAN interface features a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

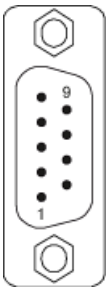
Table 4- 79 LED statuses for the X127 LAN interface

LED	Color	State	Description
Link port	-	Off	Missing or faulty link
	Green	Continuous light	10 or 100 Mbit link available
Activity port	-	Off	No activity
	Yellow	Flashing light	Sending or receiving

X140: serial interface (RS232)

The AOP30 operator panel for operating/parameterizing the device can be connected via the serial interface. The interface is located on the underside of the Control Unit.

Table 4- 80 Serial interface (RS232) X140

	Pin	Designation	Technical data
	2	RxD	Receive data
	3	TxD	Transmit data
	5	Ground	Ground reference
Connector type: 9-pin SUB D connector			

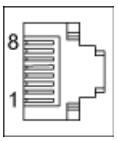
Note

Connecting cable to the AOP30

The connection cable to AOP30 may only contain the three contacts which are shown in the drawing; a completely allocated cable may not be used.

X150 P1/P2 PROFINET interface

Table 4- 81 X150 P1 and X150 P2 PROFINET

	Pin	Signal name	Technical data
	1	RXP	Receive data +
	2	RXN	Receive data -
	3	TXP	Transmit data +
	4	Reserved, do not use	
	5	Reserved, do not use	
	6	TXN	Transmit data -
	7	Reserved, do not use	
	8	Reserved, do not use	
Connector type: RJ45 socket Cable type: PROFINET			

Note

Connection cables

The PROFINET interfaces support Auto MDI(X). It is therefore possible to use both crossover and non-crossover cables to connect the devices.

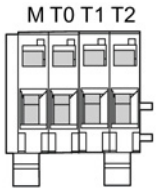
For diagnostic purposes, the two PROFINET interfaces are each equipped with a green and a yellow LED. These LEDs indicate the following status information:

Table 4- 82 LED states on the X150 P1/P2 PROFINET interface

LED	Color	State	Description
Link port	-	Off	Missing or faulty link
	Green	Continuous light	10 or 100 Mbit link available
Activity port	-	Off	No activity
	Yellow	Flashing light	Data is being received or sent at port x

T0, T1, T2: Measuring socket contacts

Table 4- 83 Measuring socket contacts T0, T1, T2

	Socket	Function	Technical data
	M	Ground	Voltage: 0… 5 V Resolution: 8 bits Load current: max. 3 mA Continuous short-circuit proof The reference potential is terminal M
	T0	Measuring socket contact 0	
	T1	Measuring socket contact 1	
	T2	Measuring socket contact 2	
PCB plug connector from Phoenix Contact, type: ZEC 1.0/ 4-ST-3.5 C1 R1.4, order number: 1893708			

Note

Cable cross section

The measuring socket contacts are only suitable for cable cross-sections of 0.2 mm^2 to 1 mm^2.

Note

Using the measuring socket contacts

The measuring socket contacts support commissioning and diagnostic functions. It must not be connected for normal operation.

DIAG button

The DIAG pushbutton is reserved for service functions.

Slot for the memory card



Figure 4-51 Slot for the memory card

WARNING

Danger to life due to software manipulation when using exchangeable storage media

Storing files onto exchangeable storage media amounts to an increased risk of infection, e.g. with viruses and malware. As a result of incorrect parameterization, machines can malfunction, which in turn can lead to injuries or death.

- Protect files stored on exchangeable storage media from malicious software by with suitable protection measures, e.g. virus scanners.

Note

Possible plant standstill by withdrawing or inserting the memory card in operation

If the memory card is withdrawn or inserted during operation, then data can be lost, possibly resulting in a plant standstill.

- Only withdraw and insert the memory card when the Control Unit is in a no-voltage condition.

Note

Insertion direction for the memory card

Only insert the memory card as shown in the photo above (arrow at top right).



NOTICE

Memory card damage caused by electric fields or electrostatic discharge

Electrical fields or electrostatic discharge may result in the memory card being damaged and so cause malfunctions.

- When removing and inserting the memory card, always observe the ESD regulations.

Note

Possible data loss when returning the Control Unit with memory card

When returning a defective Control Unit for repair or testing, the data on the memory card (parameters, firmware, licenses, etc.) could be lost.

- Do not return the memory card as well, but rather keep it in a safe place so that it can be inserted in the replacement unit.

Note

Please note that only SIEMENS memory cards can be used to operate the Control Unit.

4.10.35 NAMUR terminal block (option B00)

Description

The terminal block is designed in accordance with the requirements and guidelines defined by the standards association for measurement and control systems in the chemical industry (NAMUR – recommendation NE37), that is, certain device functions are assigned to fixed terminals. The inputs and outputs assigned to the terminals fulfill PELV ("protective extra-low voltage and protective separation") requirements.

The terminal block only contains the necessary functions. Unlike the NAMUR recommendation, optional terminals are not available.

The 24 V DC supply is provided on site via terminals -X2:1-3 (fuse-protected for 1 A in the converter). You must ensure that the PELV safety requirements (protective extra-low voltage with protective separation) are fulfilled.

To monitor the temperature of explosion-proof motors, option B00 features a PTC thermistor release mechanism with PTB approval. Shutdown if limit value is exceeded. The associated PTC sensor is connected to terminal -X3:90, 91.

The terminal block is divided into three sections:

- -X1; -X2: for the power connections
- -X2: for signal cables, which must fulfill PELV requirements with electrical separation.
- -X3: for connecting the motor PTC thermistor detector

Connection

Table 4- 84 Terminal block -X2 – connection 24 V supply

Terminal	Designation	Default	Comment
1	M	Reference conductor	
2	P24 V	24 V DC infeed	Protected internally with fuse (1 A)
3	P24 V	24 V DC outgoing circuit	

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Table 4- 85 Terminal block -X2 – connection NAMUR control terminal block

Terminal	Designation	Default	Comment
10	DI	ON/OFF (dynamic)/ ON/OFF (static)	Effective operation can be coded by a wire jumper on terminal -X400:9;10 (delivery condition: jumper inserted): jumper inserted: ON/OFF (dynamic)/ jumper removed: ON/OFF (static)
11	DI	OFF (dynamic)	
12	DI	Faster	Motorized potentiometer
13	DI	Slower	Motorized potentiometer
14	DI	RESET	Acknowledge error
15	DI	Interlock	OFF2
16	DI	Counterclockwise	"0" signal: CW phase sequence "1" signal: CCW phase sequence
17	DI	Power Disconnection	EMERGENCY OFF circuit "0" signal: Power disconnection "1" signal: No power disconnection
18			
30	DO (COM)	Ready for operation	Relay output (NO contact)
31	DO (NO)		
32	DO (COM)	Motor turning	Relay output (NO contact)
33	DO (NO)		
34	DO (NO)	Fault	Relay output (two-way contact)
35	DO (COM)		
36	DO (NC)		
50/51	AI 0/4-20 mA	Speed setpoint	Default: 4 ... 20 mA
60/61	AO 0/4-20 mA	Motor frequency	Default: 4 ... 20 mA (Preassigned the motor frequency, can be reparameterized for other variables)
62/63	AO 0/4-20 mA	Motor current	Default: 4 ... 20 mA (Preassigned the motor current, can be reparameterized for other variables)

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Table 4- 86 Terminal block -X3 – connection for the motor PTC thermistor sensor

Terminal	Designation	Default	Comment
90/91	AI	Connection for a PTC thermistor	Shutdown if limit value is exceeded.

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

Adapting the analog inputs and outputs

If the setting ranges of the analog inputs and outputs are to be changed, the associated interface converters (-T401 / -T402 / -T403) must be set. The corresponding interface converter must be removed for this purpose and the rotary switch on the side ("S1") turned to the corresponding position.

Table 4- 87 Terminal block -X2 – Adaptation of analog inputs and outputs

Terminal	Designation	Item code of interface converter	Settings on rotary switch S1
50/51	AI	T401	2: 0 ... 20 mA 4: 4 ... 20 mA (default setting)
60/61	AO	T402	1: 0 ... 20 mA 2: 4 ... 20 mA (default setting)
62/63	AO	T403	1: 0 ... 20 mA 2: 4 ... 20 mA (default setting)

4.10.36 Separate 24 V DC power supply for NAMUR (option B02)

Description

If the customer cannot provide a separate 24 V DC supply (PELV), this option enables a second power supply to be installed to provide the PELV (terminal assignment as option B00, 24 V infeed at terminal -X1:1,2,3 no longer needed).

4.10.37 Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment for NAMUR (option B03)

Description

If power is to be supplied to a motor fan on site, option B03 provides an uncontrolled fuse-protected (10 A) outgoing section. As soon as the supply voltage is present at the converter input, it is also present at these terminals. The voltage corresponds to the converter input voltage. You must take this into account when configuring the separately driven fan.

Connecting

Table 4- 88 Terminal block -X1 – uncontrolled power outlet (10 A) for supplying a separately driven motor fan

Terminal	Default	Comment
1, 2, 3, PE	Outgoing section for separately driven motor fan	$U = U_{line}$

Max. connectable cross-section: 2.5 mm²

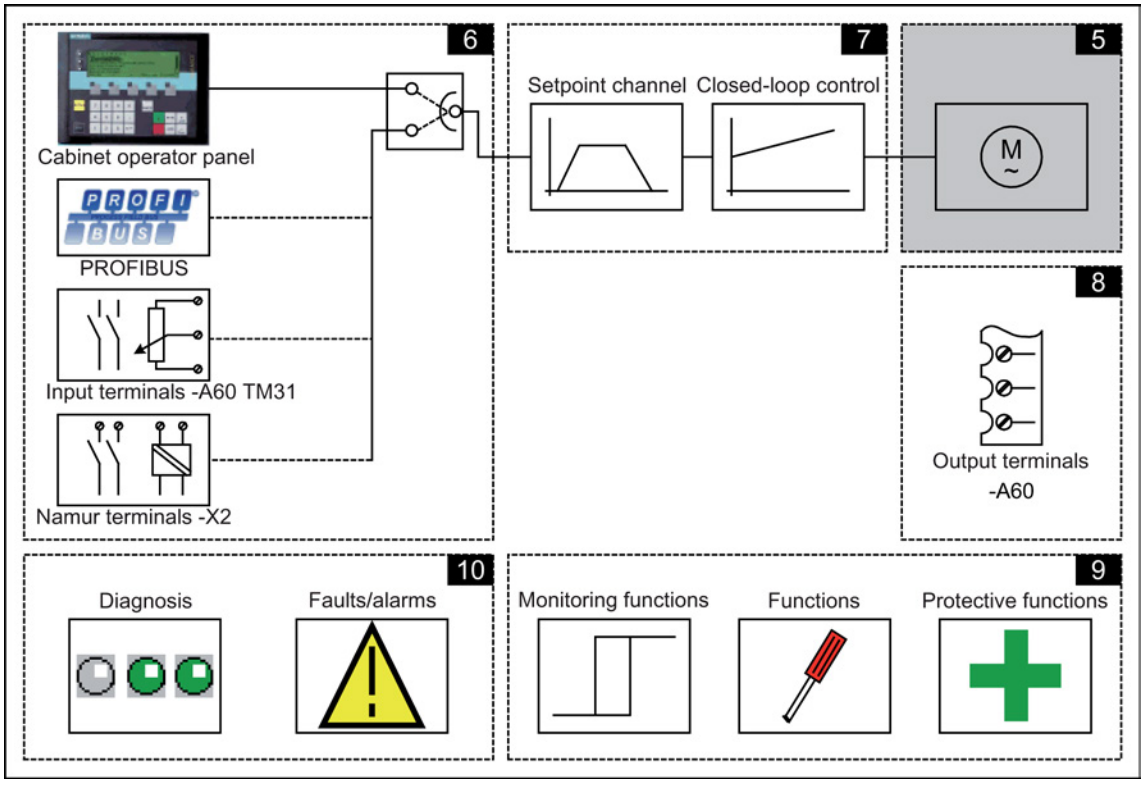
Commissioning

5

5.1 Chapter content

This section provides information on the following:

- An overview of the operator panel functions
- Initial commissioning of the cabinet unit (initialization) with STARTER and AOP30
  - Entering the motor data (drive commissioning)
  - Entering the most important parameters (basic commissioning), concluding with motor identification
- Data backup
- Parameter reset to factory settings



Important information prior to commissioning

The cabinet unit offers a varying number of internal signal interconnections depending on the delivery condition and the options installed. For the converter control to be able to process the signals correctly, several software settings must be made.

During initial power-up of the Control Unit and during first commissioning, parameter macros are executed and the necessary settings made.
The settings are documented in the Appendix.

After initial power-up, first commissioning, and also following a "Parameter reset to factory settings", individual parameter values deviate from the factory settings stated in the List Manual.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life or malfunctions of the machine as a result of incorrect or changed parameterization

As a result of incorrect or changed parameterization, machines can malfunction, which in turn can lead to injuries or death.

- Protect the parameterization (parameter assignments) against unauthorized access.
- Respond to possible malfunctions by applying suitable measures (e.g. EMERGENCY STOP or EMERGENCY OFF).

5.2 STARTER commissioning tool

Description

You can use the STARTER commissioning tool to configure and commission SINAMICS drives and drive systems. The drive can be configured using the STARTER drive configuration wizard.

Note

STARTER online help

This section shows you how to carry out commissioning using STARTER. STARTER features a comprehensive online help function, which provides detailed explanations of all the processes and available system settings.
For this reason, this section only describes the individual commissioning steps.

Prerequisite: STARTER Version

The following STARTER version is required for commissioning SINAMICS with firmware V4.7:

- STARTER V4.4

Prerequisites for installing STARTER

Hardware

The following minimum requirements must be complied with:

- PG or PC
- Pentium III, at least 1 GHz, (> 1 GHz recommended)
- 1 GB work memory (2 GB recommended)
- Screen resolution 1024×768 pixels, 16-bit color depth
- Free hard disk space > 3 GB

Software

The following minimum prerequisites must be observed when using STARTER without an existing STEP-7 installation:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer V6.0 or higher

32-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 2003 Server SP2
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008
- Microsoft Windows XP Professional SP2 *) and SP3
- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate incl. SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise incl. SP1 (standard installation)

64-bit operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows 7 Professional SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Ultimate SP1
- Microsoft Windows 7 Enterprise SP1 (standard installation)
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2

*) restricted test scope

STARTER setup is possible with native Windows versions with Asian languages only if the Windows XP or Windows 7 software is an MUI version.

Acrobat Reader V5.0 or higher is required to open the function diagrams in the online help.

Note

Requirements in conjunction with STEP7

If STARTER is used in combination with other STEP7 components, the prerequisites for the S7 components shall apply.

5.2.1 Installing the STARTER commissioning tool

STARTER is installed using the "setup" file on the customer DVD supplied. When you double-click the "Setup" file, the installation Wizard guides you through the process of installing STARTER.

Note

Installation time

The installation time depends on the computer performance and from where the software is installed (e.g. DVD, hard disk, network). We recommend that you install the software from a local data carrier.

5.2.2 Layout of the STARTER user interface

STARTER features four operating areas:

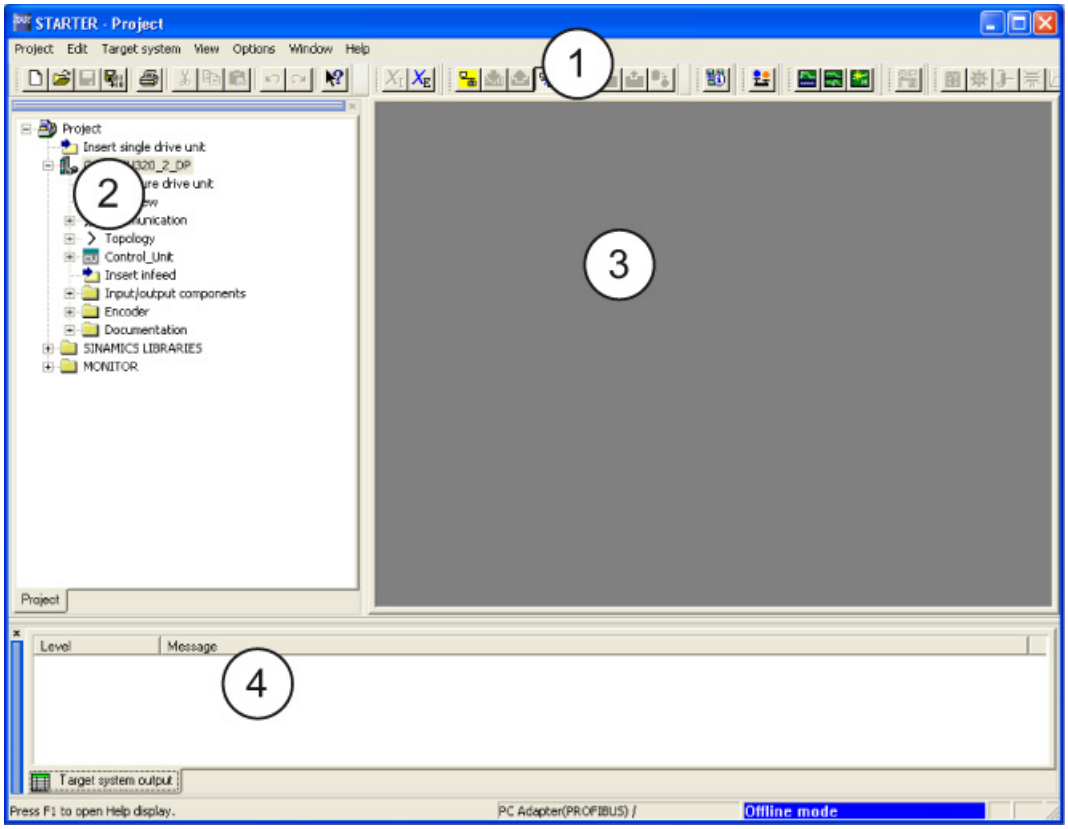


Figure 5-1 STARTER operating areas

Operating area	Explanation
1: Toolbars	In this area, you can access frequently used functions via the icons.
2: Project navigator	The elements and projects available in the project are displayed here.
3: Working area	In this area, you can change the settings for the drive units.
4: Detail view	Detailed information about faults and alarms, for example, is displayed this area.

5.3 Procedure for commissioning via STARTER

Basic procedure using STARTER

STARTER uses a sequence of dialog screens for entering the required drive unit data.

Note

Default settings in dialog screens

These dialog screens contain default settings, which you may have to change according to your application and configuration.

This is intentional!
Objective: By taking time to consider what configuration data you enter, you can prevent inconsistencies between the project data and drive unit data (identifiable in online mode).

5.3.1 Creating the project

Click the STARTER icon on the desktop, or (e.g. for Windows 7) select the menu command Start > All programs > STARTER > STARTER in the Windows Start menu to start the STARTER commissioning tool.

The first time you run the software, the main screen (shown below) appears with the following windows:

- STARTER Getting Started
- STARTER project wizard

The commissioning steps are listed below as a numbered step sequence.

Accessing the STARTER project wizard

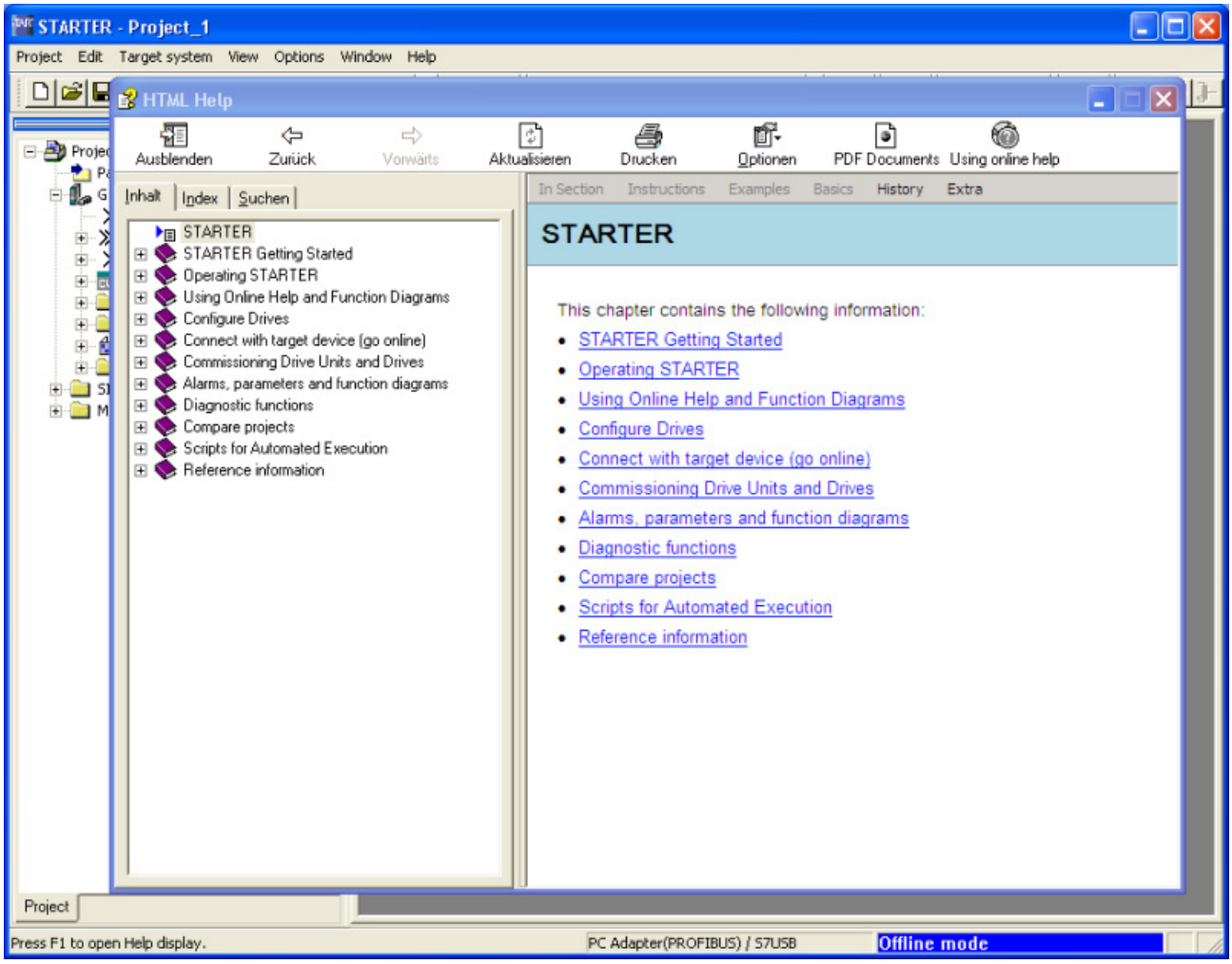


Figure 5-2 Main screen of the STARTER parameterization and commissioning tool

⇒ Hide STARTER Getting Started commissioning drive using **HTML Help > Close**
The online help can be permanently hidden by deselecting **Options > Settings > Workbench > Display "Getting Started" when starting**

Note

Project wizard

When you deactivate the **Display wizard during start** checkbox, the project wizard is no longer displayed the next time you start STARTER.

You can call up the project wizard by choosing **Project > New with Wizard**.

The online help can be opened again at any time using **Tools > Settings > Workbench > Display "Getting Started" when starting**

STARTER features a detailed online help function.

The STARTER project wizard

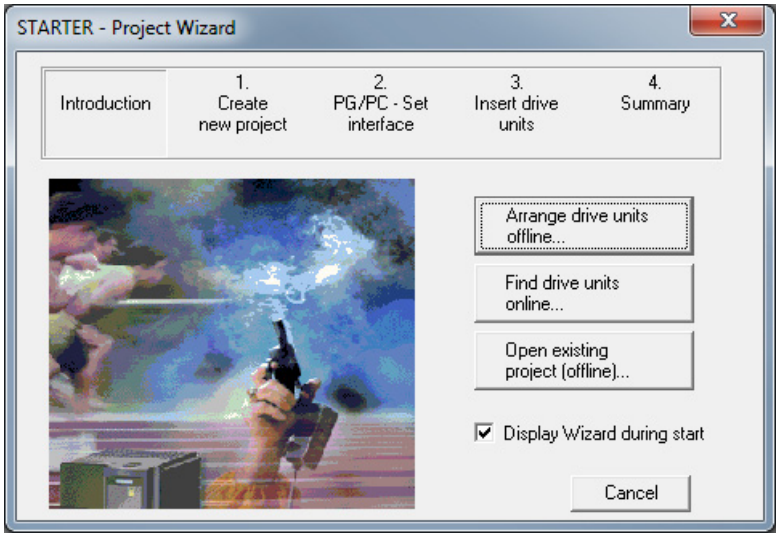


Figure 5-3 STARTER project wizard

⇒ Click **Arrange drive units offline...** in the STARTER project wizard.

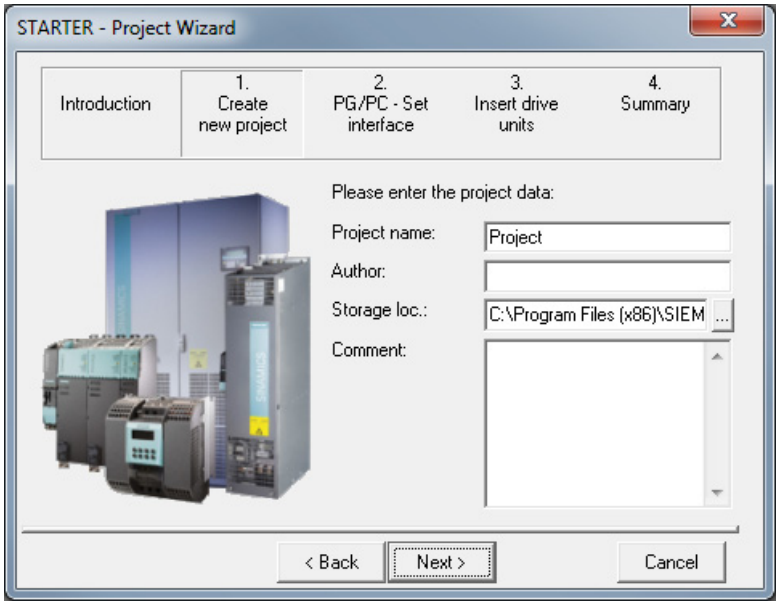


Figure 5-4 Create new project

⇒ Enter a **project name** and, if necessary, the **author, memory location** and a **comment**.

⇒ Click **Continue >** to set up the PG/PC interface.

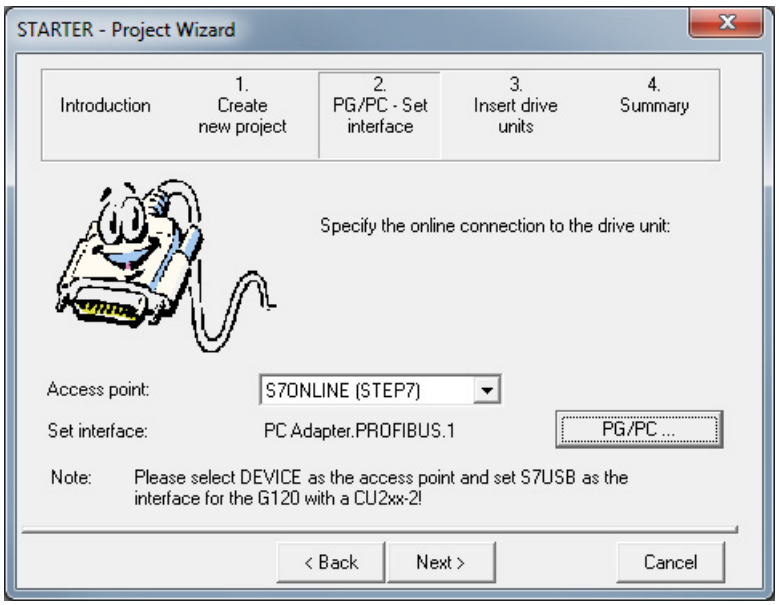


Figure 5-5 Set up interface

⇒ Under **Access point:** select the interface corresponding to your device configuration from:

- Select the S7ONLINE access (STEP7), if the connection to the drive unit is established via PROFINET or PROFIBUS.
- Select the DEVICE access, if the connection to the drive unit is established via the Ethernet interface.

⇒ Click **PG/PC ...** and set up the interface in accordance with your device configuration. The **Properties...**, **Copy...** and **Select...** pushbuttons are now active.

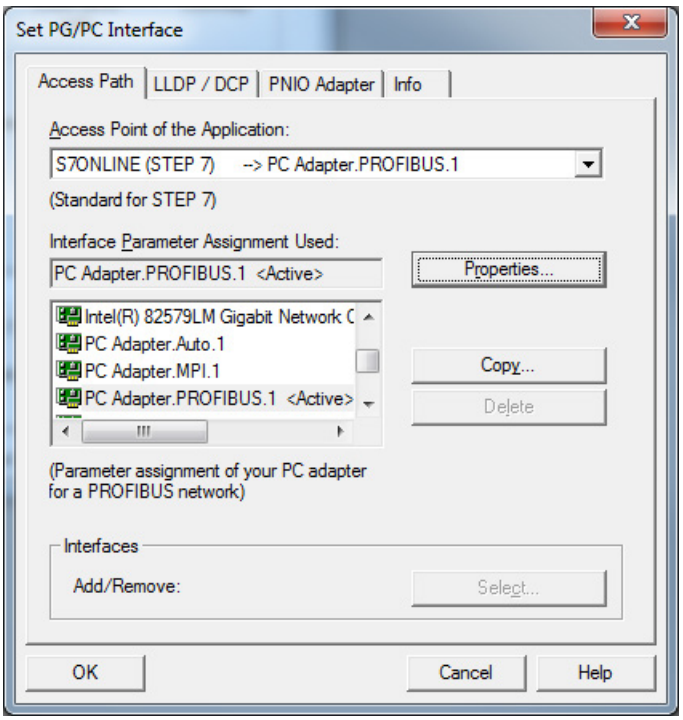


Figure 5-6 Setting the interface

Note

Precondition

To parameterize the interface, you must install the appropriate interface card (e.g., PC Adapter (PROFIBUS)

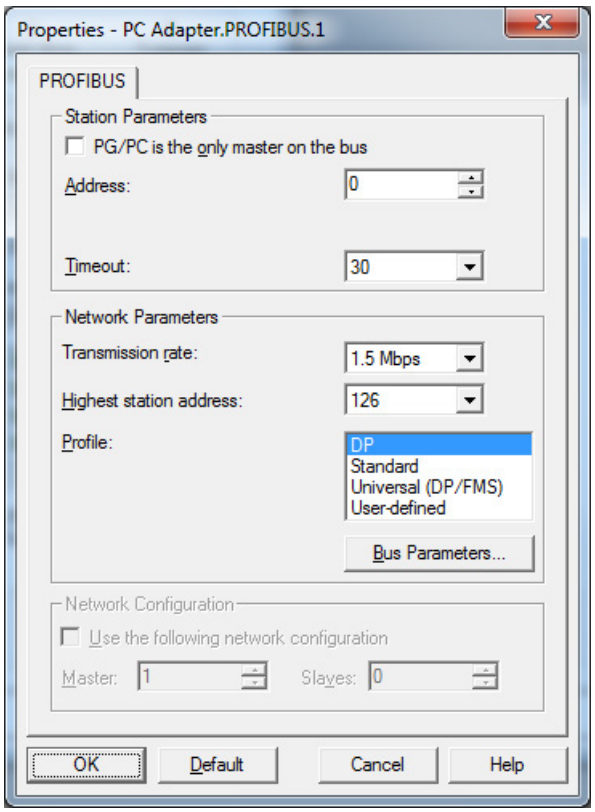


Figure 5-7 Setting the interface - properties

Note

Activate PG/PC is the only master on the bus

You must activate **PG/PC is the only master on bus** if no other master (PC, S7, etc.) is available on the bus.

Note

Configure even without an interface

Projects can be created and PROFIBUS addresses for the drive objects assigned even if a PROFIBUS interface has not been installed on the PC.

To prevent bus addresses from being assigned more than once, only the bus addresses available in the project are proposed.

When required, a manual address entry can also be used to enter an already assigned address.

⇒ Once you have done this, click **OK** to confirm the settings and return to the project wizard.

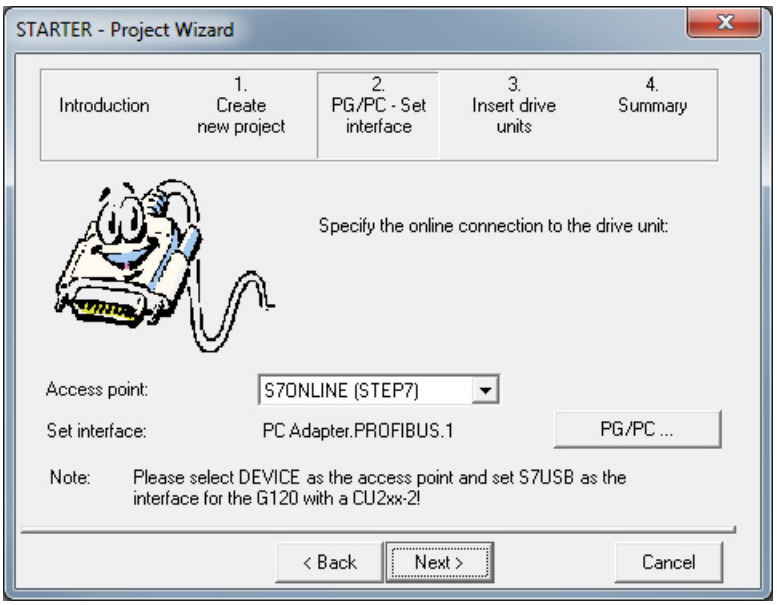


Figure 5-8 Complete setting the interface

⇒ Click **Continue >** to set up a drive unit in the project wizard.

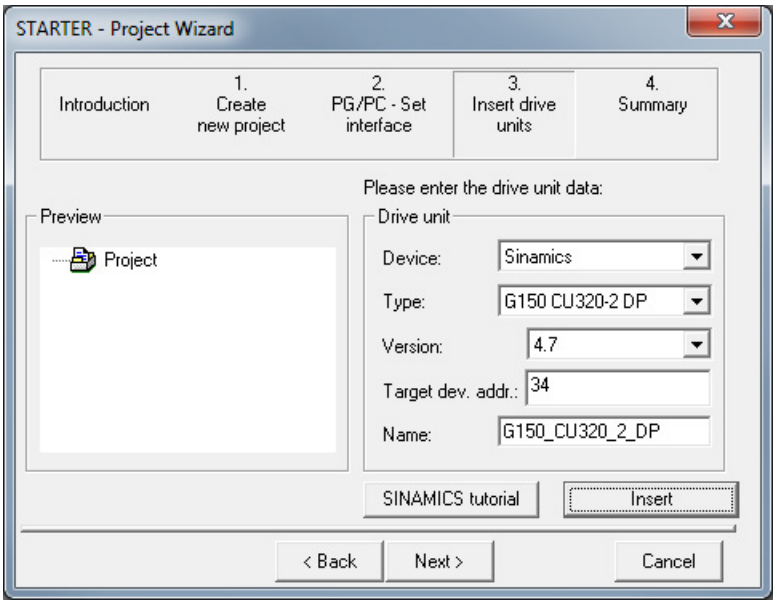


Figure 5-9 Inserting the drive unit

⇒ Choose the following data from the list fields:
Device: Sinamics
Type: G150 CU320-2 DP or G150 CU320-2 PN with option K95
Version: 4.7
Target device address: the corresponding bus address for the cabinet unit
The entry in **Name:** can be freely selected.

⇒ Click **Insert**
The selected drive unit is displayed in a preview window in the project wizard.

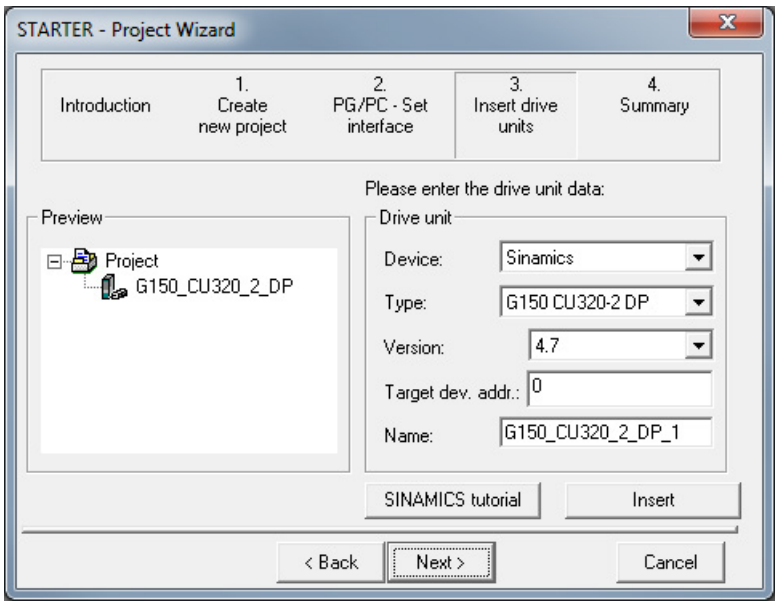


Figure 5-10 Drive unit inserted

⇒ Click **Continue >**
A project summary is displayed.

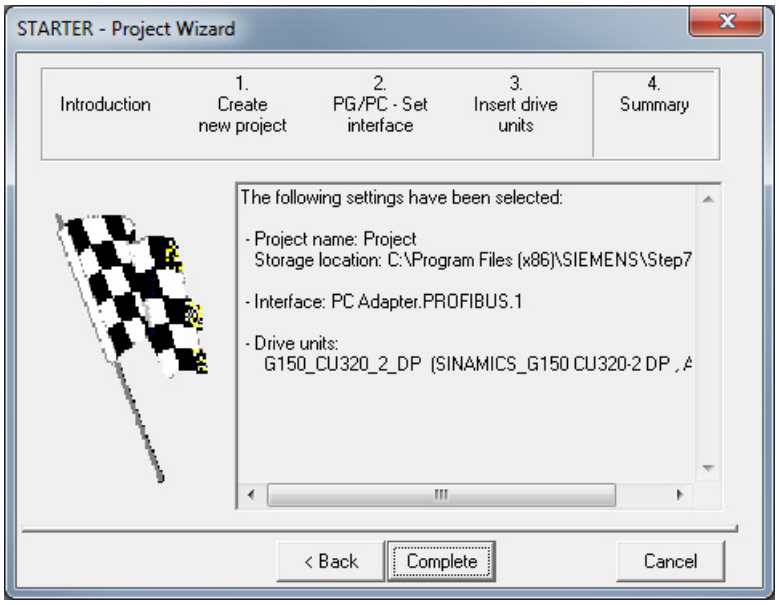


Figure 5-11 Summary

⇒ Click **Complete** to finish creating a new drive unit project.

5.3.2 Configure the drive unit

In the project navigator, open the component that contains your drive unit.

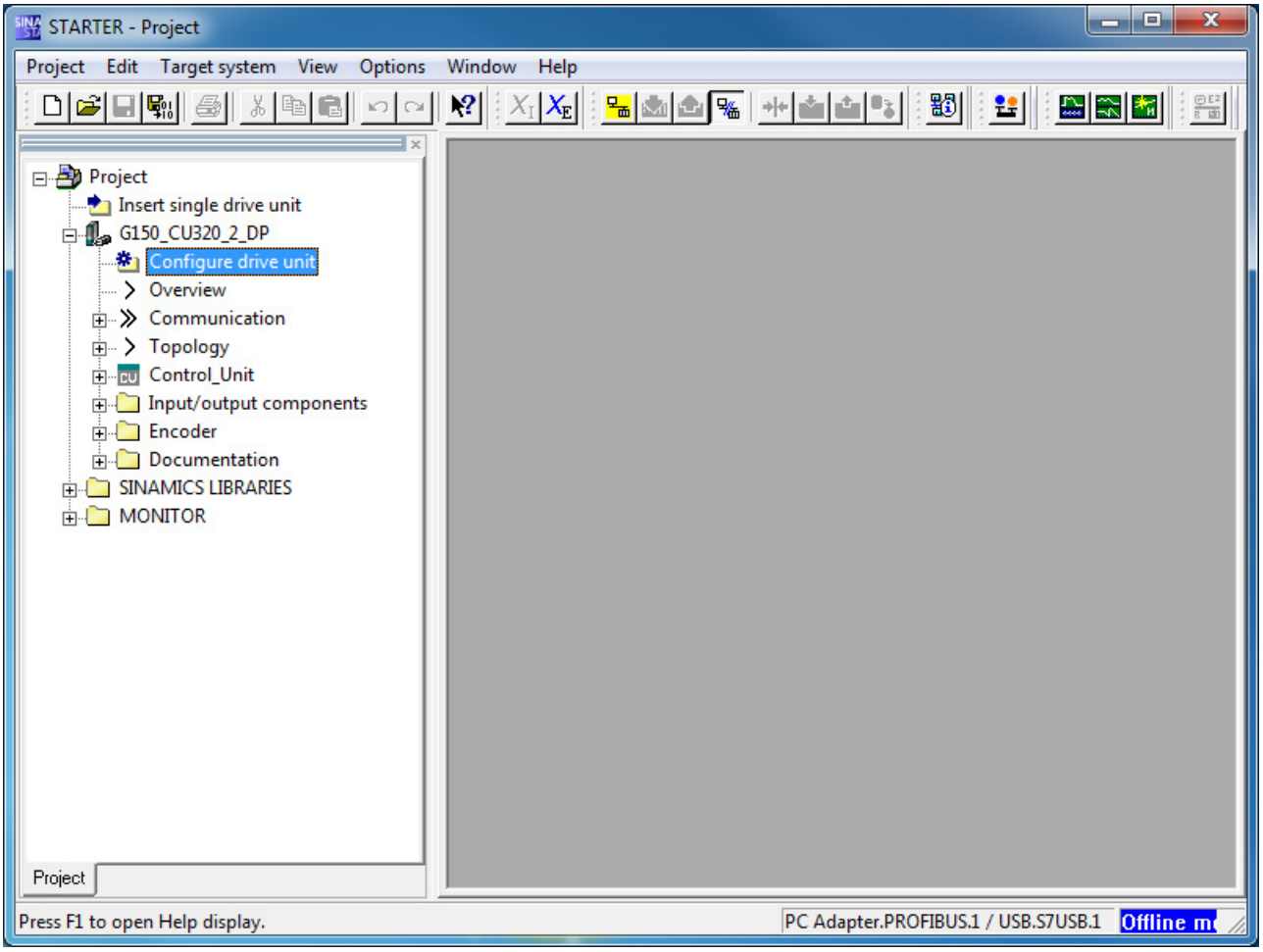


Figure 5-12 Project navigator – configuring the drive unit

⇒ In the project navigator, click the plus sign next to the drive unit that you want to configure. The plus sign becomes a minus sign and the drive unit configuration options are displayed as a tree below the drive unit.

⇒ Double-click **Configure the drive unit**.

Configuring the drive unit

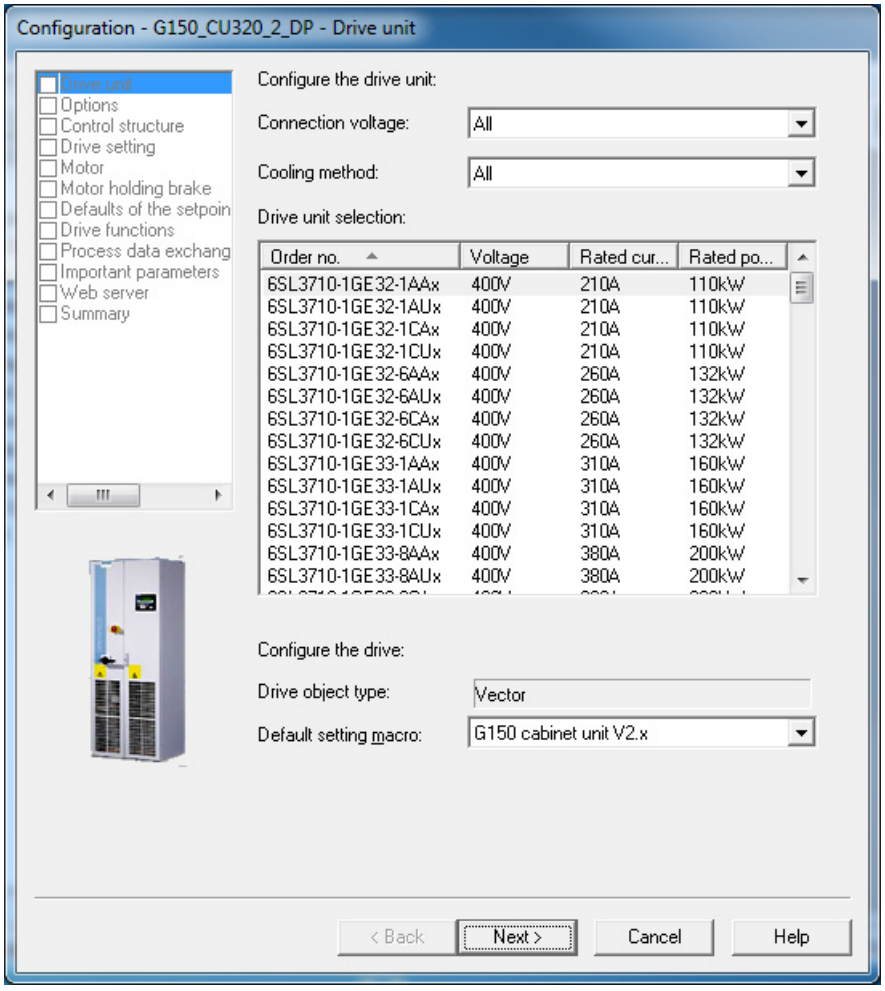


Figure 5-13 Configuring the drive unit

⇒ Under **Connection voltage**, choose the correct voltage. Under **Cooling method:** choose the correct cooling method for your drive unit.

Note

Make a pre-selection

In this step, you make a preliminary selection of the cabinet units. You do not define the line voltage yet.

⇒ A list is now displayed under **Drive unit selection:**. Choose the corresponding drive unit according to type (order no.) (see type plate).

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Selecting options

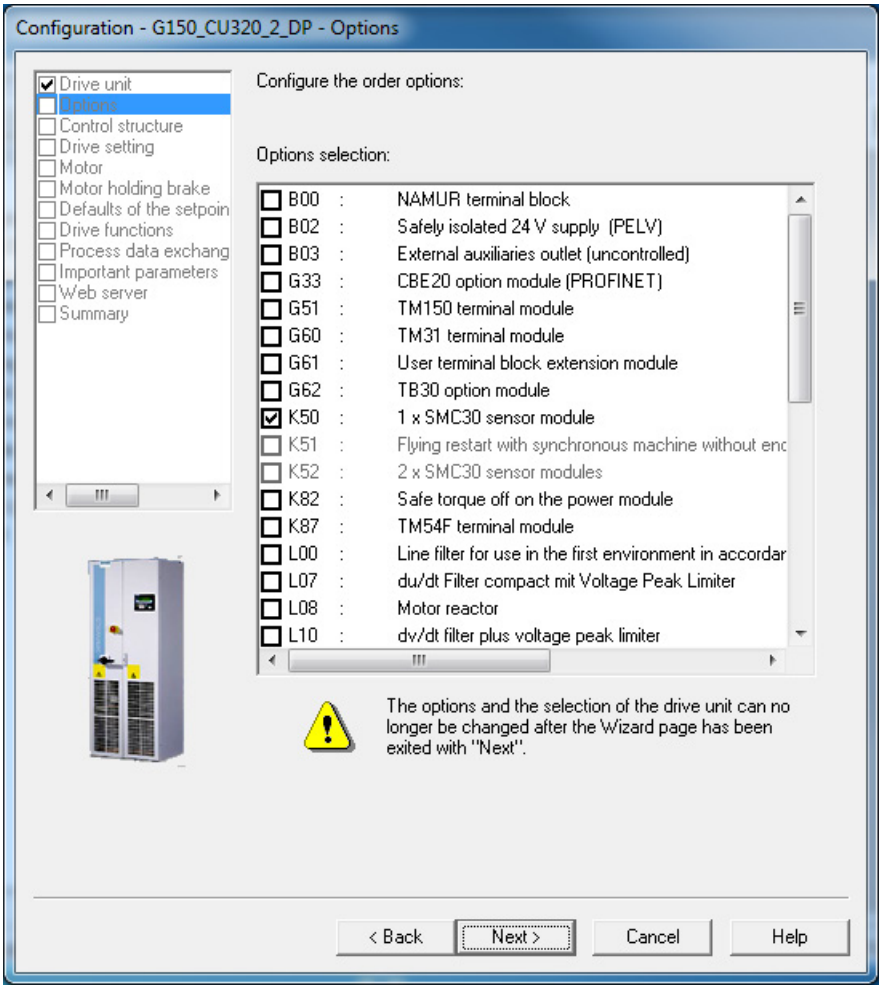


Figure 5-14 Selecting options

⇒ From the combination box **Options selection:** select the options belonging to your drive unit by clicking on the corresponding check box (see type plate).

NOTICE
Damage to the sine-wave filter if it is not activated during commissioning The sine-wave filter may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning. • Activate the sine-wave filter during commissioning by activating the appropriate checkbox (option L15).

NOTICE
Damage to the dv/dt filter if it is not activated during commissioning The dv/dt filter may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning. • Activate the dv/dt filter during commissioning by activating the appropriate checkbox (option L07, L10).

Note

Motor reactor

If a motor reactor (option L08) is being used, the option selection must be activated, otherwise the closed-loop motor control will not be able to operate in an optimum fashion.

Note

Check option selection

Check your options carefully against the options specified on the type plate.

Since the wizard establishes internal interconnections on the basis of the options selected, you cannot change the selected options by clicking **< Back**.
If you make an incorrect entry, delete the entire drive unit from the project navigator and create a new one.

⇒ Check your options carefully and then click **Continue >**

Selecting the control structure

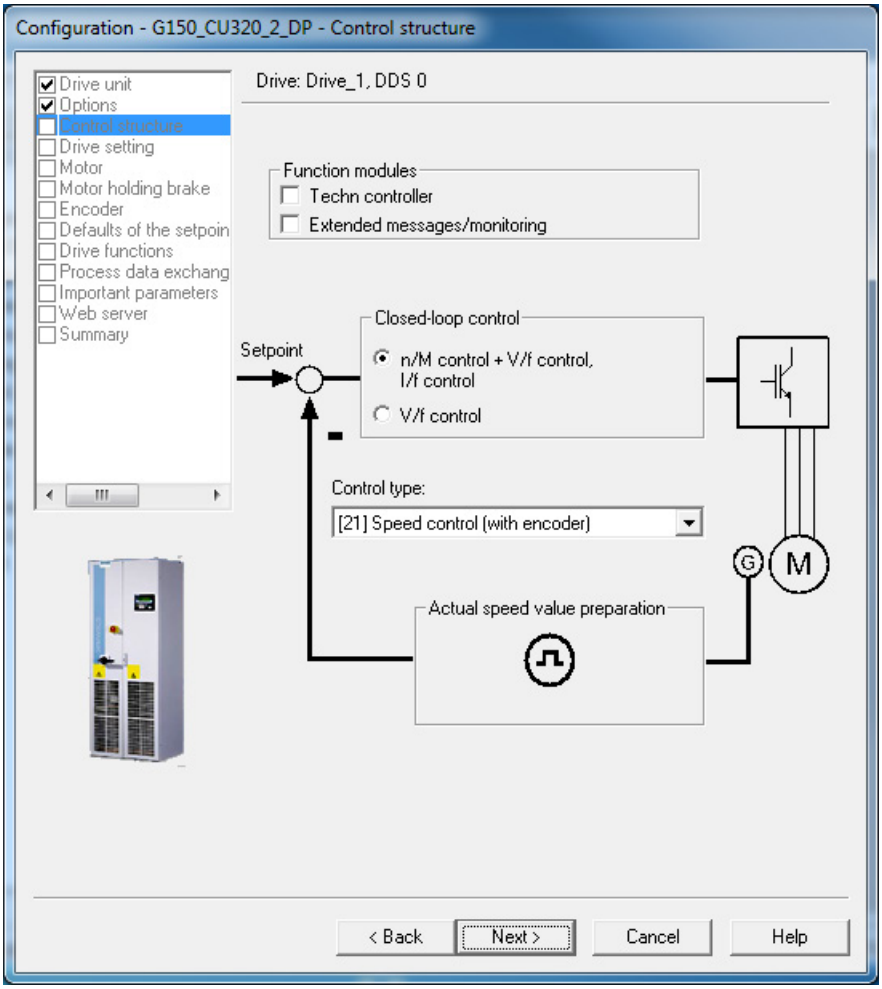


Figure 5-15 Selecting the control structure

⇒ Select the corresponding settings for the closed-loop control structure:

- **Function modules:**
  - Technology controller
  - Extended messages/monitoring
- **Control:**
  - n/M control + V/f control, I/f control
  - V/f control

- **Control mode:**
  Depending on the selected control, you can select from one of the following open-loop/closed-loop control modes:
  - 0: V/f control with linear characteristic
  - 1: V/f control with linear characteristic and FCC
  - 2: V/f control with parabolic characteristic
  - 3: V/f control with parameterizable characteristic
  - 4: V/f control with linear characteristic and ECO
  - 5: V/f control for drive requiring a precise frequency (e.g. textiles)
  - 6: V/f control for drive requiring a precise frequency and FCC
  - 7: V/f control with parabolic characteristic and ECO
  - 15: Operation with braking resistor
  - 18: I/f control with fixed current
  - 19: V/f control with independent voltage setpoint
  - 20: Speed control (without encoder)
  - 21: Speed control (with encoder)
  - 22: Torque control (without encoder)
  - 23: Torque control (with encoder)

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the drive unit properties

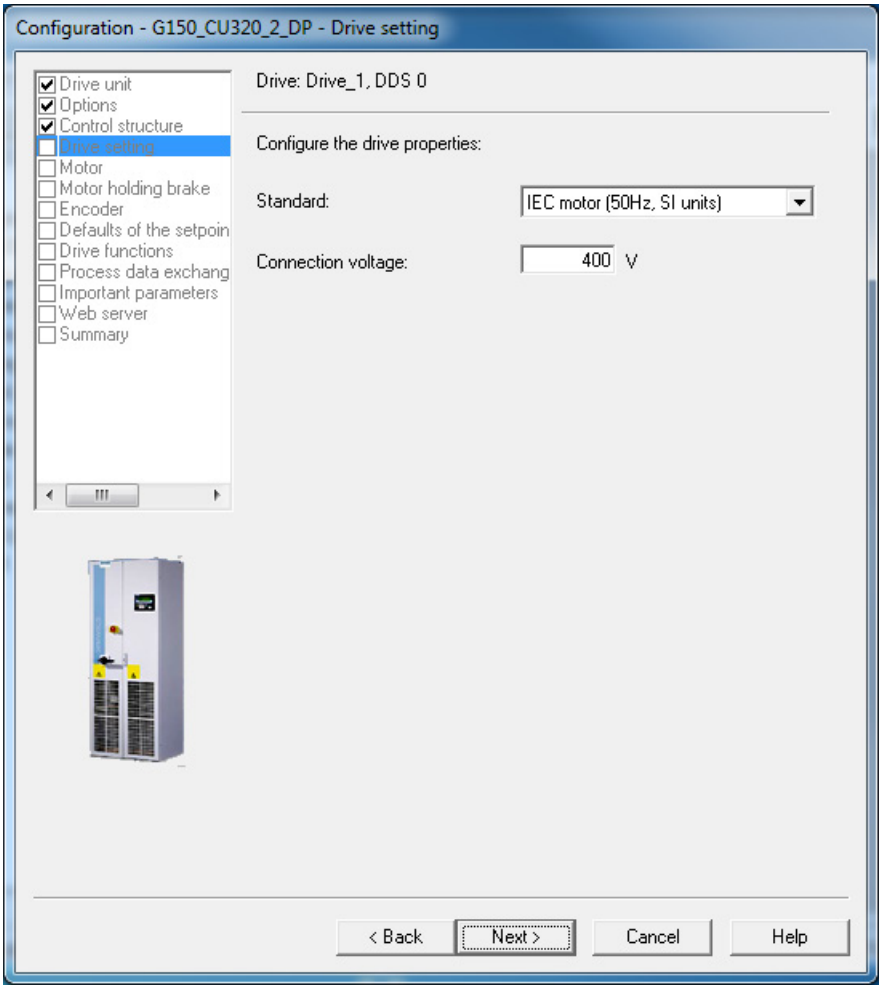


Figure 5-16 Configuring the drive unit properties

⇒ Under **Standard:**, choose the appropriate standard for your motor, whereby the following is defined:

- IEC motor (50 Hz, SI unit): Line frequency 50 Hz, motor data in kW
- NEMA motor (60 Hz, US unit): Line frequency 60 Hz, motor data in hp

⇒ Under **Connection voltage:**, enter the appropriate supply voltage of the cabinet unit.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

The connected motor can be selected and/or entered in different ways:

- by selecting a standard motor from a list
- by entering the motor data.

Selecting a standard motor type from a list

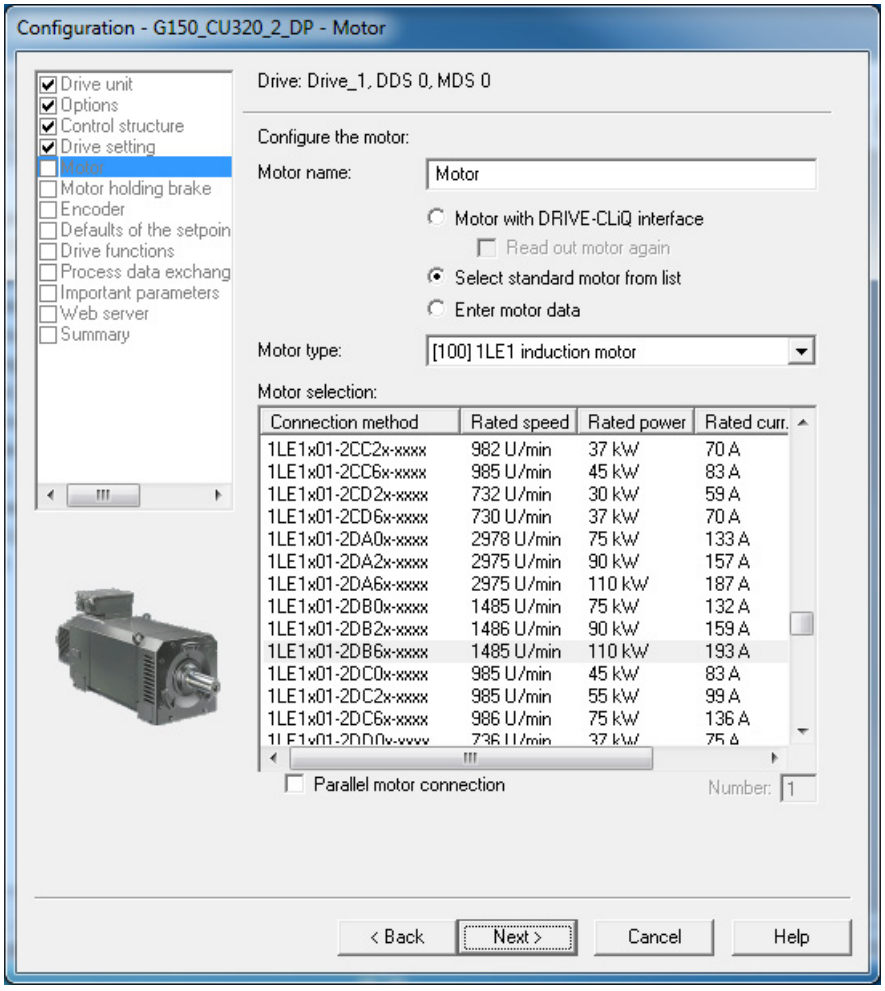


Figure 5-17 Configuring a motor – selecting the motor type, selecting a standard motor from a list

⇒ Under **Motor name:** enter a name for the motor.

⇒ Select **a standard motor from the list**

⇒ From the selection box next to **Motor type:**, select the corresponding motor type

⇒ From the list **Select motor:**, select the corresponding motor

⇒ Under **Parallel connection motor**, enter the number of motors connected in parallel when required.
Motors connected in parallel must be of the same type and rating.

⇒ Click on **Continue >** to configure the motor holding brake

Selecting the motor type by entering the motor data

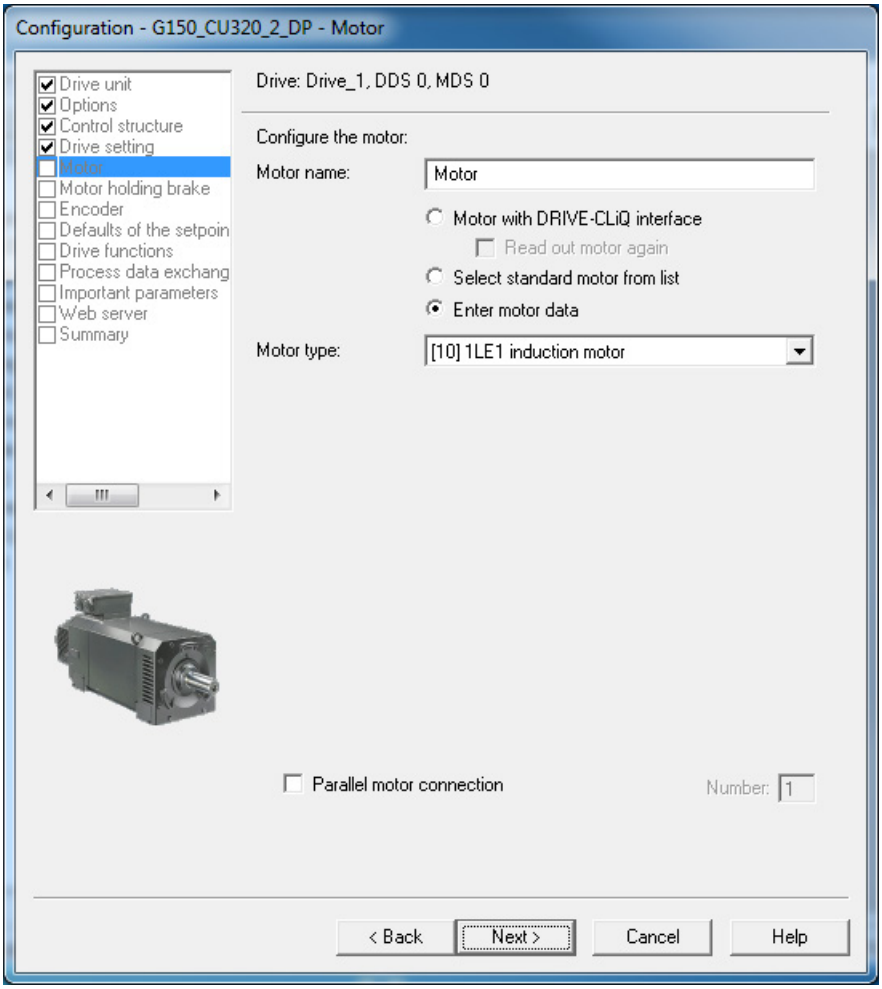


Figure 5-18 Configuring the motor – selecting the motor type, entering the motor data

⇒ Under **Motor name:** enter a name for the motor.

⇒ Select **Enter motor data**

⇒ From the selection box next to **Motor type:**, select the appropriate motor for your application.

⇒ Under **Parallel connection motor**, enter the number of motors connected in parallel when required.
Motors connected in parallel must be of the same type and rating.

Note

Selecting the motor type

The selection of the motor type is used to pre-assign specific motor parameters and to optimize the operating characteristics and behavior. Details are described in the list manual in the p0300 parameter.

Note

Commissioning of an induction motor

The steps described below also apply to commissioning an induction motor.

When commissioning a permanent-magnet synchronous motor, there are a few special conditions that apply, which are detailed in a separate chapter (see "Setpoint channel and closed-loop control / permanent-magnet synchronous motors").

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Entering motor data

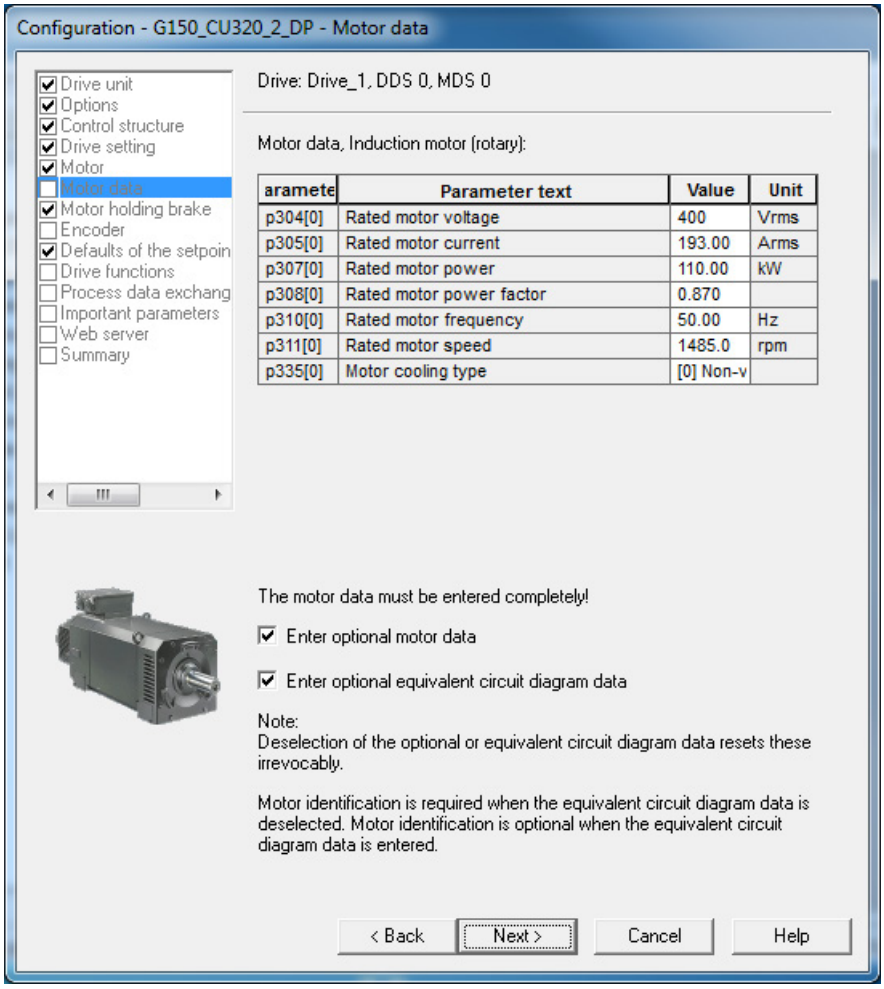


Figure 5-19 Configuring the motor – Entering motor data

⇒ Enter the motor data (see motor rating plate).

⇒ Activate **Enter optional motor data** if necessary.

⇒ Activate **Enter optional equivalent circuit diagram data** if necessary.

Note

Entering equivalent circuit diagram data

You should only activate the **Enter optional equivalent circuit diagram data** if the data sheet with equivalent circuit diagram data is available. If any data is missing, an error message will be output when the system attempts to load the drive project to the target system.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Entering optional data

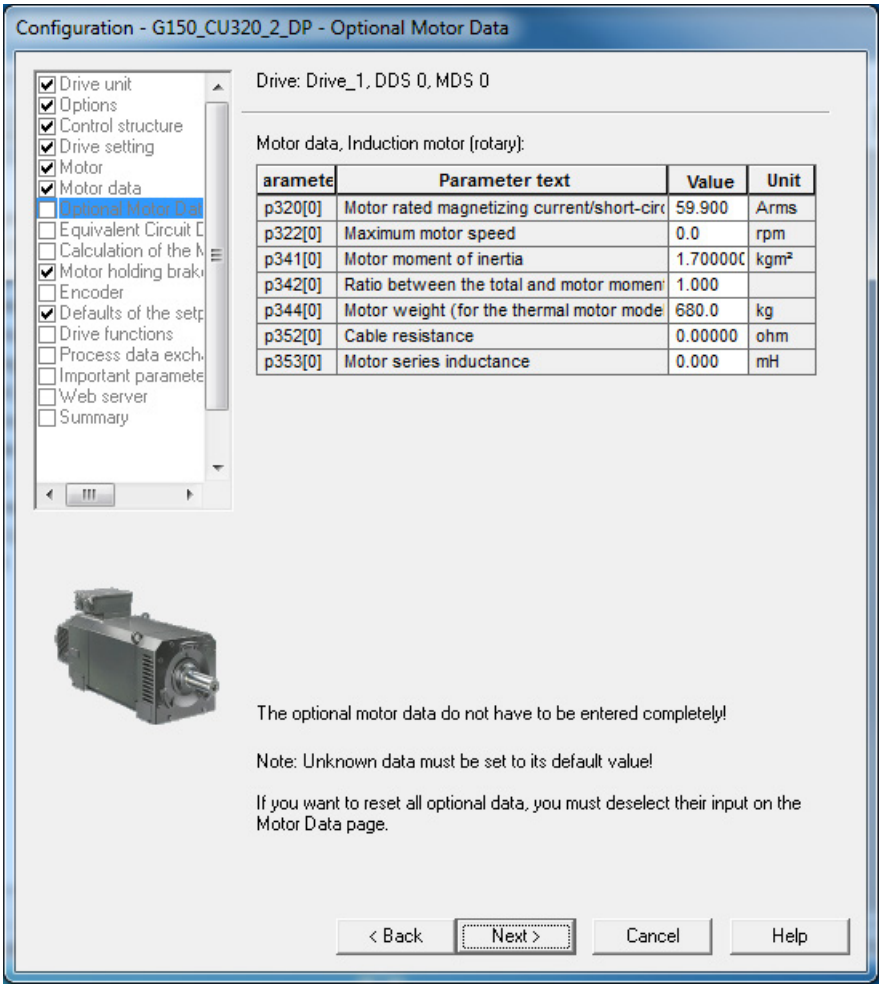


Figure 5-20 Entering optional motor data

⇒ Enter the optional motor data.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor – Entering the equivalent circuit diagram data

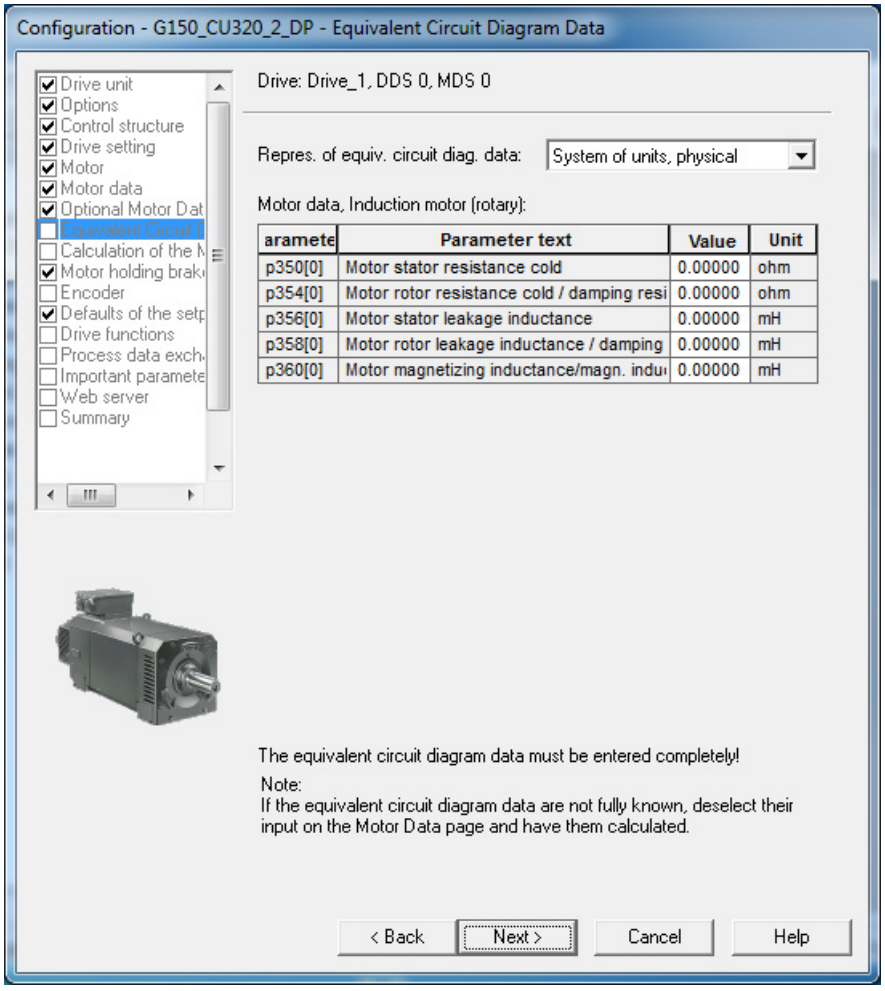


Figure 5-21 Entering equivalent circuit diagram data

⇒ Select one of the equivalent circuit diagram data representations:

- **Physical system of units**
  The equivalent circuit diagram data are shown in the form of physical units.
- **Referred system of units**
  The equivalent circuit diagram data is shown as a % referred to the rated motor data.

⇒ Enter the equivalent circuit diagram data completely.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Calculating the motor/controller data



Figure 5-22 Calculating the motor/controller data

⇒ In **Calculation of the motor/controller data**, select the appropriate default settings for your device configuration.

Note

Manual input of the equivalent circuit diagram data

If the equivalent circuit diagram data was entered manually (see "Entering the equivalent circuit diagram data"), then the motor/controller data should be calculated **without** calculating the equivalent circuit diagram data.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring the motor holding brake

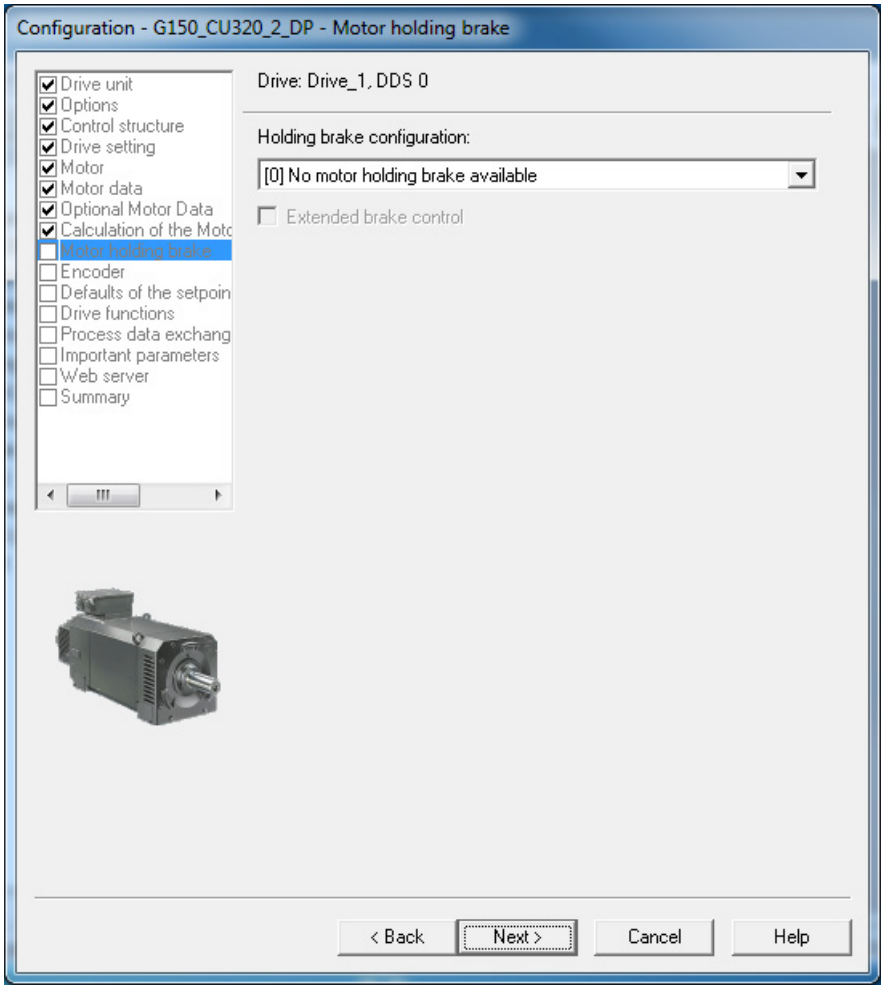


Figure 5-23 Configuring the motor holding brake

⇒ Under **Holding brake configuration:** choose the appropriate setting for your device configuration:

- 0: No motor holding brake being used
- 1: Motor holding brake like sequence control
- 2: Motor holding brake always open
- 3: Motor holding brake like sequence control, connection via BICO

⇒ When a motor holding brake is selected, you can also activate the "Extended brake control" function module.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Entering the encoder data (option K50)

Note

Entering the encoder data

If you have specified option K50 (Sensor Module SMC30), the following screen is displayed for you to enter the encoder data.

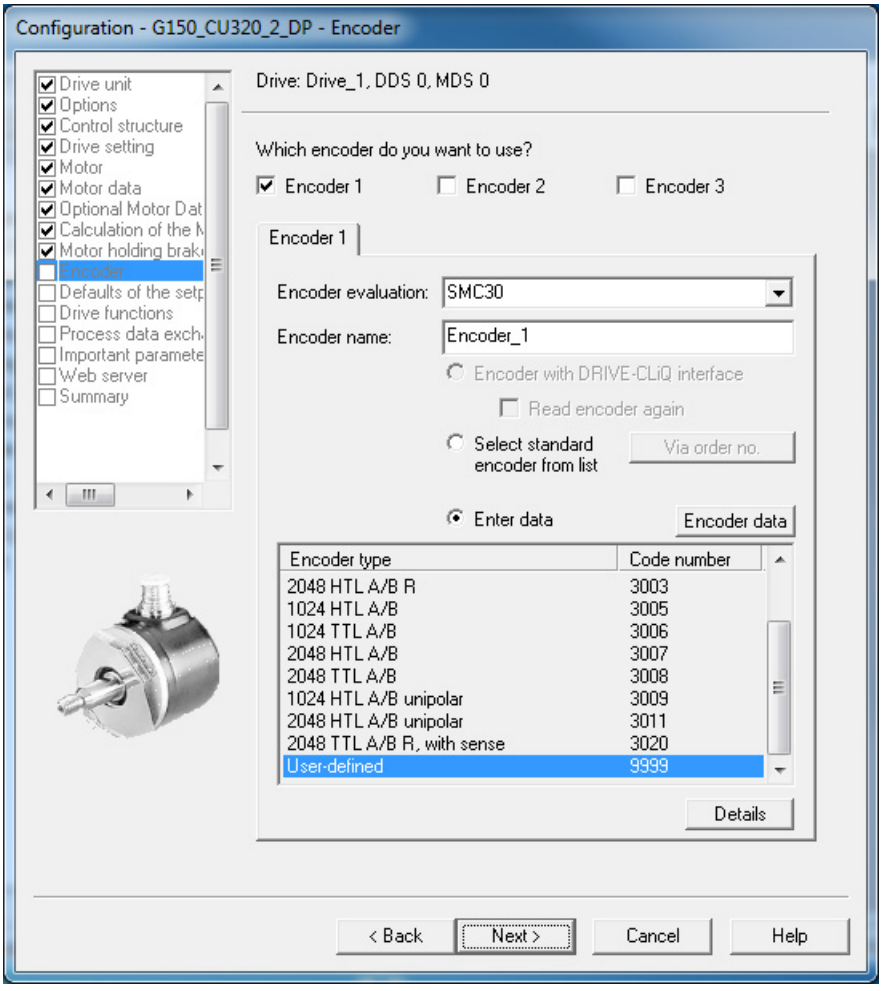


Figure 5-24 Entering the encoder data

⇒ In the **Encoder name:** field, enter a name of your choice.

Note

Delivery condition

The delivery condition is a bipolar HTL encoder with 1024 pulses per revolution at terminal X521/X531.

⇒ To select a different predefined encoder configuration, check the **Select standard encoder from list** radio button and select one of the encoders from the list.

⇒ To enter special encoder configurations, click the **Enter data** radio button and then the **Encoder data** button. The following input screen is displayed for you to enter the required data.

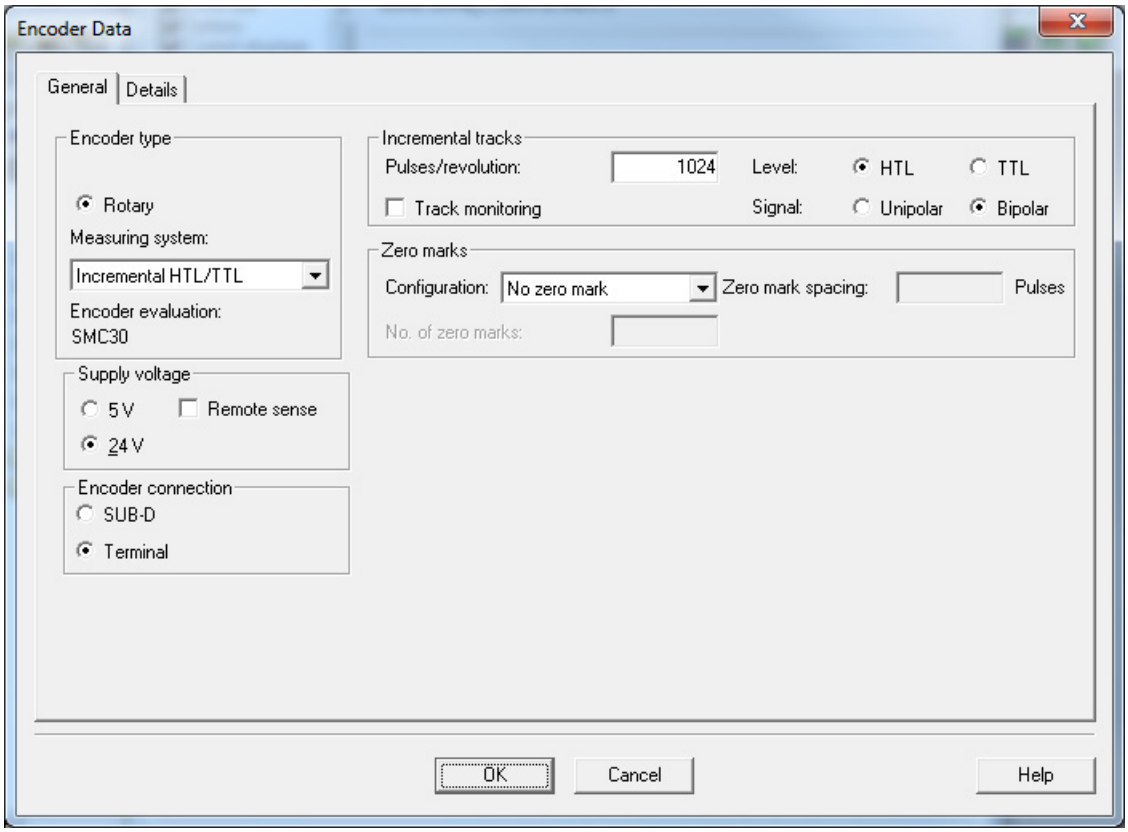


Figure 5-25 Entering encoder data – User-defined encoder data

⇒ Select the **measuring system**.

In conjunction with SINAMICS G150, the following encoders can be selected:

- HTL
- TTL

⇒ Enter the required encoder data.

⇒ Under the **Details** tab, special encoder properties can be set, for example, gear ratio, fine resolution, inversion, measuring gear position tracking.

⇒ Click **OK**.

NOTICE
Material damage when selecting the incorrect encoder supply voltage Once the encoder has been commissioned, the supply voltage (5/24 V) set for the encoder is activated on the SMC30 module. If a 5 V encoder is connected and the supply voltage has not been set correctly, the encoder may be damaged. • Set the correct supply voltage for the connected encoder.

Default settings for setpoints/command sources

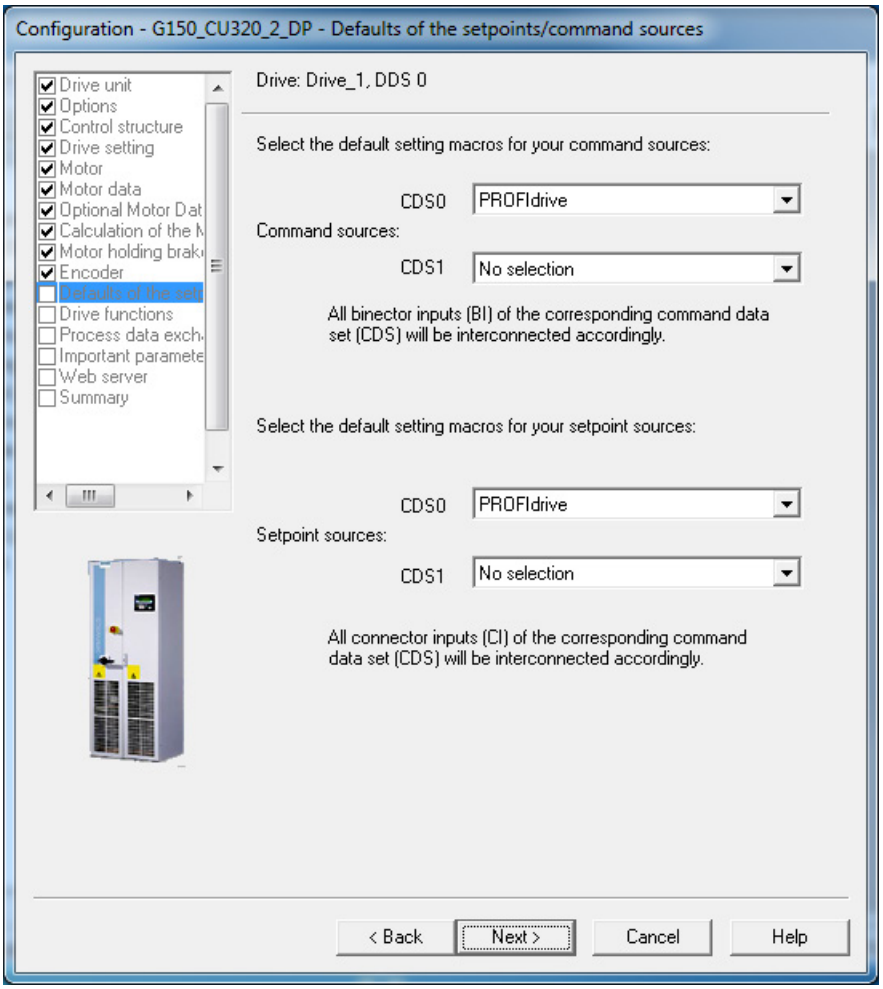


Figure 5-26 Default settings for setpoints/command sources

⇒ Under **Command sources:**, choose and **Setpoint sources:** choose the appropriate settings for your device configuration.

The following command and setpoint source options are available:

Command sources:	PROFIdrive (default)
	TM31 terminals
	NAMUR
	PROFIdrive NAMUR
Setpoint sources:	PROFIdrive (default)
	TM31 terminals
	Motorized potentiometer
	Fixed setpoint

Note

Use of CDS0

With SINAMICS G150, only CDS0 is normally used as a default setting for the command and setpoint sources.

Make sure that the selected default setting is compatible with the actual system configuration.

Note

Do not use a selection

The choice "no selection" is also available as default setting for the command and setpoint sources; if selected, no default settings are applied for the command and setpoint sources.

⇒ Check your default settings carefully and then click **Continue >**

Selecting drive functions

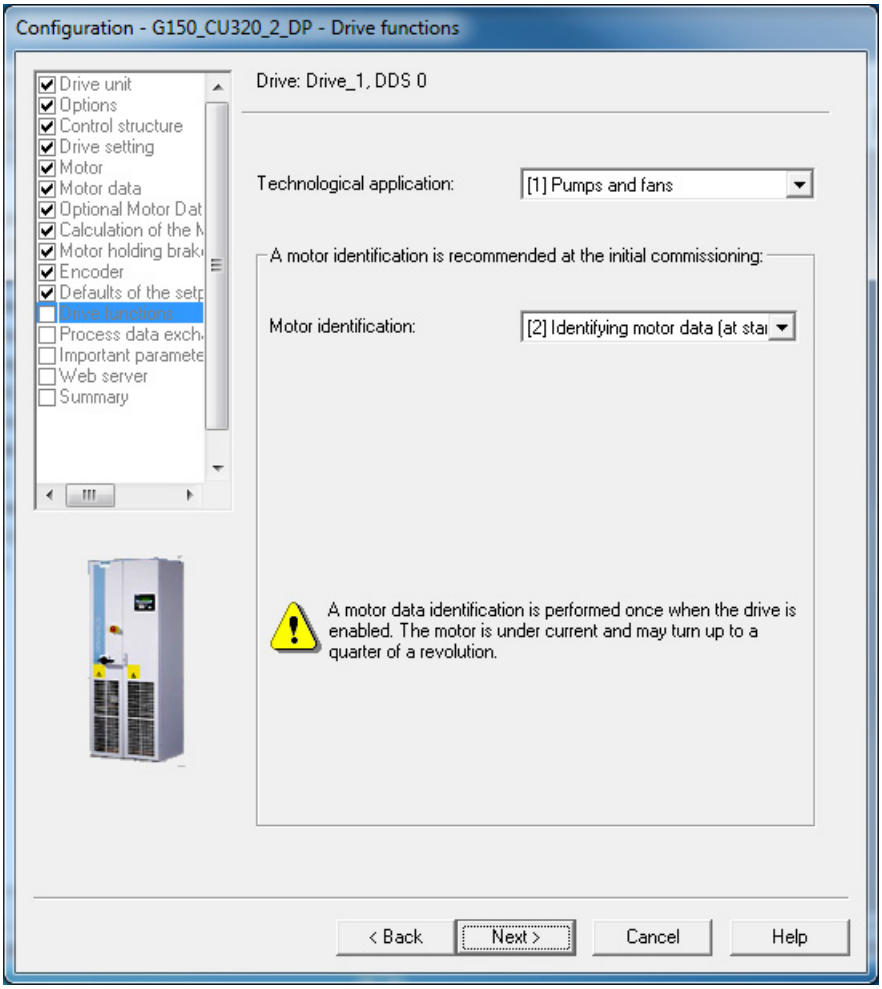


Figure 5-27 Selecting drive functions

⇒ Select the required data:

- **Technological application:**
  - **"(0) Standard drive (VECTOR)"**
    Edge modulation is not enabled.
    The dynamic voltage reserve is increased (10 V), which reduces the maximum output voltage.
  - **"(1) Pumps and fans"**(default setting)
    Edge modulation is enabled.
    The dynamic voltage reserve is reduced (2 V), which increases the maximum output voltage.
  - **"(2) Sensorless control down to f = 0 (passive loads)"**
    Closed-loop controlled operation down to zero speed is possible for passive loads. These include applications in which the load cannot produce a regenerative torque on startup and the motor comes to a standstill when pulses are inhibited.
  - **"(4) Dynamic response in the field weakening range"**
    Space vector modulation with overmodulationis is enabled.
    The dynamic voltage reserve is increased (30 V), which reduces the maximum output voltage.
- **Motor identification:**
  - (0): Disabled
  - (1): Identifying motor data and optimizing the closed-loop speed control
  - (2): Identifying motor data (at standstill)
  - (3): Optimizing closed-loop speed control (when rotating)

Note

Identifying motor data at standstill

In many cases, "Motor data identification at standstill" is the correct selection for SINAMICS G150.
"Identify motor data and optimize speed control" is the recommended setting for closed-loop speed control with encoder; this measurement is normally performed with a motor that is not coupled to a load.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life if the motor unexpectedly moves during motor identification in the rotating mode

When selecting motor identification with optimization in the rotating mode, after commissioning, the drive initiates that the motor rotates with speeds that can reach the maximum motor speed.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are fully functional when commissioning the drive.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Selecting process data exchange

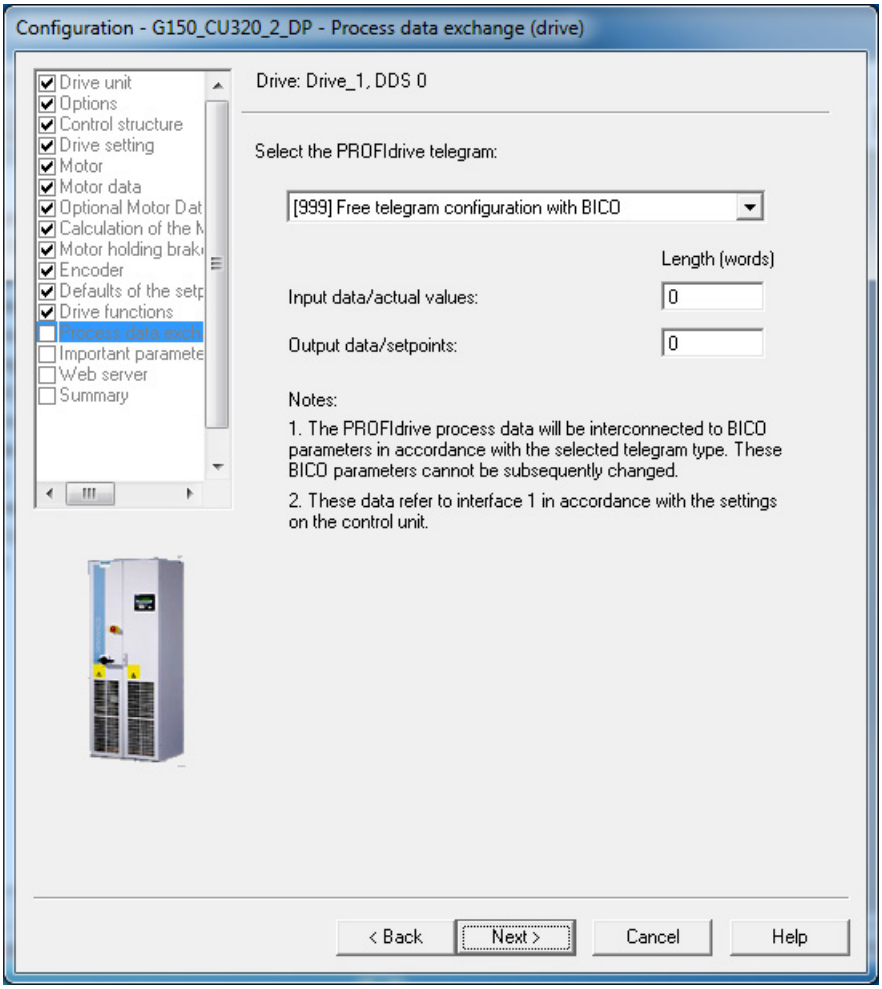


Figure 5-28 Selecting process data exchange

⇒ Select the PROFIdrive telegram type.

Message frame types

- 1: Standard telegram 1, PZD-2/2
- 2: Standard telegram 2, PZD-4/4
- 3: Standard telegram 3, PZD-5/9
- 4: Standard telegram 4, PZD-6/14
- 20: SIEMENS telegram 20, PZD-2/6
- 220: SIEMENS telegram 220, PZD-10/10
- 352: SIEMENS telegram 352, PZD-6/6
- 999: Free telegram configuration with BICO (default setting)

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Entering important parameters

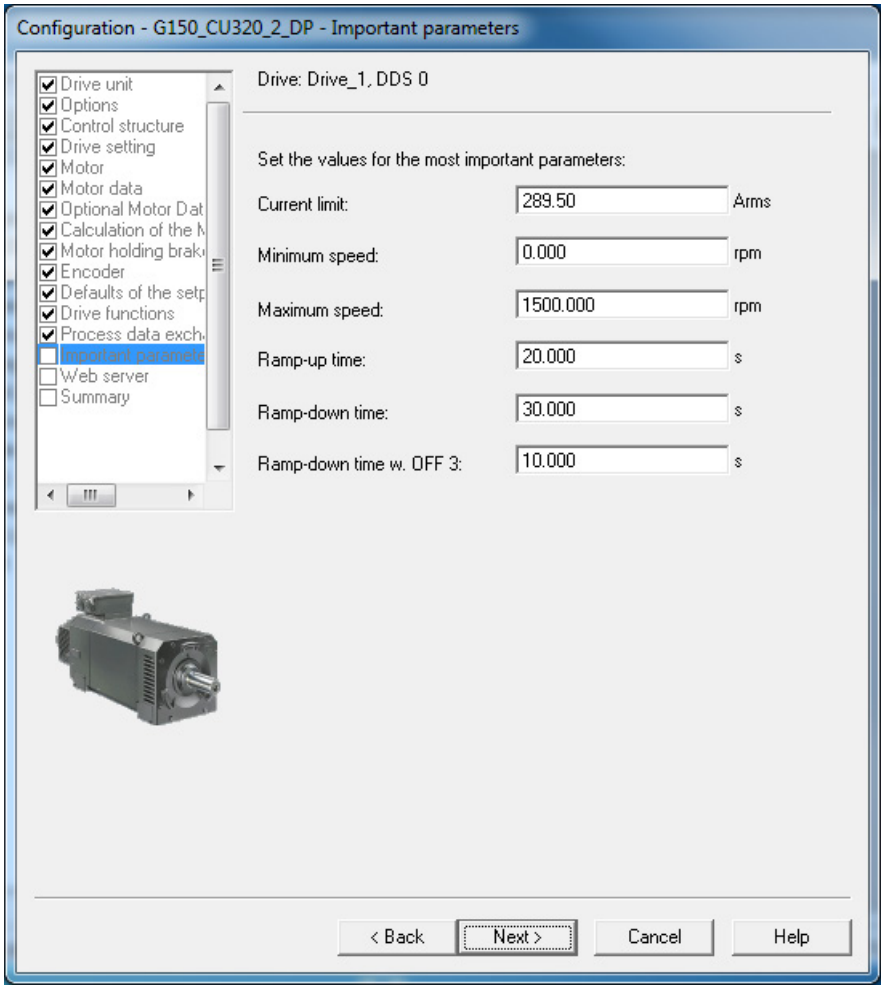


Figure 5-29 Important parameters

⇒ Enter the required parameter values.

Note

Tooltips

STARTER provides tool tips if you position your cursor on the required field **without clicking in the field**.

⇒ Click **Continue >**

Configuring a web server

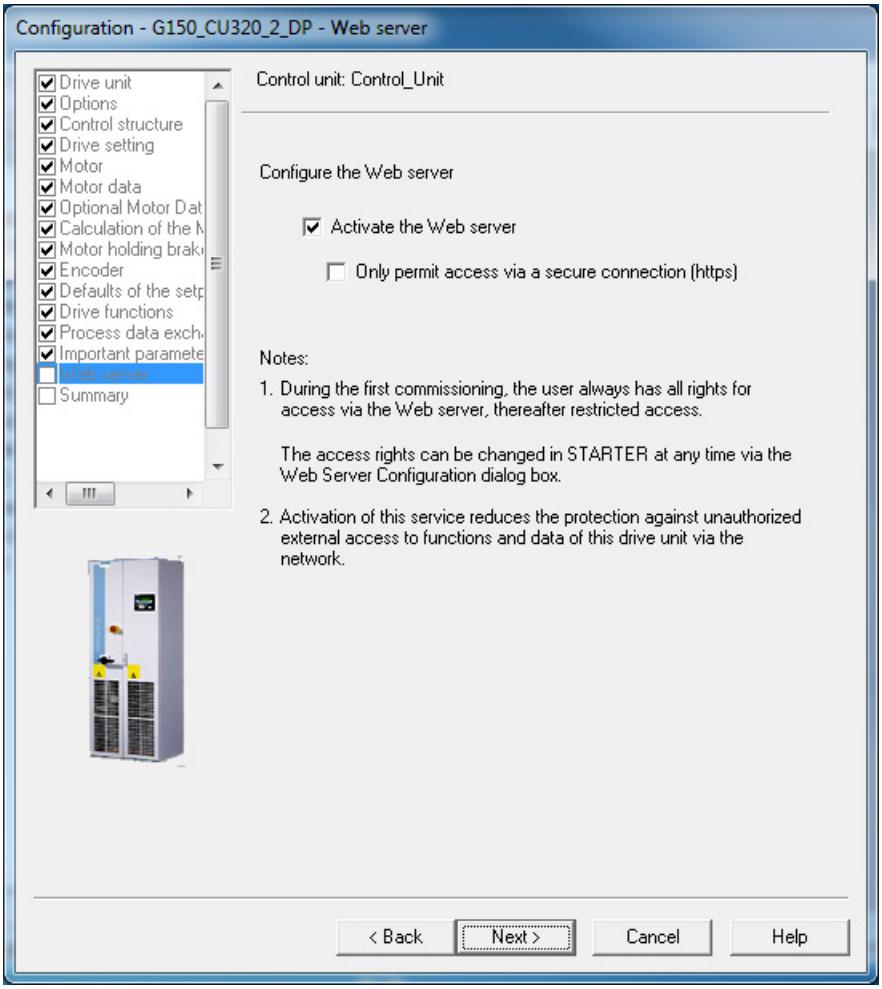


Figure 5-30 Configuring a web server

⇒ Configure the web server.

The Web server is activated in the factory setting.

Activate and deactivate the web server under **Activate web server**.

Select **Only allow access via secure connection (https)** if necessary.

⇒ Click **Continue >**.

Summary of the drive unit data

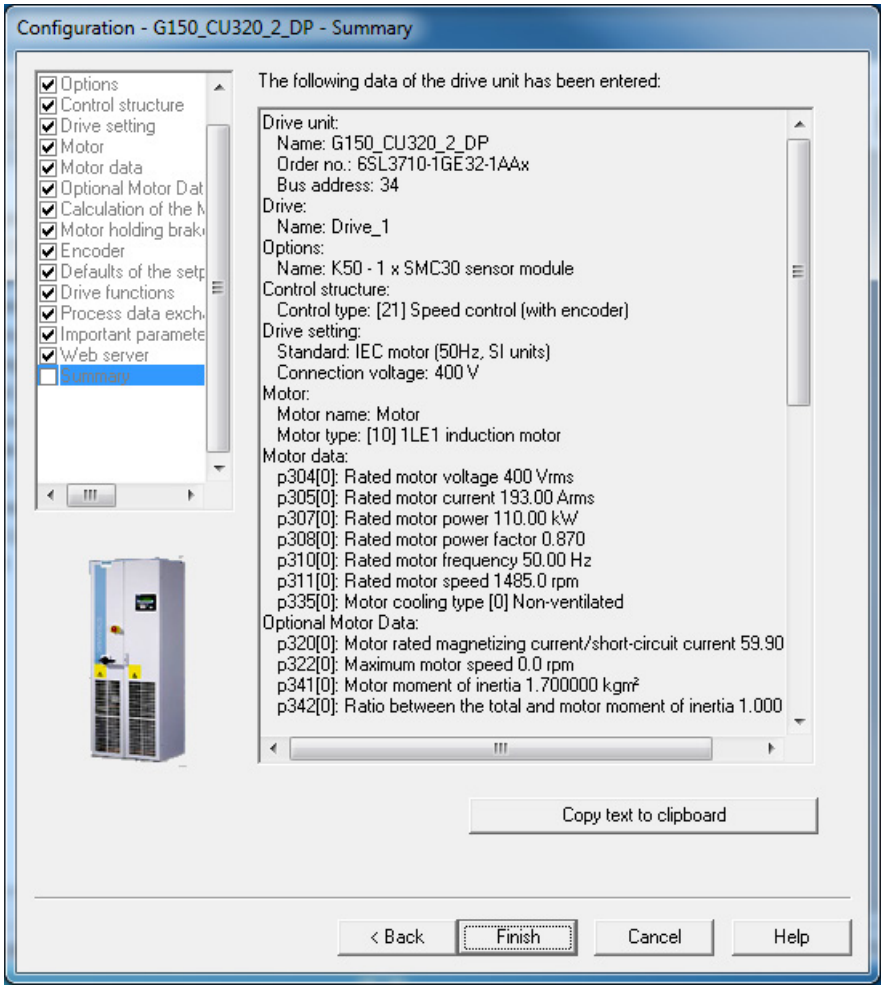


Figure 5-31 Summary of the drive unit data

⇒ You can use the **Copy to clipboard** function to copy the summary of the drive unit data displayed on the screen to a word processing program for further use.

⇒ Click **Finish**.

⇒ Save your project to the hard disk by choosing **Project > Save**.

5.3.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel

After commissioning with STARTER, for the (parallel) units listed below, in addition, the following settings must be made:

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

Settings to monitor the checkback signal from the main contactor or circuit breaker for 12-pulse infeed

The checkback contacts of the main contactors and the circuit breakers are connected in series in the factory and wired to digital input 5 of the Control Unit.

After the drive unit has been commissioned, the checkback signal monitoring function must be activated. This is realized using parameter p0860{VECTOR} = 722.5{CU}.

NOTICE

Material damage when the main contactor or circuit breaker feedback signal is not monitored

If the monitoring function for the main contactor or circuit breaker checkback signal is not activated, then the drive could be powered up even if the main contactor or circuit breaker on an individual system fails. This could overload and damage the input rectifiers of the individual system.

- Activate the main contactor or circuit breaker feedback signal monitoring.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be made again after the drive unit has been recommissioned.

Settings for motor connection to a motor with one-winding system

During commissioning, a motor with several winding systems is automatically defined.

The setting for a one-winding system is made after commissioning has been completed by setting parameter p7003 to 0.

Note

Setting "motor with a one-winding system"

If the "motor with a one-winding system" is not set using p7003 = 0, then the drive can be powered down (tripped) during the motor identification routine with an "overcurrent" fault message. The system will not be properly tuned.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be made again after the drive unit has been recommissioned.

5.3.4 Transferring the drive project

You have created a project and saved it to your hard disk. You now have to transfer your project configuration data to the drive unit.

Specifying the online access point

To connect to the target system, the chosen access point must be specified.

In the menu bar, select **Target system** > **Select target devices ...**; the following dialog screen appears.

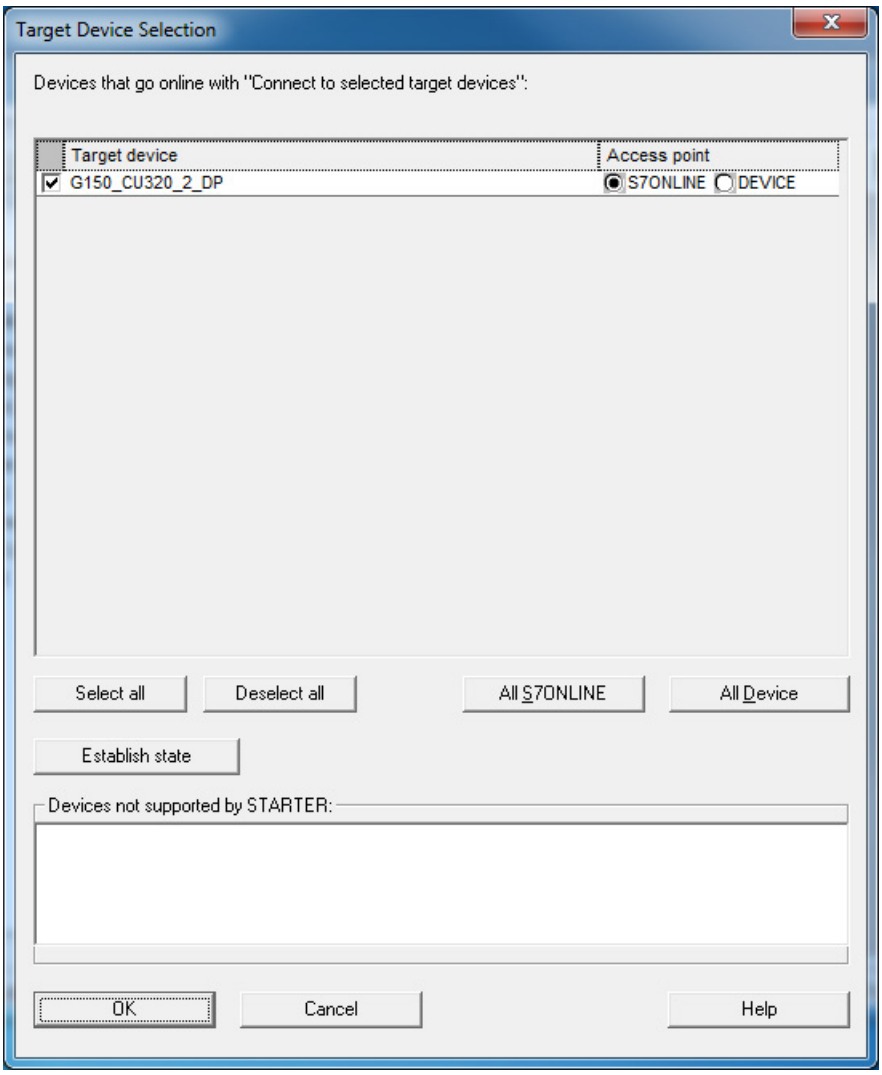


Figure 5-32 Target device selection and access points

The dialog screen lists all existing devices in the project.

Specify access point:

- Select S7ONLINE access for a device, if the connection to the programming device or PC is established via PROFINET or PROFIBUS.
- Select DEVICE access for a device if the connection to the programming device or PC is established via the Ethernet interface.

Transferring the STARTER project to the drive unit

To transfer the STARTER project you created offline to the drive unit, carry out the following steps:

Step		Selection in toolbar
1	Choose **Project > Connect to selected target system**	
2	Choose the menu item **Target system > Load > Load project to target system**	

Note

Save project data so it is protected from power failure

The project has now been loaded to the drive unit. This data is currently available only in the drive unit's volatile memory and not on the CompactFlash Card!

To store the project data on the memory card so that it is protected in the event of a power failure, carry out the following step.

Step		Selection in toolbar
3	Choose **Target system > Copy from RAM to ROM**	

Note

Copy from RAM to ROM

The **Copy from RAM to ROM** button is only active when the drive unit is selected in the project navigator.

Results of the previous steps

- You have created a drive unit project offline using STARTER.
- You have saved the project data to the hard disk on your PC.
- You have transferred the project data to the drive unit.
- You have saved your project data to your drive's memory card so that it is backed up in the event of a power failure.

Note

Tip for working with STARTER

The STARTER commissioning tool supports complex drive system operations.

If you are confronted with any system conditions in online mode that are beyond your control, you are advised to delete the drive project from the project navigator and carefully create a new project in STARTER using the appropriate configuration data for your application.

5.3.5 Commissioning with STARTER via Ethernet

Description

The Control Unit can be commissioned using a programming device (PG/PC) via the integrated Ethernet interface. This interface is provided for commissioning purposes only and cannot be used to control the drive in operation.

A routing of the integrated Ethernet interface via any inserted CBE20 expansion card is not possible.

Preconditions

- STARTER as of version 4.1.5
- Control Unit CU320-2 DP as of device version "C", CU320-2 PN Control Unit

STARTER via Ethernet (example)

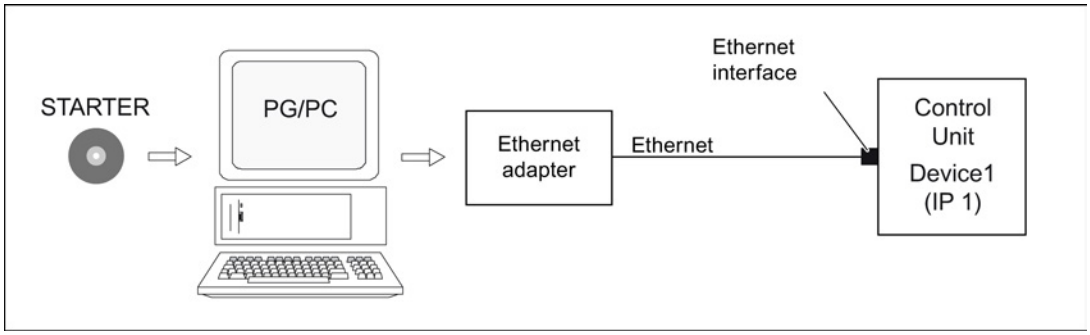


Figure 5-33 STARTER via Ethernet (example)

Procedure for establishing online operation via Ethernet

1. Install the Ethernet interface in the PG/PC according to the manufacturer's specifications.
2. Set the IP address of the Ethernet interface in Windows.
   - Assign the PG/PC a free IP address (e.g. 169.254.11.1).
   - The factory setting for the internal Ethernet interface -X127 of the Control Unit is 169.254.11.22.
3. Set the access point of the STARTER commissioning tool.
4. Use the STARTER commissioning tool to specify a name for the Control Unit interface.

   The Ethernet interface must be initialized so that the STARTER can establish communication. Selecting online mode in STARTER.

Setting the IP address in Windows 7

Note

The following procedure refers to the Windows 7 operating system. Operation can differ slightly for other operating systems (e.g. Windows XP).

1. In the PG/PC call the control panel using the "Start > Control Panel" menu item.
2. In the control panel of your PG/PC, under "Network and Internet", select the "Network and Sharing Center" function.
3. For your network card that is displayed, click the connection link.
4. Click in the status dialog of the connection on "Properties" and acknowledge the subsequent confirmation prompt with "Yes".
5. In the properties dialog of the connection, select the "Internet protocol 4 (TCP/IPv4)" element and then click "Properties".
6. In the properties dialog, activate the "Use the following IP address" option.

7. Set the IP address of the PG/PC access interface to the Control Unit to 169.254.11.1 and the subnet mask to 255.255.0.0.

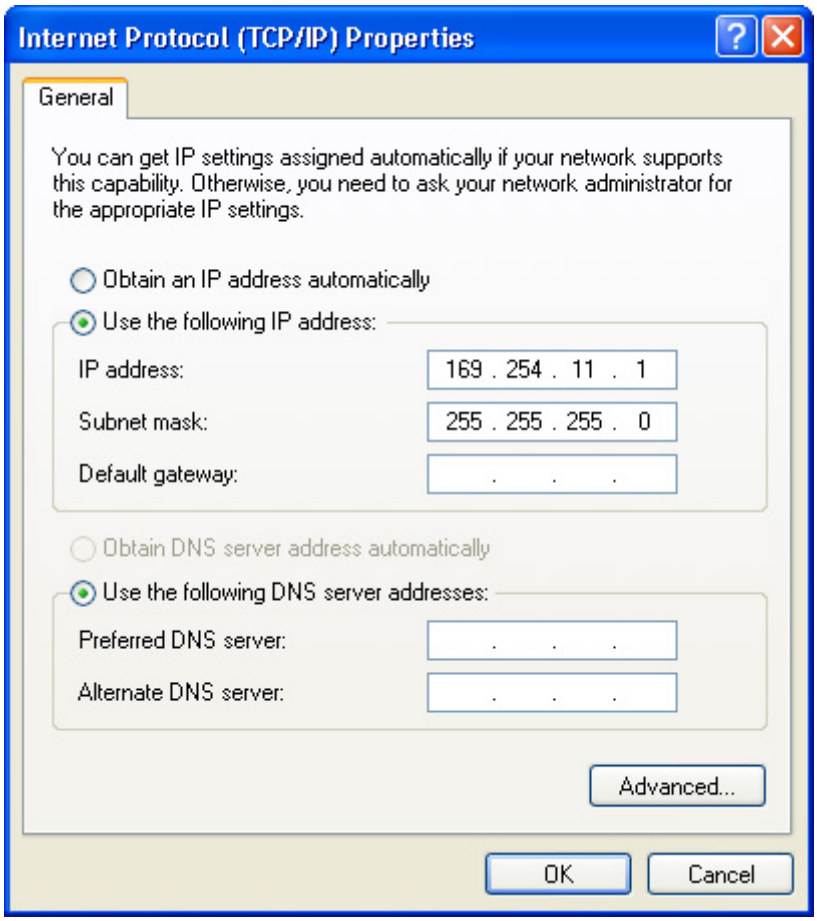


Figure 5-34 Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) properties

8. Click "OK" and close the Windows-specific window of the network connections.

Assigning the IP address and the name via STARTER, "Accessible nodes" function

Use the STARTER to assign an IP address and a name to the Ethernet interface.

1. Connect the PG/PC and the Control Unit using an Ethernet cable.
2. Switch on the Control Unit.
3. Open STARTER.
4. Create a new project or open an existing project.
5. Search for available nodes in Ethernet via Project -> Accessible nodes or the "Accessible nodes" button.

6. The SINAMICS drive object is detected and displayed as a bus node with IP address 169.254.11.22 and without name.

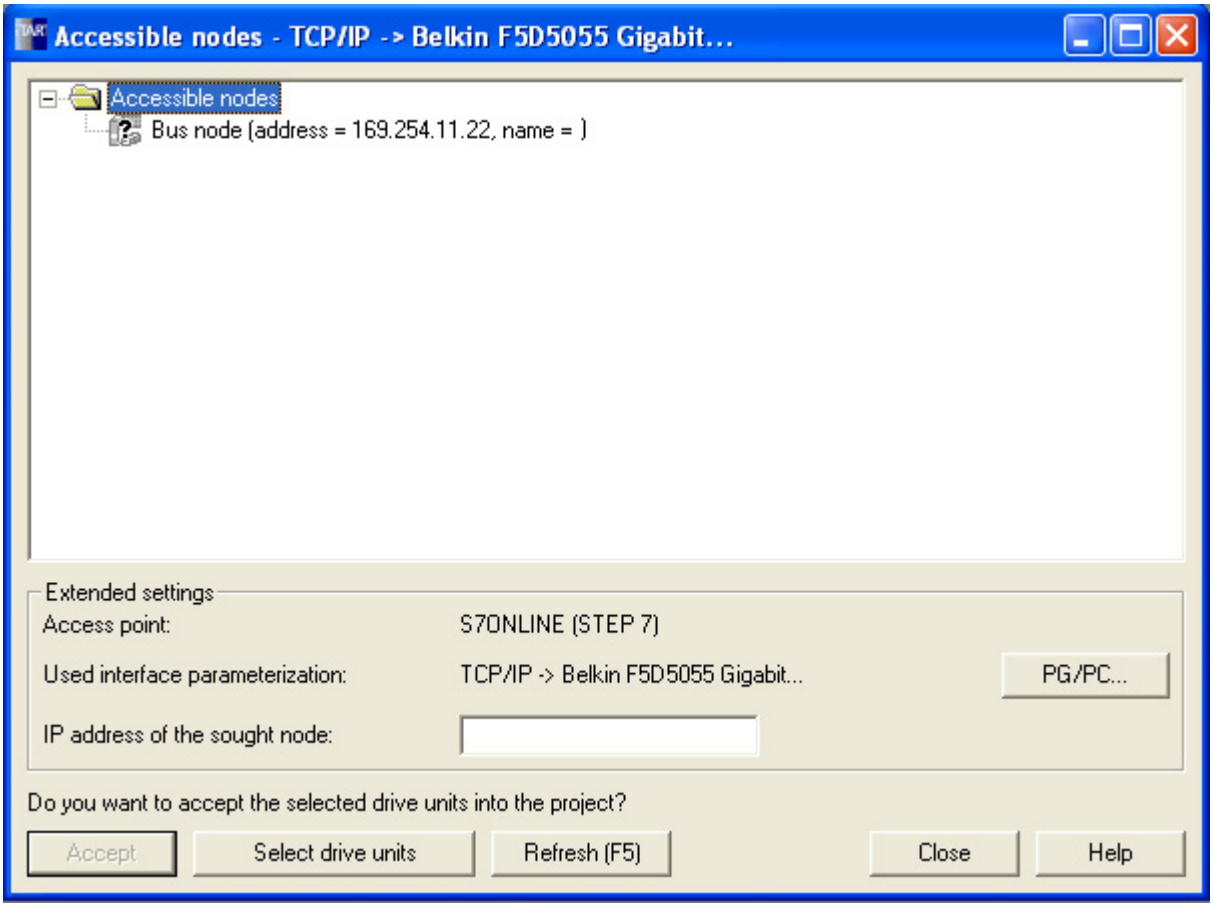


Figure 5-35 Accessible nodes

7. Mark the bus node entry and select the displayed menu item "Edit Ethernet node" with the right mouse button.
8. In the following "Edit Ethernet node" screen, enter the device name for the Ethernet interface ("drive1", for example) and click the "Assign name" button. Enter the IP address (e.g. 169.254.11.10) in the IP configuration and specify the subnet screen (e.g. 255.255.255.0). Then click the "Assign IP configuration" button and close the mask.

Note

Naming devices

ST (Structured Text) conventions must be satisfied for the name assignment of IO devices in Ethernet (SINAMICS components). The names must be unique within Ethernet.

Rules for assigning names:

- Other than "-" and ".", no special characters (such as accented characters, spaces, brackets) are permitted in the name of an IO device.
- The device name must not begin or end with the "-" character.
- The device name must not begin with a number.
- Maximum total length of 240 characters (lowercase characters, numbers, hyphen, or period).
- A name component within the device name, e.g. a string between two periods, must not exceed 63 characters.
- The device name must not take the form n.n.n.n (n = 0, ... 999).
- The device name must not begin with the character sequence "port-xyz" or "port-xyz-abcde" (a, b, c, d, e, x, y, z = 0, ... 9).

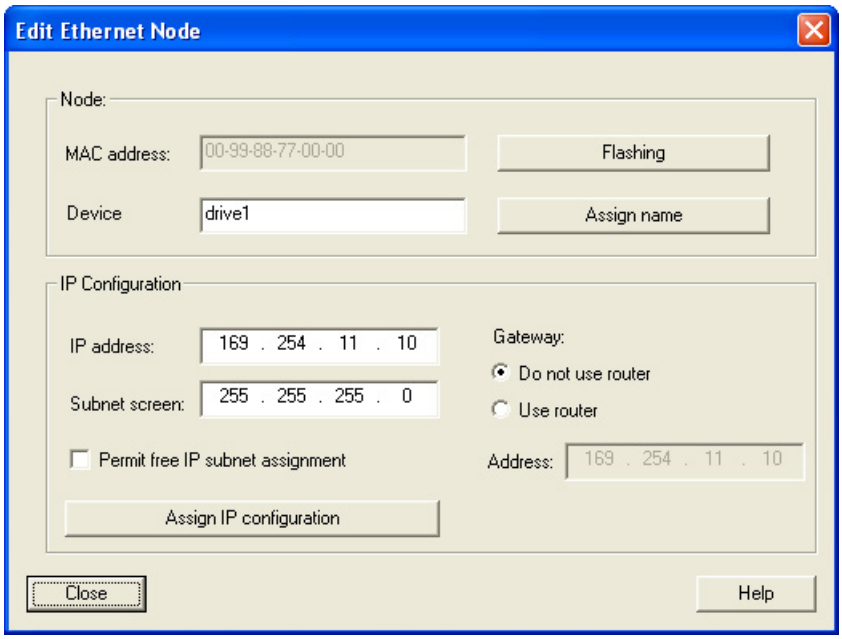


Figure 5-36 Edit Ethernet Node

9. Pressing the "Update (F5)" button displays the IP address and name in the entry for the bus node. If not, close the "Accessible nodes" screen and perform another search for accessible nodes.
10. If the Ethernet interface is displayed as bus node, select the entry and click the "Accept" button.

11.The SINAMICS drive is displayed as drive object in the project navigator.

12.You can now configure the drive unit (see Chapter "Configuring the drive unit").

Note

Storage location of the IP address

The IP address and device name are stored on the memory card of the Control Unit (non-volatile).

Parameter

Parameters can also be used to modify and/or display the properties of the Ethernet interface.

- p8900 IE name of station
- p8901 IE IP address of station
- p8902 IE default gateway of station
- p8903 IE subnet mask of station
- p8904 IE DHCP mode
- p8905 IE interface configuration
- r8910 IE name of station active
- r8911 IE IP address of station active
- r8912 IE default gateway of station active
- r8913 IE subnet mask of station active
- r8914 IE DHCP mode of station active
- r8915 IE MAC address of station

5.4 The AOP30 operator panel

Description

An operator panel is located in the cabinet door of the cabinet unit for operating, monitoring, and commissioning tasks. It has the following features:

- Graphic-capable, back-lit LCD for plain-text display and a "bar-type display" for process variables
- LEDs for indicating the operating modes
- Help function describing causes of and remedies for faults and alarms
- Keypad for controlling drives during operation
- LOCAL/REMOTE switchover for selecting the control terminal (master control assigned to operator panel or Customer Terminal Block / PROFIdrive)
- Numeric keypad for entering setpoint or parameter values
- Function keys for prompted navigation through the menus
- Two-stage security concept to protect against accidental or unauthorized changes to settings
- IP54 degree of protection (when installed).

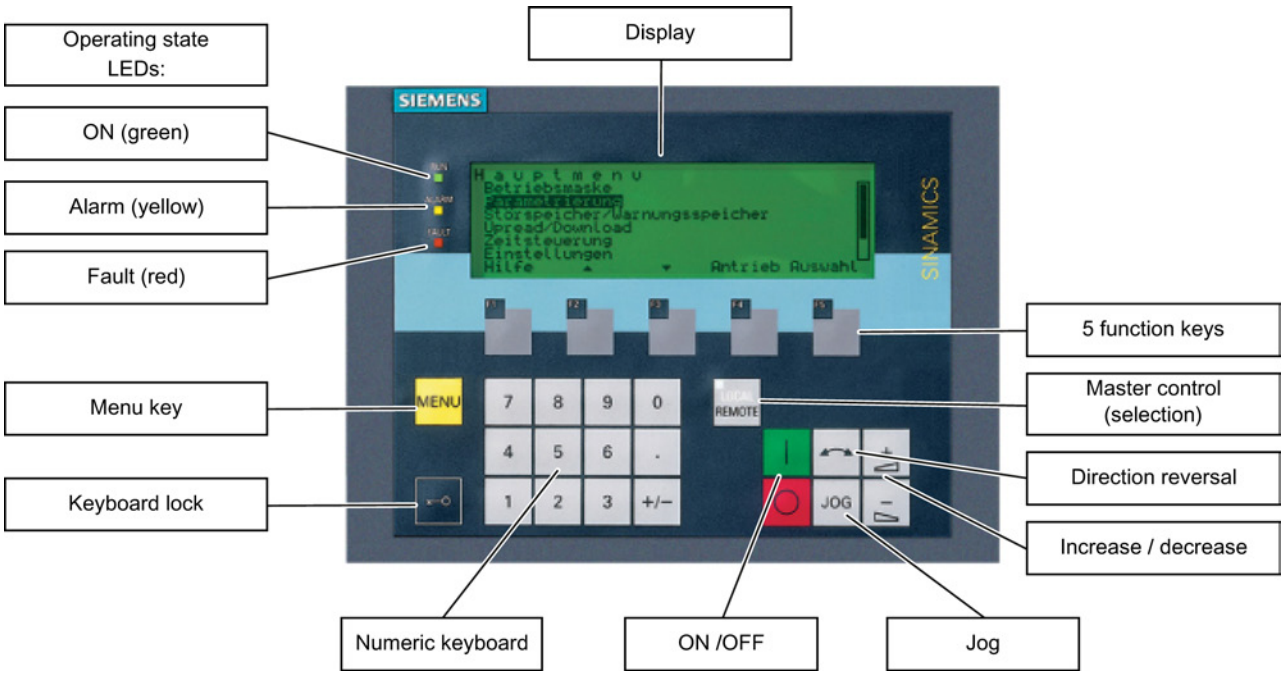


Figure 5-37 Components of the cabinet unit operator panel (AOP30)

5.5 First commissioning with the AOP30

5.5.1 Initial ramp-up

Start screen

When the system is switched on for the first time, the Control Unit is initialized automatically. The following screen is displayed:

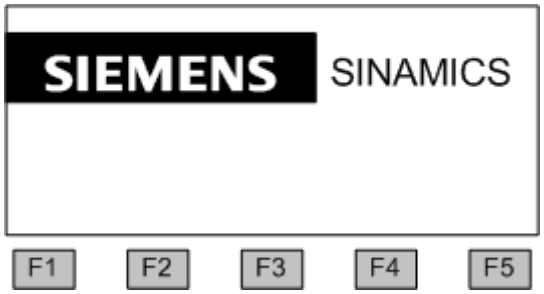


Figure 5-38 Initial screen

When the system boots up, the parameter descriptions are loaded into the operating field from the CompactFlash card.

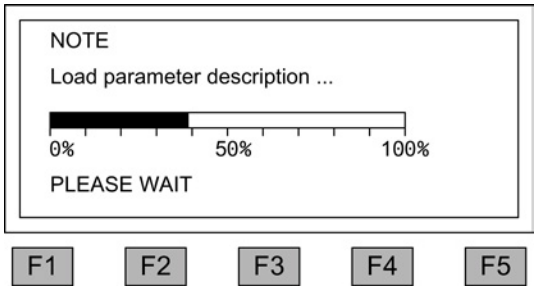
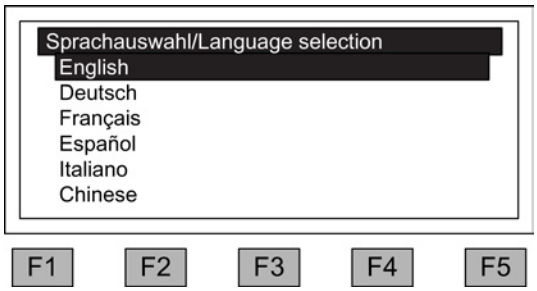


Figure 5-39 Load the parameter descriptions while booting up the system

Selecting the language

When the system is first booted up, a screen for selecting the language appears.



You can select the language in the dialog screen.

To change the language, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To select the language, choose <F5>.

Once the language has been selected, the booting up process continues.

Once the system has successfully ramped up, the drive has to be commissioned when the system is switched on for the first time after it has been delivered. The converter can then be switched on.

For a subsequent power up, operation can be directly started.

Navigation within the interactive screens

Within an interactive screen, the selection boxes can usually be selected using the <F2> and/or <F3> keys. Selection fields are generally texts surrounded by a frame. When they are selected, they are highlighted with a white text on a black background.
The present value of a highlighted selection box can usually be changed by pressing <F5> "OK" and/or "Change." Another entry box then appears and the value you want is entered directly using the numerical keypad or can be selected from a list.

You can change from one interactive screen to the next or previous screen by selecting the "Next" or "Previous" selection boxes and then confirming by pressing <F5> "OK."
If a screen contains particularly important parameters, the selection field "Continue" only appears at the bottom of the screen. This is because every single parameter in this interactive screen has to be checked and/or corrected thoroughly before the next interactive screen can be accessed.

With some commissioning steps, the entire commissioning can be interrupted by selecting "Interrupt COMM."

5.5.2 Basic commissioning

Entering the motor data

During initial commissioning, you have to enter motor data using the operator panel. Use the data shown on the motor type plate.

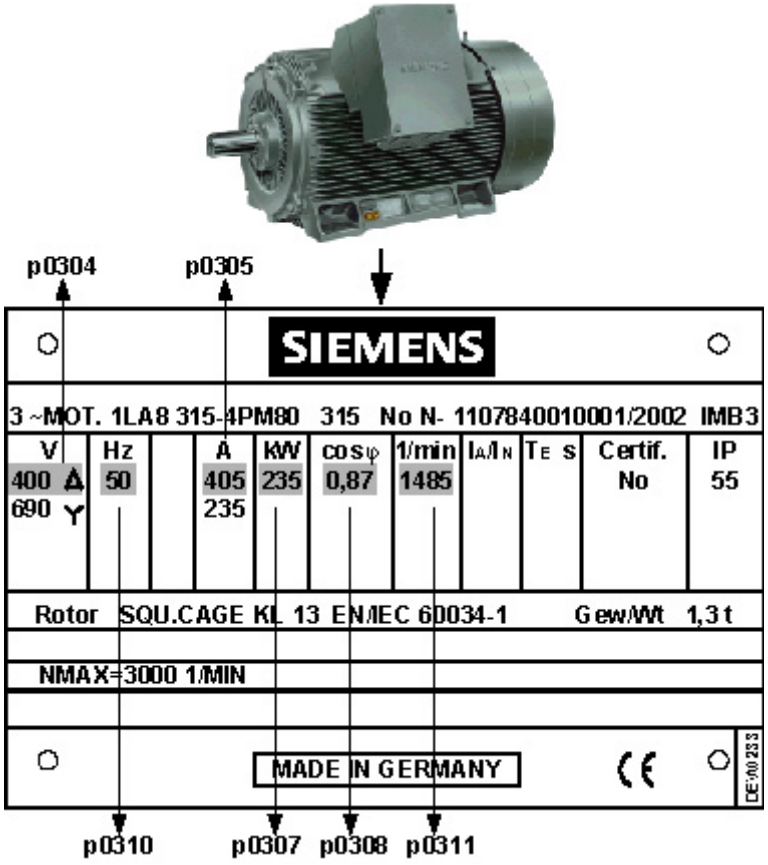


Figure 5-40 Example of a motor type plate

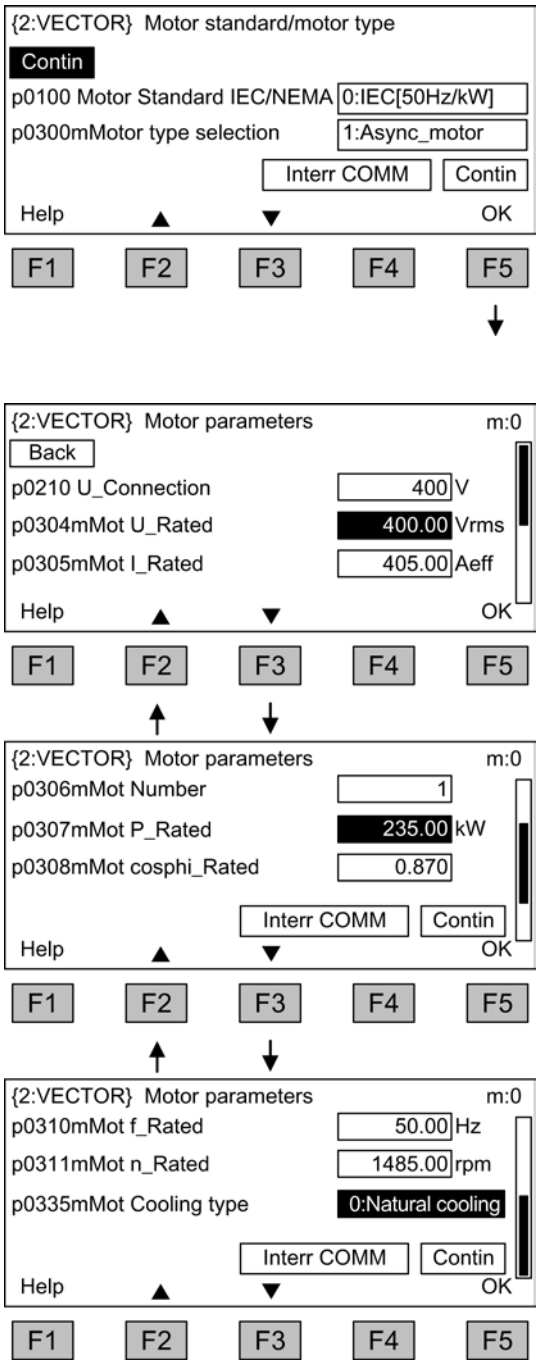
Table 5- 1 Motor data

	Parameter no.	Values	Unit
System of units for line frequency and entering motor data	p0100	0 1	IEC [50 Hz / kW] NEMA [60 Hz / hp]
Motor: Rated voltage Rated current Rated power Rated power factor cos ϕ (at p0100 = 0 only) Rated efficiency η (at p0100 = 1only) Rated frequency Rated speed	 p0304 p0305 p0307 p0308 p0309 p0310 p0311		 [V] [A] [kW] / [hp] [%] [Hz] [min-1] / [rpm]

Basic commissioning: Selecting the motor type and entering the motor data

For the following cabinet units, possible additional settings must be made before the following sequence (see "Additional settings required for units connected in parallel"):

- For 3-phase 380 to 480 VAC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 3-phase 500 to 600 VAC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 3-phase 660 to 690 VAC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx



You can select the motor standard and type in the dialog screen.

The following is defined for the motor standard:

0: Line frequency 50 Hz, motor data in kW
1: Line frequency 60 Hz, motor data in hp

The corresponding motor is selected for the motor type.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

Entering the motor data specified on the type plate.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

To change a parameter value, navigate to the required selection field and activate with <F5>.

The system displays another window in which you can:

- Enter the value directly, or
- Select the value from a list.

When you have finished entering the motor data, choose "Continue" below the final parameter value and activate with <F5>.

Note

Selecting the motor type

The selection of the motor type pre-assigns specific motor parameters and optimizes the operating characteristics and behavior. Details are described in the List Manual in the p0300 parameter.

Note

Selection of a list motor (p0300 ≥ 100)

When a motor type ≥ 100 is selected, the order number of the associated motor can be selected from a selection list.

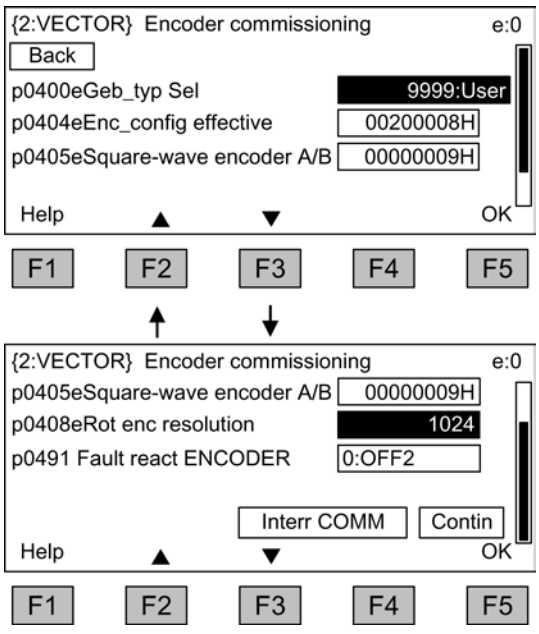
Note

Commissioning an induction motor

The steps described below also apply to commissioning an induction motor.

When commissioning a permanent-magnet synchronous motor (p0300 = 2), there are a few special conditions that apply, which are detailed in a separate chapter (see "Setpoint channel and closed-loop control/Permanent-magnet synchronous motors").

Basic commissioning: entering the encoder data (if available)



When the SMC30 is connected for encoder evaluation (with option K50), it is recognized by the AOP30 and a screen is displayed in which you can enter the encoder data.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

Predefined encoders can be easily set by selecting parameter p0400 (encoder type selection):

3001: 1024 HTL A/B R
3002: 1024 TTL A/B R
3003: 2048 HTL A/B R
3005: 1024 HTL A/B
3006: 1024 TTL A/B
3007: 2048 HTL A/B
3008: 2048 TTL A/B
3009: 1024 HTL A/B unipolar
3011: 2048 HTL A/B unipolar
3020: 2048 TTL A/B R with sense

Note

Delivery condition

The delivery condition is a bipolar HTL encoder with 1024 pulses per revolution and a 24-V power supply.

The section ("Electrical Installation") contains two connection examples for HTL and TTL encoders.

Note

Pre-defined encoder type

If a predefined encoder type is selected using p0400, then the settings of the following parameters p0404, p0405 and p0408 cannot be changed.

If the connected encoder does not match any of the encoders predefined in p0400, follow the simple procedure below for entering the encoder data:

- Via p0400, select an encoder type whose data is similar to that of the connected encoder.
- Select "User-defined encoder" (p0400 = 9999). Previously set values are stored here.
- Adjust the bit fields of p0404, p0405, and p0408 to the data for the connected encoder.

Table 5- 2 Meaning of the bit setting for p0404

Bit	Meaning	Value 0	Value 1
20	Voltage 5 V	No	Yes
21	Voltage 24 V	No	Yes

Table 5- 3 Meaning of the bit settings for p0405

Bit	Meaning	Value 0	Value 1
0	Signal	Unipolar	Bipolar
1	Level	HTL	TTL
2	Track monitoring	None	A/B>< -A/B
3	Zero pulse	24 V unipolar	Same as A/B track
4	Switching threshold	Low	High
5	Pulse/direction	No	Yes

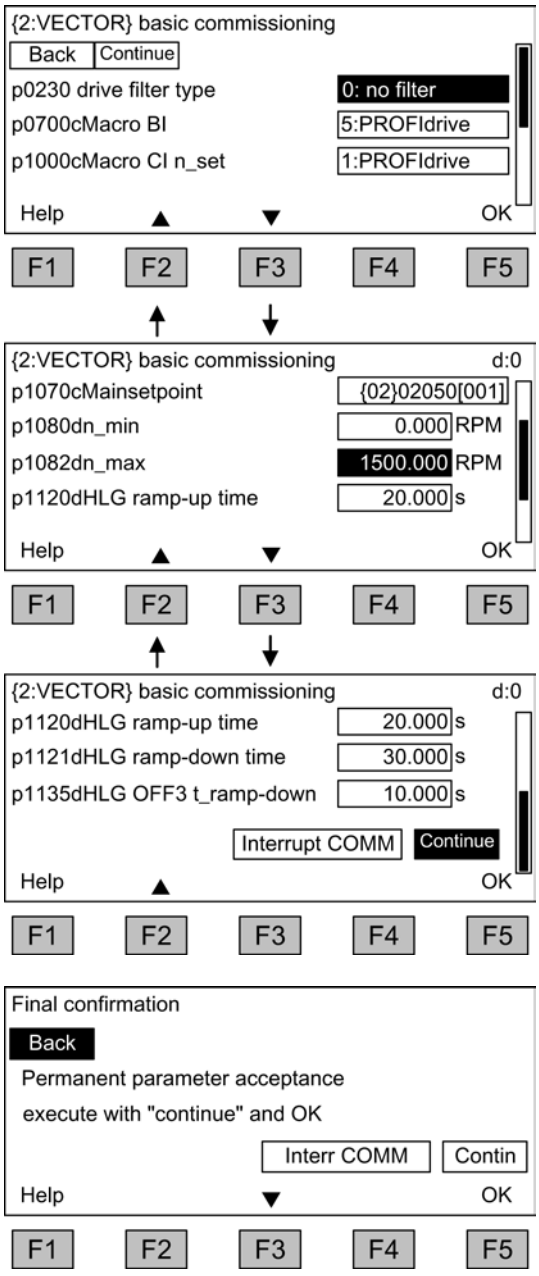
NOTICE

Material damage when selecting the incorrect encoder supply voltage

Once the encoder has been commissioned, the supply voltage (5/24 V) set for the encoder is activated on the SMC30 Module. The encoder may be damaged, if a 5 V encoder is connected and the supply voltage has not been set correctly (bit 20 = "Yes," bit 21 = "No").

- Set the correct supply voltage for the connected encoder.

Basic commissioning: Entering the basic parameters



Entering the basic commissioning parameters:
If a sine-wave filter (option L15) is connected, it must be activated in p0230 (p0230 = 3) otherwise it could be damaged.

p0700: Preset command source
5: PROFIdrive
6: TM31 terminals
7: Namur
10: PROFIdrive Namur

p1000: Preset setpoint source
1: PROFIdrive
2: TM31 terminals
3: Motorized potentiometer
4: Fixed setpoint

Once a setpoint source has been selected (p1000), the main setpoint p1070 is defaulted accordingly.

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

To change a parameter value, navigate to the required selection field and activate with <F5>.

Another window appears in which you can
- enter the required value directly, or
- select the value from a list.

Final confirmation

Confirm the basic parameters to save them.

Once you have selected "Continue" and activated your entries with <F5>, the basic parameters you entered are permanently saved and the calculations required for closed-loop control are carried out.

Note

Enter the motor-side filter

A filter on the motor side must be entered in p0230:

- Option L07 – dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter: p0230 = 2
- Option L08 – motor reactor: p0230 = 1
- Option L10 – dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter: p0230 = 2
- Option L15 – sine-wave filter: p0230 = 3

When p0230 = 4 "External sine-wave filter", a separate sine-wave filter can be entered. An input mask for specific filter data then appears.

NOTICE

Damage to the sine-wave filter if it is not activated during commissioning

The sine-wave filter may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning.

- Activate the sine-wave filter during commissioning.

NOTICE

Damage to the dv/dt filter if it is not activated during commissioning

The dv/dt filter may be damaged if it is not activated during commissioning.

- Activate the dv/dt filter during commissioning.

Note

Motor reactor

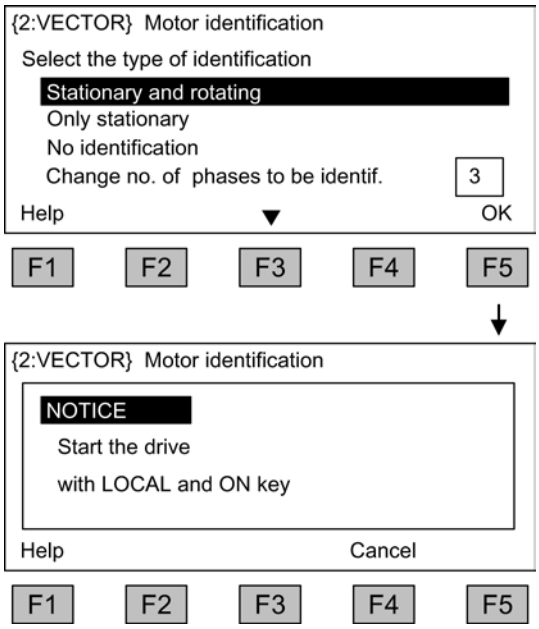
If a motor reactor (option L08) is being used, the option selection must be activated, otherwise the closed-loop motor control will not be able to operate in an optimum fashion.

Note

Do not use a selection

The choice "no selection" is also available as default setting for the command and setpoint sources; if selected, no default settings are applied for the command and setpoint sources.

Basic commissioning: Motor identification



Selecting motor identification

To navigate through the selection fields, choose <F2> or <F3>.
To activate a selection, choose <F5>.

Stationary measurement increases the control performance, as this minimizes deviations in the electrical characteristic values due to variations in material properties and manufacturing tolerances.

Rotary measurement determines the data required (e.g., moment of inertia) for setting the speed controller. It also measures the magnetization characteristic and rated magnetization current of the motor.

Changing the number of phases to be identified:

- For identification with one phase, the measurement time is significantly reduced.
- For identification with several phases, the measurement results are averaged.

To activate this function, press the LOCAL key (wait until the LED in the LOCAL key lights up) and then ON.

If motor identification is not carried out, the motor control uses the motor characteristic values calculated from the rating plate data rather than the measured values.

Note

Complete motor identification

When motor identification has been completed, press the OFF key to cancel the power-on inhibit.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life if the motor unexpectedly moves during motor identification in the rotating mode

When selecting motor identification with optimization in the rotating mode, after commissioning, the drive initiates that the motor rotates with speeds that can reach the maximum motor speed.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are fully functional when commissioning the drive.

Note

Activate enable signals

Make sure that the necessary enable signals have been assigned; otherwise motor identification cannot be carried out.

Note

Fault with stationary or rotating measurements

If a fault is present when selecting the stationary or rotary measurement, motor identification cannot be carried out.
To rectify the fault, you must choose "No identification" to close the screen, then eliminate the fault.
After this, motor identification can be selected again via <MENU> - <Commissioning/service> - <Drive commissioning> - <Motor identification>.

5.5.3 Additional settings required for units that are connected in parallel

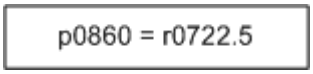
Additional settings must be made for units that are connected in parallel before selecting the motor and entering the motor data via the operator panel:

- For 3-phase 380 to 480 VAC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 3-phase 500 to 600 VAC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 3-phase 660 to 690 VAC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

Settings to monitor the checkback signal from the main contactor or circuit-breaker for 12-pulse infeed

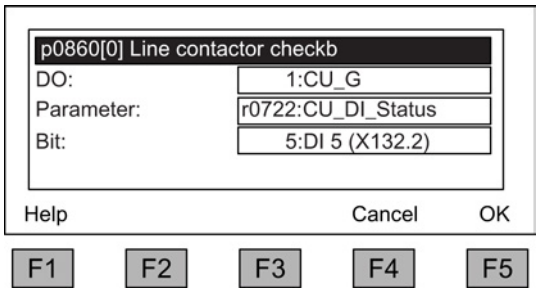
The checkback contacts of the main contactors and the circuit-breakers are connected in series in the factory and wired to digital input 5 of the Control Unit.

After the drive unit has been commissioned, the checkback signal monitoring function must be activated. This is realized using parameter p0860{Vector} = 722.5{Control_Unit}.



Select parameter p0860 "Line contactor checkback" and connect to digital input DI5.

<MENU> <Parameterization> <Single DO> <2:VECTOR> <OK> select "p0860", <change> select "{1:CU_G}" <OK>, select "r0722" <OK>, select ".05 DI 5 (X132.2)" <OK>



A confirmation window is displayed in which a summary of the line contactor feedback is displayed.

To confirm the set connection, choose <F5>.

NOTICE

Device damage when the main contactor or circuit-breaker feedback signal is not monitored

If the feedback signal for the main contactor or circuit-breaker is not monitored, then the drive could be switched on even if the main contactor or circuit-breaker of an individual system fails. This could overload and damage the input rectifiers of the individual system.

- Activate the main contactor or circuit-breaker feedback signal monitoring.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be made again after the drive unit has been recommissioned.

Settings for motor connection to a motor with one-winding system

Before the commissioning, a motor with several winding systems is automatically defined.

The setting for a one-winding system is made during commissioning by setting parameter p7003 to 0.

Settings via the AOP30

During commissioning, you are prompted whether a motor is connected to a one-winding system or multiple-winding system. This setting must be made according to the motor connected.

Note

Setting "motor with a one-winding system"

If the "motor with a one-winding system" is not set using p7003 = 0, then the drive can be powered down (tripped) during the motor identification routine with an "overcurrent" fault message. The system will not be properly tuned.

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When resetting (restoring) the parameterization to the factory setting, this setting must be again made before the drive unit is recommissioned.

5.6 Status after commissioning

LOCAL mode (control via operator panel)

- You switch to LOCAL mode by pressing the "LOCAL/REMOTE" key.
- Control (ON/OFF) is carried out via the "ON" and "OFF" keys.
- You can specify the setpoint using the "increase" and "decrease" keys or by entering the appropriate numbers using the numeric keypad.

Analog outputs (with option G60 "Customer terminal module TM31")

- The actual speed (r0063) is output as a current output in the range 0 to 20 mA at analog output 0 (X522:2 and 3).
  A current of 20 mA is equal to the maximum speed in p1082.
- The actual current value (r0068) is output as a current output in the range 0 to 20 mA at analog output 1 (X522:5 and 6).
  A current of 20 mA corresponds to the current limit (p0640), which is set to 1.5 times the rated motor current (p0305).

Digital outputs (with option G60 "Customer terminal module TM31")

- The "enable pulses" signal is output at digital output 0 (X542:2 and 3).
- The “no fault active” signal is output at digital output 1 (X542:5 and 6) (protection against wire break).
- The "ready for power up" signal is output at digital output 8 (X541:2).

5.7 Commissioning an encoder with gear factor

Description

When encoders are commissioned (p0010 = 4), a gearbox must be parameterized by means of parameters p0432 (numerator), p0433 (denominator), and p0410 (sign).

To ensure that the commutation position can be accurately determined from the encoder angle, the following applies:

- For resolvers: $\frac{z_{p_Motor}}{z_{p_Resolver}} \times \frac{1}{n} \geq 1, \text{Integer}$ zp = number of poles
- For all other absolute encoders: $\frac{z_{p_Motor}}{n} \geq 1, \text{Integer}$ zp = number of poles
- Where n is the gear factor: $n = \frac{\text{Encoder speed}}{\text{Motor speed}} = \frac{p0432}{p0433}$

The encoder commissioning program ensures that this uniqueness condition is observed and, if necessary, prevents the system from exiting the commissioning program or outputs an error message.

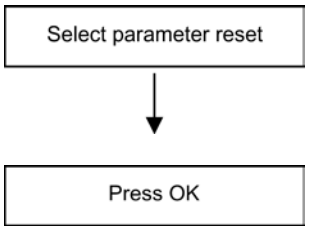
Sign bit p0410 inverts the calculated encoder angle and the speed, thereby yielding a negative gear factor.

5.8 Parameter reset to factory settings

The factory settings represent the defined original status of the device on delivery.

Resetting the parameters to the factory settings means that all the parameter settings made since the system was delivered are reset.

Resetting Parameters via AOP30

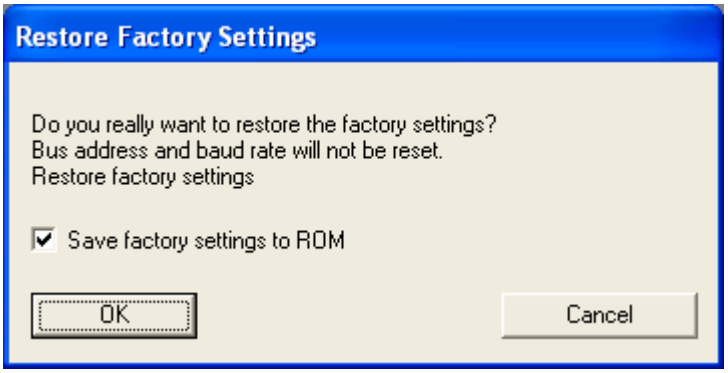
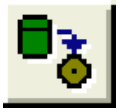


Set parameter filter to "Parameter reset":
<MENU> <Commissioning/Service> <Device commissioning> <OK> <30: Parameter Reset> <OK>

Reset all parameters to factory settings:
Factory settings for all the device parameters are restored.

Parameter reset via STARTER

With STARTER, the parameters are reset in online mode. The required steps are described below:

Step	Selection in toolbar
Choose **Project > Connect to target system**	
Click the drive unit whose parameters you want to reset to the factory settings and click **Restore factory settings** icon in the toolbar.	
To confirm, click **OK**. 	
Choose **Target system > Copy from RAM to ROM**	

Note

Copy from RAM to ROM

The **Copy from RAM to ROM** icon is only active when the drive unit is selected in the project navigator.

When the parameters have been reset to the factory settings, initial commissioning needs to be carried out.

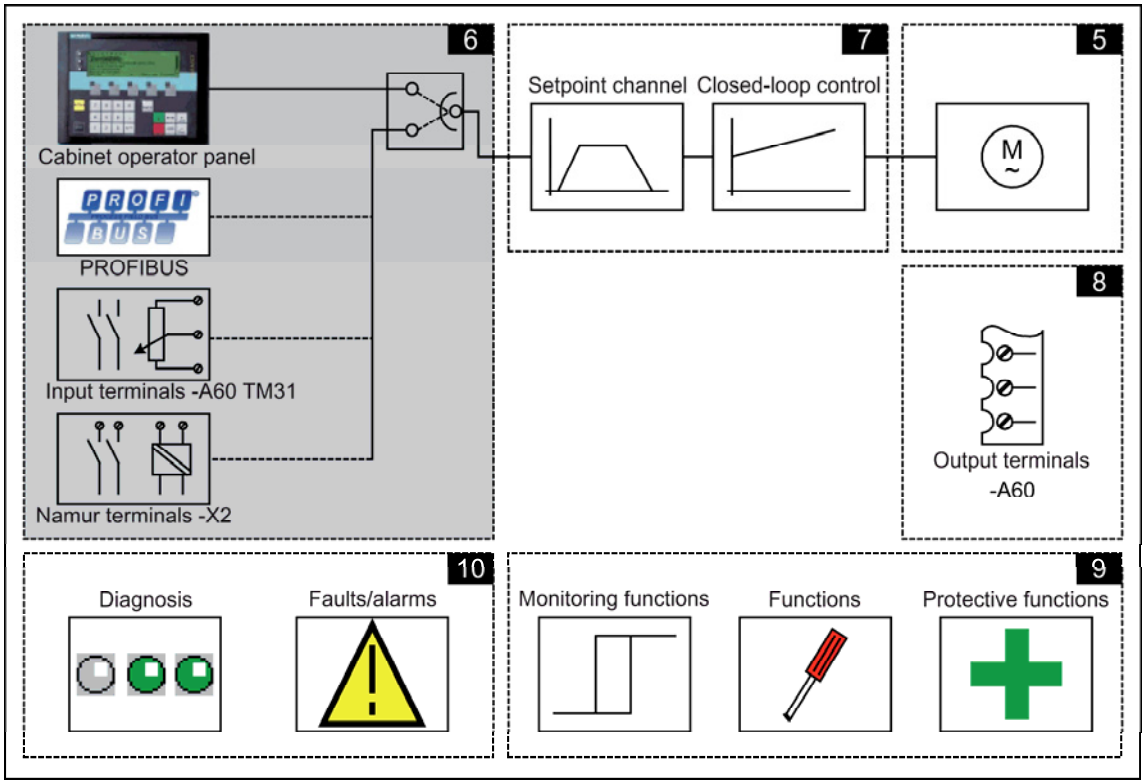
Operation

6

6.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Basic information about the drive system
- Command source selection via
  - PROFIdrive
  - Terminal block
  - NAMUR terminal block
- Setpoint input via
  - PROFIdrive
  - Analog inputs
  - Motorized potentiometer
  - Fixed setpoints
- Control via the AOP30 operator panel
- Communication according to PROFIdrive
- Communication via
  - PROFIBUS DP
  - PROFINET IO
  - SINAMICS Link



6.2 General information about command and setpoint sources

Description

Four default settings are available for selecting the command sources and four for selecting the setpoint sources for the SINAMICS G150 cabinet unit. The choice "no selection" is also available; if selected, no default settings are applied for the command and setpoint sources.

Command sources

- PROFIdrive
- TM31 terminals
- NAMUR
- PROFIdrive NAMUR

Setpoint sources

- PROFIdrive
- Analog inputs
- Motorized potentiometer
- Fixed setpoints

The various assignments are explained in the following sections.

Note

Defaults

Make sure that the default settings you choose during commissioning are compatible with the cabinet configuration (see "Commissioning")

Emergency STOP signals (L57, L59, and L60) and motor protection signals (L83 and L84) are always active (regardless of the command source).

Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

6.3 Basic information about the drive system

6.3.1 Parameters

Overview

The drive is adapted to the relevant drive task by means of parameters. Each parameter is identified by a unique parameter number and by specific attributes (e.g. read, write, BICO attribute, group attribute, and so on).

The parameters can be accessed via the following means:

- PC with the "STARTER" commissioning tool via PROFIBUS
- The user-friendly AOP30 Operator Panel

Parameter types

The following adjustable and display parameters are available:

- Adjustable parameters (write/read)

  These parameters have a direct impact on the behavior of a function.

  Example: Ramp-up and ramp-down time of a ramp-function generator
- Display parameters (read only)

  These parameters are used to display internal variables.

  Example: Current motor current

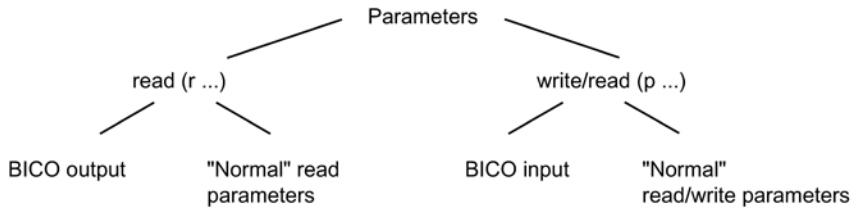


Figure 6-1 Parameter types

All these drive parameters can be read and changed via PROFIBUS using the mechanisms defined in the PROFIdrive profile.

Parameter categories

The parameters for the individual drive objects (see "Drive objects") are categorized according to data sets as follows (see "Operation/data sets"):

- Data-set-independent parameters
  These parameters exist only once per drive object.
- Data-set-dependent parameters
  These parameters can exist several times for each drive object and can be addressed via the parameter index for reading and writing. A distinction is made between various types of data set:
  - CDS: Command data set
    By parameterizing several command data sets and switching between them, the drive can be operated with different pre-configured signal sources.
  - DDS: Drive data set
    The drive data set contains the parameters for switching between different drive control configurations.
  - PDS: Powerstack Data Set
    The number of powerstack data sets corresponds to the number of power units combined for units that are connected in parallel.

  The CDS and DDS can be switched over during normal operation. Further types of data set also exist, however these can only be activated indirectly by means of a DDS changeover.

  - EDS: encoder data set
  - MDS: Motor data set

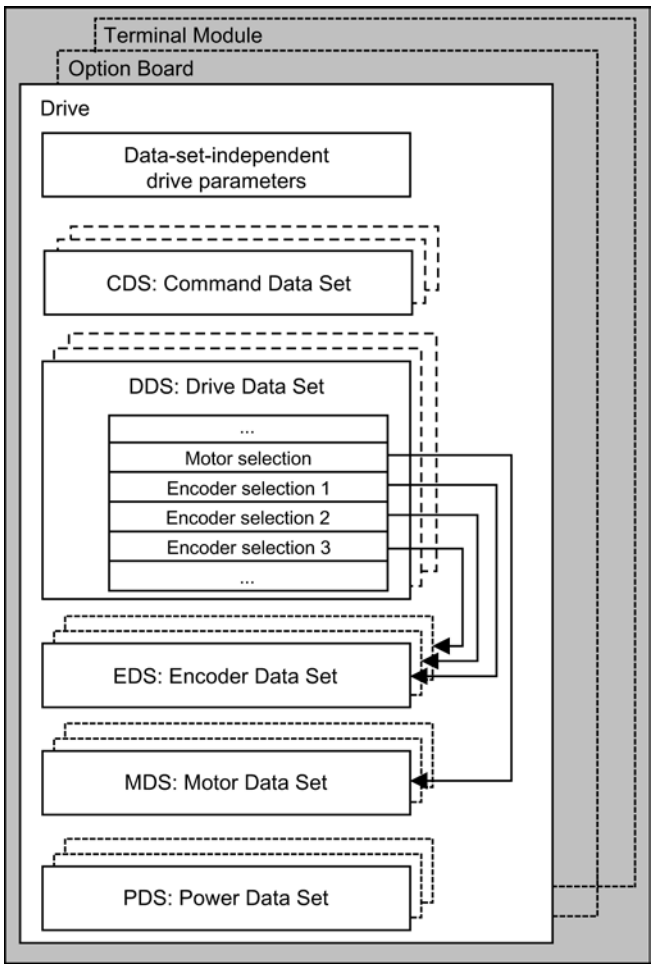


Figure 6-2 Parameter categories

6.3.2 Drive objects

A drive object is a self-contained software function with its own parameters and, if necessary, its own faults and alarms. Drive objects can be provided as standard (e.g. I/O evaluation), or you can add single (e.g. option board) or multiple objects (e.g. drive control).

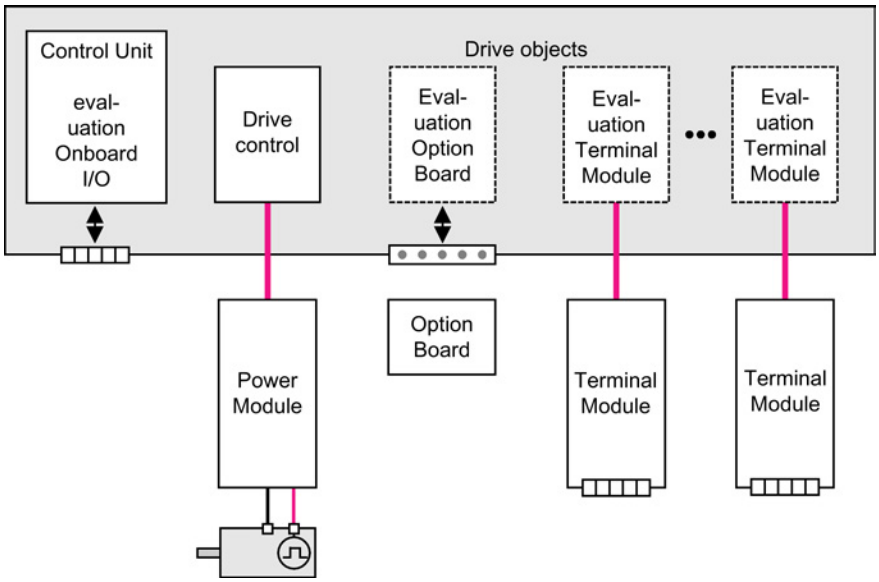


Figure 6-3 Drive objects

Standard drive objects

- Drive control
  Drive control handles closed-loop control of the motor. At least 1 Power Module and at least 1 motor and up to 3 encoders are assigned to the drive control.
- Control Unit, inputs/outputs
  The inputs/outputs on the Control Unit are evaluated within a drive object.

Optionally installed drive objects

- Option board evaluation

  A further drive object handles evaluation of an installed option board. The specific method of operation depends on the type of option board installed.
- Terminal Module evaluation

  A separate drive object handles evaluation of the respective optional Terminal Modules.

Properties of a drive object

- Separate parameter space
- Separate window in STARTER
- Separate fault/alarm system
- Separate PROFIdrive telegram for process data

Configuring drive objects

When you commission the system for the first time using the STARTER tool, you will use configuration parameters to set up the software-based "drive objects" which are processed on the Control Unit. Various drive objects can be created within a Control Unit.

The drive objects are configurable function blocks and are used to execute specific drive functions.

If you need to configure additional drive objects or delete existing ones after initial commissioning, the drive system must be switched to configuration mode.

The parameters of a drive object cannot be accessed until the drive object has been configured and you have switched from configuration mode to parameterization mode.

Note

Assignment during the initial commissioning

Each installed drive object is allocated a number between 0 and 63 during initial commissioning for unique identification.

Parameters

- p0101 Drive object numbers
- r0102 Number of drive objects
- p0107 Drive object type
- p0108 Drive object configuration

6.3.3 Data Sets

Description

For many applications, it is beneficial if more than one parameter can be changed simultaneously by means of **one** external signal during operation/when the system is ready for operation.

This can be carried out using indexed parameters, whereby the parameters are grouped together in a data set according to their functionality and indexed. Indexing allows several different settings, which can be activated by switching the data set, to be defined in each parameter.

Note

Copying data sets

The command and drive data sets can be copied in STARTER (Drive -> Configuration -> "Command data sets" or "Drive data sets" tab).
The displayed command and drive data sets can be selected in the associated STARTER screen forms.

CDS: Command data set

The BICO parameters (binector and connector inputs) are grouped together in a command data set. These parameters are used to interconnect the signal sources of a drive (see "Operation/BICO technology: Interconnecting signals").

By parameterizing several command data sets and switching between them, the drive can be operated with different pre-configured signal sources.

A command data set contains the following (examples):

- Binector inputs for control commands (digital signals)
  - ON/OFF, enable signals (p0844, etc.)
  - Jog (p1055, etc.)
- Connector inputs for setpoints (analog signals)
  - Voltage setpoint for V/f control (p1330)
  - Torque limits and scaling factors (p1522, p1523, p1528, p1529)

In the delivery condition, two command data sets are available; this number can be increased to a maximum of four using p0170 (number of command data sets (CDS)).

The following parameters are available for selecting command data sets and for displaying the currently selected command data set:

Table 6- 1 Command data set: selection and display

CDS	Select bit 1 p0811	Select bit 0 p0810	Display	
			selected (r0836)	active (r0050)
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1	1
2	1	0	2	2
3	1	1	3	3

If a command data set, which does not exist, is selected, the current data set remains active.

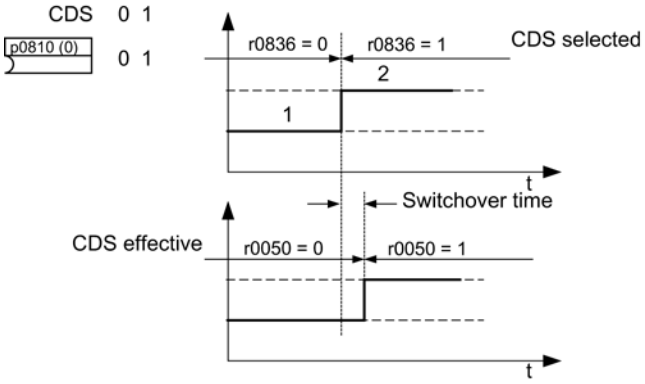


Figure 6-4 Example: Switching between command data set 0 and 1

DDS: Drive data set

A drive data set contains various adjustable parameters that are relevant with respect to open and closed-loop drive control:

- Numbers of the assigned motor and encoder data sets:
  - p0186: Assigned motor data set (MDS)
  - p0187 to p0189: up to 3 assigned encoder data sets (EDS)
- Various control parameters, e.g.:
  - Fixed speed setpoints (p1001 to p1015)
  - Speed limits min./max. (p1080, p1082)
  - Characteristic data of ramp-function generator (p1120 ff)
  - Characteristic data of controller (p1240 ff)
  - ...

The parameters that are grouped together in the drive data set are identified in the SINAMICS parameter list by "Data set DDS" and are assigned an index [0..n].

It is possible to parameterize several drive data sets. You can switch easily between different drive configurations (control type, motor, encoder) by selecting the corresponding drive data set.

One drive object can manage up to 32 drive data sets. The number of drive data sets is configured with p0180.

Binector inputs p0820 to p0824 are used to select a drive data set. They represent the number of the drive data set (0 to 31) in binary format (where p0824 is the most significant bit).

- p0820 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 0
- p0821 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 1
- p0822 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 2
- p0823 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 3
- p0824 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 4

Supplementary conditions and recommendations

- Recommendation for the number of DDS in a drive
  The number of DDS in a drive should correspond with the number of changeover options; in other words
  p0180 (DDS) ≥ p0130 (MDS).
- Max. number of DDS for one drive object = 32 DDS

EDS: Encoder data set

An encoder data set contains various adjustable parameters describing the connected encoder for the purpose of configuring the drive.

- Adjustable parameters, e.g.:
  - Encoder interface component number (p0141)
  - Encoder component number (p0142)
  - Encoder type selection (p0400)

The parameters that are grouped together in the encoder data set are identified in the SINAMICS parameter list by "Data set EDS" and are assigned an index [0..n].

A separate encoder data set is required for each encoder controlled by the Control Unit. Up to 3 encoder data sets are assigned to a drive data set via parameters p0187, p0188, and p0189.

An encoder data set can only be changed using a DDS changeover.

Each encoder may only be assigned to one drive and within a drive must - in each drive data set - either always be encoder 1, always encoder 2 or always encoder 3.

One application for the EDS changeover would be a power component with which several motors are operated in turn. A contactor circuit is used to changeover between these motors. Each of the motors can be equipped with an encoder or be operated without an encoder. Each encoder must be connected to its own SMx.

If encoder 1 (p0187) is changed over via DDS, then an MDS must also be changed over.

One drive object can manage up to 16 encoder data sets. The number of encoder data sets configured is specified in p0140.

When a drive data set is selected, the assigned encoder data sets are selected automatically.

MDS: Motor data set

A motor data set contains various adjustable parameters describing the connected motor for the purpose of configuring the drive. It also contains certain display parameters with calculated data.

- Adjustable parameters, e.g.:
  - Motor component number (p0131)
  - Motor type selection (p0300)
  - Rated motor data (p0304 ff)
  - ...
- Display parameters, e.g.:
  - Calculated rated data (p0330 ff)
  - ...

The parameters that are grouped together in the motor data set are identified in the SINAMICS parameter list by "Data set MDS" and are assigned an index [0..n].

A separate motor data set is required for each motor that is controlled by the Control Unit via a Motor Module. The motor data set is assigned to a drive data set via parameter p0186.

A motor data set can only be changed using a DDS changeover.

The motor data set changeover is, for example, used for:

- Changing over between different motors
- Changing over between different windings in a motor (e.g. star-delta changeover)
- Motor data adaptation

If several motors are operated alternately on one Motor Module, a corresponding number of drive data sets must be created. See "Functions / Drive functions" for additional information and instructions on changing over motors.

One drive object can manage up to 16 motor data sets. The number of motor data sets in p0130 may not exceed the number of drive data sets in p0180.

Example of data set assignment

Table 6- 2 Example, data set assignment

DDS	Motor (p0186)	Encoder 1 (p0187)	Encoder 2 (p0188)	Encoder 3 (p0189)
DDS 0	MDS 0	EDS 0	EDS 1	EDS 2
DDS 1	MDS 0	EDS 0	EDS 3	--
DDS 2	MDS 0	EDS 0	EDS 4	EDS 5
DDS 3	MDS 1	EDS 0	--	--

Copying the command data set (CDS)

Set parameter p0809 as follows:

1. p0809[0] = number of the command data set to be copied (source)
2. p0809[1] = number of the command data to which the data is to be copied (target)
3. p0809[2] = 1

Start copying.

Copying is finished when p0809[2] = 0.

Copying the drive data set (DDS)

Set parameter p0819 as follows:

1. p0819[0] = Number of the drive data set to be copied (source)
2. p0819[1] = Number of the drive data set to which the data is to be copied (target)
3. p0819[2] = 1

Start copying.

Copying is finished when p0819[2] = 0.

Copy motor data set (MDS)

Set parameter p0139 as follows:

1. p0139[0] = Number of the motor data set that is to be copied (source)
2. p0139[1] = Number of the motor data set which should be copied into (target)
3. p0139[2] = 1

Start copying.

Copying has been completed, if p0139[2] = 0.

Function diagram

FP 8560	Command data sets (CDS)
FP 8565	Drive data set (DDS)
FP 8570	Encoder data set (EDS)
FP 8575	Motor data sets (MDS)

Parameters

- p0120 Power Module data sets (PDS) number
- p0130 Motor data sets (MDS) number
- p0139[0...2] Copy motor data set (MDS)
- p0140 Encoder data sets (EDS) number
- p0170 Command data set (CDS) number
- p0180 Drive data set (DDS) number
- p0186 Assigned motor data set (MDS)
- p0187[0...n] Encoder 1 encoder data set number
- p0188[0...n] Encoder 2 encoder data set number
- p0189[0...n] Encoder 3 encoder data set number
- p0809 Copy command data set CDS
- p0810 BI: Command data set selection CDS bit 0
- p0811 BI: Command data set selection CDS bit 1
- p0819[0...2] Copy drive data set DDS
- p0820 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 0
- p0821 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 1
- p0822 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 2
- p0823 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 3
- p0824 BI: Drive data set selection, bit 4

6.3.4 BICO technology: interconnecting signals

Description

Every drive contains a large number of interconnectable input and output variables and internal control variables.

BICO technology (Binector Connector Technology) allows the drive to be adapted to a wide variety of conditions.

Digital signals, which can be connected freely by means of BICO parameters, are identified by the prefix BI, BO, CI or CO in their parameter name. These parameters are identified accordingly in the parameter list or in the function diagrams.

Note

Using STARTER

The STARTER parameterization and commissioning tool is recommended when using BICO technology.

Binectors, BI: binector input, BO: Binector output

A binector is a digital (binary) signal without a unit which can assume the value 0 or 1.

Binectors are subdivided into binector inputs (signal sink) and binector outputs (signal source).

Table 6- 3 Binectors

Abbreviation and symbol	Name	Description
BI 	Binector input Binector Input (signal sink)	Can be interconnected to a binector output as source. The number of the binector output must be entered as a parameter value.
BO 	Binector output Binector output (signal source)	Can be used as a source for a binector input.

Connectors, CI: connector input, CO: Connector output

A connector is a digital signal e.g. in 32–bit format. It can be used to emulate words (16 bits), double words (32 bits) or analog signals. Connectors are subdivided into connector inputs (signal sink) and connector outputs (signal source).

The options for interconnecting connectors are restricted to ensure that performance is not adversely affected.

Table 6- 4 Connectors

Abbreviation and symbol	Name	Description
CI 	Connector input Connector input (signal sink)	Can be interconnected to a connector output as source. The number of the connector output must be entered as a parameter value.
CO 	Connector output Connector output (signal source)	Can be used as a source for a connector input.

Interconnecting signals using BICO technology

To interconnect two signals, a BICO input parameter (signal sink) must be assigned to the desired BICO output parameter (signal source).

The following information is required in order to connect a binector/connector input to a binector/connector output:

- Binectors: Parameter number, bit number, and drive object ID
- Connectors with no index: Parameter number and drive object ID
- Connectors with index: Parameter number, index, and drive object ID

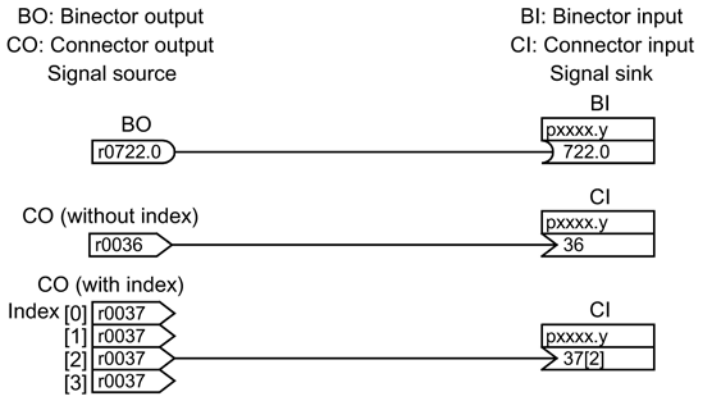


Figure 6-5 Interconnecting signals using BICO technology

Note

A connector input (CI) cannot be interconnected with any connector output (CO, signal source). The same applies to the binector input (BI) and binector output (BO).

"Data type" in the parameter list provides information about the data type of the parameter and the data type of the BICO parameter for each CI und BI parameter.

For CO and BO parameters, only the data type of the BICO parameter is given.

Notation:

- Data type BICO input: Data type parameter/Data type BICO parameter
  Example: Unsigned32 / Integer16
- Data type BICO output: Data type BICO parameter
  Example: FloatingPoint32

The possible interconnections between BICO input (signal sink) and BICO output (signal source) are described in the List Manual in the table "Possible combinations for BICO interconnections" in the section "Explanations on the parameter list".

The BICO parameter interconnection can be implemented in different data sets (CDS, DDS, MDS, etc.). The different interconnections in the data sets are activated by switching the data sets. Interconnections across drive objects are also possible.

Internal encoding of the binector/connector output parameters

The internal codes are needed, for example, to write BICO input parameters via PROFIdrive.

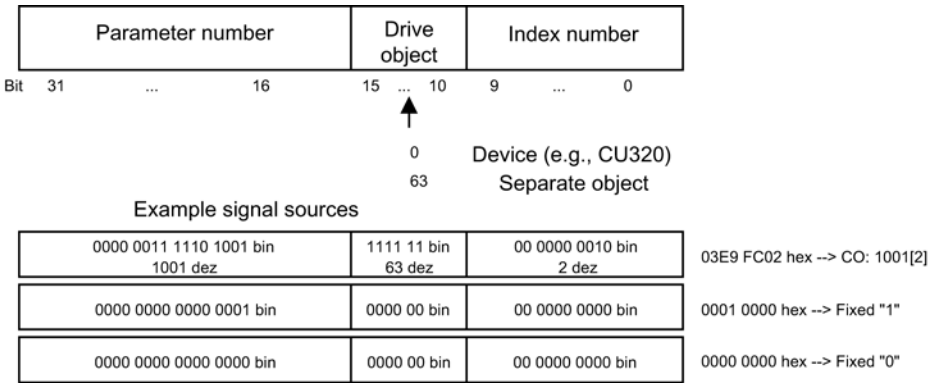


Figure 6-6 Internal encoding of the binector/connector output parameters

Example 1: interconnecting digital signals

Suppose you want to operate a drive via terminals DI 0 and DI 1 on the Control Unit using jog 1 and jog 2.

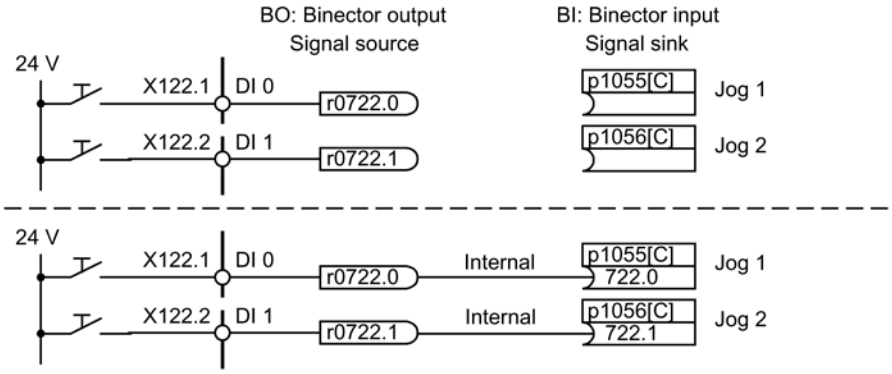


Figure 6-7 Interconnection of digital signals (example)

Example 2: connection of OC/OFF3 to several drives

The OFF3 signal is to be connected to two drives via terminal DI 2 on the Control Unit.

Each drive has a binector input 1. OFF3 and 2. OFF3. The two signals are processed via an AND gate to STW1.2 (OFF3).

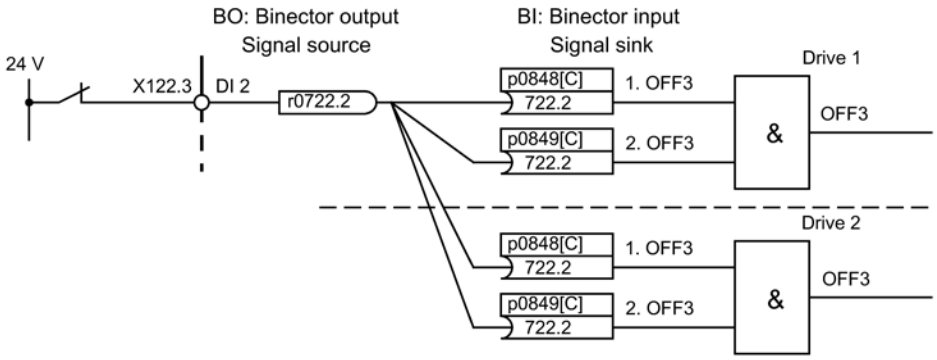


Figure 6-8 Connection of OFF3 to several drives (example)

BICO interconnections to other drives

The following parameters are available for BICO interconnections to other drives:

- r9490 Number of BICO interconnections to other drives
- r9491[0...15] BI/CI of BICO interconnections to other drives
- r9492[0...15] BO/CO of BICO interconnections to other drives
- p9493[0...15] Reset BICO interconnections to other drives

Binector-connector converters and connector-binector converters

Binector-connector converter

- Several digital signals are converted to a 32-bit integer double word or to a 16-bit integer word.
- p2080[0...15] BI: PROFIdrive PZD send bit-serial

Connector-binector converter

- A 32-bit integer double word or a 16-bit integer word is converted to individual digital signals.
- p2099[0...1] CI PROFIdrive PZD selection receive bit-serial

Fixed values for interconnection using BICO technology

The following connector outputs are available for interconnecting any fixed value settings:

- p2900[0...n] CO: Fixed value_%_1
- p2901[0...n] CO: Fixed value_%_2
- p2930[0...n] CO: Fixed Value_M_1

Example:

These parameters can be used to interconnect the scaling factor for the main setpoint or to interconnect an additional torque.

6.3.5 Propagation of faults

Forwarding faults to the Control Unit

When faults are triggered on the "Control Unit" drive object, it is always assumed that central functions of the drive are affected. For this reason, these faults are also forwarded to all other drive objects. This process is referred to as "propagation." The fault responses act on the Control Unit drive object and all other drive objects. This behavior also applies to the faults that are set in a DCC chart on the Control Unit with the aid of the DCC block.

A fault propagated from the Control Unit must be acknowledged at all drive objects to which this fault was forwarded. In this way, this fault on the Control Unit is automatically acknowledged. Alternatively, the faults of the drive objects can also be acknowledged on the Control Unit.

Alarms are not propagated from the Control Unit; they are not forwarded to other drive objects.

Example

Drive object faults are only transferred to the drives, i.e. a fault on a TB30 stops the drive - however, a fault on the drive does not stop the TB30.

Forwarding of faults due to BICO interconnections

If two or more drive objects are connected via BICO interconnections, faults of drive objects of type Control Unit, TB30, DMC20, DME20, all Terminal Modules or ENCODER are transferred to drive objects with closed-loop control functions, e.g. infeed units or Motor Modules. There is no forwarding of faults within these two groups of drive object types.

This behavior also applies to the faults set in a DCC chart on the above drive object types with the aid of DCC STM.

6.4 Command sources

6.4.1 "PROFIdrive" default setting

Preconditions

The "PROFIdrive" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p0700): "PROFIdrive"
- AOP30 (p0700): "5: PROFIdrive"

Command sources

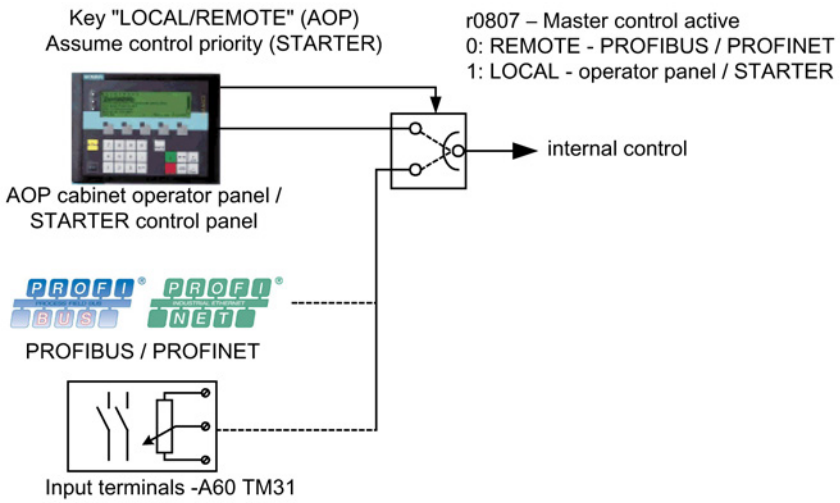


Figure 6-9 Command sources – AOP30 <--> PROFIdrive

Priority

The command source priorities are shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> PROFIdrive".

Note

Emergency OFF signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

TM31 terminal assignment with "PROFIdrive" default setting (if option G60 is present)

When you choose the "PROFIdrive" default setting, use the following terminal assignment for TM31:

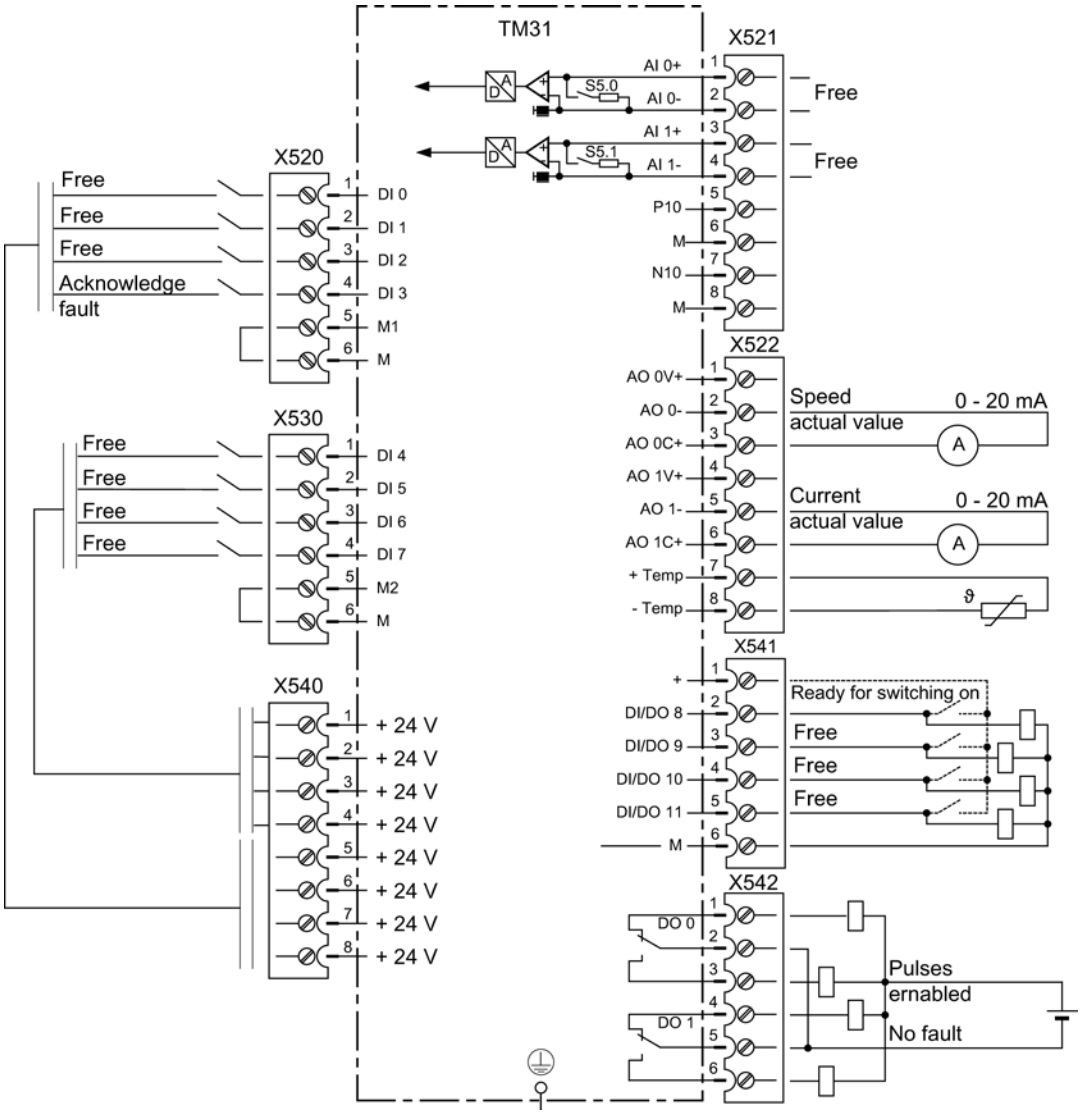


Figure 6-10 TM31 terminal assignment with "PROFIdrive" default setting

Control word 1

The bit assignment for control word 1 is described in "Description of the control words and setpoints".

Status word 1

The bit assignment for status word 1 is described in "Description of the status words and actual values".

Changing over the command source

The command source can be changed over using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.4.2 "TM31 terminals" default setting

Preconditions

The customer Terminal Module option (G60) is installed in the cabinet unit.

The "TM31 Terminals" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p0700): "TM31 Terminals"
- AOP30 (p0700): "6: TM31 terminals

Command sources

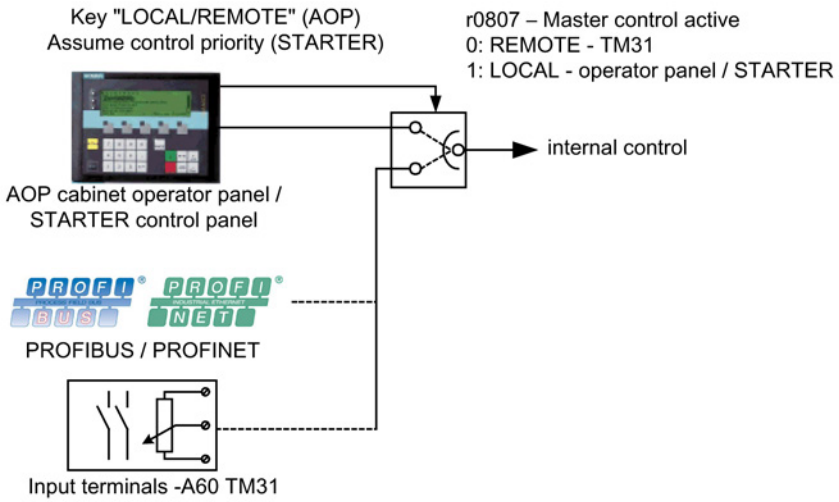


Figure 6-11 Command sources - AOP30 <-> TM31 terminals

Priority

The priority of the command sources is shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> TM31 terminals".

Note

Emergency OFF signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

TM31 terminal assignment with "TM31 Terminals" default setting

When you choose the "TM31 Terminals" default setting, the terminal assignment for TM31 is as follows:

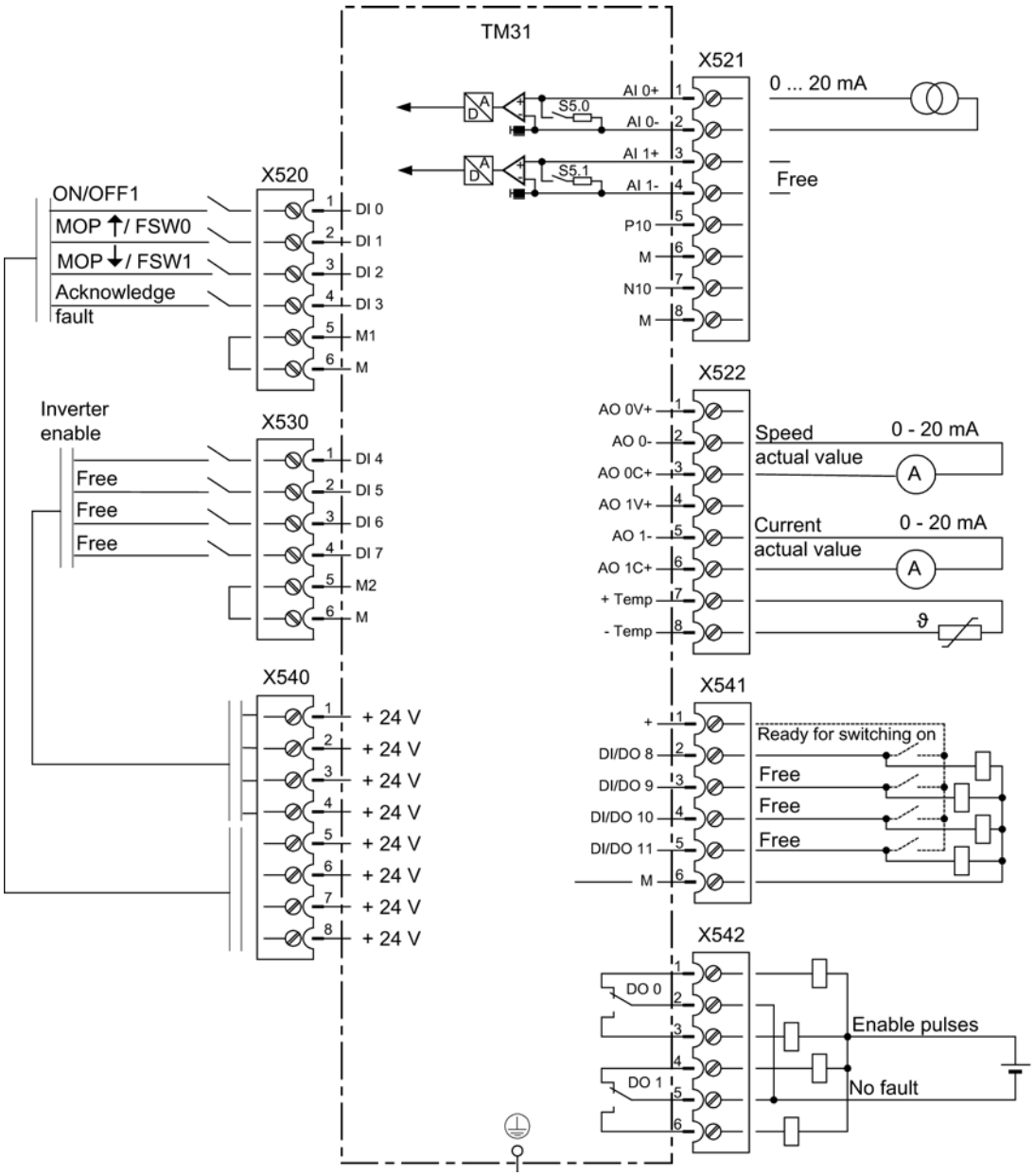


Figure 6-12 TM31 terminal assignment with "TM31 Terminals" default setting

Changing over the command source

The command source can be changed over using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.4.3 "NAMUR" default setting

Preconditions

The NAMUR terminal block (option B00) is installed in the cabinet unit.

The "NAMUR" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p0700): "NAMUR"
- AOP30 (p0700): "7: NAMUR"

Command sources

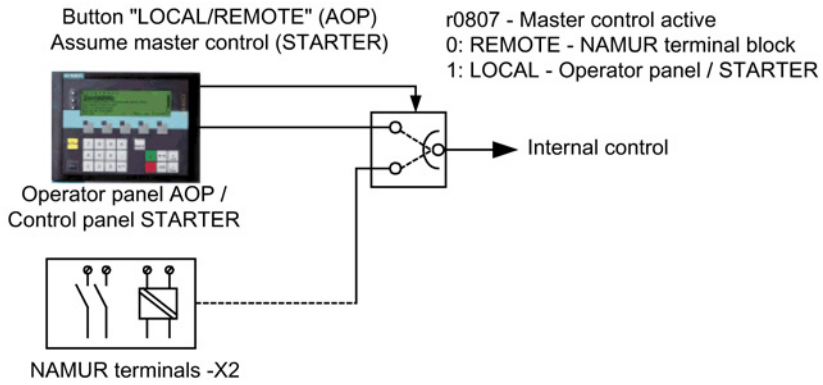


Figure 6-13 Command sources - AOP30 <-> NAMUR terminal block

Priority

The priority of the command sources is shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> NAMUR terminal block".

Note

Emergency OFF signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

Terminal Assignment with the "NAMUR" Default Setting

When you choose the "NAMUR" default setting, the terminal assignment is as follows (as with option B00):

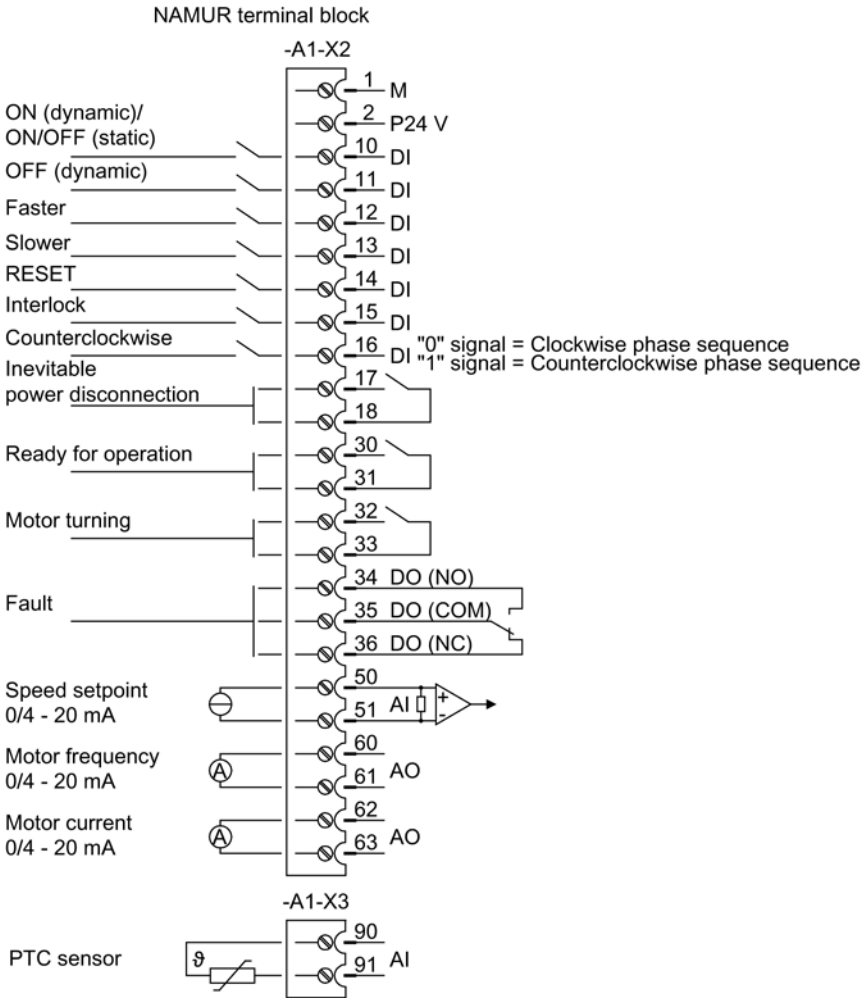


Figure 6-14 Terminal assignment with "NAMUR terminal block" default setting

Changing over the command source

The command source can be changed over using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.4.4 "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting

Preconditions

The NAMUR terminal block (option B00) is installed in the cabinet unit.

The "PROFIdrive" default setting was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p0700): "PROFIdrive Namur"
- AOP30 (p0700): "10: PROFIdrive Namur"

Command sources

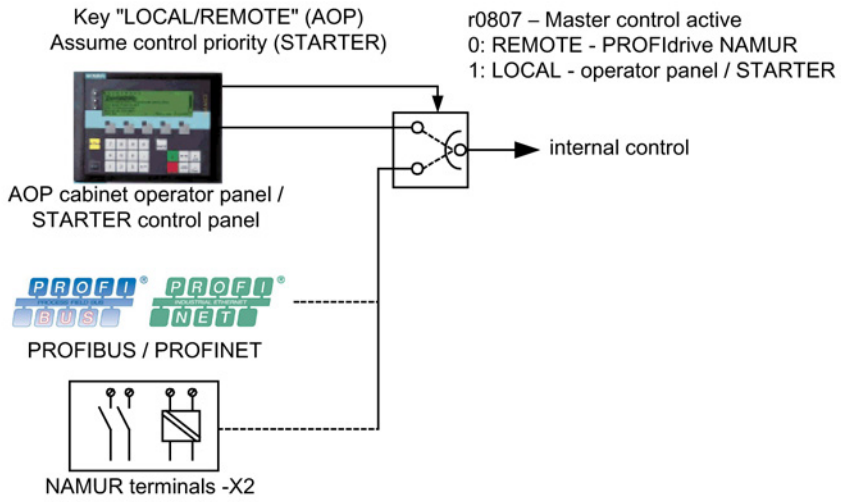


Figure 6-15 Command sources - AOP30 <-> PROFIdrive NAMUR

Priority

The priority of the command sources is shown in the diagram "Command sources - AOP30 <-> PROFIdrive NAMUR".

Note

Emergency OFF signals

The emergency OFF and motor protection signals are always active (regardless of the command source).

All of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated for LOCAL master control.

Terminal assignment for the "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting

When you choose the "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting, the terminal assignment is as follows (as with option B00):

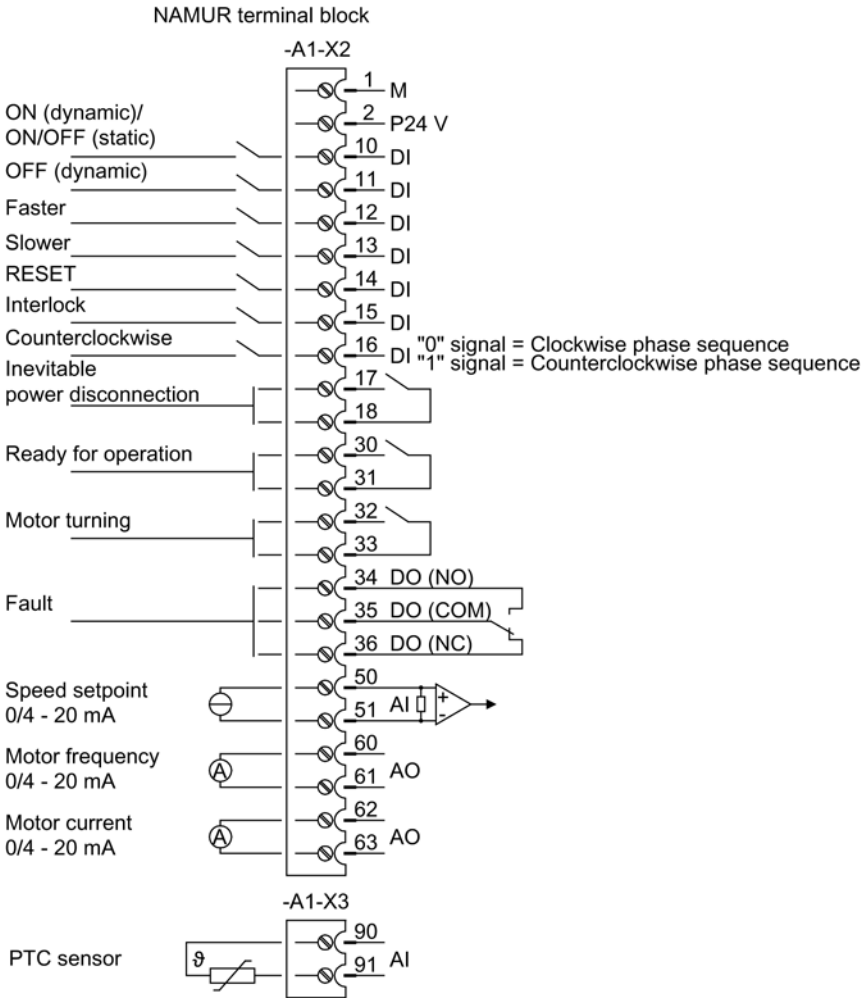


Figure 6-16 Terminal assignment for the "PROFIdrive NAMUR" default setting

Control word 1

The bit assignment for control word 1 is described in "Description of the control words and setpoints".

Status word 1

The bit assignment for status word 1 is described in "Description of the status words and actual values".

Changing over the command source

The command source can be changed over using the LOCAL/REMOTE key on the AOP30.

6.5 Setpoint sources

6.5.1 Analog inputs

Description

The customer terminal block TM31 features two analog inputs for specifying setpoints for current or voltage signals.

In the factory setting, analog input 0 (terminal X521:1/2) is used as a current input in the range 0 to 20 mA.

Precondition

The default setting for analog inputs was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p1000): "TM31 terminals"
- AOP30 (p1000): "2: TM31 terminals"

Signal flow diagram

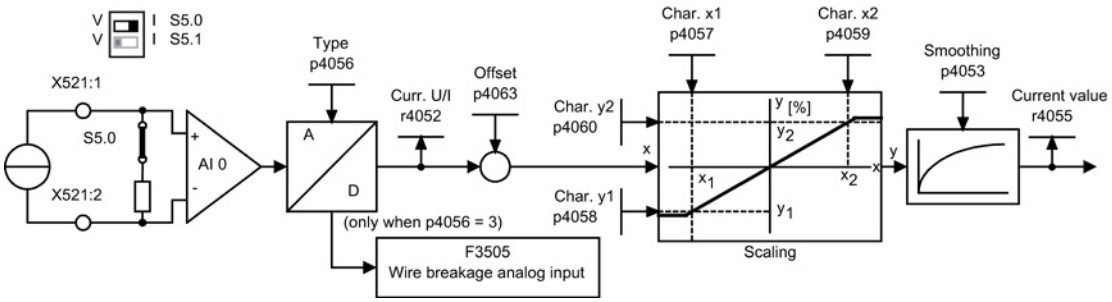


Figure 6-17 Signal flow diagram: analog input 0

Function diagram

FP 9566 TM31 – analog input 0 (AI 0)
FP 9568 TM31 – analog input 1 (AI 1)

Parameter

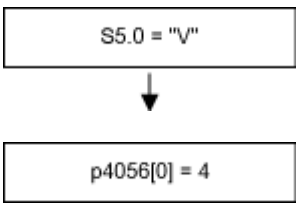
- r4052 Actual input voltage/current
- p4053 Analog inputs smoothing time constant
- r4055 Current referenced input value
- p4056 Analog inputs type
- p4057 Analog inputs, characteristic value x1
- p4058 Analog inputs, characteristic value y1
- p4059 Analog inputs, characteristic value x2
- p4060 Analog inputs, characteristic value y2
- p4063 Analog inputs offset

Note

Delivery condition

In the factory setting and after basic commissioning, an input current of 20 mA is equal to the main setpoint 100% reference speed (p2000), which has been set to the maximum speed (p1082).

Example: Switching analog input 0 from current to voltage input –10 to +10 V



Current/voltage switchover
Set current/voltage selector to "Voltage" ("V").

Set analog input type 0 to -10 ... +10 V.

Note

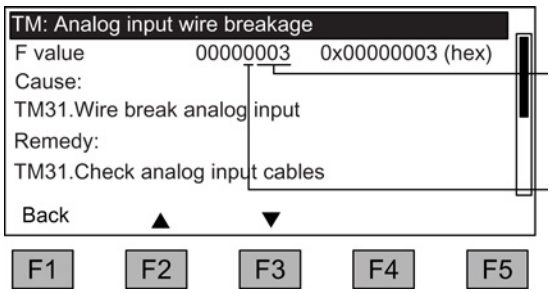
Save changes so that they are protected against power failure

The change to the analog input must then be stored on the CompactFlash card so that it is protected in the event of a power failure.

F3505 – Fault: "Analog input wire break"

This fault is triggered when the analog input type (p4056) is set to 3 (4 ... 20 mA with open-circuit monitoring) and the input current of 2 mA has been undershot.

The fault value can be used to determine the analog input in question.



Component number
3: Module -A60 (option G60)
4: Module -A61 (option G61)

0: Analog input 0: -X521:1/2
1: Analog input 1: -X521:3/4

6.5.2 Motorized potentiometer

Description

The digital motorized potentiometer enables you to set speeds remotely using switching signals (+/- keys). It is activated via terminals or fieldbus. As long as a logical 1 is present at signal input "MOP raise" (setpoint higher), the internal numerator integrates the setpoint. You can set the integration time (time taken for the setpoint to increase) using parameter p1047. In the same way, you can decrease the setpoint using signal input "MOP lower". The deceleration ramp can be set using parameter p1048.
Configuration parameter p1030.0 = 1 (default setting = 0) enables non-volatile storage of the current motorized potentiometer value when powering down the drive unit. When powering-up the drive unit, the starting (initial) value of the motorized potentiometer is set to the last, actual value that was present when the drive unit was powered-down.

Precondition

The default setting for the motorized potentiometer was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p1000): "Motorized potentiometer"
- AOP30 (p1000): "3: Motorized potentiometer"

Signal flow diagram

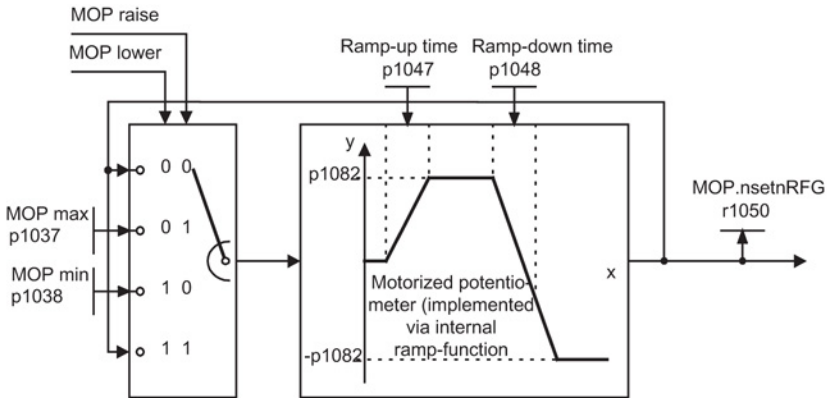


Figure 6-18 Signal flow diagram: Motorized potentiometer

Function diagram

FD 3020 Motorized potentiometer

Parameter

- p1030 Motorized potentiometer, configuration
- p1037 Motorized potentiometer, maximum speed
- p1038 Motorized potentiometer, minimum speed
- p1047 Motorized potentiometer, ramp-up time
- p1048 Motorized potentiometer, ramp-down time
- r1050 Motorized potentiometer, setpoint after the ramp-function generator

6.5.3 Fixed speed setpoints

Description

A total of 15 variable fixed speed setpoints are available.
The default setting specified for the setpoint sources during commissioning via STARTER or the operating panel makes three fixed speed setpoints available. They can be selected via terminals or fieldbus.

Precondition

The default setting for the fixed speed setpoints was chosen during commissioning:

- STARTER (p1000): "Fixed setpoint"
- AOP30 (p1000): "4: Fixed setpoint"

Signal flow diagram

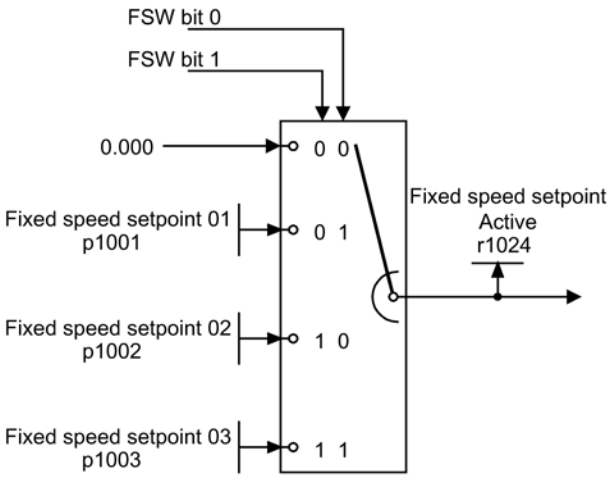


Figure 6-19 Signal flow diagram: Fixed speed setpoints

Function diagram

FP 3010 Fixed speed setpoints

Parameter

- p1001 Fixed speed setpoint 01
- p1002 Fixed speed setpoint 02
- p1003 Fixed speed setpoint 03
- r1024 Fixed speed setpoint effective

Note

Other fixed speed setpoints are available using p1004 to p1015. They can be selected using p1020 to p1023.

6.6 Control via the operator panel

6.6.1 Operator panel (AOP30) overview and menu structure

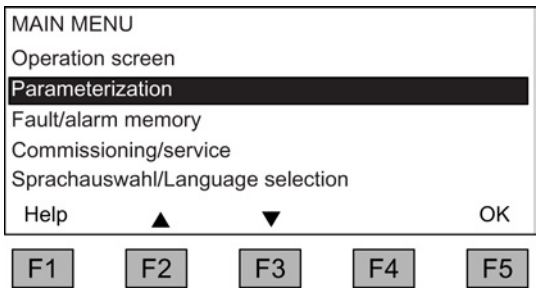
Description

The operator panel can be used for the following activities:

- Parameterization (commissioning)
- Monitoring status variables
- Controlling the drive
- Diagnosing faults and alarms

All the functions can be accessed via a menu.

Your starting point is the main menu, which you can always call up using the yellow MENU key:



Dialog screen for the main menu:
It can be accessed at any time with the "MENU" key.

Press "F2" or "F3" to navigate through the menu options in the main menu.

Note

AOP reset

If the AOP no longer reacts, you can trigger an AOP reset by simultaneously pressing the key and OFF buttons (longer than two seconds) and then releasing the OFF button.

Menu structure of the operator panel

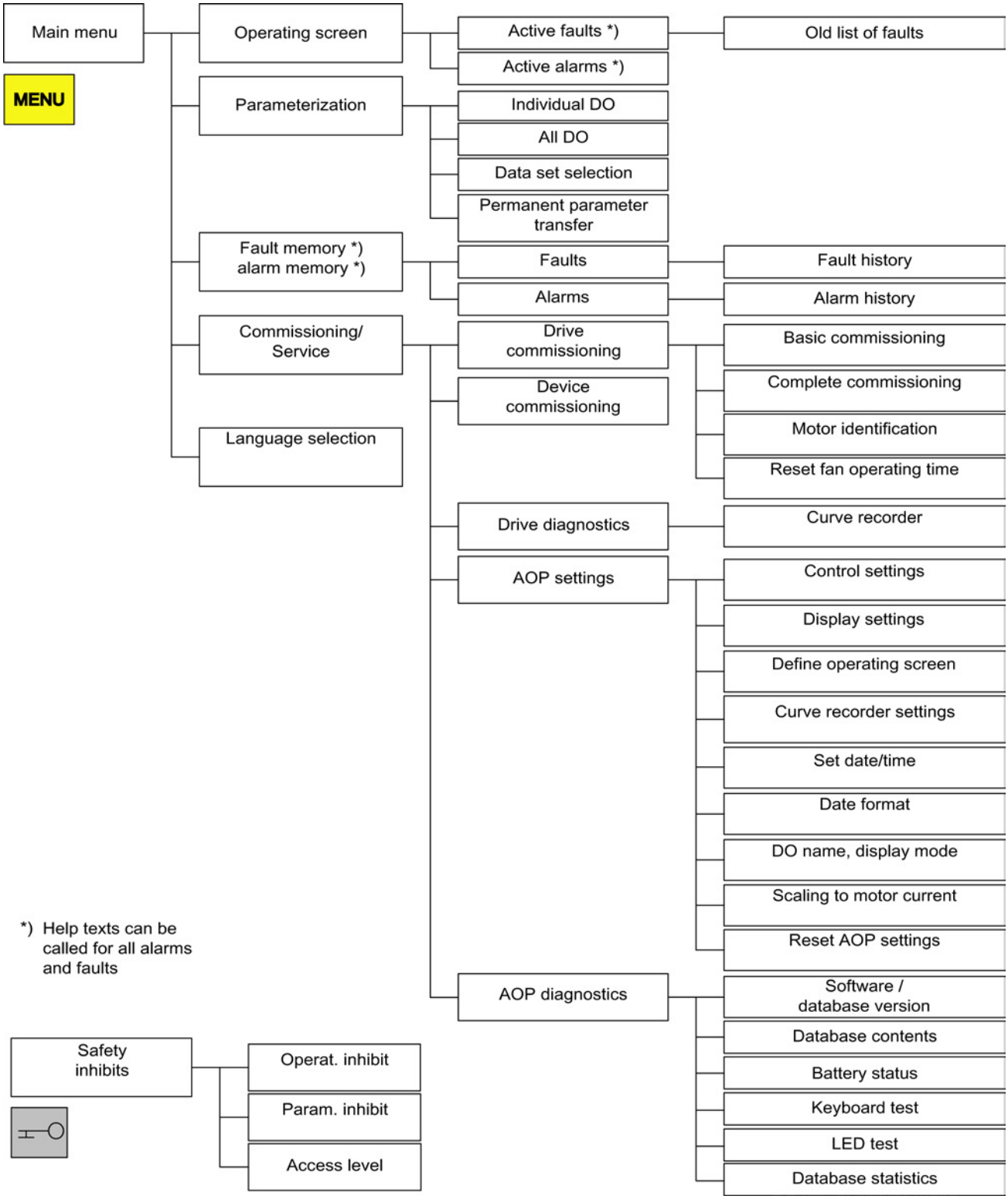


Figure 6-20 Menu structure of the operator panel

6.6.2 Operation screen menu

Description

The operation screen displays the most important status variables for the drive unit:

In the delivery condition, it displays the operating state of the drive, the direction of rotation, the time, as well as four drive variables (parameters) numerically and two in the form of a bar display for continuous monitoring.

You can call up the operation screen in one of two ways:

1. After the power supply has been switched on and the system has ramped up.
2. By pressing the MENU key twice and then F5 "OK."

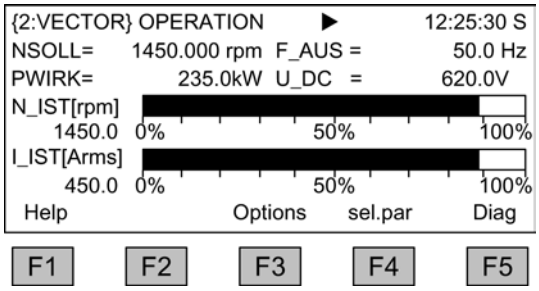


Figure 6-21 Operation screen

If a fault occurs, the system automatically displays the fault screen (see "Faults and alarms").

In LOCAL control mode, you can choose to enter the setpoint numerically (F2: setpoint).

The "Define operation screen" menu can be selected directly using F3 "Tools."

The individual parameters of the operation screen can be selected using F4 "Sel. par." The corresponding parameter number of the short identifier is displayed using F1 "Help+" and a description of the parameter can be called up.

Settings

When you choose Commissioning / service –> AOP settings –> Define operation screen, you can adjust the display type and the values displayed as required (see "AOP settings").

6.6.3 Parameterization menu

You can adjust the device settings in the Parameterization menu.

The drive software is modular. The individual modules are called DOs ("drive objects").

The following DOs are available in the SINAMICS G150:

- CU: General parameters for the Control Unit
- VECTOR: Drive control
- TM31: TM31 Terminal Module (option G60)
- TM150: TM150 temperature sensor module (option G51)

Parameters with identical functions may exist with the same parameter number in more than one DO (e.g. p0002).

The AOP30 is used for operating devices that comprise more than one drive so that attention is focused on one drive (i.e. the "current" drive). You can switch between the drives either in the operation screen or in the main menu. The corresponding function key is labeled "Drive."

This drive determines the following:

- Operation screen
- Fault and alarm displays
- The controller (ON, OFF, …) of a drive

Depending on your requirements, you can choose between two AOP display types:

1. All parameters
   All the parameters present in the device are listed here. The DO to which the parameter currently selected belongs (inverted) is displayed in curly brackets in the top left of the screen.
2. DO selection
   In this display, you can pre-select a DO Only the parameters for this DO are then listed. (The expert list display in STARTER only uses this DO view)

In both cases, the set access level governs which parameters are displayed. You can set the access level in the menu for inhibit functions, which can be called up using the key button.

The parameters for access levels 1 and 2 are sufficient for simple applications.

At access level 3 "Expert," you can change the structure of the function by interconnecting BICO parameters.

In the data set selection menu, you can choose which of the data sets chosen is currently DISPLAYED.
Data set parameters are indicated by a "c," "d," "m," "e," or "p" between the parameter number and parameter designator.

When a data set parameter is changed, the data set selection dialog appears.

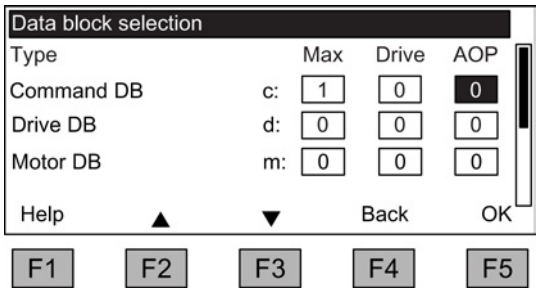


Figure 6-22 Data set selection

Explanation of the operator control dialog

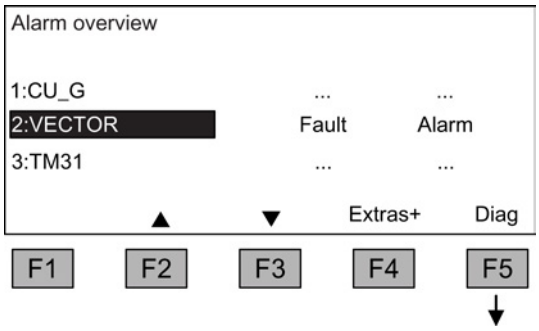
- "Max" shows the maximum number of data sets parameterized (and thereby available for selection) in the drive.
- "Drive" indicates which data set is currently active in the drive.
- "AOP" indicates which particular data set is currently being displayed in the operator panel.

6.6.4 Menu: Fault/alarm memory

When you select the menu, a screen appears containing an overview of faults and alarms that are present.

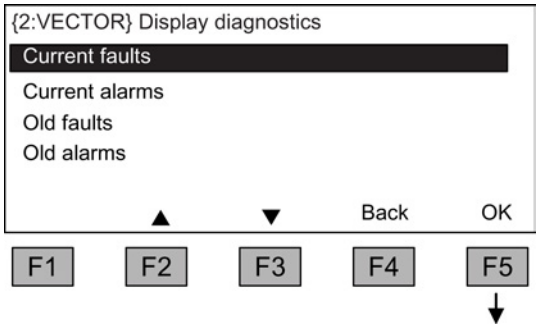
For each drive object, the system indicates whether any faults or alarms are present. ("Fault" or "Alarm" appears next to the relevant drive object).

In the graphic below, you can see that at least one active fault/alarm is present for the "VECTOR" drive object. No faults/alarms are indicated for the other drive objects.



Fault/alarm memory

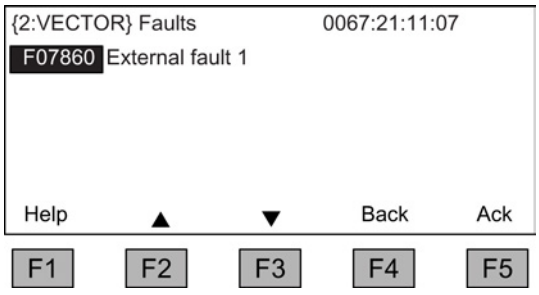
When you navigate to the line with active alarms/faults and then press the F5 <Diag> key, the system displays a screen in which you have to select the current or old alarms/faults.



Display diagnosis

When you navigate to the required line and then press the F5 <OK> key, the corresponding faults/alarms are displayed.

The list of current faults is selected here as an example.



Display of current faults

A maximum of eight current faults are displayed along with their fault number and name of the fault.

To display additional help regarding the cause of the problem and how to solve it, choose F1 <Help>.

To acknowledge the faults, choose F5 <Ack.>. If a fault cannot be acknowledged, the fault remains.

6.6.5 Menu commissioning / service

6.6.5.1 Drive commissioning

This option enables you to re-commission the drive from the main menu.

Basic commissioning

Only the basic commissioning parameters are queried and stored permanently.

Complete commissioning

Complete commissioning with motor and encoder data entry is carried out. Following this, key motor parameters are recalculated from the motor data. The parameter values calculated during previous commissioning are lost.

In a subsequent motor identification procedure, the calculated values are overwritten.

Motor identification

The selection screen for motor identification appears.

Reset fan operating time

The actual operating hours of the fan in the power unit is displayed.

After a fan replacement, the operating hours counter for monitoring the fan operating time must be reset.

6.6.5.2 Device commissioning

Device commissioning

In this menu, you can enter the device commissioning status directly. This is the only way that you can reset parameters to the factory setting for example.

6.6.5.3 Drive diagnostics

Curve recorder

The curve recorder provides a slow trace function, which monitors a signal trend.
A signal selected by parameter is displayed in the form of a curve.

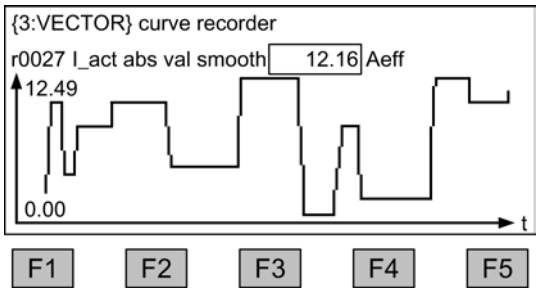


Figure 6-23 Curve recorder

The curve recorder-relevant settings are changed by pressing the F5 key or via the "Commissioning / Service – AOP settings - Curve recorder-relevant settings" menu.

The value of the parameter selected in the curve recorder-relevant settings is output on the display in addition to the curve and updated every 0.5 ... 24.5 seconds (parameterizable). For a slowly-running time base (above 20 minutes/screen), the time base in the header line flashes in 1 second intervals alternating with the text "slow X".

Assignment of the function keys F1 to F5 is not normally displayed so that the space can be fully utilized to display the curve. Pressing a function key shows the key assignments. If no further key is pressed within 5 seconds, the labeling will disappear again.

The curve can be scaled automatically or manually. This is selected with key F3 "scale+" - F4 "Auto/Manual" followed by confirmation with F5 "OK."

- Auto

  The scaling of the curve changes dynamically, it is oriented to the maximum value (for example, 12.49) and minimum value (for example, 0.00) visible in the display at the actual point in time. Scaling can be changed step-by-step by pressing buttons F2 and F3. If measured value noise is shown with an excessively high resolution as a result of the automatic scaling, then the resolution can be reduced in four steps by pressing button F2. As a result, the automatic scaling is deactivated. However, if the measured value leaves the display area, then this is extended. Automatic scaling can be reselected by pressing button F3.

- **Manually**

  After selecting manual scaling and confirmation with "OK", a window opens in which the maximum and minimum limits for scaling can be set.

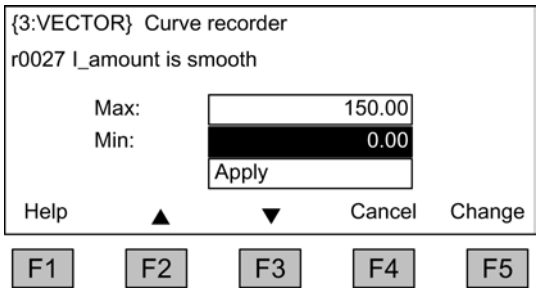


Figure 6-24 Curve recorder - manual scaling

After setting and applying the limits, you switch to the curve recorder and manual scaling is used.

If the current measured values are outside the displayable range, the range will automatically be extended.

Note

Changing the parameter for the curve recorder in manual scaling

When the parameter for the curve recorder is changed the following occurs with manual scaling:

- If the current parameter has lower values than the currently set scaling, the scaling will be retained.
- If the current parameter has higher values than the currently set scaling, the scaling will be adjusted automatically.

Help on the curve recorder can be opened with key F1.

The curve recorder is exited by pressing the MENU button.

Note

No recording of data

The values displayed in the recorder are not recorded and saved, they are only used for display until the screen form is exited.

6.6.5.4 AOP settings

Control settings

This defines the settings for the control keys in LOCAL mode (see "Operation / Control via the operator panel / Operation via the operator panel").

Display settings

In this menu, you set the lighting, brightness, and contrast for the display.

Defining the operation screen

In this menu, you can switch between five operation screens. You can set the parameters that are to be displayed.

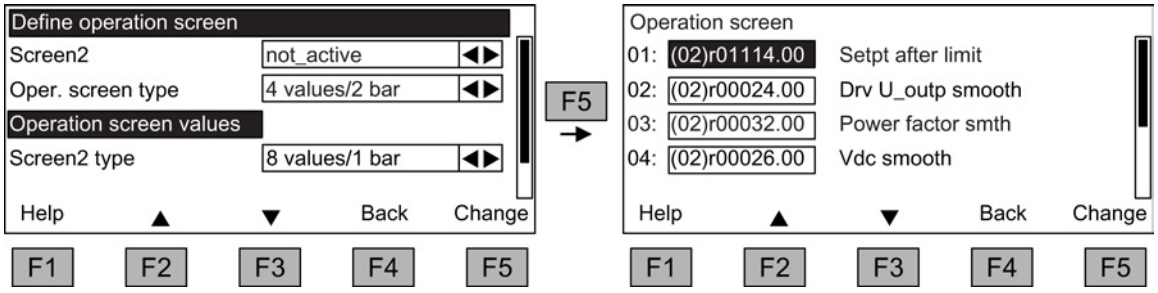


Figure 6-25 Defining the operation screen

The following image shows how the entries are assigned to the screen positions:

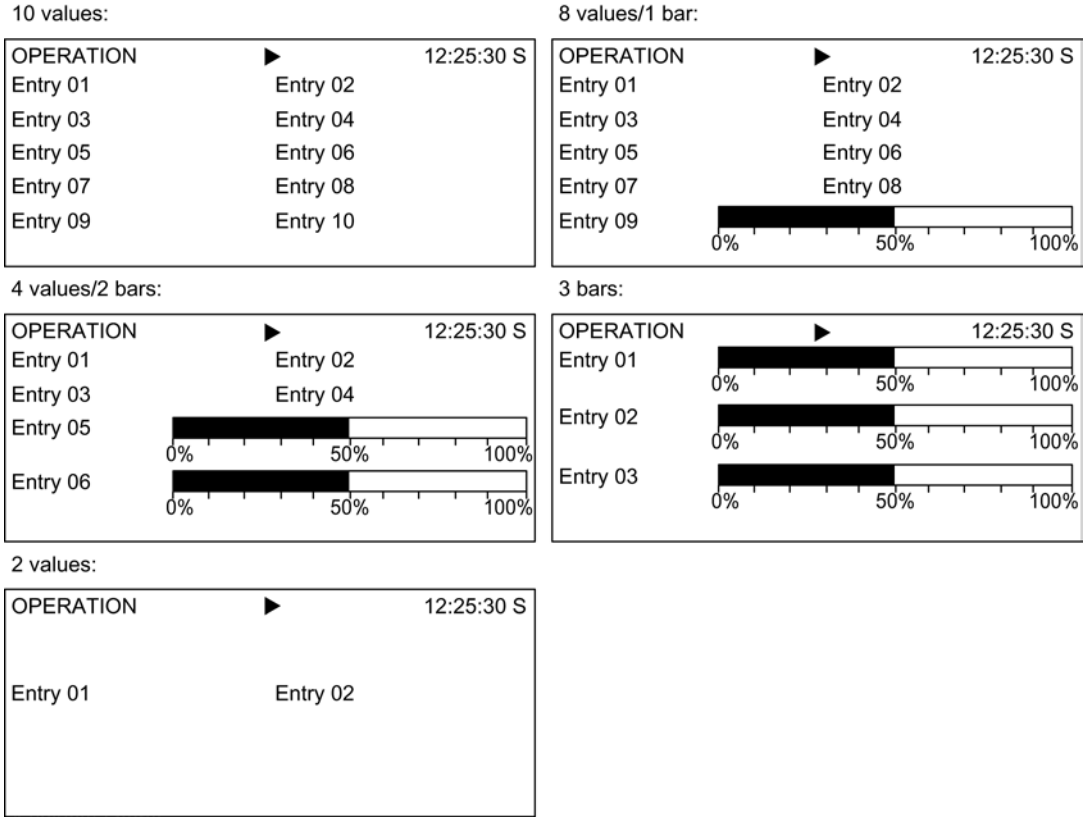


Figure 6-26 Layout of the entries in the operation screen

Lists of signals for the operating screen form

The following tables list some of the main signals for the operation screen along with the associated reference variables and default settings for fast commissioning.

VECTOR object

Table 6- 5 List of signals for the operation screen - VECTOR object

Signal		Parameter	Short name	Unit	Scaling (100 %=...) See table below
Factory setting (entry no.)					
Speed setpoint upstream of ramp-function generator	(1)	r1114	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Output frequency	(2)	r0024	F_OUT	Hz	Reference frequency
Power smoothed	(3)	r0032	PACTV	kW	r2004
DC link voltage smoothed	(4)	r0026	U_DC	V	p2001
Actual speed value smoothed	(5)	r0021	N_ACT	1/min	p2000
Absolute actual current, smoothed	(6)	r0027	I_IST	A	p2002
Motor temperature	(7)	r0035 [1)]	T_MOT	°C	p2006
Converter temperature	(8)	r0037	T_LT	°C	p2006
Actual torque smoothed	(9)	r0031	M_ACT	Nm	p2003
Converter output voltage smoothed	(10)	r0025	C_OUT	V	p2001
For diagnostic purposes					
Speed setpoint smoothed		r0020	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Control factor smoothed		r0028	AUSST	%	Reference modulation depth
Field-producing current component		r0029	IDACT	A	p2002
Torque-producing current component		r0030	IQACT	A	p2002
Converter overload Degree of thermal overload		r0036	LTI2T	%	100 % = Shutdown
Speed actual value motor encoder		r0061	N_ACT	1/min	p2000
Speed setpoint after the filter		r0062	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Actual speed smoothed		r0063	N_ACT	1/min	p2000
Control deviation		r0064	NDIFF	1/min	p2000
Slip frequency		r0065	FSCHL	Hz	Reference frequency
Output frequency		r0066	F_OUT	Hz	Reference frequency
Output voltage		r0072	UACT	V	p2001
Control factor		r0074	AUSST	%	Reference modulation depth
Torque-generating actual current		r0078	IQACT	A	p2002
Actual torque value		r0080	M_ACT	Nm	p2003
For further diagnostic purposes					
Fixed speed setpoint effective		r1024		1/min	p2000
Active motorized potentiometer setpoint		r1050		1/min	p2000
Resulting speed setpoint		r1119	NSETP	1/min	p2000
Speed controller output		r1508	NREGY	Nm	p2003
I component of speed controller		r1482	NREGI	Nm	p2003
PROFIBUS setpoint		r2050	PBSOL	1/min	p2000

[1)] If a temperature sensor has not been installed, a value of –200 °C is displayed.

Normalization for VECTOR object

Table 6- 6 Normalization for VECTOR object

Size	Scaling parameter	Default for quick commissioning
Reference speed	100% = p2000	p2000 = Maximum speed (p1082)
Reference voltage	100% = p2001	p2001 = 1000 V
Reference current	100% = p2002	p2002 = Current limit (p0640)
Reference torque	100% = p2003	p2003 = 2 x rated motor torque
Reference power	100% = r2004	r2004 = (p2003 x p2000 x π) / 30
Reference frequency	100% = p2000/60	
Reference modulation depth	100 % = Maximum output voltage without overload	
Reference flux	100 % = Rated motor flux	
Reference temperature	100% = p2006	p2006 = 100°C

TM31 object

Table 6- 7 List of signals for the operation screen – TM31 object

Signal	Parameter	Short name	Unit	Scaling (100 % = ...)
Analog input 0 [V, mA]	r4052[0]	AI_UI	V, mA	V: 100 V / mA: 100 mA
Analog input 1 [V, mA]	r4052[1]	AI_UI	V, mA	V: 100 V / mA: 100 mA
Analog input 0, scaled	r4055[0]	AI_%	%	as set in p200x
Analog input 1, scaled	r4055[1]	AI_%	%	as set in p200x

Curve recorder settings

In this menu, the following settings can be made:

Parameter selection

You can select here the parameter whose signal is to be displayed in the form of a trend curve in the curve recorder.

Interpolation (factory setting: No), serves for the better display of rapidly changing quantities.

- **No:** Only the measured values are displayed as points, without a connecting line between points.
- **1:** The measured values are connected by a vertical line.
- **2:** The measured values are connected by a line offset at the center.

Time base (factory setting: 2 minutes/screen)

The rate of the signal acquisition in minutes per screen is set. The value can be changed in integer multiples of 2. If an odd value is entered, the value will be rounded up. After changing the time basis the recording is started again.

Background recording (factory setting: No)

- **Yes:** The value recording is also continued if the display screen is exited. When the screen is entered again, the recorded prehistory is displayed.
- **No:** The recording of the values ends when the curve recorder is exited.

Y scale mode (factory setting: Auto), specifies the representation of the trend

- **Auto:** The scaling takes place automatically (taking the best possible display height).
- **Manual:** The scaling takes place by manually entering the MIN/MAX range limits. If, in this mode, values that are outside the defined window occur, the limit is automatically adapted for the display so that actual measured values can always be displayed.

Setting the date/time (for date stamping of error messages)

In this menu, you set the date and time.

You can also set whether and/or how the AOP and drive unit are to be synchronized. Synchronization of the AOP with the drive enables error messages to be date- and time-stamped.

Note

Display format for the time

The drive unit displays the time in parameter r3102 in the UTC format (days/milliseconds since 1970-01-01).

Under "Additional settings", settings for synchronization can be made:

Synchronization (factory setting: None)

- **None**
  The times for the AOP and drive unit are not synchronized.
- **AOP -> Drive**
  - If you activate this option, the AOP and drive unit are synchronized immediately whereby the current AOP time is transferred to the drive unit.
  - The current AOP time is transferred to the drive unit every time the AOP is started.
  - Depending on the set synchronization interval, the current AOP time is transferred to the drive unit.

Note

Flashing "S"

If the AOP detects a difference between RAM and ROM during synchronization to the drive unit, this is indicated by a flashing "S" at the top right in the display or, if operator input and/or parameter assignment has been disabled, by a flashing key symbol.

- **Drive -> AOP**
  - If you activate this option, the AOP and drive unit are synchronized immediately whereby the current drive unit time is transferred to the AOP.
  - The current drive unit time is transferred to the AOP every time the AOP is started.
  - Depending on the set synchronization interval, the current drive unit time is transferred to the AOP.

Note

Time-of-day master

The time in the drive must be set by a clock master (e.g. SIMATIC).

Synchronization interval

The interval for time synchronization is set from 1 hour (factory setting) to 99 hours.

For the interval, the time in the AOP from the time of the last change of the interval is decisive.

Daylight saving (factory setting: No)

- **No**
  The time does not automatically change over to daylight-saving time.
- **Yes**
  Selection is only possible if synchronization is set to "None" or "AOP -> Drive".
  The time is then automatically set to summer or winter time.
  After the changeover - for synchronization "AOP -> Drive" - synchronization is immediately carried out, irrespective of the synchronization interval set.

Changes to the synchronization must be saved with "Save".

Date format

In this menu, the date format can be set:

- **DD.MM.YYYY**: European date format
- **MM/DD/YYYY**: North American date format

DO name display mode

In this menu, you can switch the display of the DO name between the standard abbreviation (e.g. VECTOR) and a user-defined DO name (e.g. Motor_1).

User-defined DO name (factory setting: No)

- **Yes:** The "User-defined DO name" stored in parameter p0199 is displayed, instead of the standard DO abbreviation.
- **No:** The standard DO abbreviation is displayed.

Scaling to motor current

In this menu, the reference variable for the bar-type display of parameter r0027 (absolute actual current value smoothed) can be changed over in the operating screen forms.

Scaling to motor current (factory setting: No)

- **Yes:** The bar-type display of parameter r0027 in the operating screen form is displayed based on parameter p0305 (rated motor current).
- **No:** The bar-type display of parameter r0027in the operating screen form is displayed based on parameter p2002 (reference current).

Reset AOP settings

When you choose this menu option, the AOP factory settings for the following are restored:

- Language
- Display (brightness, contrast)
- Operating screen
- Control settings

Note

Restoring the factory setting

When you reset parameters, all settings that are different to the factory settings are reset immediately. This may cause the cabinet unit to switch to a different, unwanted operational status.

For this reason, you should always take great care when resetting parameters.

6.6.5.5 AOP diagnostics

Software/database version

You can use this menu to display the firmware and database versions.

The database version must be compatible with the drive software status (you can check this in parameter r0018).

Database contents

For service purposes, the contents of the database are displayed in the screen form.

Battery status

In this menu, you can display the battery voltage numerically (in Volts) or as a bar display. The battery ensures that the data in the database and the current time are retained.

When the battery voltage is represented as a percentage, a battery voltage of ≤ 2 V is equal to 0%, and a voltage of ≥ 3 V to 100%.

The data is secure up to a battery voltage of 2 V.

- If the battery voltage is ≤ 2.45 V, the message "Replace battery" is displayed in the status bar.
- If the battery voltage is ≤ 2.30 V, the system displays the following message: "Warning: weak battery".
- If the battery voltage is ≤ 2 V, the system displays the following message: "Caution: The battery is dead".
- If the time and/or database are not available after the system has been switched off for a prolonged period due to the voltage being too low, the loss is established by means of a CRC check when the system is switched on again. This triggers a message instructing the user to replace the battery and then load the database and/or set the time.

For instructions on how to change the battery, see "Maintenance and servicing".

Keyboard test

In this screen, you can check whether the keys are functioning properly. Keys that you press are represented on a symbolic keyboard on the display. You can press the keys in any order. You cannot exit the screen (F4 – "back") until you have pressed each key at least once.

Note

Exit keyboard test

Alternatively, you can exit the keyboard test screen by pressing any key and holding it down.

LED test

In this screen, you can check that the four LEDs are functioning properly.

Database statistics

For service purposes, the database statistics are displayed in the screen form.

6.6.6 Sprachauswahl/Language selection

The operator panel downloads the texts for the different languages from the drive.

You can change the language of the operator panel via the "Sprachauswahl/Language selection" menu.

Note

Additional languages for the display

Languages in addition to the current available languages in the display are available on request.

6.6.7 Operation via the operator panel (LOCAL mode)

You activate the control keys by switching to LOCAL mode. If the green LED in the LOCAL/REMOTE key does not light up, the key is not active.

Note

OFF in REMOTE

If the "OFF in REMOTE" function is activated, the LED in the LOCAL-REMOTE key flashes.

For LOCAL master control, all of the supplementary setpoints are deactivated.

After the master control has been transferred to the operator panel, the BICO interconnections at bit 0 to bit 10 of the control word of the sequence control are not effective (refer to function diagram 2501).

Note

Message "Other device has master control"

If STARTER has master control, then when pressing the LOCAL-REMOTE button, the "Other device has master control" message is displayed, and the master control transfer is rejected.

6.6.7.1 LOCAL/REMOTE key



Activating the LOCAL mode: Press the LOCAL key.

LOCAL mode: LED lights up

REMOTE mode: LED does not light up: the ON, OFF, JOG, direction reversal, faster, and slower keys are not active.

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Save LOCAL mode (factory setting: yes)

- **Yes**: The "LOCAL" or "REMOTE" operating mode is saved when the power supply is switched off and restored when the power supply is switched back on.
- **No**: "LOCAL" or "REMOTE" operating mode is not saved. "REMOTE" is active when the supply voltage is switched back on.

OFF in REMOTE (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: The OFF key functions in REMOTE mode even if the drive is being controlled by external sources (fieldbus, customer terminal strip, NAMUR terminal strip).
  WARNING This function is not an EMERGENCY STOP function!
- **No**: The OFF key only functions in LOCAL mode.

LOCAL/REMOTE also during operation (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: You can switch between LOCAL and REMOTE when the drive is switched on (motor is running).
- **No**: Before the system switches to LOCAL, a check is carried out to determine whether the drive is in the operational status. If so, the system does not switch to local and outputs the error message "Local mode during operation not possible". Before the system switches to REMOTE, the drive is switched off and the setpoint is set to 0.

6.6.7.2 ON key / OFF key



ON key: always active in LOCAL when the operator input inhibit is deactivated.

OFF key: in the factory setting, acts as OFF1 = ramp-down at the deceleration ramp (p1121); when n = 0: voltage disconnection (only if a main contactor is installed)
The OFF key is effective in the LOCAL mode and when the "OFF in REMOTE" function is active.

Settings: Menu – Commissioning / Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Red OFF key acts as: (factory setting: OFF1)

- **OFF1**: Ramp-down on the deceleration ramp (p1121)
- **OFF2**: Immediate pulse block, motor coasts to a standstill
- **OFF3**: Ramp-down on the emergency stop ramp (p1135)

6.6.7.3 Switching between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation



Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Switching between CCW/CW (factory setting: no)

- **Yes**: Switching between CW/CCW rotation by means of the CW/CCW key possible in LOCAL mode
- **No**: The CW/CCW key has no effect in LOCAL mode

For safety reasons, the CW/CCW key is disabled in the factory setting (pumps and fans must normally only be operated in one direction).

In the operation status in LOCAL mode, the current direction of rotation is indicated by an arrow next to the operating mode.

Note

Activation of CCW/CW changeover

You have to make additional settings when switching between CW/CCW rotation.

6.6.7.4 Jog

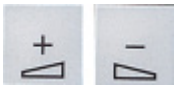


Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP settings – Control settings

JOG key active (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: The jog key is effective in the LOCAL mode in the state "ready to power-up" (not in "operation"). The speed that is set in parameter p1058 is approached.
- **No**: The JOG key has no effect in the LOCAL mode

6.6.7.5 Increase setpoint / decrease setpoint



You can use the Increase and Decrease keys to enter the setpoint with a resolution of 1% of the maximum speed.

You can also enter the setpoint numerically. To do so, press F2 in the operation screen. The system displays an field for entering the required speed. Enter the required value using the numeric keypad. Press F5 "OK" to confirm the setpoint.

When you enter values numerically, you can enter any speed between the minimum speed (p1080) and the maximum speed (p1082).

Setpoint entry in LOCAL mode is unipolar. You can change the direction of rotation by pressing the key that allows you to switch between CW/CCW rotation.

- CW rotation and "Increase key" mean:
  The displayed setpoint is positive and the output frequency is increased.
- CCW rotation and "Increase key" mean:
  The displayed setpoint is negative and the output frequency is increased.

6.6.7.6 AOP setpoint

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Save AOP setpoint (factory setting: no)

- **Yes**: In LOCAL mode, the last setpoint (once you have released the INCREASE or DECREASE key or confirmed a numeric entry) is saved.
  The next time you switch the system on in LOCAL mode, the saved value is selected. This is also the case if you switched to REMOTE in the meantime or the power supply was switched off.
  When the system is switched from REMOTE to LOCAL mode while the drive is switched on (motor is running), the actual value that was last present is set as the output value for the motorized potentiometer setpoint and saved.
  If the system is switched from REMOTE to LOCAL mode while the drive is switched off, the motorized potentiometer setpoint that was last saved is used.
- **No**: On power-up in LOCAL mode, the speed is always set to the value entered under "AOP starting setpoint". When the system is switched from REMOTE to LOCAL mode while the drive is switched on (motor is running), the actual value that was last present is set as the output value for the AOP setpoint.

AOP setpoint ramp-up time (factory setting: 10 s)

AOP setpoint ramp-down time (factory setting: 10 s)

- **Recommendation**: set as ramp-up/ramp-down time (p1120/p1121).
  Changing the ramp-up/ramp-down times does not affect the settings for parameters p1120 and p1121 because this is an AOP-specific setting.

AOP starting setpoint (factory setting: 0.000 rpm)

Note

Internal ramp-function generator

The internal drive ramp-function generator is always active.

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP settings – Control settings

Save AOP local mode (factory setting: no)

- **Yes**: Deactivates the "Control via operator panel" function, thereby disabling the LOCAL/REMOTE key.
- **No**: Activates the LOCAL/REMOTE key.

Note

Lock LOCAL

LOCAL functionality can also be inhibited on the drive by means of the p0806 parameter (BI: Inhibit master control).

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP Settings – Control Settings

Acknowledge error from the AOP (factory setting: yes)

- **Yes**: Errors can be acknowledged via the AOP.
- **No**: Errors cannot be acknowledged via the AOP.

Settings: MENU – Commissioning/Service – AOP settings – Control settings

CDS changeover via AOP (factory setting: No)

- **Yes**: In the LOCAL mode, in the operating screen form the active CDS can the changed by one. This is helpful, if operation via an AOP would not be possible due to the fact that a standard telegram is active.
  When CDS0 or 2 is active, "CDS+1" switches to CDS1 or CDS3.
  When CDS1 or 3 is active, "CDS-1" switches to CDS0 or CDS2.
- **No**: In the LOCAL mode, in the operating screen form the active CDS cannot be changed by one.

6.6.7.7 Timeout monitoring

In "LOCAL" mode or if "OFF in REMOTE" is active, the drive is shut down in an adjustable time if the data cable between the AOP and drive is disconnected (factory setting 3000 ms).

6.6.7.8 Operator input inhibit / parameterization inhibit



To prevent users from accidentally actuating the control keys and changing parameters, you can activate an operator input / parameters disable using a key pushbutton. Two key icons appear in the top right of the display when these inhibit functions are enabled.

Table 6- 8 Display of operator input/parameters disable

Inhibit type	Online operation	Offline operation
No inhibit		
Operator input inhibit		
Parameters disable		
Operator input inhibit + parameters disable		

Settings

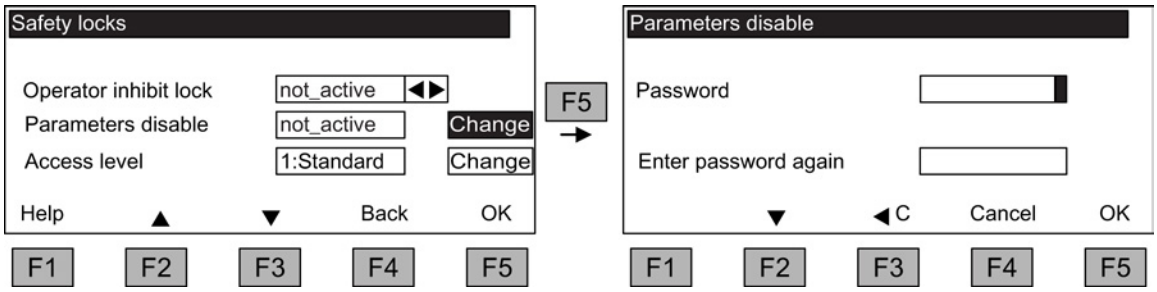


Figure 6-27 Set inhibit functions

The "Operator input inhibit" setting can be changed directly via <F5> "Change" once you have selected the selection field.

When "Parameterization inhibit" is activated, you have to enter a numeric password (repeat this entry). You must also enter this password when deactivating "Parameterization inhibit".

Operator input inhibit (factory setting: not active)

- **Active**: The parameters can still be viewed, but a parameter value cannot be saved (message: "Note: operator input inhibit active"). The OFF key (red) is enabled. The LOCAL, REMOTE, ON (green), JOG, CW/CCW, INCREASE, and DECREASE keys are disabled.

Parameterization inhibit (factory setting: not active)

- **Active**: Parameters cannot be changed unless a password is entered. The parameterization process is the same as with the operator input inhibit. If you try and change parameters, the message "Note: Parameterization inhibit active" is displayed. All the control keys can, however, still be actuated.

Access level (factory setting: Expert):

The different parameters required for this complex application are filtered so that they can be displayed as clearly as possible. You select them according to the access level.

An expert level, which must only be used by expert personnel, is required for certain actions.

Note

Copy from RAM to ROM

When the operator input inhibit or parameterization inhibit is activated, a "Copy from RAM to ROM" is automatically executed to back the parameter settings up in non-volatile memory on the memory card.

6.6.8 Faults and alarms

Indicating faults and alarms

If a fault occurs, the drive displays the fault and/or alarm on the operator panel. Faults are indicated by the red "FAULT" LED and a fault screen is automatically displayed. You can use the F1 Help function to call up information about the cause of the fault and how to remedy it. You can use F5 Ack. to acknowledge a stored fault.

Alarms are indicated by means of the yellow "ALARM" LED. The system also displays a note in the status bar providing information on the cause.

What is a fault?

A fault is a message from the drive indicating an error or other exceptional (unwanted) status that causes the drive to shutdown. This could be caused by a fault within the converter or an external fault triggered, for example, by the winding temperature monitor for the motor. The faults are displayed and can be reported to a higher-level control system via PROFIBUS. In the factory default setting, the message "converter fault" is also sent to a relay output. Once you have rectified the cause of the fault, you have to acknowledge the fault message.

What is an alarm?

An alarm is the response to a fault condition identified by the drive. It does not result in the drive being switched off and does not have to be acknowledged. Alarms are "self acknowledging", that is, they are reset automatically when the cause of the alarm has been eliminated.

Fault and alarm displays

Every fault and alarm is entered in the fault/alarm buffer along with time the error occurred. The time stamp refers to the system time (r2114).

You can call up an overview screen that displays the current status of faults and/or alarms for every drive object in the system by choosing MENU – Fault memory / alarm memory.

A context menu featuring the "Back" and "Quit" options appears when you press F4 "Next". The function required can be selected using F2 and F3 and executed by pressing F5 "OK". The "Acknowledge" function sends an acknowledgement signal to each drive object. The red FAULT LED extinguishes once all the faults have been acknowledged.

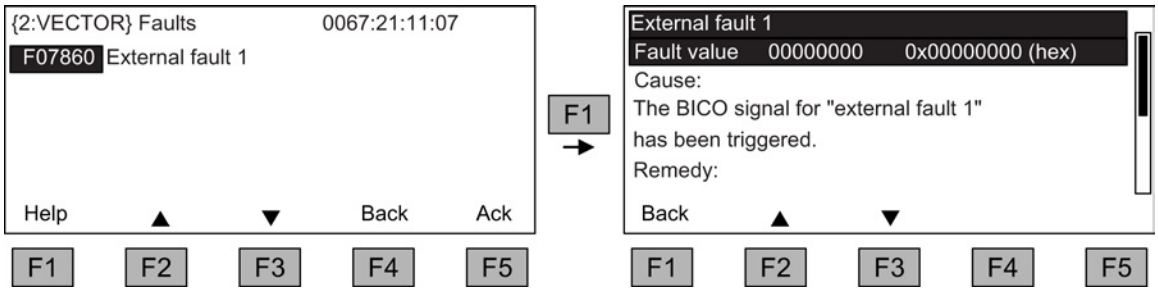


Figure 6-28 Fault screen

You can use F5 Ack. to acknowledge a stored fault.

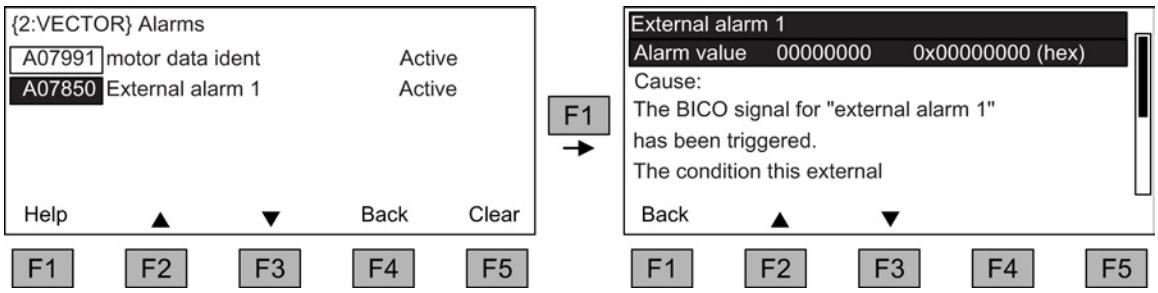


Figure 6-29 Alarm screen

Alarms that are no longer active are removed from the alarm memory with F5 Clear.

6.6.9 Saving the parameters permanently

Description

If parameters have been changed using the operator panel (confirm with OK in the Parameter Editor), the new values are initially stored in the volatile memory (RAM) of the converter. An "S" flashes in the top right of the AOP display until they are saved to a permanent memory. This indicates that at least 1 parameter has been changed and not yet stored permanently.

Two methods are available for permanently saving parameters that have been changed:

- To store the parameters permanently, choose <MENU> <Parameterization> <OK> <Permanent parameter transfer>.
- When confirming a parameter setting with OK, press the OK key for > 1 s. The system displays a message asking you whether the setting is to be saved in the EEPROM. If you press "Yes", the system saves the setting in the EEPROM. If you press "No", the setting is not saved permanently and the "S" starts flashing.

In both cases, **all** changes that have not yet been saved permanently are stored in the EEPROM.

6.6.10 Parameterization errors

If a fault occurs when reading or writing parameters, a popup window containing the cause of the problem is displayed.

The system displays:

Parameter write error (d)pxxxx.yy:0xnn

and a plain-text explanation of the type of parameterization error.

6.7 Communication according to PROFIdrive

6.7.1 General information

PROFIdrive V4.1 is the PROFIBUS and PROFINET profile for drive technology with a wide range of applications in production and process automation.

PROFIdrive is independent of the bus system used (PROFIBUS, PROFINET).

Note

References

PROFIdrive for drive technology is described in the following document:

- PROFIdrive system description
  PROFIBUS User Organization e. V.
  Haid-und-Neu-Straße 7, D-76131 Karlsruhe, http://www.profibus.com
  IEC 61800-7

PROFIdrive device classes

Table 6- 9 PROFIdrive device classes

PROFIdrive	PROFIBUS DP	PROFINET
Peripheral device (P device)	DP slave	IO Device
Motion controller (higher level Control or host of the automation system)	Class 1 DP master	IO Controller
Supervisor (engineering station)	Class 2 DP master	IO Supervisor

- Drive unit (PROFIBUS: Slave, PROFINET IO: IO Device)

  Example: CU320-2 Control Unit

- Controller (PROFIBUS: Master Class 1, PROFINET IO: IO controller)

  A controller is typically a higher-level control in which the automation program runs.

  Example: SIMATIC S7 and SIMOTION

- Supervisor (PROFIBUS: Master Class 2, PROFINET IO: IO Supervisor)

  Devices for configuring, commissioning, operator control and monitoring while the bus is in operation and devices which only exchange non-cyclic data with drive units and controllers.

  Examples: Programming devices, operator control and monitoring devices

Properties of the controller, supervisor and drive units

Table 6- 10 Properties of the Controller, Supervisor, and Drive Unit

Properties	Controller, Supervisor	Drive unit
As bus node	Active	Passive
Sending messages	Permitted without external request	Only possible on request by the controller
Receiving messages	Possible without any restrictions	Only receive and acknowledge permitted

Communication services

Four communication services are defined in the PROFIdrive profile:

- Cyclic data exchange via a cyclic data channel
  Motion control systems require cyclically updated data in operation for open-loop and closed-loop control tasks. This data must be sent to the drive units in the form of setpoints or transmitted from the drive units in the form of actual values, via the communications system. Transfer of this data is usually time-critical.
- Acyclic data exchange via an acyclic data channel
  An acyclic parameter channel for exchanging parameters between the control/supervisor and drive units is additionally available. Access to this data is not time-critical.
- Alarm channel
  Alarms are output on an event-driven basis, and show the occurrence and expiry of error states.
- Isochronous mode

Interface IF1 and IF2

The Control Unit can communicate via two different interfaces (IF1 and IF2).

Table 6- 11 Properties of IF1 and IF2

	IF1	IF2
PROFIdrive and SIEMENS telegram	Yes	No
Isochronous mode	Yes	Yes
Drive object types	All	All
Can be used for	PROFINET IO, PROFIBUS DP, SINAMICS Link, PN Gate, Ethernet/IP	PROFINET IO, PROFIBUS DP, CANopen, SINAMICS Link, PN Gate, Ethernet/IP
Cyclic operation	Yes	Yes
PROFIsafe	Yes	Yes

Note

For additional information on the IF1 and IF2 interfaces, see section "Parallel operation of communication interfaces".

6.7.2 Application classes

Description

There are different application classes for PROFIdrive according to the scope and type of the application processes. PROFIdrive features a total of 6 application classes, 4 of which are discussed here.

Application class 1 (standard drive)

In the most basic case, the drive is controlled via a speed setpoint by means of PROFIBUS/PROFINET. In this case, speed control is fully handled in the drive controller. Typical application examples include simple frequency converters for controlling pumps and fans.

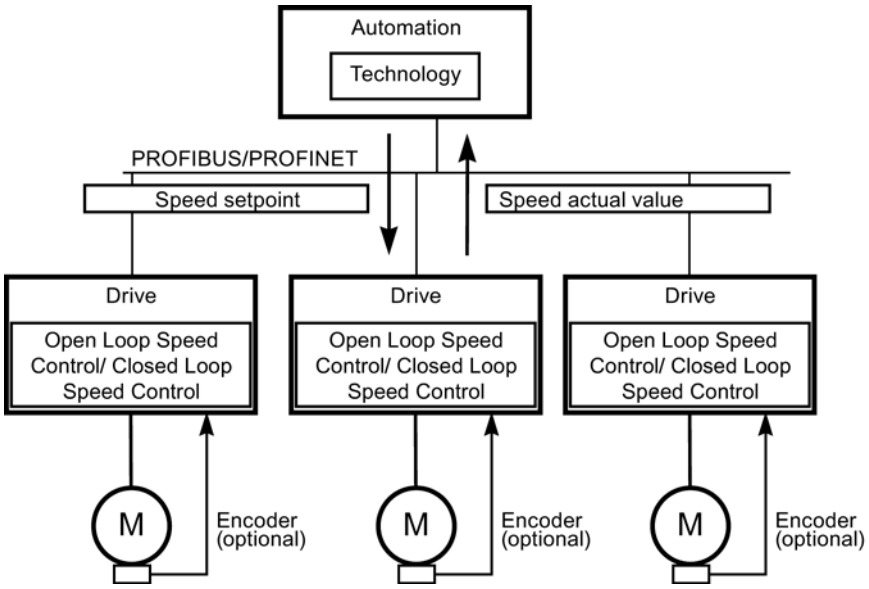


Figure 6-30 Application class 1

Application class 2 (standard drive with technology function)

The overall process is subdivided into a number of small subprocesses and distributed among the drives. This means that the automation functions no longer reside exclusively in the central automation device but are also distributed in the drive controllers.
Of course, this distribution assumes that communication is possible in every direction, i.e., also cross-communication between the technology functions of the individual drive controllers. Specific applications include setpoint cascades, winding drives, and speed synchronization applications for continuous processes with a continuous web.

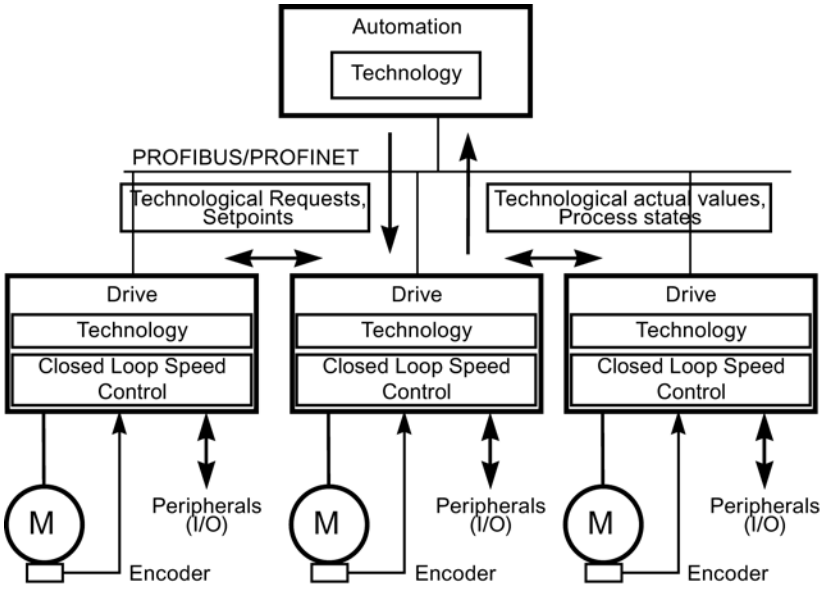


Figure 6-31 Application class 2

Application class 3 (positioning drive)

In addition to the drive control, the drive also includes a positioning control, which means that it operates as a self-contained single-axis positioning drive while the higher-level technological processes are performed in the controller. Positioning requests are transmitted to the drive controller via PROFIBUS/PROFINET and launched. Positioning drives have a very wide range of applications, e.g., screwing and unscrewing caps in a bottle filling plant or positioning cutters on a foil cutting machine.

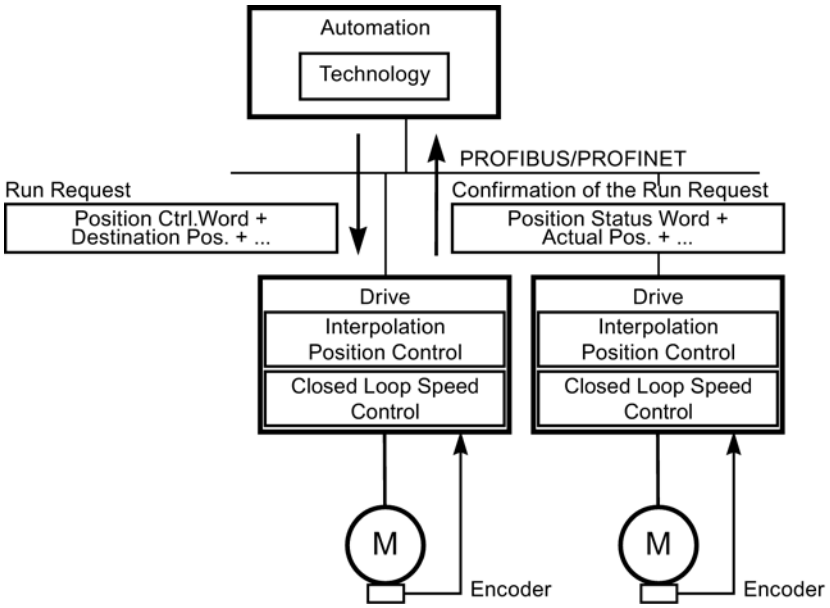


Figure 6-32 Application class 3

Application class 4 (central motion control)

This application class defines a speed setpoint interface, where the speed control is realized in the drive and the positioning control in the control system, such as is required for robotics and machine tool applications with coordinated motion sequences on multiple drives.

Motion control is primarily implemented using a central numerical controller (CNC). The position control loop is closed via the bus. The synchronization of the position control cycles in the open-loop and closed-loop controllers in the drives requires clock synchronization of the kind provided by PROFIBUS DP and PROFINET IO with IRT.

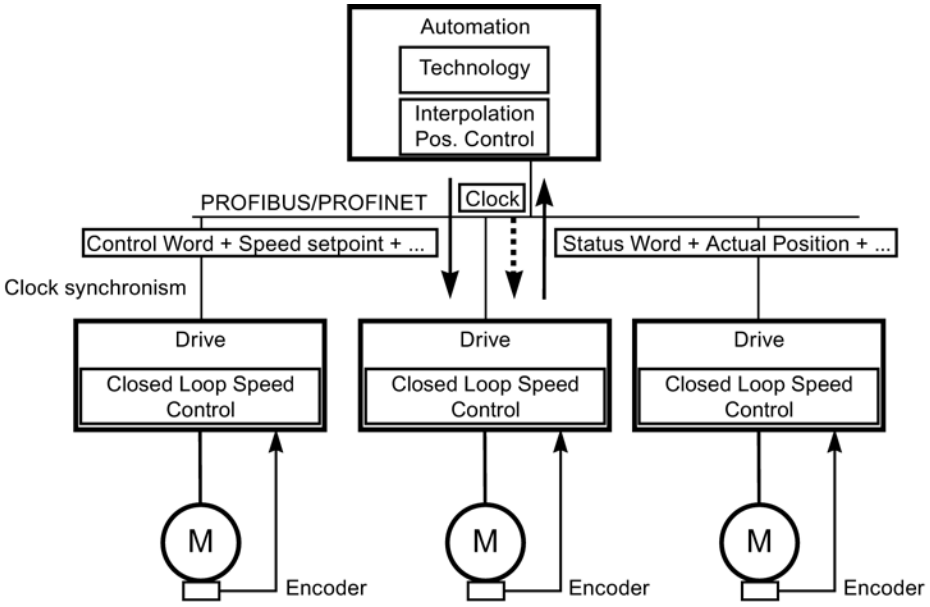


Figure 6-33 Application class 4

Selection of telegrams as a function of the application class

The telegrams listed in the table below can be used in the following application classes:

Table 6- 12 Selection of telegrams as a function of the application class

Telegram (p0922 = x)	Description	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4
1	Speed setpoint, 16 bit	x	x		
2	Speed setpoint, 32 bit	x	x		
3	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder		x		x
4	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders				x
5	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder and DSC				x
6	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders and DSC				x
7	Positioning, telegram 7 (basic positioner)			x	
9	Positioning, telegram 9 (basic positioner with direct input)			x	
20	Speed setpoint, 16 bit VIK-NAMUR	x	x		
81	Encoder telegram, 1 encoder channel				x
82	Extended encoder telegram, 1 encoder channel + speed actual value 16 bits				x
83	Extended encoder telegram, 1 encoder channel + speed actual value 32 bits				x
102	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder and torque reduction				x
103	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoder and torque reduction				x
105	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 1 position encoder, torque reduction and DSC				x
106	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders, torque reduction and DSC				x
110	Basic positioner with MDI, override and XIST_A			x	
111	Basic positioner in the MDI mode			x	
116	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 position encoders, torque reduction and DSC, plus actual load, torque, power and current values				x
118	Speed setpoint, 32 bit with 2 external position encoders, torque reduction and DSC, as well as actual load, torque, power and current values				x
125	DSC with torque feedforward control, 1 position encoder (encoder 1)				x
126	DSC with torque feedforward control, 2 position encoders (encoder 1 and encoder 2)				x
136	136 DSC with torque feedforward control, 2 position encoders (encoder 1 and encoder 2), 4 trace signals				x
139	Closed-loop speed/position control with DSC and torque feedforward control, 1 position encoder, clamping status, supplementary actual values				x

Telegram (p0922 = x)	Description	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4
220	Speed setpoint 32 bit, metal industry	x			
352	Speed setpoint, 16 bit, PCS7	x	x		
370	Infeed	x	x	x	x
371	Infeed, metal industry	x			
390	Control Unit with digital inputs/outputs	x	x	x	x
391	Control Unit with digital inputs/outputs and 2 probes	x	x	x	x
392	Control Unit with digital inputs/outputs and 6 probes	x	x	x	x
393	Control Unit with digital inputs/outputs and 8 probes	x	x	x	x
394	Control Unit with digital inputs/outputs	x	x	x	x
395	Control Unit with digital inputs/outputs and 16 probes	x	x	x	x
396	Telegram for the transfer of DU-global status data (DO CU), for the control of the digital I/O on SOC-CUs, as well as for 8 CU probe channels and 8 CU cam controllers	x	x	x	x
999	Free telegrams	x	x	x	x

6.7.3 Cyclic communication

Cyclic communication is used to exchange time-critical process data (e.g. setpoints and actual values).

6.7.3.1 Telegrams and process data

General information

Selecting a telegram via CU parameter p0922 determines which process data is transferred.

From the perspective of the drive unit, the received process data comprises the receive words and the process data to be sent, the send words.

The receive and send words comprise the following elements:

- Receive words: Control words and setpoints
- Send words: Status words and actual values

Default setting "Profidrive"

When the "Profidrive" default setting is chosen for command and setpoint selection (see "Command sources / "Profidrive" default settings"), "Free telegram" (p0922 = 999) is selected.

The receive telegram is parameterized as follows as a result of the default setting:

STW1	NSOLL_A

The send telegram is as follows (factory setting):

ZSW1	NIST_GLATT	IAIST_GLATT	MIST_GLATT	PIST_GLATT	FAULT_CODE

You do not have to make any further settings in order to use these telegrams.

User-defined telegram selection

a. Standard telegrams

Standard telegrams are structured in accordance with PROFIdrive profile or internal company specifications. Process data is automatically interconnected internally corresponding to the telegram number set in parameter p0922.

The following standard telegrams can be set via parameter p0922:

- p0922 = 1 -> Speed setpoint, 16 bit
- p0922 = 2 -> Speed setpoint, 32 bit
- p0922 = 3 -> Speed setpoint 32 bit with 1 position controller
- p0922 = 4 -> Speed setpoint 32 bit with 2 position controller
- p0922 = 20 -> Speed setpoint, 16 bit VIK-NAMUR
- p0922 = 352 -> Speed setpoint, 16-bit PCS7

Depending on the setting in p0922, the interface mode of the control and status word is automatically set:

- p0922 = 1, 352, 999:
  STW 1/STW 1: Interface Mode SINAMICS / MICROMASTER, p2038 = 0
- p0922 = 20:
  STW 1/STW 1: Interface Mode PROFIdrive VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2

b. Manufacturer-specific telegrams

The manufacturer-specific telegrams are structured in accordance with internal company specifications. The internal process data links are set up automatically in accordance with the telegram number setting.

The following vendor-specific telegrams can be set via p0922:

- p0922 = 220 Speed setpoint 32 bit, metal industry

c. Free telegrams (p0922 = 999)

Send and receive telegrams can be configured as required by using BICO technology to interconnect the send and receive words. The default process data assigned under a) is retained during the changeover to p0922 = 999, although it can be changed or supplemented at any time.

To maintain compliance with the PROFIdrive profile, however, the following assignments should be retained:

- Interconnect PZD receive word 1 as control word 1 (STW 1)
- Interconnect PZD send word 1 as status word 1 (STW 1)

Please refer to function diagrams FP2460 and FP2470 for details on interconnection options.

Telegram interconnections

After changing p0922 = 999 (factory setting) to p0922 ≠ 999, the telegrams are interconnected and blocked automatically.

Note

Exceptions

Exceptions here are telegrams 20, 220 and 352. In addition to the fixed interconnections, selected process data (PZD) can be interconnected as required in the send/receive telegram there.

When you change p0922 ≠ 999 to p0922 = 999, the previous telegram interconnection is retained and this can be changed.

Note

Easy method for creating extended telegram interconnections

If p0922 = 999, a telegram can be selected in p2079. A telegram interconnection is automatically made and blocked. However, the telegram can also be extended.

This is an easy method of creating extended telegram interconnections on the basis of existing telegrams.

6.7.3.2 Structure of the telegrams

Table 6- 13 Structure of the telegrams

Telegr.	PZD 1	PZD 2	PZD 3	PZD 4	PZD 5	PZD 6	PZD 7	PZD 8	PZD 9	PZD 10
1	STW1	NSOLL_A								
	ZSW1	NIST_A								
2	STW1	NSOLL_B		STW2						
	ZSW1	NIST_B		ZSW2						
3	STW1	NSOLL_B		STW2	G1_STW					
	ZSW1	NIST_B		ZSW2	G1_ZSW	G1_XIST1		G1_XACT2		
4	STW1	NSOLL_B		STW2	G1_STW	G2_STW				
	ZSW1	NIST_B		ZSW2	G1_ZSW	Further assignment, see FP2420				
20	STW1	NSOLL_A								
	ZSW1	NIST_A_ GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	PIST_ GLATT	MELD_ NAMUR				
220	STW1_ BM	NSOLL_B		STW2_BM	M_ADD	M_LIM	free	free	free	free
	ZSW1_ BM	NIST_A	IAIST	MIST	WARN_ CODE	FAULT_ CODE	ZSW2_ BM	free	free	free
352	STW1	NSOLL_A	PCS7_3	PCS7_4	PCS7_5	PCS7_6				
	ZSW1	NIST_A_ GLATT	IAIST_ GLATT	MIST_ GLATT	WARN_ CODE	FAULT_ CODE				
999	STW1	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free
	ZSW1	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free	free

6.7.3.3 Overview of control words and setpoints

Table 6- 14 Overview of control words and setpoints

Abbreviation	Description	Parameter	Function diagram
STW1	Control word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2442
STW1	Control word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)	See table "Control word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)"	FP2441
STW1_BM	Control word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2425
STW2	Control word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2444
STW2_BM	Control word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Control word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2426
NSOLL_A	Speed setpoint A (16-bit)	p1070	FP3030
NSOLL_B	Speed setpoint B (32-bit)	p1155	FP3080
PCS7_x	PCS7-specific setpoints		

6.7.3.4 Overview of status words and actual values

Table 6- 15 Overview of status words and actual values

Abbreviation	Description	Parameter	Function diagram
ZSW1	Status word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 1 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2452
ZSW1	Status word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)	See table "Status word 1 (interface mode VIK-NAMUR, p2038 = 2)"	FP2451
ZSW1_BM	Status word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 1, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2428
ZSW2	Status word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 2 (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2454
ZSW2_BM	Status word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)	See table "Status word 2, metal industry (interface mode SINAMICS, p2038 = 0)"	FP2429
NIST_A	Speed setpoint A (16 bit)	r0063[0]	FP4715
NIST_B	Speed setpoint B (32 bit)	r0063	FP4710
IAIST	Actual value of current	r0068[0]	FP6714
MIST	Actual torque value	r0080[0]	FP6714
PIST	Actual power value	r0082[0]	FP6714
NIST_GLATT	Actual speed value smoothed	r0063[1]	FP4715
IAIST_GLATT	Current actual value, smoothed	r0068[1]	FP6714
MIST_GLATT	Torque actual value, smoothed	r0080[1]	FP6714
PIST_GLATT	Power actual value, smoothed	r0082[1]	FP6714
MELD_NAMUR	VIK-NAMUR message bit bar	r3113, see table "NAMUR message bit bar"	--
WARN_CODE	Alarm code	r2132	FP8065
ERROR_CODE	Error code	r2131	FP8060

6.7.4 Acyclic communication

Acyclic communication, as opposed to cyclic communication, means data is transferred only when an explicit request is made (e.g., in order to read and write parameters).

The "Read data record" and "Write data record" services are available for acyclic communication.

The following options are available for reading and writing parameters:

- S7 protocol

  The STARTER commissioning tool use this protocol, for example, in the online mode via PROFIBUS.

- PROFIdrive parameter channel with the following data records:
  - PROFIBUS: Data block 47 (0x002F)

    The DPV1 services are available for master class 1 and master class 2.
  - PROFINET: Data block 47 and 0xB02F as global access, data block 0xB02E as local access

Note

References

Please refer to the following documentation for a detailed description of acyclic communication:
Reference: PROFIdrive Profile V4.1, May 2006, Order No: 3.172

Addressing:

- PROFIBUS DP, addressing is carried out via the logical address or the diagnostics address.
- PROFINET IO, addressing is carried out exclusively via a diagnostics address that is assigned to a module starting from slot 1. Parameters cannot be accessed using slot 0.

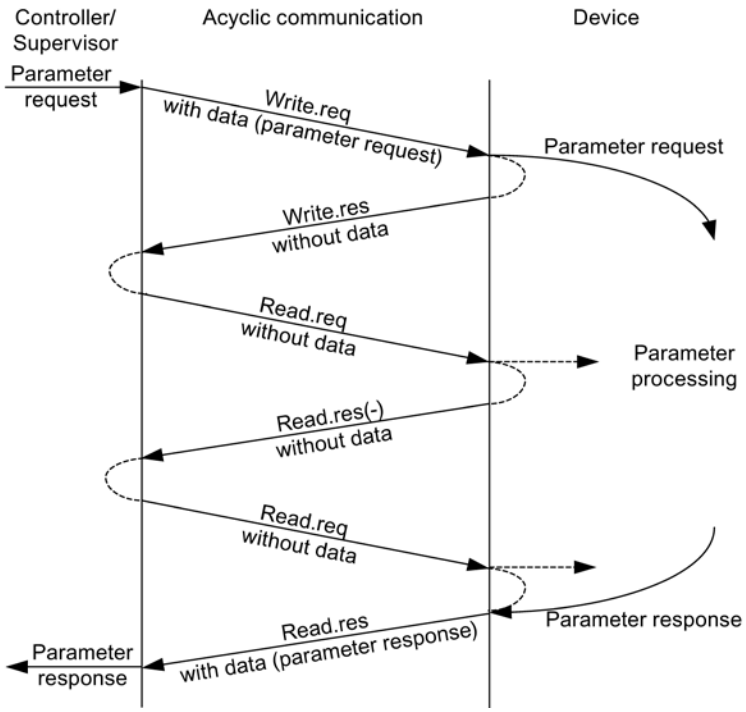


Figure 6-34 Reading and writing data

Characteristics of the parameter channel

- One 16-bit address each for parameter number and subindex.
- Simultaneous access by several additional PROFIBUS masters (master class 2) or PROFINET IO Supervisor (e.g., commissioning tool).
- Transfer of different parameters in one access operation (multiple parameter request).
- Transfer of complete arrays or part of an array possible.
- Only one parameter request is processed at a time (no pipelining).
- A parameter request/response must fit into one data record (max. 240 bytes).
- The request and response header are counted as user data.

6.7.4.1 Structure of requests and responses

Structure of parameter request and parameter response

Table 6- 16 Structure of the parameter request

	Parameter request			**Offset**
Values for write access only	Request header	Request reference	Request ID	0
		Axis	Number of parameters	2
	1st parameter address	Attribute	Number of elements	4
		Parameter number		6
		Subindex		8
	...			
	nth parameter address	Attribute	Number of elements	
		Parameter number		
		Subindex		
	1st parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	
		Values		
		...		
	...			
	nth parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	
		Values		
		...		

Table 6- 17 Structure of the parameter response

	Parameter response			Offset
Values for read access only Error values for negative response only	Response header	Request reference mirrored	Response ID	0
		Axis mirrored	Number of parameters	2
	1st parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	4
		Values or error values		6
		...		
	...			
	nth parameter value(s)	Format	Number of values	
		Values or error values		
		...		

Description of fields in the parameter request and response

Table 6- 18 Fields in the parameter request and response

Field	Data type	Values	Comment
Request reference	Unsigned8	0x01 ... 0xFF	
	Unique identification of the request/response pair for the master. The master changes the request reference with each new request. The slave mirrors the request reference in its response.		
Request ID	Unsigned8	0x01 0x02	Read job Write job
	Specifies the type of request. In the case of a write request, the changes are made in a volatile memory (RAM). A save operation is needed in order to transfer the modified data to the non-volatile memory (p0971, p0977).		
Response ID	Unsigned8	0x01 0x02 0x81 0x82	Read job(+) Write job(+) Read job(-) Write job(-)
	Mirrors the request ID and specifies whether request execution was positive or negative. Negative means: Cannot execute part or all of request. The error values are transferred instead of the values for each subresponse.		
Drive object number	Unsigned8	0x00 ... 0xFF	Number
	Setting for the drive object number of a drive unit with more than one drive object. Different drive objects with separate parameter number ranges can be accessed via the same DPV1 connection.		
Number of parameters	Unsigned8	0x01 ... 0x27	No. 1 ... 39 Limited by DPV1 telegram length
	Defines the number of following areas for the parameter address and/or parameter value for multi-parameter requests. The number of parameters = 1 for single requests.		

Field	Data type	Values	Comment
Attribute	Unsigned8	0x10 0x20 0x30	Value Description Text (not implemented)
	Type of parameter element accessed.		
Number of elements	Unsigned8	0x00 0x01 ... 0x75	Special function No. 1 ... 117 Limited by DPV1 telegram length
	Number of array elements accessed.		
Parameter number	Unsigned16	0x0001 ... 0xFFFF	No. 1 ... 65535
	Addresses the parameter to be accessed.		
Subindex	Unsigned16	0x0000 ... 0xFFFF	No. 0 ... 65535
	Addresses the first array element of the parameter to be accessed.		
Format	Unsigned8	0x02 0x03 0x04 0x05 0x06 0x07 0x08 Other values	Data type integer8 Data type integer16 Data type integer32 Data type unsigned8 Data type unsigned16 Data type unsigned32 Data type floating point See PROFIdrive profile V3.1
		0x40 0x41 0x42 0x43 0x44	Zero (without values as a positive subresponse of a write request) Byte Word Double word Error
	The format and number specify the adjoining space containing values in the telegram. For write access, it is preferable to specify data types according to the PROFIdrive profile. Bytes, words and double words are also possible as a substitute.		
Number of values	Unsigned8	0x00 ... 0xEA	No. 0 ... 234 Limited by DPV1 telegram length
	Specifies the number of subsequent values.		
Error values	Unsigned16	0x0000 ... 0x00FF	Meaning of error values --> see following table
	The error values in the event of a negative response. If the values make up an odd number of bytes, a zero byte is attached. This ensures the integrity of the word structure of the telegram.		
Values	Unsigned16	0x0000 ... 0x00FF	
	The values of the parameter for read or write access. If the values make up an odd number of bytes, a zero byte is attached. This ensures the integrity of the word structure of the telegram.		

Error values in parameter responses

Table 6- 19 Error values in DPV1 parameter responses

Error value	Meaning	Comment	Additional info
0x00	Illegal parameter number.	Access to a parameter that does not exist.	–
0x01	Parameter value cannot be changed.	Modification access to a parameter value that cannot be changed.	Subindex
0x02	Lower or upper value limit exceeded.	Modification access with value outside value limits.	Subindex
0x03	Invalid subindex.	Access to a subindex that does not exist.	Subindex
0x04	No array.	Access with subindex to an unindexed parameter.	–
0x05	Wrong data type.	Modification access with a value that does not match the data type of the parameter.	–
0x06	Illegal set operation (only reset allowed)	Modification access with a value not equal to 0 in a case where this is not allowed.	Subindex
0x07	Description element cannot be changed	Modification access to a description element that cannot be changed.	Subindex
0x09	No description data available	Access to a description that does not exist (the parameter value exists).	–
0x0B	No parameter change rights.	Modification access with no parameter change rights.	–
0x0F	No text array exists	Access to a text array that does not exist (the parameter value exists).	–
0x11	Request cannot be executed due to operating status.	Access is temporarily not possible for unspecified reasons.	–
0x14	Illegal value.	Modification access with a value that is within the limits but is illegal for other permanent reasons (parameter with defined individual values).	Subindex
0x15	Response too long.	The length of the present response exceeds the maximum transfer length.	–
0x16	Illegal parameter address.	Illegal or unsupported value for attribute, number of elements, parameter number, subindex or a combination of these.	–
0x17	Illegal format.	Write request: illegal or unsupported parameter data format.	–
0x18	Number of values inconsistent.	Write request: a mismatch exists between the number of values in the parameter data and the number of elements in the parameter address.	–
0x19	Drive object does not exist.	You have attempted to access a drive object that does not exist.	–
0x65	Parameter presently deactivated.	You have tried to access a parameter that, although available, does not currently perform a function (e.g., n control set and access to a V/f control parameter).	–
0x6B	Parameter %s [%s]: no write access for the enabled controller.	–	–
0x6C	Parameter %s [%s]: unit unknown.	–	–

Error value	Meaning	Comment	Additional info
0x6D	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, encoder (p0010 = 4).	–	–
0x6E	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, motor (p0010 = 3).	–	–
0x6F	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, power unit (p0010 = 2).	–	–
0x70	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in quick commissioning (p0010 = 1).	–	–
0x71	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the ready state (p0010 = 0).	–	–
0x72	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, parameter reset (p0010 = 30).	–	–
0x73	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, safety (p0010 = 95).	–	–
0x74	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, tech. application/units (p0010 = 5).	–	–
0x75	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state (p0010 not equal to 0).	–	–
0x76	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, download (p0010 = 29).	–	–
0x77	Parameter %s [%s] must not be written during download.	–	–
0x78	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, drive configuration (device: p0009 = 3).	–	–
0x79	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, define drive type (device: p0009 = 2).	–	–
0x7A	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, database configuration (device: p0009 = 4).	–	–
0x7B	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device configuration (device: p0009 = 1).	–	–

Error value	Meaning	Comment	Additional info
0x7C	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device download (device: p0009 = 29).	–	–
0x7D	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device parameter reset (device: p0009 = 30).	–	–
0x7E	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device ready (device: p0009 = 0).	–	–
0x7F	Parameter %s [%s]: write access only in the commissioning state, device (device: p0009 mot 0).	–	–
0x81	Parameter %s [%s] must not be written during download.	–	–
0x82	Transfer of the control authority is inhibited by BI: p0806.	–	–
0x83	Parameter %s [%s]: requested BICO interconnection not possible.	BICO output does not supply float values, however the BICO input requires float values.	–
0x84	Parameter %s [%s]: parameter change inhibited (refer to p0300, p0400, p0922)	–	–
0x85	Parameter %s [%s]: access method not defined.	–	–
0xC8	Below currently valid limit.	Modification request for a value that, although within "absolute" limits, is below the currently valid lower limit.	–
0xC9	Above currently valid limit.	Modification request for a value that, although within "absolute" limits, is above the currently valid upper limit (e.g., specified by the actual converter rating).	–
0xCC	Write access not permitted.	Write access is not permitted because an access code is not available.	–

6.7.4.2 Determining the drive object numbers

Further information about the drive system (e.g., drive object numbers) can be determined as follows from parameters p0101, r0102 and p0107/r0107:

1. The value of parameter r0102 ("Number of drive objects") is read via a read request from drive object 1.

   The drive object with drive object number 1 is the Control Unit (CU), which is always present in every drive system, as a minimum.

2. Depending on the result of the initial read request, further read requests to drive object 1 are used to read the indices of parameter p0101 ("Drive object numbers"), as specified by parameter r0102.

   Example:
   If the number of drive objects is "5", the values of indices 0 to 4 of parameter p0101 are read. The relevant indices can also be read at once. The relevant indices can also be read at once.

3. Following this, parameter r0107/p0107 ("Drive object type") is read for each drive object (indicated by the drive object number).

   Depending on the drive object, parameter 107 can be either an adjustable parameter or a display parameter.

   The value in parameter r0107/p0107 indicates the drive object type. The coding for the drive object type is specified in the parameter list.

6.7.4.3 Example 1: Reading parameters

Preconditions

- The PROFIdrive controller has been commissioned and is fully operational.
- PROFIdrive communication between the controller and the device is operational.
- The controller can read and write data sets in conformance with PROFINET/PROFIBUS.

Task description

Following the occurrence of at least one fault (STW1.3 = "1") on drive 2 (also drive object number 2), the active fault codes are to be read from the fault buffer r0945[0] ... r0945[7].

The request is to be handled using a request and response data block.

Basic procedure

1. Create a request to read the parameters.
2. Invoke request.
3. Evaluate response.

Create request

Table 6- 20 Parameter request

Parameter request			Offset
Request header	Request reference = 25 hex	Request ID = 01 hex	0 + 1
	Axis = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 01 hex	2 + 3
Parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 08 hex	4 + 5
	Parameter no. = 945 dec		6
	Subindex = 0 dec		8

Information about the parameter request:

- Request reference:
  The value is selected at random from the valid value range. The request reference establishes the relationship between request and response.
- Request identifier:
  01 hex → This identifier is required for a read request.
- Axis:
  02 hex → Drive 2, fault buffer with drive- and device-specific faults
- Number of parameters:
  01 hex → One parameter is read.
- Attribute:
  10 hex → The parameter values are read.
- Number of elements:
  08 hex → The actual fault incident with eight faults is to be read.
- Parameter number:
  945 dec → p0945 (fault code) is read.
- Subindex:
  0 dec → Reading starts at index 0.

2. Initiate parameter request

Invoke request.

If STW1.3 = "1" → Initiate parameter request

Evaluate response

Table 6- 21 Parameter response

Parameter response			Offset
Response header	Request reference mirrored = 25 hex	Response ID = 01 hex	0 + 1
	Axis mirrored = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 01 hex	2 + 3
Parameter value	Format = 06 hex	Number of values = 08 hex	4 + 5
	1st value = 1355 dec		6
	2nd value = 0 dec		8
	...		...
	8th value = 0 dec		20

Information about the parameter response:

- Request reference mirrored:
  This response belongs to the request with request reference 25.
- Response identifier:
  01 hex → Read request positive, values available starting from 1st value
- Request reference mirrored:
  The values correspond to the values from the request.
- Format:
  06 hex → Parameter values are in the unsigned16 format.
- Number of values:
  08 hex → 8 parameter values are available.
- 1st value... 8th value:
  A fault is only entered in the 1st value of the fault buffer for drive 2.

6.7.4.4 Example 2: Writing parameters (multi-parameter request)

Preconditions

- The PROFIdrive controller has been commissioned and is fully operational.
- PROFIdrive communication between the controller and the device is operational.
- The controller can read and write data sets in conformance with PROFINET/PROFIBUS.

Special requirements for this example:

- Control type: Vector control (with extended setpoint channel)

Task description

Jog 1 and 2 are to be set up for drive 2 (also drive object number 2) via the input terminals of the Control Unit. A parameter request is to be used to write the corresponding parameters as follows:

- BI: p1055 = r0722.4 — Jog bit 0
- BI: p1056 = r0722.5 — Jog bit 1
- p1058 = 300 rpm — Jog 1 speed setpoint
- p1059 = 600 rpm — Jog 2 speed setpoint

The request is to be handled using a request and response data block.

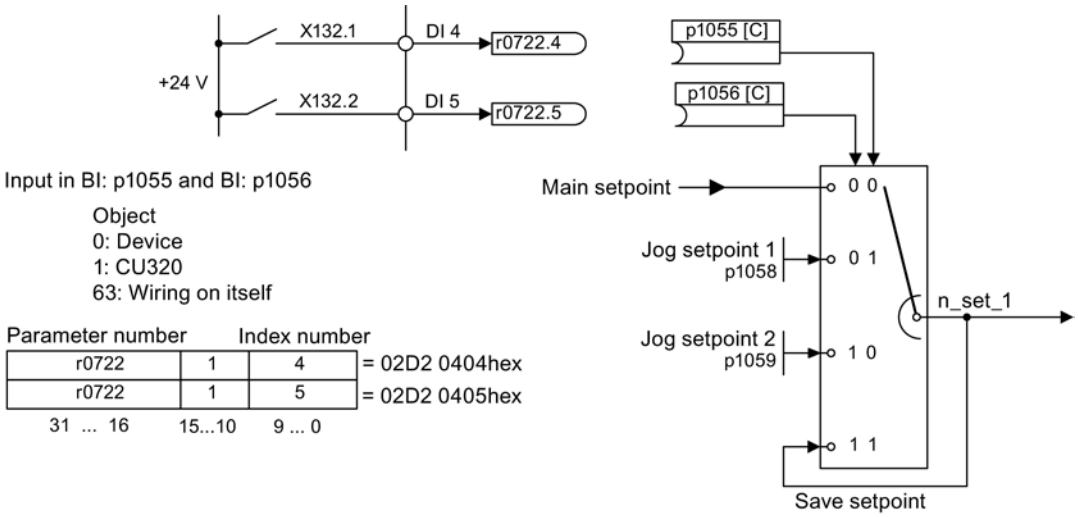


Figure 6-35 Task description for multi-parameter request (example)

Basic procedure

1. Create a request to write the parameters.
2. Invoke request.
3. Evaluate response.

Create request

Table 6- 22 Parameter request

Parameter request			Offset
Request header	Request reference = 40 hex	Request ID = 02 hex	0 + 1
	Axis = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 04 hex	2 + 3
1st parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	4 + 5
	Parameter no. = 1055 dec		6
	Subindex = 0 dec		8
2nd parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	10 + 11
	Parameter no. = 1056 dec		12
	Subindex = 0 dec		14
3rd parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	16 + 17
	Parameter no. = 1058 dec		18
	Subindex = 0 dec		20
4th parameter address	Attribute = 10 hex	Number of elements = 01 hex	22 + 23
	Parameter no. = 1059 dec		24
	Subindex = 0 dec		26
1st parameter value(s)	Format = 07 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	28 + 29
	Value = 02D2 hex		30
	Value = 0404 hex		32
2nd parameter value(s)	Format = 07 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	34 + 35
	Value = 02D2 hex		36
	Value = 0405 hex		38
3rd parameter value(s)	Format = 08 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	40 + 41
	Value = 4396 hex		42
	Value = 0000 hex		44
4th parameter value(s)	Format = 08 hex	Number of values = 01 hex	46 + 47
	Value = 4416 hex		48
	Value = 0000 hex		50

Information about the parameter request:

- Request reference:
  The value is selected at random from the valid value range. The request reference establishes the relationship between request and response.
- Request identifier:
  02 hex → This identifier is required for a write request.
- Axis:
  02 hex → The parameters are written to drive 2.
- Number of parameters:
  04 hex → The multi-parameter request comprises 4 individual parameter requests.

1st parameter address ... 4th parameter address

- Attribute:
  10 hex → The parameter values are to be written.
- Number of elements:
  01 hex → 1 array element is written.
- Parameter number:
  Specifies the number of the parameter to be written (p1055, p1056, p1058, p1059).
- Subindex:
  0 dec → ID of the first array element.

1st parameter value ... 4th parameter value

- Format:
  07 hex → data type unsigned32
  08 hex → data type floating-point
- Number of values:
  01 hex → A value is written to each parameter in the specified format.
- Value:
  BICO input parameter: Enter signal source:
  Adjustable parameter: enter value

Invoke request

Evaluate response

Table 6- 23 Parameter response

Parameter response			Offset
Response header	Request reference mirrored = 40 hex	Response ID = 02 hex	0
	Axis mirrored = 02 hex	Number of parameters = 04 hex	2

Information about the parameter response:

- Request reference mirrored:
  This response belongs to the request with request reference 40.
- Request identifier:
  02 hex → Write request positive
- Axis mirrored:
  02 hex → The value matches the value from the request.
- Number of parameters:
  04 hex → The value matches the value from the request.

6.7.5 Further information about PROFIdrive communication

Further information about PROFIdrive communication

For more information about PROFIdrive communication, refer to "PROFIdrive communication" in the accompanying "SINAMICS S120 Function Manual".

6.8 Communication via PROFIBUS DP

6.8.1 PROFIBUS connection

Positions of PROFIBUS connection, address switch, and diagnostics LED

The PROFIBUS connection, address switch, and diagnostics LED are located on the Control Unit CU320-2 DP.

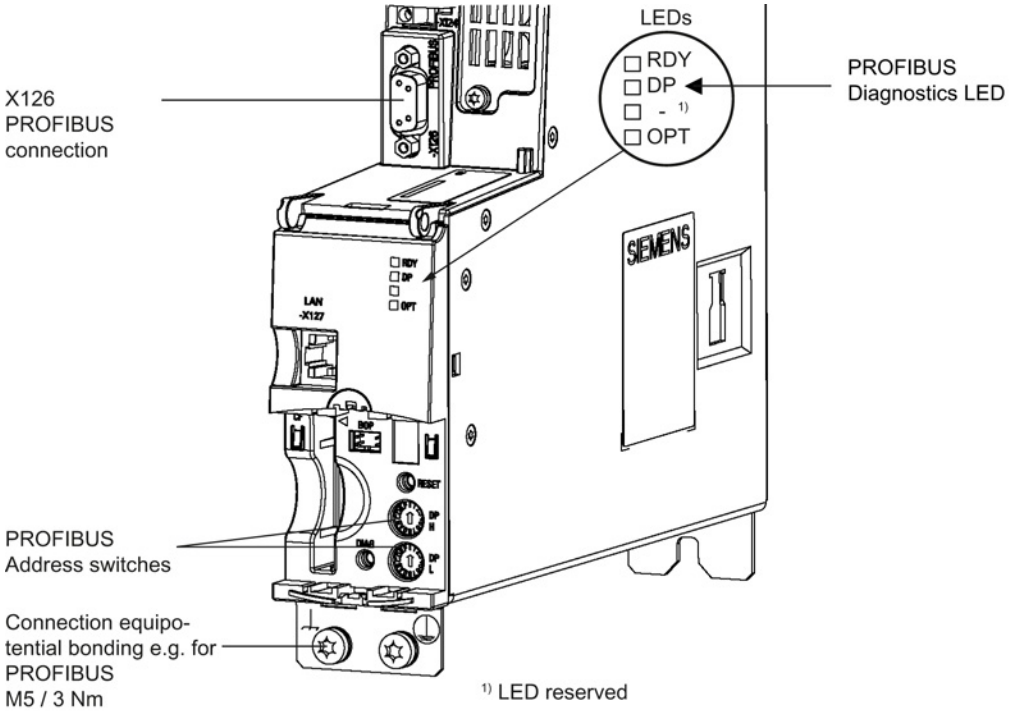
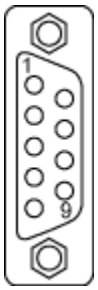


Figure 6-36 View of the Control Unit with PROFIBUS interface

PROFIBUS connection

The PROFIBUS is connected by means of a 9-pin SUB D socket (X126). The connections are electrically isolated.

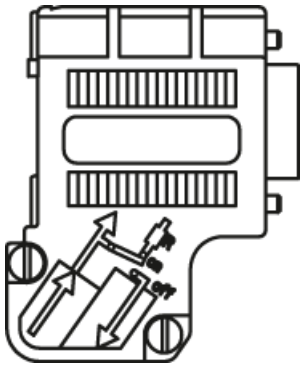
Table 6- 24 X126 - PROFIBUS connection

	Pin	Signal name	Meaning	Range
	1	SHIELD	Ground connection	
	2	M24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice, ground	0 V
	3	RxD/TxD-P	Receive / transmit data P (B/B')	RS485
	4	CNTR-P	Control signal	TTL
	5	DGND	PROFIBUS data reference potential (C/C')	
	6	VP	Supply voltage plus	5 V ± 10%
	7	P24_SERV	Power supply for teleservice P, + (24 V)	24 V (20.4 ... 28.8 V)
	8	RxD/TxD-N	Receive / transmit data N (A/A')	RS485
	9	-	Not assigned	

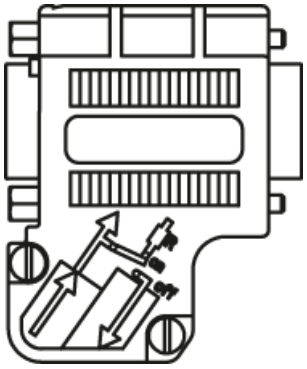
Connectors

The cables must be connected via PROFIBUS connectors as they contain the necessary terminating resistors.

The figure below shows suitable PROFIBUS connectors with/without a PG/PC connector.



PROFIBUS connector
without PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BA42-0XA0



PROFIBUS connector
with PG/PC connection
6ES7972-0BB42-0XA0

Bus terminating resistor

The bus terminating resistor must be switched on or off depending on its position in the bus, otherwise the data will not be transmitted properly.

The terminating resistors for the first and last nodes in a line must be switched on; the resistors must be switched off at all other connectors.

The cable shield must be connected at both ends over large-surface area contacts.

Note

Connector type

Depending on the connector type, the correct assignment of the connector must be ensured (IN/OUT) in conjunction with the terminating resistor.

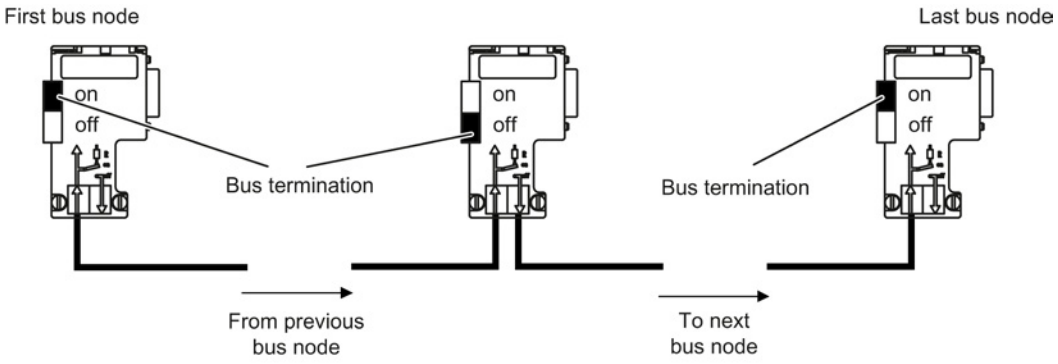


Figure 6-37 Position of the bus terminating resistors

Cable routing

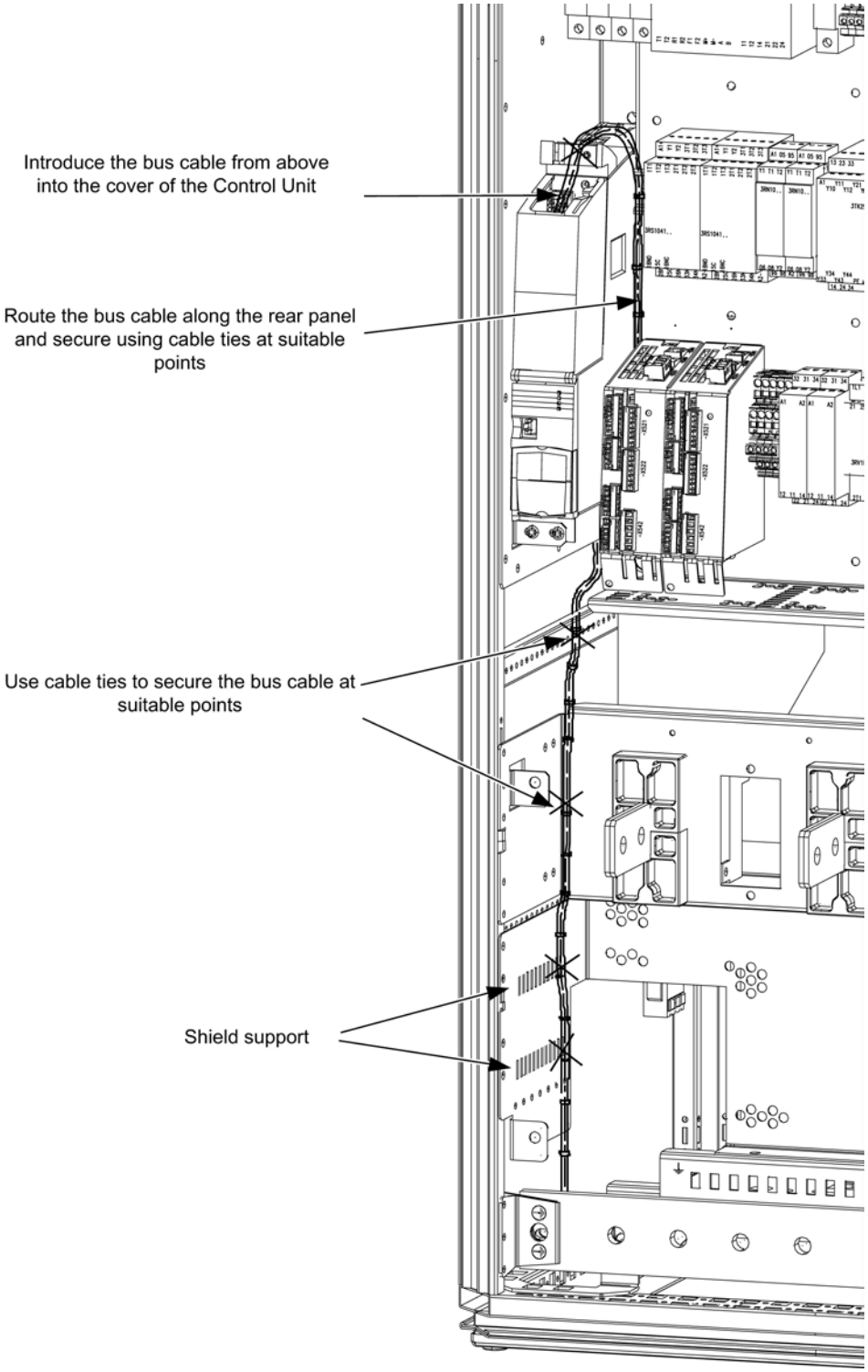


Figure 6-38 Cable routing for type A cabinets

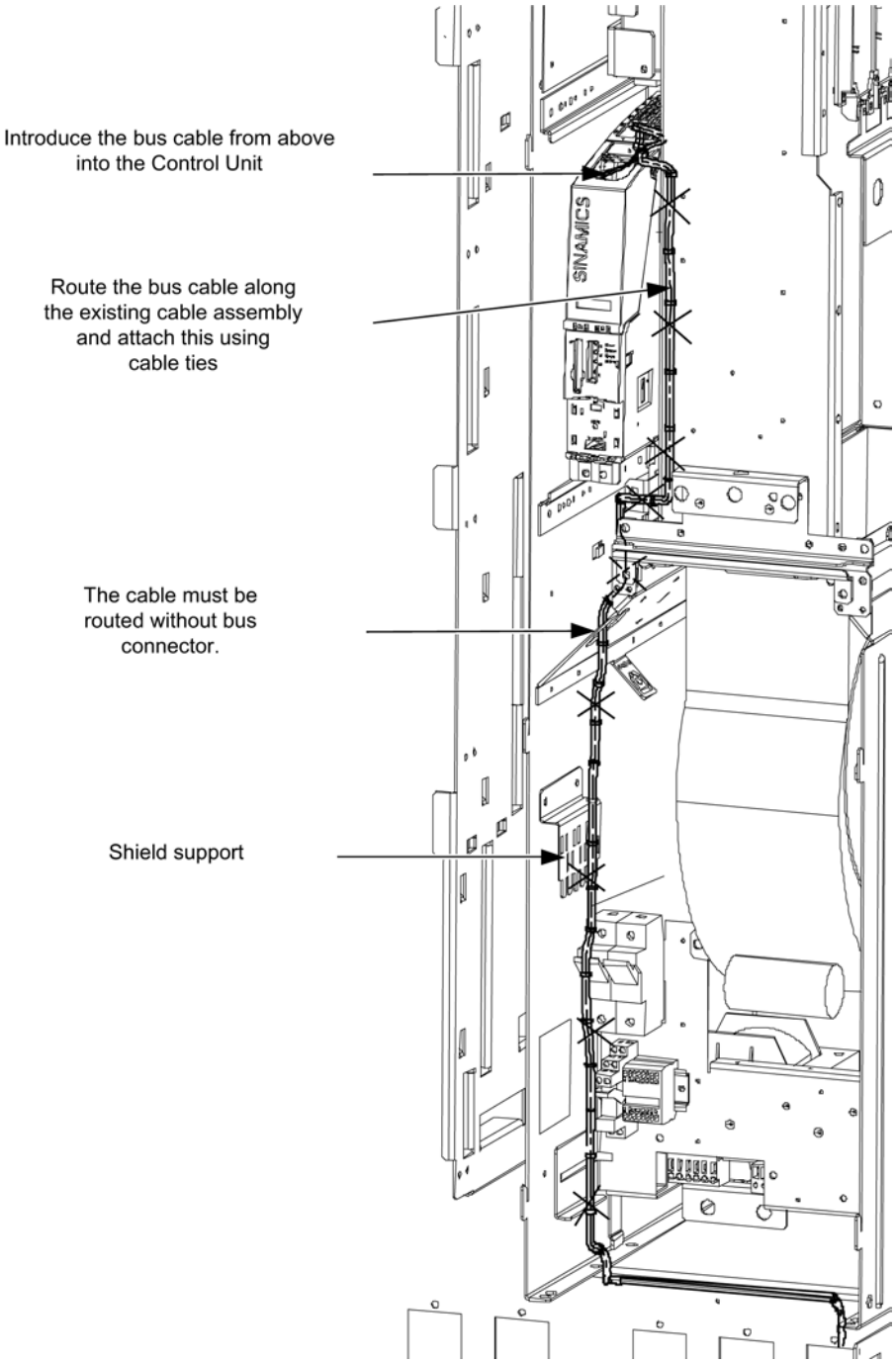


Figure 6-39 Cable routing for type C cabinets

6.8.2 Control via PROFIBUS

Diagnostics LED "COM (PROFIdrive)"

The PROFIBUS diagnostics LED is located on the front of the Control Unit. Its states are described in the following table.

Table 6- 25 Description of the "COM" LED

Color	State	Description
-----	OFF	Cyclic communication is not (yet) running. Note: PROFIdrive is ready for communication when the Control Unit is ready for operation (see RDY LED).
Green	Continuous light	Cyclic communication is taking place.
Green	0.5 Hz flashing light	Cyclic communication has still not been fully established. Possible causes: - The controller is not transmitting any setpoints. - In isochronous mode, the controller did not send a Global Control or it sent a defective Global Control (GC).
Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	PROFIBUS master is sending incorrect parameter assignment/configuration
Red	2 Hz flashing light	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established.

Setting the PROFIBUS Address

There are two ways to set the PROFIBUS address:

1. Via p0918
   - To set the bus address for a PROFIBUS node using STARTER, first set the rotary code switches to 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$).
   - Then use parameter p0918 to set the address to a value between 1 and 126.
2. Via the PROFIBUS address switches on the Control Unit
   - The address is set manually to values between 1 and 126 using the rotary coding switches. In this case, p0918 is only used to read the address.

Note

The rotary coding switches used to set the PROFIBUS address are located beneath the cover.

Note

Address 126 is used for commissioning. Permitted PROFIBUS addresses are 1 ... 126.

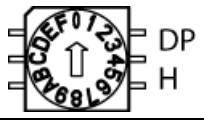
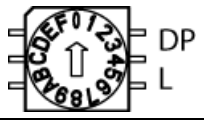
When several Control Units are connected to a PROFIBUS line, you set the addresses differently than for the factory setting. Each PROFIBUS address in a PROFIBUS line can only be assigned once. Either set the PROFIBUS address in absolute terms using the rotary coding switches – or selectively in parameter p0918. Each change made to the bus address is not effective until POWER ON.

The currently set address of the rotary coding switch is displayed in parameter r2057.

PROFIBUS address switches

The PROFIBUS address is set as a hexadecimal value via two rotary coding switches. Values between 0_{dec} (00_{hex}) and 127_{dec} ($7F_{hex}$) can be set as the address. The upper rotary coding switch (H) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^1 and the lower rotary coding switch (L) is used to set the hexadecimal value for 16^0.

Table 6- 26 PROFIBUS address switches

Rotary coding switches	Significance	Examples		
		21_{dec}	**35_{dec}**	**126_{dec}**
		15_{hex}	**23_{hex}**	**$7E_{hex}$**
	$16^1 = 16$	1	2	7
	$16^0 = 1$	5	3	E

The factory setting for the rotary coding switches is 0_{dec} (00_{hex}).

Setting the PROFIBUS ID number

The PROFIBUS Ident Number (PNO-ID) can be set using p2042.

SINAMICS can be operated on PROFIBUS with various identities. This allows a PROFIBUS GSD that is independent of the device to be used (e.g. PROFIdrive VIK-NAMUR with Ident Number 3AA0 hex).

- 0: SINAMICS S/G
- 1: VIK-NAMUR

New settings do not become active until after POWER ON, reset, or download.

Note

Totally Integrated Automation

The advantages of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA) can only be utilized when selecting "0".

6.8.3 Monitoring: Telegram failure

Description

In monitoring for telegram failure, two cases are possible:

- Telegram failure with a bus fault

  After a telegram failure and the additional monitoring time has elapsed (p2047), bit r2043.0 is set to "1" and alarm A01920 is output. Binector output r2043.0 can be used for an emergency stop, for example.

  Once the delay time (p2044) has elapsed, fault F01910 is output.
  Fault F01910 triggers fault response OFF2 (pulse inhibit) for the infeed and OFF3 (quick stop) in the drive.
  If no OFF response is to be triggered, the fault response can be reparameterized accordingly.

  Fault F01910 can be acknowledged immediately. The drive can then be operated even without PROFIBUS.

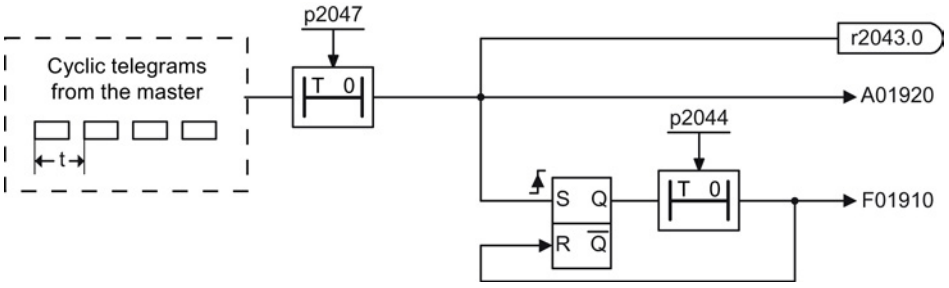


Figure 6-40 Monitoring telegram failure with a bus fault

- Telegram failure with a CPU stop

  After telegram failure, bit r2043.0 is set to "1." Binector output r2043.0 can be used for an emergency stop, for example.

  Once the delay time (p2044) has elapsed, fault F01910 is output.
  Fault F01910 triggers fault response OFF2 (pulse inhibit) for the infeed and OFF3 (quick stop) in the drive.
  If no OFF response is to be triggered, the fault response can be reparameterized accordingly.

  Fault F01910 can be acknowledged immediately. The drive can then be operated even without PROFIBUS.

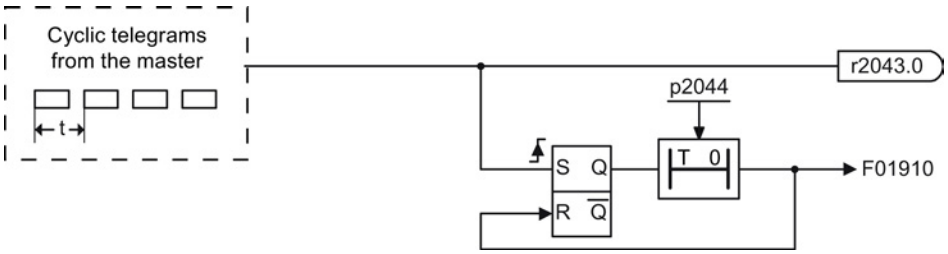


Figure 6-41 Monitoring telegram failure for a CPU stop

6.8.4 Further information about communication via PROFIBUS DP

Further information about communication via PROFIBUS DP

For more information about communication via PROFIBUS DP, refer to "Communication via PROFIBUS DP" in the accompanying "SINAMICS S120 Function Manual".

6.9 Communication via PROFINET IO

6.9.1 Activating online operation: STARTER via PROFINET IO

Description

Online operation with PROFINET IO is implemented using TCP/IP.

Prerequisites

- STARTER Version 4.2 or higher
- Control unit CU320-2 PN or CBE20

STARTER via PROFINET IO (example)

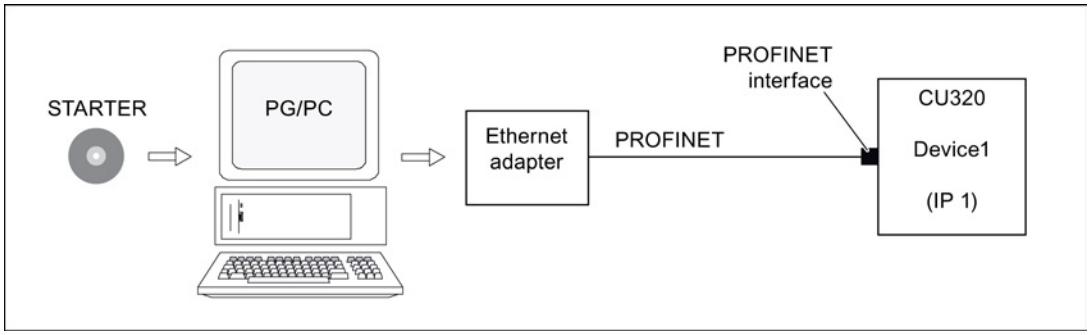


Figure 6-42 STARTER via PROFINET (example)

Procedure, establishing online operation with PROFINET

1. Set the IP address in Windows XP

   The PC/PG is referred here to a fixed, free IP address.
2. Settings in STARTER
3. Assigning the IP address and the name

   The PROFINET interface must be "baptized" so that the STARTER can establish communication.
4. Select online operation in STARTER.

Set the IP address in Windows XP

On the desktop, right-click on "Network environment" -> Properties -> double-click on Network card and choose -> Properties -> Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) -> Properties -> Enter the freely-assignable addresses.

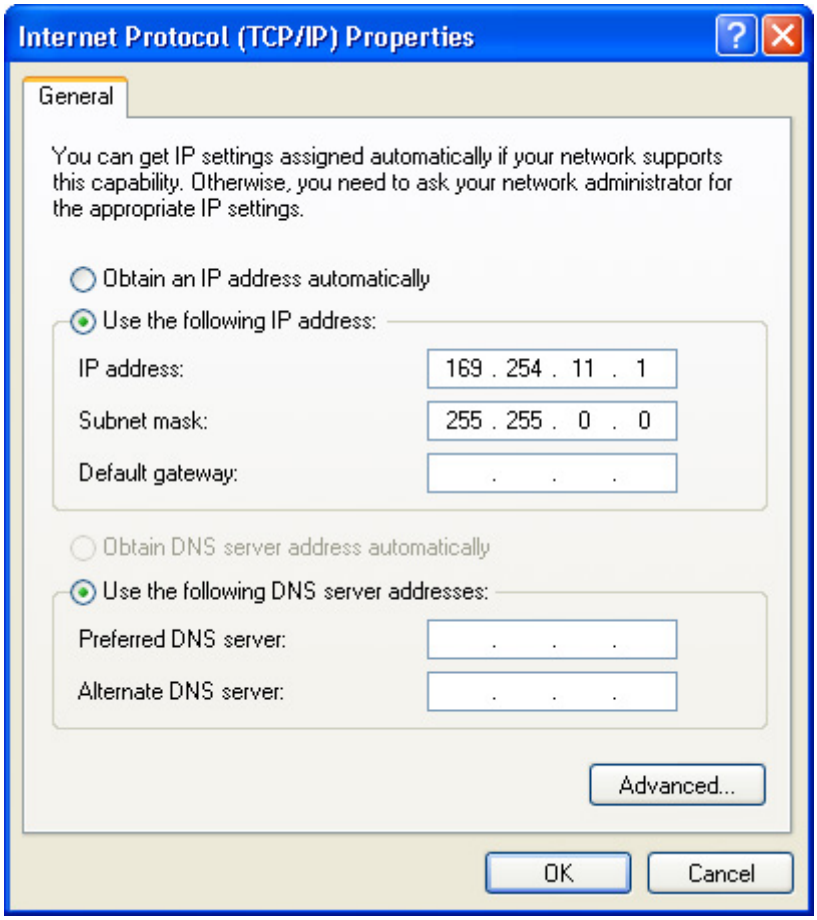


Figure 6-43 Properties of the Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)

Settings in STARTER

The following settings are required in STARTER for communication via PROFINET:

- Extras -> Set PG/PC interface

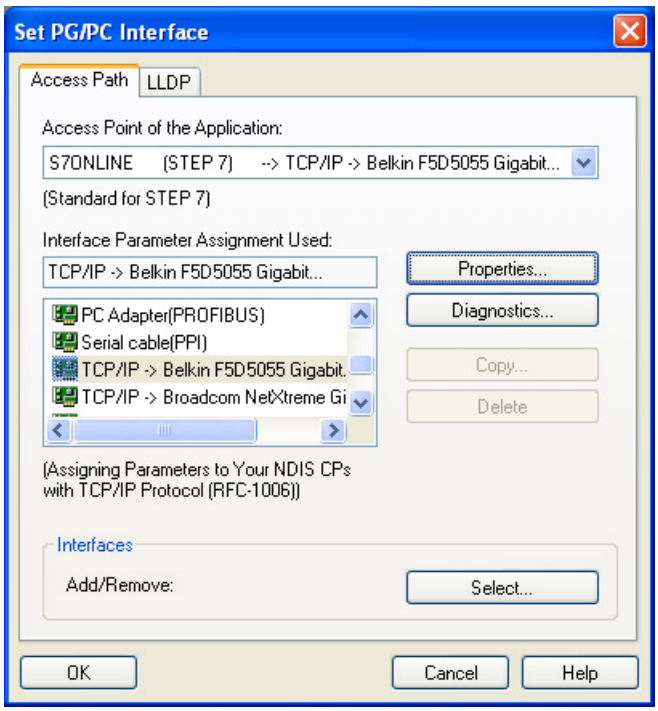


Figure 6-44 Set the PG/PC interface

- Right-click Drive unit -> Target device -> Online access -> Module address

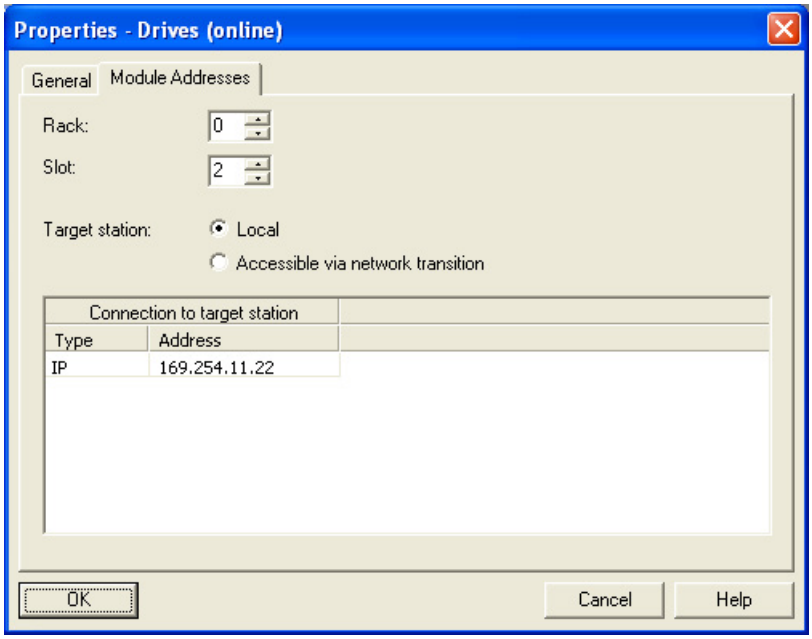


Figure 6-45 Activating online operation

Assigning the IP address and the name

Note

Naming devices

ST (Structured Text) conventions must be satisfied for the name assignment of IO devices in PROFINET (SINAMICS components). The names must be unique within PROFINET.
The characters "-" and "." are not permitted in the name of an IO device.

"Accessible nodes" function

Use the STARTER to assign an IP address and a name to the PROFINET interface.

- Connect the direct Ethernet cable from the PG/PC to the PROFINET interface.
- Switch on the Control Unit.
- Open STARTER.
- A search is performed for available nodes in PROFINET via Project -> Accessible nodes or the "Accessible nodes" button.
- The SINAMICS drive object is detected and displayed as a bus node with IP address 0.0.0.0 and without a name.
- Mark the bus node entry and select the displayed menu item "Edit Ethernet node" with the right mouse button.
- In the following "Edit Ethernet node" screen, enter the device name for the PROFINET interface and click the "Assign name" button. Enter the IP address (e.g. 169.254.11.22) in the IP configuration and specify the subnet screen (e.g. 255.255.0.0). Then click the "Assign IP configuration" button. Close the screen.
- The "Update (F5)" button displays the IP address and name in the entry for the bus node. If not, close the "Accessible nodes" screen and perform another search for accessible nodes.
- If the PROFINET interface is displayed as bus node, mark the entry and click the "Accept" button.
- The SINAMICS drive is displayed as a drive object in the project tree.
- Further configurations can be performed for the drive object.
- Click "Connect to target system" and load the project to the Control Unit's memory card with Target system -> Load -> To target device.

Note

Storage location of the IP address

The IP address and device name for the Control Unit are stored on the memory card (non-volatile).

6.9.2 General information about PROFINET IO

6.9.2.1 General information about PROFINET IO for SINAMICS

General information

PROFINET IO is an open Industrial Ethernet standard for a wide range of production and process automation applications. PROFINET IO is based on Industrial Ethernet and observes TCP/IP and IT standards.

Deterministic signal processing in real time is important in industrial networks. PROFINET IO satisfies these requirements.

International standard IEC 61158 ensures open, multi-vendor systems

PROFINET IO is optimized for high-speed, time-critical data communication at field level.

PROFINET IO

Within the context of Totally Integrated Automation (TIA), PROFINET IO is the systematic development of the following systems:

- PROFIBUS DP, the established fieldbus,
- Industrial Ethernet, the communications bus for the cell level.

Experience gained from both systems was integrated into PROFINET IO. As an Ethernet-based automation standard defined by PROFIBUS International (PROFIBUS user organization), PROFINET IO is a manufacturer-independent communication and engineering model.

PROFINET IO defines every aspect of the data exchange between IO controllers (devices with so-called "master functionality" and the IO devices (those with so-called "slave functionality") as well as parameterization and diagnostic processes. A PROFINET IO system is configured in virtually the same way as for PROFIBUS.

A PROFINET IO system is made up of the following devices:

- The IO controller controls automation tasks.
- An IO Device is controlled and monitored by an IO controller. An IO device can consist of several modules and submodules.
- An IO Supervisor is an engineering tool, typically based on a PC, with which the individual IO devices (drive unit) are parameterized and diagnosed.

IO devices: Drive units with PROFINET interface

- SINAMICS G150 with CU320-2 DP and inserted CBE20
- SINAMICS G150 with CU320-2 PN

With SINAMICS G150 and CBE20 or with CU320-2 PN, communication via PROFINET IO with RT is possible.

Note

CU320-2 DP and inserted CBE20

The cyclic process data channel for PROFIBUS DP is initially deactivated for a CU320-2 DP and inserted CBE20. However, it can be reactivated with parameter p8839 = 1 at any time (see "Parallel operation of communication interfaces").

References

Note

References

PROFINET for drive technology is standardized and described in the following document:

PROFIBUS profile PROFIdrive – Profile Drive Technology

Version V4.1, May 2006,

PROFIBUS User Organization e. V.

Haid-und-Neu-Straße 7,

D-76131 Karlsruhe

http://www.profibus.com,

Order Number 3.172, spec. Chp. 6

- IEC 61800-7

6.9.2.2 Real-time (RT) and isochronous real-time (IRT) communication

Real-time communication

When communication takes place via TCP/IP, the resultant transmission times may be too long and not defined to meet the production automation requirements. When communicating time-critical IO user data, PROFINET IO therefore uses its own real-time channel, rather than TCP/IP.

Real time means that a system processes external events over a defined period.

Determinism

Determinism means that a system will react in a predictable ("deterministic") manner. With PROFINET IO with IRT, it is possible to precisely determine (predict) transmission times.

PROFINET IO with RT (Real Time)

Real-time data is treated with a higher priority than TCP(UDP)/IP data. Transmission of time-critical data takes place at guaranteed time intervals. RT communication provides the basis for data exchange with PROFINET IO.

PROFINET IO with IRT (Isochronous Real Time)

Isochronous real time: Real time property of PROFINET IO where IRT telegrams are transferred deterministically via planned communication paths in a defined sequence to achieve the best possible synchronism and performance between the IO controller and IO device (drive unit). IRT is also known as time-scheduled communication whereby knowledge about the network structure (topology) is utilized. IRT requires special network components that support planned data transfer.

SINAMICS cycle times of minimum 250 µs (onboard) / 500 µs (CBE20) and a jitter accuracy of less than 1 µs can be achieved when this transmission method is implemented.

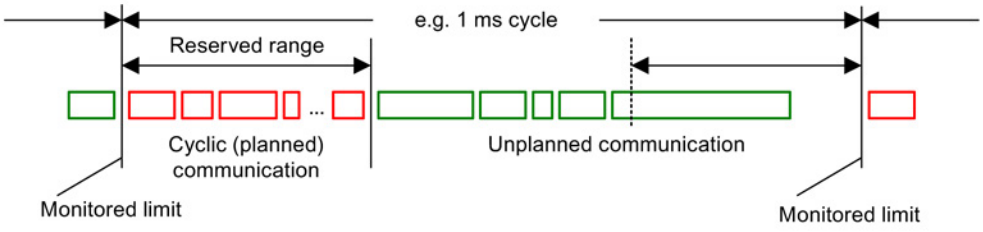


Figure 6-46 Bandwidth distribution/reservation, PROFINET IO

6.9.2.3 Addresses

MAC address

Every Ethernet and PROFINET interface is assigned a worldwide unique device identifier in the factory. This 6-byte long device identifier is the MAC address. The MAC address is divided up as follows:

- 3 bytes for the manufacturer's ID
- 3 bytes device identifier (consecutive number).

The MAC address is printed on a label (CBE20) or specified on the rating plate (CU320-2 PN), e.g.: 08-00-06-6B-80-C0.

The Control Unit CU320-2 PN has two onboard interfaces:

- One Ethernet interface
- A PROFINET interface with two ports

The two MAC addresses of the Ethernet and PROFINET interfaces are stamped on the rating plate.

IP address

The TCP/IP protocol is a prerequisite for establishing a connection and parameterization. To allow a PROFINET device to be addressed as a node on Industrial Ethernet, this device also requires an IP address that is unique within the network. The IP address is made up of 4 decimal numbers with a range of values from 0 through 255. The decimal numbers are separated by a period. The IP address comprises:

- the address of the node/participant (also called host or network node)
- the address of the (sub) network.

IP address assignment

The IP addresses of IO devices can be assigned by the IO controller and always have the same sub-network mask as the IO controller. In this case, the IP address is not stored permanently. The IP address entry is lost after POWER ON/OFF. The IP address can be assigned retentively via the STARTER function "Accessible nodes".

This function can also be performed with HW Config of STEP 7. Here, the function is called "Edit Ethernet node."

Note

IP addresses of the onboard interfaces

It is not permissible that the IP address band of the Ethernet interface and the PROFINET interface are the same. The factory setting of the IP address of the Ethernet interface X127 is 169.254.11.22; the subnet mask is 255.255.0.0.

Note

Part of a company network

If the network is part of an existing Ethernet company network, obtain the information (IP address) from your network administrator.

Device name (NameOfStation)

When it is shipped, an IO device does not have a device name. An IO device can only be addressed by an IO controller, for example, for the transfer of project engineering data (including the IP address) during startup or for user data exchange in cyclic operation, after it has been assigned a device name with the IO supervisor.

Note

Save device name retentively

The device name must be stored retentively using either STARTER or with the hardware Config of STEP 7.

Note

Address data for ports

The address data for the internal PROFINET ports X150 P1 and P2 in STARTER can be entered into the expert list using parameters p8920, p8921, p8922 and p8923.

The address data for the ports of the CBE20 can be entered in STARTER into the expert list using parameters p8940, p8941, p8942 and p8943.

Replacing Control Unit (IO device)

If the IP address and device name are stored in non-volatile memory, this data is also forwarded with the memory card of the Control Unit. The memory card allows module exchange without an IO supervisor when a fault occurs in a PROFINET device.

If a complete Control Unit needs to be replaced due to a device or module defect, the new Control Unit automatically parameterizes and configures using the data on the memory card. Following this, cyclic exchange of user data is restarted.

6.9.2.4 Data transmission

Properties

The PROFINET interface on a drive unit supports the simultaneous operation of:

- IRT – isochronous real-time Ethernet
- RT – real-time Ethernet
- Standard Ethernet services (TCP/IP, LLDP, UDP and DCP)

PROFIdrive telegram for cyclic data transmission, acyclic services

Telegrams to send and receive process data are available for each drive object of a drive unit with cyclic process data exchange.
In addition to cyclic data transfer, acyclic services can also be used for parameterizing and configuring the drive. These acyclic services can be utilized by the IO supervisor or IO controller.

Sequence of drive objects in the telegram

On the drive side, the sequence of drive objects in the telegram is displayed via a list in p0978[0...24] where it can also be changed.

You can use the STARTER commissioning tool to display the sequence of drive objects for a commissioned drive system in the online mode under "Drive unit" > "Communication" > "Telegram configuration".

When you create the configuration on the controller side (e.g. HWConfig), the process-data-capable drive objects for the application are added to the telegram in this sequence.

Note

The order of the drive objects

The sequence of drive objects in HW Config must be the same as that in the drive (p0978).

Drive objects after the first zero in p0978 must not be configured in the HW Config.

The structure of the telegram depends on the drive objects taken into account during configuration. Configurations that do not take into account all of the drive objects in the drive system are permitted.

6.9.2.5 Communication channels

PROFINET connection channels

- A Control Unit has an integrated Ethernet interface (X127).
- The Control Unit CU320-2 PN has a PROFINET interface (X150) with two ports onboard: P1 and P2
- A Control Unit CU320-2 PN can simultaneously setup 8 communication connections via the integrated PROFINET interfaces.

Control Unit with CBE20

The CBE20 Communication Board can be optionally inserted into Control Unit CU320-2 PN or CU320-2 DP:

- The CBE20 Communication Board is a PROFINET switch with 4 additional PROFINET ports.

Note

PROFINET routing

Routing is neither possible between the onboard interfaces X127 and X150 of the CU320-2 PN, nor between the onboard interfaces of the CU320-2 PN and an inserted CBE20.

6.9.3 PROFIenergy

6.9.3.1 Description

PROFIenergy is an energy management system for production plants, based on the PROFINET communication protocol. The functionality is certified in the PROFIenergy profile of the PNO. Drive units which have PROFIenergy functionality, can be certified in an approved laboratory. Certified devices support the PROFIenergy commands and respond accordingly to the requirements and operating states.

SINAMICS supports PROFIenergy profile V1.1. PROFIenergy commands are transferred from the controller to the drive with PROFINET data sets in acyclic operation. The PROFIenergy commands are transferred using the PROFINET data set 0x80A0.

The following table provides an overview of the PROFIenergy functionality and the support of the various SINAMICS devices:

Functions		SINAMICS support								
		S120 SERVO	S120 VECTOR	S150	G110M	G120D	G120x (otherwise not G120D)	G130	G150	ET200 pro FC-2
Control commands		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Query commands		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Measured values	ID 34	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	ID 166	–	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	ID 200	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Measured value tap		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PROFIenergy energy-saving mode 1	Shutdown digital outputs	–	–	–	–	X	–	–	–	–
	Shutdown encoder	–	–	–	–	X	–	–	–	–
PROFIenergy energy-saving mode 2	Switch-on interlocking	X	X	X	X	–	X	X	X	X
Inhibit PROFIenergy		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
PROFIenergy energy-saving mode in the PROFIdrive state S4		–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X	X

Figure 6-47 PROFIenergy functions

6.9.3.2 Tasks of PROFIenergy

PROFIenergy is a data interface based on PROFINET. It allows loads to be shut down during non-operational periods in a controlled fashion, and irrespective of the manufacturer and device. Consequently, the process should be given only the energy it actually requires. The majority of the energy is saved by the process, the PROFINET device itself contributes only a few watts to the saving potential.

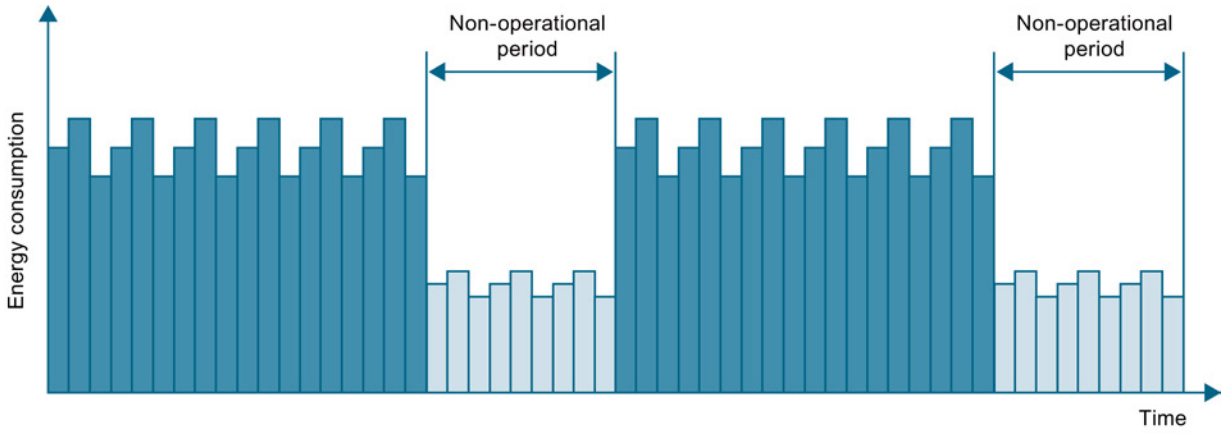


Figure 6-48 Energy saving during pauses with PROFIenergy

The following objectives are reached in detail by temporarily shutting down or stopping unused drives and equipment:

- Lower energy costs.
- Reduction of thermal emissions.
- Longer service life by reducing the effective operating times.
- The drive units provide standardized consumption data for analysis.
- The PROFIenergy state of the participating devices is displayed.
- The PROFIenergy state is available with BICO interconnections for further processing, e.g. to shutdown secondary systems that are not required.

Basics

The PROFINET devices and the power modules are shut down using special commands in the user program of the PROFINET IO controller. No additional hardware is required; the PROFIenergy commands are interpreted directly by the PROFINET devices.

6.9.3.3 PROFIenergy - properties of the drive system

SINAMICS drive system devices meet the following requirements:

- The devices are certified for PROFIenergy.
- The devices support PROFIenergy function unit, Class 3.
- The devices support PROFIenergy energy-saving mode 2.

6.9.3.4 PROFIenergy commands

Principle of operation

At the start and end of pauses, the plant operator activates or deactivates the pause function of the plant after which the IO controller sends the PROFIenergy "START_Pause" / "END_Pause" command to the PROFINET devices. The device then interprets the content of the PROFIenergy command and switches off or on again.

Further PROFIenergy functions can be used to fetch device information during the pauses. The user can use them to transfer the "START_Pause" / "END_Pause" command in time.

PROFIenergy control commands

Control commands	Description
START_Pause	Switches from the operating state to the energy-saving mode depending on the pause duration. Switches from the energy-saving mode to the operating state depending on the pause duration.
START_Pause_with_time_response	Switches from the operating state to the energy-saving mode and also specifies the transition times in the command response.
END_Pause	Switches from the energy-saving mode to the operating state. Cancels a switch from the operating state to the energy-saving mode.

PROFIenergy query commands

Query commands	Description
List_Energy_Saving_Modes	Determines all supported energy-saving modes.
Get_Mode	Determines the energy-saving mode.
PEM_Status	Determines the current PROFIenergy status.
PEM_Status_with_CTTO	Determines the current PROFIenergy status, such as the PEM status and together with the regular transition time to the operating state.
PE_Identify	Determines the supported PROFIenergy commands.
Query_Version	Shows the implemented PROFIenergy profile.
Get_Measurement_List	This command returns the measured value IDs that can be accessed using the "Get_Measurement_Values" command.
Get_Measurement_List_with_object_number	This command returns the measured value IDs and the associated object number that can be accessed using the "Get_Measurement_Values_with_object_number" command.
Get_Measurement_Values	The command returns the requested measured value using the measured value ID: • For power measured values: The command addresses the sum of the measured value over all control drive objects. • For energy measured values: The command returns the sum of the measured value over all control drive objects. • For power factors: This measured value is supported only for a SINAMICS with a control drive object.
Get_Measurement_Values_with_object_number	This command returns the requested measured values using the measured value ID and the object number. The object number corresponds to the drive object ID. The drive object ID of the Control Unit is used to address the measured values as with "Get_Measurement_Value".

6.9.3.5 PROFIenergy measured values

Table 6- 27 Overview of the PROFIenergy measured values

PROFIenergy measured value ID	PROFIenergy measured value	Unit	SINAMICS source parameters	SINAMICS source parameters Name	PROFIenergy accuracy		Value range
					Domain	Class	
34	Active power	W	r0032	Active power smoothed	1	12	Largest value for r2004 of all drive objects
166	Power factor	1	r0038	Smoothed power factor	1	12	0 ... 1
200	Active energy import	Wh	r0039[1]	Energy accepted	2	11	-

6.9.3.6 PROFIenergy energy-saving mode

The drive devices support the PROFIenergy energy-saving mode 2. The following two parameters indicate the effective PROFIenergy mode:

- Parameter r5600 indicates the currently active PROFIenergy mode.
- Using interconnectable bits, the r5613 parameter indicates whether the PROFIenergy energy saving is active.

The energy-saving mode can activated or deactivated for the drive devices using the PROFIenergy control commands (see also PROFIenergy commands).

The active energy-saving mode is indicated with alarm A08800.

The energy-saving mode also remains active in the drive devices for the following events:

- PROFINET disconnection
- CPU goes to STOP

While the PROFIenergy energy-saving mode is active all diagnostics alarms are deactivated in the drive device. These alarms are therefore not sent during energy-saving mode.

6.9.3.7 Transition into the energy-saving mode from the PROFIdrive operating state (S4)

If you set p5611.2 = 1, you enable transition to the energy-saving mode from the PROFIdrive operating state (S4)

To do so, you must set one of the following settings:

- p5611.1 = 1: With the transition to the energy-saving mode, the converter issues an OFF1 command and enters the start-inhibit state (S1).
- p5611.1 = 0: You can use p5614 to interconnect a signal source that switches the converter off and places it in the start-inhibit state (S1).

If the control sends the command "End_Pause" or "Start_Pause" with a pause time of 0, the converter continues to run automatically – if the enables are still set.

6.9.3.8 Inhibit PROFIenergy

Parameter setting p5611.0 = 1 can be used to inhibit PROFIenergy in the drive device. This causes the control commands to be ignored.

6.9.3.9 PROFIenergy applications

Applications for PROFIenergy and for programming with SIMATIC S7 can be found under the following link: PROFIenergy applications (http://support.automation.siemens.com/WW/view/en/20229805/136000&csplfrm=12&cssw=0&csbinh=0).

6.9.3.10 Function diagrams and parameters

Function diagram

FP 2381	PROFIenergy - Control commands / query commands
FP 2382	PROFIenergy - States
FP 2610	Sequence control - Sequencer

Parameter

- r5600 Pe hibernation ID
- p5602[0...1] Pe hibernation pause time, minimum
- p5606[0...1] Pe hibernation duration, maximum
- p5611 Pe energy-saving properties, general
- p5612[0...1] Pe energy-saving properties, mode-dependent
- r5613.0...1 CO/BO: Pe energy-saving active/inactive
- p5614 BI: Set Pe switching on inhibited signal source

6.9.4 Further information about communication via PROFINET IO

Further information about communication via PROFINET IO

For more information about PROFINET IO communication, refer to "PROFINET IO communication" in the accompanying "SINAMICS S120 Function Manual".

6.10 Communication via SINAMICS Link

6.10.1 Basic principles of SINAMICS Link

SINAMICS Link allows data to be directly exchanged between a maximum of 64 Control Units (CU320-2 PN and CU320-2 DP). The participating Control Units must be equipped with the CBE20 supplementary module. Other nodes cannot be integrated into this communication.

Possible applications include e.g.:

- Torque distribution for n drives
- Setpoint cascading for n drives
- Load distribution of drives coupled through a material web
- Master/slave function for infeed units

Preconditions

The following preconditions must be fulfilled to operate SINAMICS Link:

- r2064[1]: The bus cycle time (T_{dp}) must be an integer multiple of p0115[0] (current controller cycle).
- r2064[2]: The master cycle time (T_{mapc}) must be an integer multiple of p0115[1] (speed control cycle).
- p0115[0]: The current controller clock cycle must be set to 250 µs or 500 µs. One clock cycle with 400 µs is not permitted. For 400 µs, alarm A01902 is output with alarm value "4". As countermeasure, set the current controller cycle with p0115[0] to 500 µs.

Send and receive data

The SINAMICS Link telegram contains 16 slots (0...15) for the process data (PZD1...16). Each PZD is precisely 1 word long (= 16 bits). Slots that are not required are automatically filled with zeros.

Slot	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
PZD	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16

SINAMICS Link telegram contents

Each transfer cycle, every SINAMICS Link node can send one telegram with 16 PZD. Each node receives all of the telegrams that are sent. For each transfer cycle, a node can select and process up to 16 PZD from all telegrams that have been received. Single words and double words can be sent and received. You must write double words in two consecutive PZD.

Limitations:

- In a telegram, a PZD may only be sent and received once. If a PZD occurs more than once in a telegram, then Alarm A50002 or A50003 is output.
- It is not possible to read in its own send date, otherwise alarm A50006 is output.
- The maximum number of PZD that can be received and sent also depends on the drive object. The number of PZD that can be evaluated corresponds to communication according to PROFIdrive; however, for SINAMICS Link, it is limited to a maximum of 16 PZD.

Transmission time

With SINAMICS Link, a transmission time of up to 1000 µs is possible (with a max. controller cycle of 500 µs; synchronous bus cycle of 500 µs).

Bus cycle and number of nodes

The bus cycle of SINAMICS Link can be operated, synchronized with the current control cycle, or not synchronized.

- Synchronized operation is set with p8812[0] = 1.

  Up to 16 stations with 500 µs bus cycle can communicate with one another via SINAMICS Link. To do this, the maximum number of nodes must be set with p8811 = 16.

  Up to 64 stations with 1000 µs or 2000 µs bus cycle can communicate with one another via SINAMICS Link. To do this, the maximum number of nodes must be set with p8811 = 64.
- In non-synchronized operation (p8812[0] = 0), the PZD sampling time (p2048/p8848) is effective instead of the bus cycle (p8812[1]).

After changing over parameter p8811 and p8812, a POWER ON must be carried out to accept the settings.

6.10.2 Topology

Only a line topology with the following structure is permitted for SINAMICS Link.

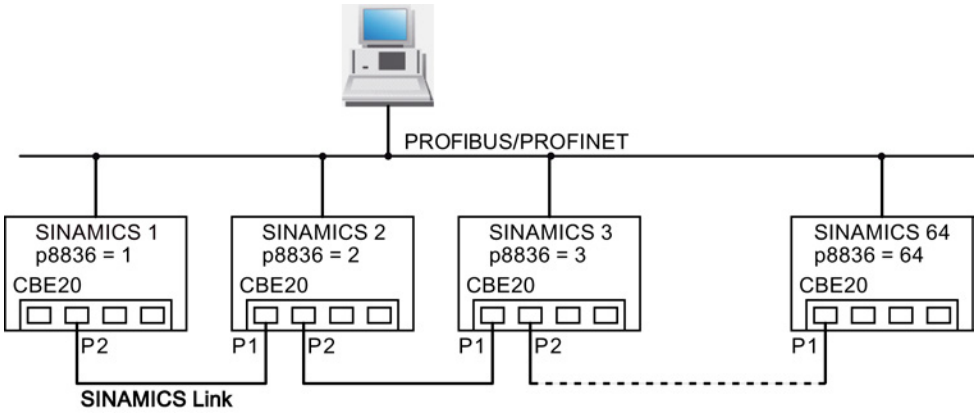


Figure 6-49 Maximum topology

Features

The CBE20 can also be assigned to IF1 or IF2 when SINAMICS Link is used.

IF2 should be used for SINAMICS Link because IF1 supports PROFIdrive conformity. IF2 must therefore be switched to synchronous operation.

The following parameter settings must be made:

- For IF1: p8839[0] = 1 (Control Unit onboard)
- For IF2: p8839[1] = 2 (COMM BOARD)
- For isochronous mode: p8815[0] = 2 (IF2)

Settings

The following entries must be made in the expert list of the Control Units:

- The number of the respective node must be entered manually in parameter p8836.
  Another number must be assigned for each node.
  Enter the numbers in ascending order, starting with "1".
- If p8836 is set to 0, the node and the complete following line is shut down for SINAMICS Link.
- Gaps in the numbering are not permitted.
- The associated IP addresses are entered automatically and they are visible in r8951.
- The node with the number 1 is automatically the sync master of the communication link.
- For non-synchronized operation (p8812[0] = 0), a maximum of 64 nodes are possible (p8811 = 64).

- For synchronized operation (p8812[0] = 1), a maximum of 16 nodes (p8811 = 16) with 500 µs bus cycle or up to 64 nodes (p8811 = 64) with 1000 µs or 2000 µs are possible
- For the CBE20 connection, the ports must be used as shown in the diagram above – this is mandatory. This means that Port 2 (P2) of node **n** is always connected with Port 1 (P1) of node **n+1**.
- Ports 3 and 4 of the CBE20 are deactivated for communication via SINAMICS Link.

6.10.3 Configuring and commissioning

Commissioning

When commissioning, proceed as follows:

1. Set the Control Unit parameter p0009 = 1 (device configuration).
2. Set the Control Unit parameter p8835 to 3 (SINAMICS Link).
3. Set parameter p2037 of the drive objects to 2 (do not freeze setpoints).
4. Using parameter p8836, assign node numbers to the nodes (the first Control Unit is always assigned the number 1). Observe the specifications under "Topology". Node number 0 means that SINAMICS Link is shut down.
5. Set the Control Unit parameter p0009 = 0 (ready).
6. Then execute a "Copy RAM to ROM".
7. Perform a POWER ON (switch-off/switch-on).

Sending data

In this example, the first "Control Unit 1" node has two drive objects, "Drive 1" and "Drive 2". Proceed as follows to send data:

1. For each drive object, in their associated parameters p2051[0...15], define which data (PZD) should be sent. The data is simultaneously reserved in the send slot of the p8871[0...15].
2. You must enter double words in p2061[x]. Double word data is simultaneously written to p8861[0...15].
3. For each drive object, allocate the send parameters in p8871[0...15] to a send slot of its own node.

Table 6- 28 Compile send data of drive 1 (DO2)

p2051[x] Index	p2061[x] Index	Contents	From parameter	Slots in the send buffer p8871[x]	
				x	PZD
0	-	ZSW1	r0899	0	PZD 1
-	1	Actual speed value part 1	r0061[0]	1	PZD 2
-		Actual speed value part 2		2	PZD 3
-	3	Actual torque value part 1	r0080	3	PZD 4
-		Actual torque value part 2		4	PZD 5
5	-	Actual fault code	r2131	5	PZD 6
...		...		...	...
15	-	0	0	15	PZD 16

Table 6- 29 Compile send data of drive 2 (DO3)

p2051[x] Index	p2061[x] Index	Contents	From parameter	Slots in the send buffer p8871[x]	
				x	PZD
0	-	ZSW1	r0899	6	PZD 7
-	1	Actual speed value part 1	r0061[0]	7	PZD 8
-		Actual speed value part 2		8	PZD 9
-	3	Actual torque value part 1	r0080	9	PZD 10
-		Actual torque value part 2		10	PZD 11
5	-	Actual fault code	r2131	11	PZD 12
...		...		...	...
15	-	0	0	15	PZD 16

Table 6- 30 Compile send data of Control Unit 1 (DO1)

p2051[x] Index	p2061[x] Index	Contents	From parameter	Slots in the send buffer p8871[x]	
				x	PZD
0	-	Control word, faults/alarms	r2138	12	PZD 13
-	1	Missing enables part 1	r0046	13	PZD 14
-		Missing enables part 2		14	PZD 15
15	-	0	0	15	PZD 16

Send slot PZD 16 is not required for this telegram and is therefore filled with a zero.

1. Double words (e.g. 1 + 2) are assigned two consecutive send slots, e.g. p2061[1] => p8871[1] = PZD 2 and p8871[2] = PZD 3.
2. Enter the following PZD into the next parameter slots of p2051[x] or p2061[2x].

3. Unused slots of p8871[0...15] are filled with zeros.
4. The sequence of the PZDs in the send telegram of this node are defined in parameter p8871[0...15] by the entries in the required slots.
5. The telegram is sent at the next bus cycle.

Receiving data

The sent telegrams of all nodes are simultaneously available at the SINAMICS Link. Each telegram has a length of 16 PZD. Each telegram has a marker of the sender. You select those PZD that you want to receive for the relevant node from all telegrams. You can process a maximum of 16 PZD.

Note

The first word of the receive data

If you have not deactivated the evaluation of bit 10 with p2037 = 2, the first word of the receive data (PZD 1) must be a control word, where bit 10 = 1 is set.

In this example, Control Unit 2 receives selected data from the telegram of Control Unit 1. Proceed as follows to receive data:

1. In parameter p8872[0…15] enter the address of the node for which you want to read one or more PZDs (e.g. p8872[3] = 1 → from node 1, read in PZD 4, p8872[15] = 0 → do not read in PZD 16).
2. After setting the parameters, you can read out the values via parameters r2050[0…15] or r2060[0…15].

Table 6- 31 Receive data for Control Unit 2

From the sender		Receiver					
Transfer from	Tel. word p8871[x]	Address p8872[x]	Receive buffer p8870[x]	Data transferred in		Parameter	Contents
				r2050[x]	r2060[x]		
p2051[0]	0	1	PZD 1	0	-	r0899	ZSW1
p2061[1]	1	1	PZD 2	-	1	r0061[0]	Actual speed value part 1
	2	1	PZD 3	-		r0061[0]	Actual speed value part 2
p2061[3]	3	1	PZD 4	-	3	r0080	Actual torque value part 1
	4	1	PZD 5	-			Actual torque value part 2
p2051[5]	5	1	PZD 6	5	-	r2131	Actual fault code
p2051[4]	6	1	PZD 7	6	-	r0899	ZSW1
p2061[5]	7	1	PZD 8	-	7	r0061[0]	Actual speed value part 1
	8	1	PZD 9	-			Actual speed value part 2
p2061[6]	9	1	PZD 10	-	9	r0080	Actual torque value part 1
	10	1	PZD 11	-			Actual torque value part 2
p2051[7]	11	1	PZD 12	11	-	r2131	Actual fault code
p2051[8]	12	1	PZD 13	12	-	2138	Control word, faults/alarms

From the sender		Receiver					
Transfer from	Tel. word p8871[x]	Address p8872[x]	Receive buffer p8870[x]	Data transferred in		Parameter	Contents
				r2050[x]	r2060[x]		
p2061[9]	13	1	PZD 14	-	13	r0046	Missing enables part 1
	14	1	PZD 15	-			Missing enables part 2
-	15	0	PZD 16	15	-	0	Empty

Tel. word = telegram word

Note

For double words, two PZD must be read in succession. Read a 32-bit setpoint that is at PZD 2+PZD 3 of the telegram from node 2, and map this to PZD 2+PZD 3 of node 1: p8872[1] = 2, p8870[1] = 2, p8872[2] = 2, p8870[2] = 3

Activation

To activate SINAMICS Link connections, perform a POWER ON for all nodes. The assignments of p2051[x]/2061[2x] and the links of the read parameters r2050[x]/2060[2x] can be changed without a POWER ON.

Settings for cabinet units with rated pulse frequency 1.25 kHz

For the following cabinet units with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz, in addition parameter p0115[0] must be set from 400 µs to 250 µs or 500 µs:

- 3 AC 380 to 480 V: All cabinet units with rated output current $I_N \geq 605$ A
- 3 AC 500 to 600 V: All cabinet units
- 3 AC 660 to 690 V: All cabinet units

Generally, the following conditions must be met:

1. r2064[1] bus cycle time (Tdp) must be an integer multiple of p0115[0] (current controller clock cycle).
2. r2064[2] master cycle time (Tmapc) must be an integer multiple of p0115[1] (speed controller cycle).

6.10.4 Example

Task

Configure SINAMICS Link for two nodes and transfer the following values:

- Send data from node 1 to node 2
  - r0898 CO/BO: Control word, sequence control, drive 1 (1 PZD), in the example PZD 1
  - r0079 CO: Total torque setpoint (2 PZD), in the example PZD 2
  - r0021 CO: Smoothed actual speed (2 PZD), in the example PZD 3
- Send data from node 2 to node 1
  - r0899 CO/BO: Status word, sequence control, drive 2 (1 PZD), in the example PZD 1

Procedure

1. For all nodes, set p0009 = 1 to change the device configuration.
2. For all CBE20 nodes, set the "SINAMICS Link" mode using p8835 = 3.
3. Assign the node numbers for the devices involved:
   - Node 1: p8836 = 1 and
   - Node 2: p8836 = 2
4. For both nodes p0009 = 0, carry out "Copy RAM to ROM" followed by a POWER ON.
5. Set all CBE20 to the isochronous mode by setting p8812[0] = 1.
6. Make the following interface setting for all nodes:
   - For IF1: p8839[0] = 2 (COMM BOARD)
   - For IF2: p8839[1] = 1 (Control Unit onboard)
7. Limit the maximum number of nodes for all nodes with p8811 = 16.
8. For both nodes p0009 = 0, carry out a "Copy RAM to ROM" followed by a POWER ON in order to activate the modified firmware versions and the new settings in the CBE20.
9. Define the send data for node 1:
   - Define the PZD that node 1 should send:
     p2051[0] = drive1:r0898 (PZD length is 1 word)
     p2061[1] = drive1:r0079 (PZD length is 2 words)
     p2061[3] = drive1:r0021 (PZD length is 2 words)
   - Place this PZD in the send buffer (p8871) of node 1:
     p8871[0] = 1 (r0898)
     p8871[1] = 2 (r0079 1st part)
     p8871[2] = 3 (r0079 2nd part)
     p8871[3] = 4 (r0021 1st part)
     p8871[4] = 5 (r0021 2nd part)

10. Define the receive data for node 2:
    - Specify that the data placed in the receive buffer p8872 of node 2 in locations 0 to 4 will be received by node 1:

      p8872[0] = 1
      p8872[1] = 1
      p8872[2] = 1
      p8872[3] = 1
      p8872[4] = 1
    - Specify that PZD1, PZD2, and PZD3 of node 1 will be placed in the receive buffer p8870 of node 2 in locations 0 to 4:

      p8870[0] = 1 (PZD1)
      p8870[1] = 2 (PZD2 1st part)
      p8870[2] = 3 (PZD2 2nd part)
      p8870[3] = 4 (PZD3 1st part)
      p8870[4] = 5 (PZD3 2nd part)
    - r2050 [0], r2060 [1] and r2060[3] now contain the values of PZD 1, PZD 2 and PZD 3 of node 1.
11. Define the send data for node 2:
    - Specify the PZD that node 2 should send:
      :p2051[0] = drive1:r0899 (PZD length is 1 word)
    - Place this PZD in the send buffer (p8871) of node 2:
      p8871[0] = 1
12. Define the receive data for node 1:
    - Specify the data that should be placed in the receive buffer p8872 of node 1 in location 0, received from node 2:
      p8872[0] = 2
    - Define that PZD1 of node 2 is saved in the receive buffer p8870 of node 1 in location 0:
      p8870 [0] = 1
    - r2050[0] now contains the value of PZD 1 of node 2.
13. At the two nodes carry-out a "Copy RAM to ROM" to backup the parameterization and the data.
14. For both nodes, perform a POWER ON in order to activate the SINAMICS Link connections.

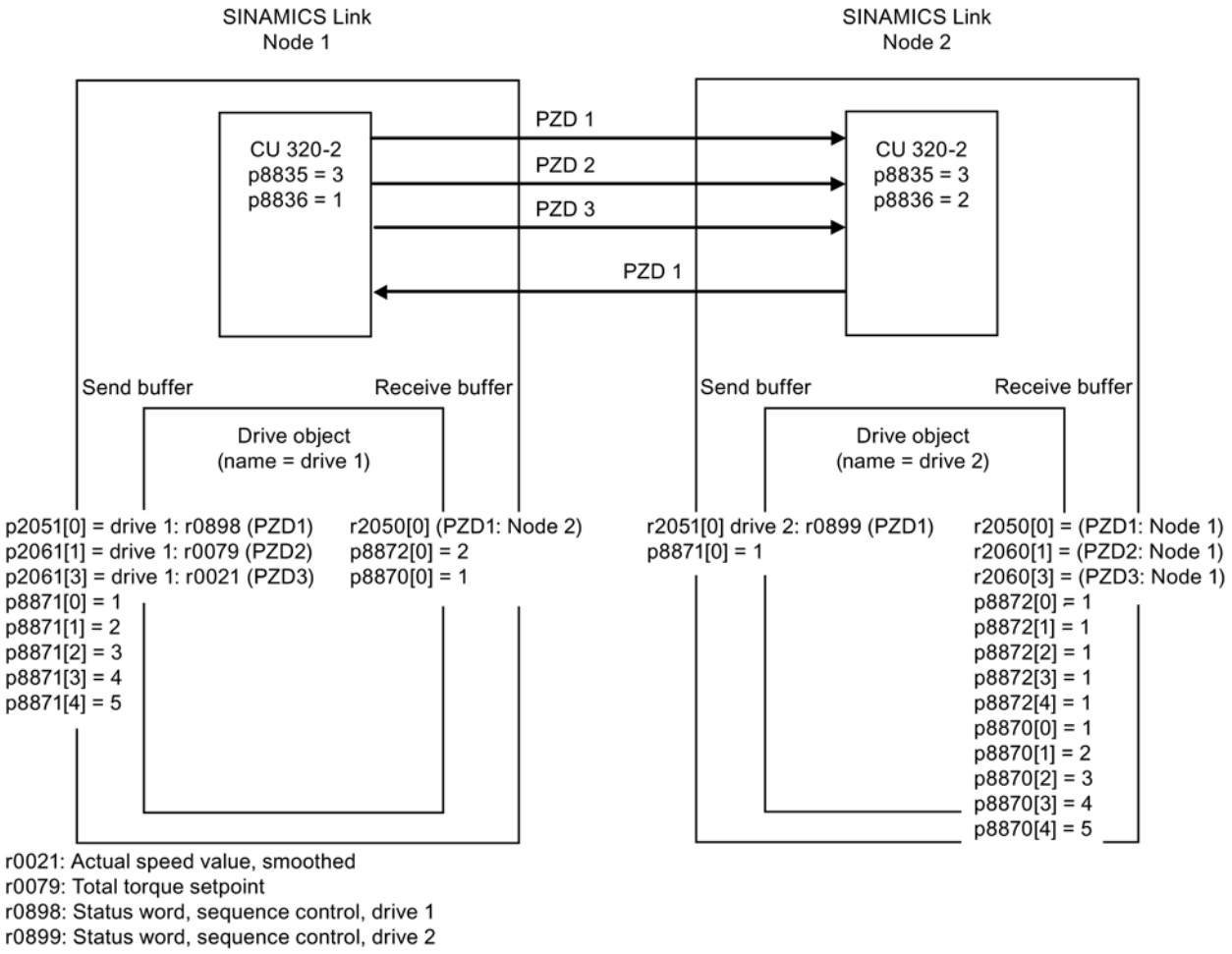


Figure 6-50 SINAMICS Link: Configuration example

6.10.5 Communication failure when booting or in cyclic operation

If at least one SINAMICS link node does not correctly boot after commissioning or fails in cyclic operation, then alarm A50005 "Sender was not found on the SINAMICS Link" is output to the other nodes.
The alarm value contains the number of the sender that cannot be located The alarm is automatically canceled after the fault has been resolved at the node involved.

If several nodes are involved, the message occurs a multiple number of times consecutively with different node numbers. The alarm is automatically canceled after the fault has been resolved at the nodes involved.

When a node fails in cyclic operation, in addition to alarm A50005, fault F08501 "COMM BOARD: Setpoint timeout" is output.

6.10.6 Transmission times for SINAMICS Link

Transmission times at a communication cycle of 1 ms

p2048/p8848 = 1 ms

Bus cycle [ms]	Transfer times [ms]			
	Sync both	Sync send	Sync receive	Async both
0.5	1.0	1.5	1.3	1.6
1.0	1.5	2.1	2.1	2.2
2.0	3.0	3.6	3.1	2.8

Transmission times at a communication cycle of 4 ms

p2048/p8848 = 4 ms

Bus cycle [ms]	Transfer times [ms]			
	Sync both	Sync send	Sync receive	Async both
0.5	1.0	3.0	2.8	4.6
1.0	1.5	3.6	3.6	5.2
2.0	3.0	5.1	4.6	5.8

6.10.7 Function diagrams and parameters

Function diagram

FP 2198	Data transfer - SINAMICS Link (p8835 = 3)
FP 2199	Data transfer - SINAMICS Link, PZD assignment (p8835 = 3)

Parameter

- p0115 Sampling time for additional functions
- p2037 IF1 PROFIdrive STW1.10 = 0 mode
- r2050[0...31] CO: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD receive word
- p2051[0...31] CI: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD send word
- r2060[0...30] CO: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD receive double word
- p2061[0...30] CI: IF1 PROFIdrive PZD send double word
- p8811 SINAMICS Link project selection
- p8812[0...1] SINAMICS Link settings
- p8835 CBE20 firmware selection
- p8836 SINAMICS Link address
- p8839 PZD interface hardware assignment
- p8870 SINAMICS Link telegram word PZD receive
- p8871 SINAMICS Link telegram word PZD send
- p8872 SINAMICS Link address PZD receive

6.11 Communication services and used port numbers

The drive device supports the protocols listed in the following table. The address parameters, the relevant communication layer as well as the communication role and the communication direction are specified for each protocol.

This information allows you to match the security measures for the protection of the automation system to the used protocols (e.g. firewall). As the security measures are limited to Ethernet and PROFINET networks, no PROFIBUS protocols are listed in the table.

The following table shows the various layers and protocols that are used.

Layers and protocols

Report	Port number	(2) Link layer (4) Transport layer	Function	Description
PROFINET protocols				
DCP Discovery and configuration protocol	Not relevant	(2) Ethernet II and IEEE 802.1Q and Ethertype 0x8892 (PROFINET)	Accessible nodes, PROFINET Discovery and configuration	DCP is used by PROFINET to determine PROFINET devices and to make basic settings. DCP uses the special multicast MAC address: xx-xx-xx-01-0E-CF, xx-xx-xx = Organizationally Unique Identifier
LLDP Link Layer Discovery protocol	Not relevant	(2) Ethernet II and IEEE 802.1Q and Ethertype 0x88CC (PROFINET)	PROFINET Link Layer Discovery protocol	LLDP is used by PROFINET to determine and manage neighborhood relationships between PROFINET devices. LLDP uses the special multicast MAC address: 01-80-C2-00-00-0E
MRP Media Redundancy Protocol	Not relevant	(2) Ethernet II and IEEE 802.1Q and Ethertype 0x88E3 (PROFINET)	PROFINET medium redundancy	MRP enables the control of redundant routes through a ring topology. MRP uses the special multicast MAC address: xx-xx-xx-01-15-4E, xx-xx-xx = Organizationally Unique Identifier
PTCP Precision Transparent Clock Protocol	Not relevant	(2) Ethernet II and IEEE 802.1Q and Ethertype 0x8892 (PROFINET)	PROFINET send clock and time synchroni-zation, based on IEEE 1588	PTC allows a time delay measurements to be made between RJ45 ports – therefore send cycle synchronization and time synchronization. PTCP uses the special multicast MAC address: xx-xx-xx-01-0E-CF, xx-xx-xx = Organizationally Unique Identifier
PROFINET IO data	Not relevant	(2) Ethernet II and IEEE 802.1Q and Ethertype 0x8892 (PROFINET)	PROFINET Cyclic IO data transfer	The PROFINET IO telegrams are used to cyclically transfer I/O data between the PROFINET IO controller and IO devices via Ethernet.
PROFINET Context Manager	34964	(4) UDP	PROFINET connection less RPC	The PROFINET context manager provides an endpoint mapper in order to establish an application relationship (PROFINET AR).

Report	Port number	(2) Link layer (4) Transport layer	Function	Description
Connection-oriented communication protocols				
HTTP Hypertext transfer protocol	80	(4) TCP	Hypertext transfer protocol	HTTP is used for the communication with the CU internal Web server. Is open in the delivery state and can be deactivated.
ISO on TCP (according to RFC 1006)	102	(4) TCP	ISO-on-TCP protocol	ISO on TCP (according to RFC 1006) is used for the message-oriented data exchange to a remote CPU, WinAC or devices of other suppliers. Communication with ES, HMI, etc. Is open in the delivery state and is always required.
SNMP Simple network management protocol	161	(4) UDP	Simple network management protocol	SNMP enables the reading out and setting of network management data (SNMP managed Objects) by the SNMP manager. Is open in the delivery state and is always required.
HTTPS Secure Hypertext transfer protocol	443	(4) TCP	Secure Hypertext transfer protocol	HTTPS is used for the communication with the CPU internal Web server via Secure Socket Layer (SSL). Is open in the delivery state and can be deactivated.
Reserved	49152...65535	(4) TCP (4) UDP	-	Dynamic port area that is used for the active connection endpoint if the application does not specify the local port.

6.12 Parallel operation of communication interfaces

General information

The two cyclic interfaces for the setpoints and actual values differ by the parameter ranges used (BICO technology etc.) and the functions that can be used. The interfaces are designated as cyclic interface 1 (IF1) and cyclic interface 2 (IF2).

Cyclic process data (setpoints/actual values) are processed using interfaces IF1 and IF2. The following interfaces are used:

- Onboard interfaces of the Control Unit for PROFIBUS DP or PROFINET.
- An optional interface (COMM board) for PROFINET (CBE20) or CANopen (CBE10) for insertion in the Control Unit.

Parameter p8839 is used to set the parallel use of the Control Unit onboard interfaces and COMM board. The functionality is assigned to interfaces IF1 and IF2 using indices.

For example, the following applications are possible:

- PROFIBUS DP for drive control and PROFINET for the acquisition of actual values/measured values of the drive.
- PROFIBUS DP for control and PROFINET for engineering only
- Mixed mode with two masters (the first for logic and coordination and the second for technology)
- SINAMICS Link via IF2 (CBE20), standard telegrams and PROFIsafe via IF1
- Operation of redundant communication interfaces

Assignment of communication interfaces to cyclic interfaces

With the factory setting p8839 = 99, the communication interfaces are permanently assigned one of the cyclic interfaces (IF1, IF2), depending on the communication system, e.g. PROFIBUS DP, PROFINET or CANopen.

The assignment to the cyclic interfaces can essentially be freely defined by user parameterization for the parallel operation of the communication interfaces.

Table 6- 32 Properties of the cyclic interfaces IF1 and IF2

Feature	IF1	IF2
Setpoint (BICO signal source)	r2050, r2060	r8850, r8860
Actual value (BICO signal sink)	p2051, p2061	p8851, p8861

Table 6- 33 Implicit assignment of hardware to cyclic interfaces for p8839[0] = p8839[1] = 99

Inserted hardware interface	IF1	IF2
No option, only use Control Unit onboard interface (PROFIBUS, PROFINET or USS)	Control Unit onboard	--
CU320-2 DP with CBE20 (optional PROFINET interface)	COMM BOARD	Control Unit onboard PROFIBUS or Control Unit onboard USS
CU320-2 PN with CBE20 (optional PROFINET interface)	Control Unit onboard	COMM BOARD PROFINET
CAN option CBC10	Control Unit onboard	COMM BOARD CAN

Parameter p8839[0,1] is used to set the parallel operation of the hardware interfaces and the assignment to the cyclic interfaces IF1 and IF2 for the Control Unit drive object.

The object sequence for process data exchange via IF2 depends on the object sequence from IF1; see "List of drive objects" (p0978).

The factory setting of p8839[0,1] = 99 enables the implicit assignment (see table above).

An alarm is generated in case of invalid or inconsistent parameterization of the assignment.

Note

Parallel operation of PROFIBUS and PROFINET

The data of isochronous applications can only be processed via one of the two interfaces IF1 or IF2 (p8815). 2 parameterization options are possible if additionally the PROFINET module CBE20 is inserted in the CU320-2 DP:

- p8839[0] = 1 and p8839[1] = 2: PROFIBUS isochronous, PROFINET cyclic

- p8839[0] = 2 and p8839[1] = 1: PROFINET isochronous, PROFIBUS cyclic

Parameters for IF2

The following parameters are available in order to optimize the IF2 for a PROFIBUS or PROFINET interface:

- Receive and send process data:
  r8850, p8851, r8853, r8860, p8861, r8863[1)]
- Diagnostic parameters:
  r8874, r8875, r8876[1)]
- Binector-connector converters:
  p8880, p8881, p8882, p8883, p8884, r8889[1)]
- Connector-binector converters:
  r8894, r8895, p8898, p8899[1)]

[1)] Significance of 88xx identical to 20xx

Note

Using the HW Config configuration tool, a PROFIBUS slave / PROFINET device with two interfaces cannot be shown. In parallel operation, this is the reason that SINAMICS drive appears twice in the project or in 2 projects, although physically it is just one device.

Parameter

p8839	PZD interface hardware assignment
Description:	Assigning the hardware for cyclic communication via PZD interface 1 and interface 2.
Value:	0: Inactive
	1: Control Unit onboard
	2: COMM BOARD
	99: Automatic

For p8839, the following rules apply:

- The setting of p8839 applies for all drive objects of a Control Unit (device parameter).
- For the setting p8839[0] = 99 and p8839[1] = 99 (automatic assignment, factory setting), the hardware used is automatically assigned to interfaces IF1 and IF2. Both indices must be selected so that the automatic assignment is activated. If both indices are not selected, then an alarm is output and the setting p8839[x] = 99 is treated just like 'inactive'.
- An alarm is issued if the same hardware (Control Unit onboard or COMM BOARD) is selected in p8839[0] and p8839[1]. The following then applies: The setting of p8839[0] and the setting of p8839[1] are treated just like 'inactive'.
- If the CAN board (CBC10) is used, the entry of p8839[0] = 2 is not permissible (no assignment of the CAN board to IF1). An alarm is then issued.
- If p8839[x] is set to 2, and the COMM BOARD is missing or defective, then the corresponding interface is not supplied from the Control Unit onboard interface. Message A08550 is output instead.

Parameter

- p0922 IF1 PROFIdrive telegram selection
- p0978[0...24] List of drive objects
- p8815[0...1] IF1/IF2 PZD functionality selection
- p8839[0...1] PZD Interface hardware assignment

6.13 Engineering Software Drive Control Chart (DCC)

Graphical configuring and expansion of the device functionality by means of available closed-loop control, arithmetic, and logic function blocks

Drive Control Chart (DCC) expands the facility for the simplest possible configuring of technological functions for both the SIMOTION motion control system and the SINAMICS drive system. This provides the user with a new dimension of system adaptability for specific machine functions.
DCC does not restrict the number of functions that can be used; the only restriction is the performance of the target platform.

The user-friendly DCC Editor enables easy graphical configuration and a clear representation of control loop structures as well as a high degree of reusability of existing diagrams.

The open-loop and closed-loop control functionality is defined by using multi-instance-enabled blocks (Drive Control Blocks (DCBs)) from a pre-defined library (DCB library) that are selected and graphically linked by dragging and dropping.
Test and diagnostic functions allow verification of the program behavior, and troubleshooting in the event of a fault.

The block library encompasses a large selection of closed-loop, arithmetic and logic function blocks, as well as comprehensive open-loop and closed-loop control functions.

For combining, analyzing and acquiring binary signals, all commonly used logic functions are available for selection (AND, XOR, on/off delay, RS flipflop, counter, etc.). Numerous computation functions are available for monitoring and evaluating numerical variables; for example absolute value generation, division, min/max evaluation.
Besides drive control functions, it is also a simple matter to configure axis winding functions, PI controllers, ramp-function generators, and wobble generators.

Almost unlimited programming of control structures is possible in conjunction with the SIMOTION motion control system. These can then be combined with other program sections to form an overall program.

Drive Control Chart for SINAMICS also provides a convenient basis for resolving drive-level open-loop and closed-loop control tasks directly in the drive. This results in further adaptability of SINAMICS for the task set. On-site processing in the drive supports modular machine concepts and results in increased overall machine performance.

Note

Detailed documentation

A detailed description of the DCC Editor and the available Drive Control Blocks is given in the relevant documentation. This documentation is available on the accompanying customer DVD.

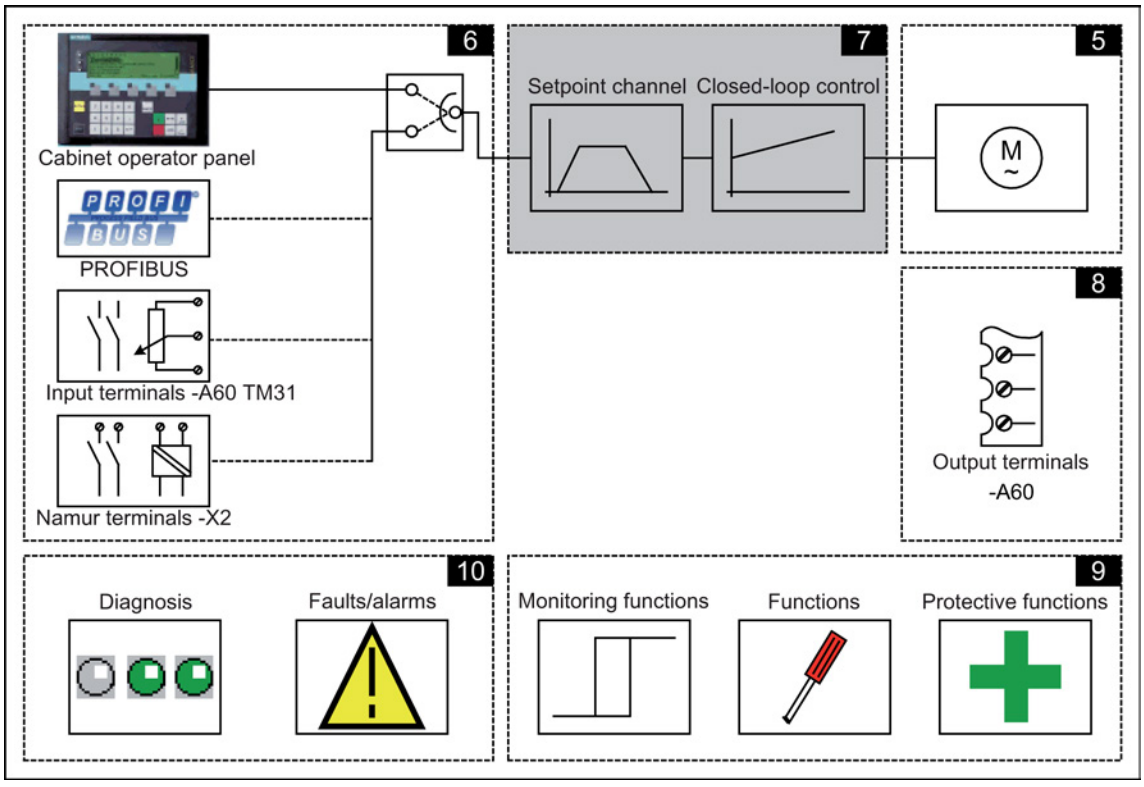
Setpoint channel and closed-loop control

7

7.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the setpoint channel and closed-loop control functions.

- Setpoint channel
  - Direction reversal
  - Skip speed
  - Minimum speed
  - Speed limitation
  - Ramp-function generator
- V/f control
- Vector speed control with / without encoder



Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

7.2 Setpoint channel

7.2.1 Setpoint addition

Description

The supplementary setpoint can be used to enter correction values from higher-level closed-loop controls. This can be implemented using the summing point of the main/supplementary setpoint in the setpoint channel. Both variables are imported simultaneously via two separate or one setpoint source and added in the setpoint channel.

Function diagram

FD 3030 Main/added setpoint, setpoint scaling, jogging

Parameter

- p1070 Main setpoint
- p1071 Main setpoint scaling
- r1073 Main setpoint effective
- p1075 Supplementary setpoint
- p1076 Supplementary setpoint scaling
- r1077 Supplementary setpoint effective
- r1078 Total setpoint effective

7.2.2 Direction reversal

Description

Due to the direction reversal in the setpoint channel the drive can be operated in both directions with the same setpoint polarity.

Use the p1110 or p1111 parameter to block negative or positive direction of rotation.

Note

Incorrect rotating field when the cables were routed

If an incorrect phase sequence was connected when the cables were installed, and the cabling cannot be changed, the phase sequence can be changed during drive commissioning using p1821 (phase sequence direction reversal), thus enabling a direction reversal. Modifying parameter p1821 produces a direction reversal of the motor and the actual encoder value without changing the setpoint.

Preconditions

Direction reversal is initiated:

- via PROFIBUS by means of control word 1, bit 11
- via the cabinet operator panel (LOCAL mode) with the "Direction reversal" key.

Note

Delivery condition

Note that only one direction of rotation is enabled in the delivery condition when control is carried out via the AOP30.

Function diagram

FP 3040 Direction limitation and direction reversal

Parameter

- p1110 BI: Inhibit negative direction
- p1111 BI: Inhibit positive direction
- p1113 BI: Setpoint inversion
- r1114 Setpoint after direction limiting

7.2.3 Skip frequency bands and minimum speed

Description

In the case of variable-speed drives, it is possible for the control range of the overall drive train to contain bending-critical speeds that the drive must not be be operated at or the vicinity of in steady-state condition. In other words, although the drive can pass through this range, it must not remain within it because resonant oscillations may be excited. The skip frequency bands allow this range to be blocked for steady-state operation. Because the points at which critical whirling speeds occur in a drive train can vary depending on age or thermal factors, a broader control range must be blocked. To prevent constant speed step changes in the vicinity of these skip frequency bands (speeds), they are provided with a hysteresis.
The skip speed values apply in the positive and negative directions of rotation.

Specifying a minimum speed allows a specific range to be disabled around speed 0 rpm for steady-state operation.

Signal flow diagram

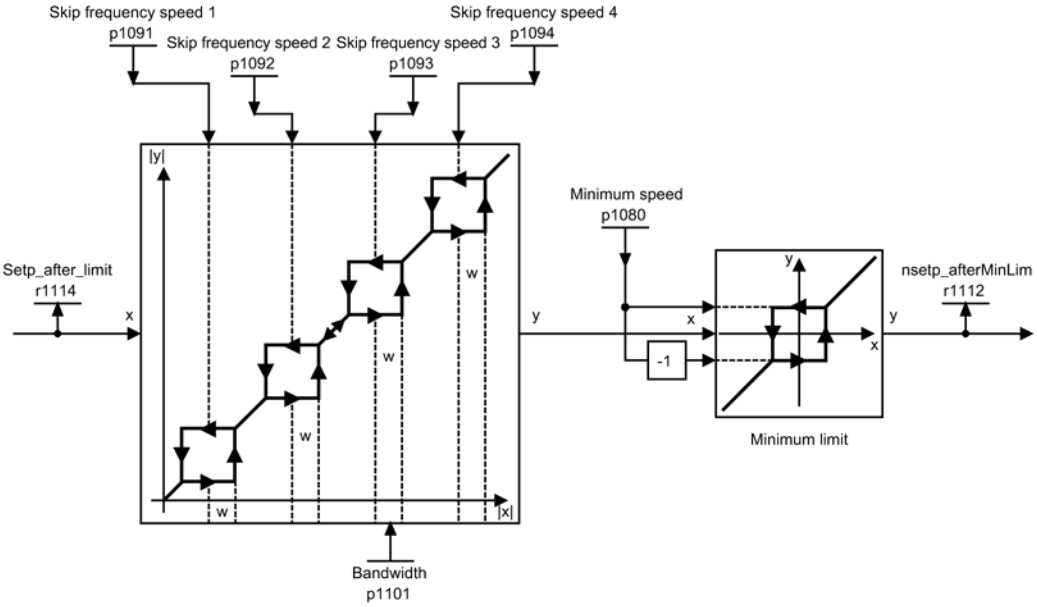


Figure 7-1 Signal flow diagram: Skip frequency bands and minimum speed

Function diagram

FP 3050 Skip frequency bands and speed limiting

Parameter

- p1080 Minimum speed
- p1091 Skip frequency speed 1
- p1092 Skip frequency speed 2
- p1093 Skip frequency speed 3
- p1094 Skip frequency speed 4
- p1098 Suppression speed scaling
- r1099.0 Suppression bandwidth status word
- p1101 Skip frequency speed bandwidth
- p1106 Minimum speed signal source
- r1112 Speed setpoint after minimum limiting

7.2.4 Speed limitation

Description

Speed limitation aims to limit the maximum permissible speed of the entire drive train to protect the drive and load machine/process against damage caused by excessive speeds.

Signal flow diagram

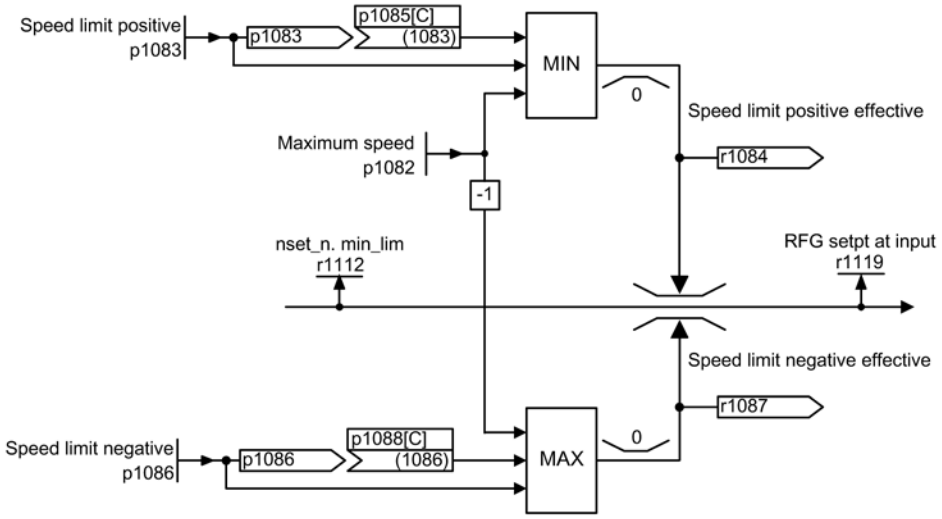


Figure 7-2 Signal flow diagram: Speed limitation

Function diagram

FP 3050 Skip frequency bands and speed limiting

Parameter

- p1082 Maximum speed
- p1083 CO: Speed limit in positive direction of rotation
- r1084 CO: Speed limit positive effective
- p1085 CI: Speed limit in positive direction of rotation
- p1086 CO: Speed limit in negative direction of rotation
- r1087 CO: Speed limit negative effective
- p1088 CI: Speed limit in negative direction of rotation
- r1119 CO: Ramp-function generator setpoint at the input

7.2.5 Ramp-function generator

Description

The ramp-function generator limits the rate at which the setpoint changes when the drive is accelerating or decelerating. This prevents excessive setpoint step changes from damaging the drive train. Additional rounding times can also be set in the lower and upper speed ranges to improve control quality and prevent load surges, thereby protecting mechanical components, such as shafts and couplings.

The ramp-up and ramp-down times each refer to the maximum speed (p1082). The rounding times that can be set can prevent the actual speed value from being overshot when the setpoint is approached, thereby improving control quality.

When final rounding set, a sudden reduction of the setpoint when ramping up can cause the setpoint to overshoot, if continuous smoothing has been selected via p1134 = 0. The larger the selected final rounding time, the larger the overshoot.

Rounding is also effective in the zero crossover; in other words, when the direction is reversed, the ramp-function generator output is reduced to zero via initial rounding, the ramp-down time, and final rounding before the new, inverted setpoint is approached via initial rounding, the ramp-up time, and final rounding. Rounding times that can be set separately are active in the event of a fast stop (OFF3). The actual ramp-up/ramp-down times increase with active rounding.

The rounding type can be set using p1134 and separately activated/deactivated using p1151.0 in the zero point.

The ramp-up time (p1120) can be scaled using connector input p1138, the ramp-down time (p1121) using connector input p1139. Scaling is deactivated in the factory setting.

Note

Effective ramp-up time

The effective ramp-up time increases when you enter initial and final rounding times.

Effective ramp-up time = p1120 + (0.5 x p1130) + (0.5 x p1131)

Signal flow diagram

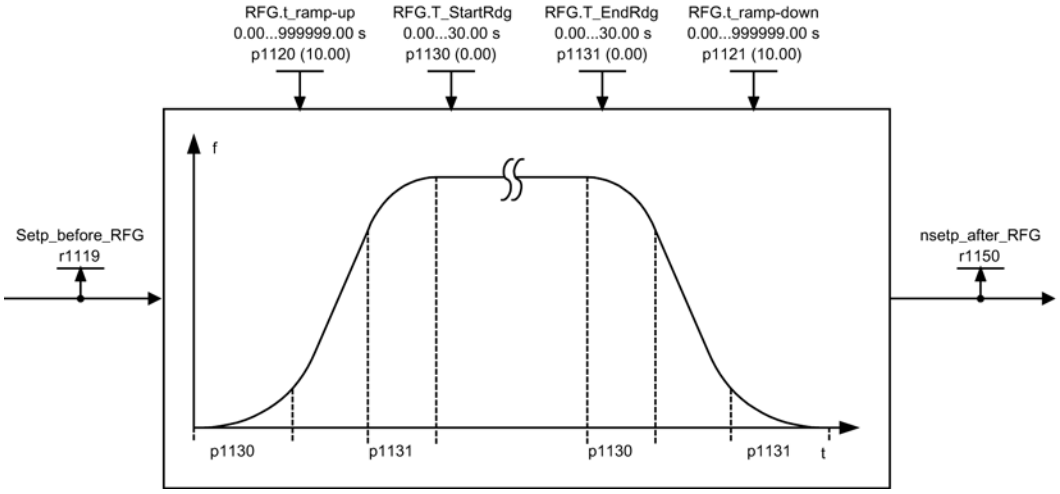


Figure 7-3 Signal flow diagram: Ramp-function generator

Ramp-function generator tracking

If the drive is in range of the torque limits, the actual speed value moves away from the speed setpoint. The ramp-function generator tracking updates the speed setpoint in line with the actual speed value and so levels the ramp.

p1145 can be used to deactivate ramp-function generator tracking (p1145 = 0) or to set the permissible deviation (p1145 > 1). If the permissible deviation is reached, then the speed setpoint at the ramp-function generator output will only be increased further in proportion to the speed setpoint.

Parameters p1151.1 and p1151.2 can be used to set as to whether ramp-function generator tracking is realized with or without polarity change.

Parameter r1199.5 displays whether the ramp-function generator tracking is active.

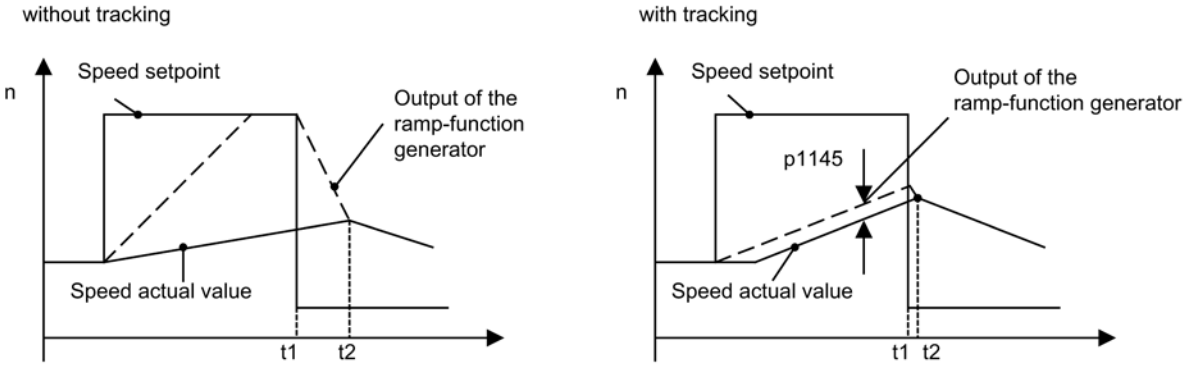


Figure 7-4 Ramp-function generator tracking

Without ramp-function generator tracking

- p1145 = 0
- Drive accelerates to t2, although the setpoint after t1 is smaller than the actual value

With ramp-function generator tracking

- At p1145 > 1 (values between 0 and 1 are not applicable), ramp-function generator tracking is activated when the torque limit is approached. The ramp-function generator output thereby only exceeds the actual speed value by the deviation value defined in p1145.
- t1 and t2 are almost identical

Function diagram

FP 3060	Simple ramp-function generator
FP 3070	Extended ramp-function generator
FP 3080	Ramp-function generator selection, status word, tracking

Parameter

- r1119 CO: Ramp-function generator setpoint at the input
- p1120 Ramp-function generator ramp-up time
- p1121 Ramp-function generator ramp-down time
- p1130 Ramp-function generator initial rounding time
- p1131 Ramp-function generator final rounding time
- p1134 Ramp-function generator rounding type
- p1135 OFF3 ramp-down time
- p1136 OFF3 initial rounding time
- p1137 OFF3 final rounding time
- p1138 CI: Ramp-function generator ramp-up time scaling
- p1139 CI: Ramp-function generator, ramp-down time
- p1140 BI: Enable ramp-function generator/disable ramp-function generator
- p1141 BI: Continue ramp-function generator/freeze ramp-function generator
- p1142 BI: Enable setpoint/inhibit setpoint
- P1143 BI: Accept ramp-function generator setting value
- P1144 CI: Ramp-function generator setting value
- p1145 Ramp-function generator tracking intensity
- P1148 Ramp function generator tolerance for ramp-up and ramp-down active
- r1149 CO: Ramp-function generator acceleration
- r1150 Ramp-function generator speed setpoint at the output
- p1151 CO: Ramp-function generator configuration
- r1199.0...8 Ramp-function generator status word

7.3 V/f control

Description

The simplest solution for a control procedure is the V/f characteristic, whereby the stator voltage for the induction motor or synchronous motor is controlled proportionately to the stator frequency. This method has proved successful in a wide range of applications with low dynamic requirements, such as:

- Pumps and fans
- Belt drives
- Multi-motor drives

V/f control aims to maintain a constant flux (Φ) in the motor, whereby the flux is proportional to the magnetization current (Iμ) or the ratio of voltage (V) to frequency (f).

Φ ~ Iμ ~ V/f

The torque (M) generated by the induction motors is, in turn, proportional to the product (or, more precisely, the vector product (Φ x I)) of the flux and current.

M ~ Φ x I

To generate as much torque as possible with a given current, the motor must function using the greatest possible constant flux. To maintain a constant flux (Φ), therefore, the voltage (V) must change in proportion to the frequency (f) to ensure a constant magnetization current (Iμ). V/f characteristic control is derived from these basic premises.

The field-weakening range is above the rated motor frequency, where the maximum voltage is reached. The flux and maximum torque decrease as the frequency increases; this is illustrated in the following diagram.

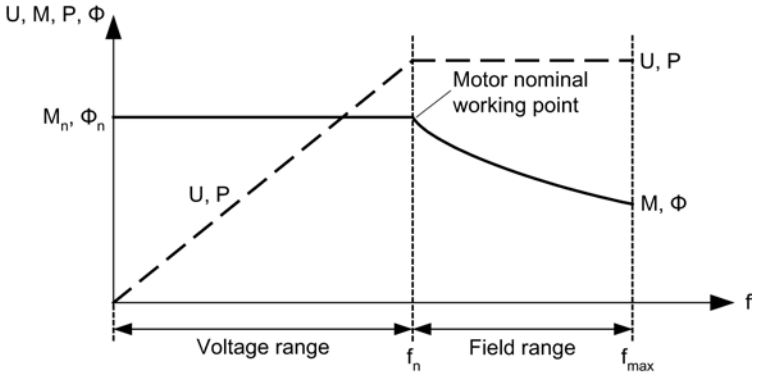
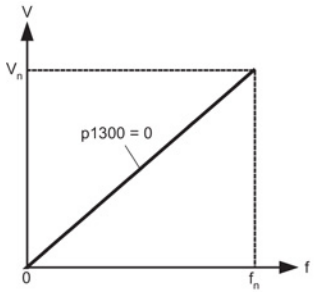
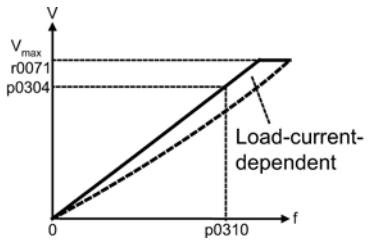
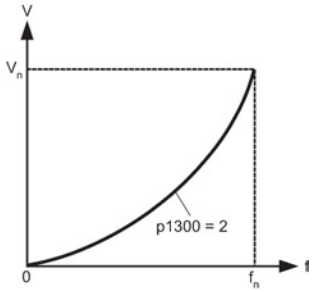
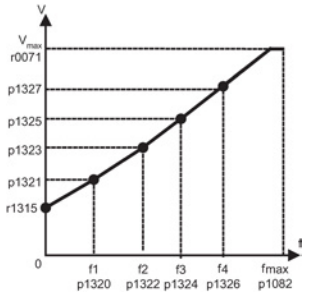


Figure 7-5 Operating areas and characteristic curves for the induction motor with converter supply

Several variations of the V/f characteristic exist, which are listed in the following table.

Table 7- 1 p1300 V/f characteristics

Parameter value	Meaning	Application / property	
0	Linear characteristic	Standard with variable voltage boost	
1	Linear characteristic with flux current control (FCC)	Characteristic that compensates for voltage losses in the stator resistance for static / dynamic loads (flux current control FCC). This is particularly useful for small motors, since they have a relatively high stator resistance.	
2	Parabolic characteristic	Characteristic that takes into account the motor torque curve (e.g. fan/pump). • Quadratic characteristic (f² characteristic) • Energy saving because the low voltage also results in small currents and losses.	
3	Programmable characteristic	Characteristic that takes into account the motor/machine torque characteristic.	
4	Linear characteristic and ECO	Characteristic (see parameter value 0) and Eco mode at constant operating point. • At constant operating point, the efficiency is optimized by varying the voltage. • Active slip compensation is necessary here; the scaling must be set so that the slip is fully compensated (p1335 = 100%).	

Parameter value	Meaning	Application / property
5	Precise frequency drives (textiles)	Characteristic (see parameter value 0) that takes into account the specific technological features of an application (e.g. textile applications). • The current limitation (Imax controller) only affects the output voltage and not the output frequency. • The slip compensation and resonance damping are disabled.
6	Precise frequency drives with flux current control (FCC)	Characteristic (see parameter value 1) that takes into account the specific technological features of an application (e.g. textile applications). • The current limitation (Imax controller) only affects the output voltage and not the output frequency. • The slip compensation and resonance damping are disabled. Voltage losses in the stator resistance for static / dynamic loads are also compensated (flux current control, FCC). This is particularly useful for small motors, since they have a relatively high stator resistance.
7	Parabolic characteristic and ECO	Characteristic (see parameter value 1) and Eco mode at constant operating point. • At constant operating point, the efficiency is optimized by varying the voltage. • Active slip compensation is necessary here; the scaling must be set so that the slip is fully compensated (p1335 = 100%).
19	Independent voltage setpoint	The user can define the output voltage of the Power Module independently of the frequency using BICO parameter p1330 via the interfaces (e.g., analog input AI0 of the TM31 –> p1330 = r4055[0]).

Function diagram

FP 6301 V/f characteristic and voltage boost

Parameter

- p1300 Open-loop/closed-loop control operating mode
- p1320 V/f control programmable characteristic frequency 1

  ...
- p1327 V/f control programmable characteristic voltage 4
- p1330 CI: V/f control independent of voltage setpoint
- p1331 Voltage limitation
- p1333 V/f control FCC starting frequency
- r1348 V/f control Eco factor actual value
- p1350 V/f control soft starting

7.3.1 Voltage Boost

Description

With low output frequencies, the V/f characteristics yield only a small output voltage.

With low frequencies, too, the ohmic resistance of the stator windings has an effect and can no longer be ignored vis-à-vis the machine reactance. With low frequencies, therefore, the magnetic flux is no longer proportional to the magnetization current or the V/f ratio.

The output voltage may, however, be too low to:

- Magnetize the induction motor.
- Maintain the load.
- Compensate for the voltage losses (ohmic losses in the winding resistors) in the system.
- Induce a breakaway / accelerating / braking torque.

You can choose whether the voltage boost is to be active permanently (p1310) or only during acceleration (p1311). In addition, a one-off voltage boost in the first power up after pulse enable can be set via p1312.

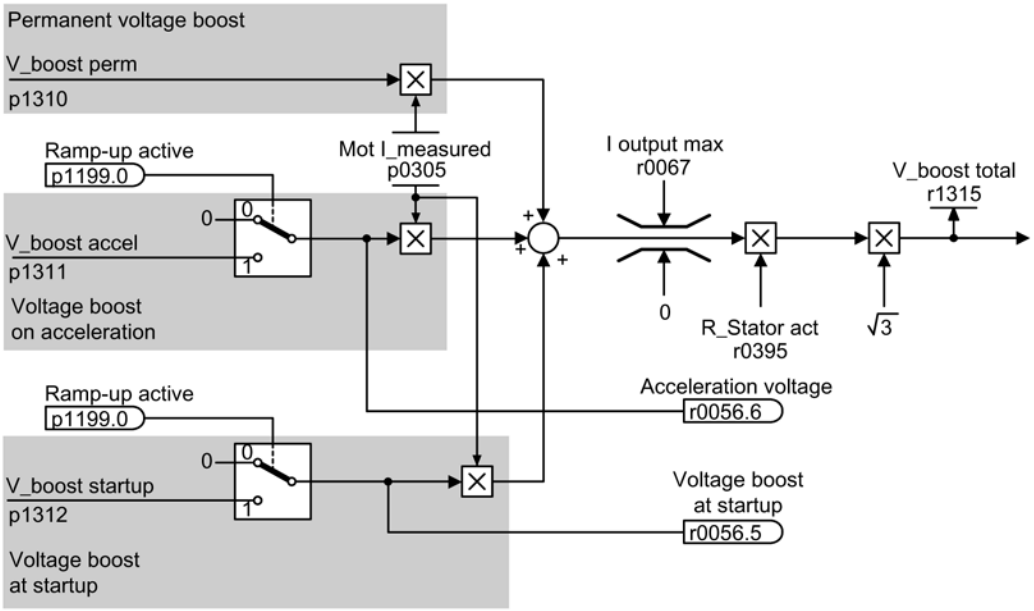


Figure 7-6 Voltage boost total

Note

Voltage boost effect

The voltage boost affects all V/f characteristics (p1300) from 0 to 7.

Note

Avoid thermal overload

If the voltage boost value is too high, this can result in a thermal overload of the motor winding.

Permanent voltage boost (p1310)

The voltage boost is active across the entire frequency range up to the rated frequency f_n; at higher frequencies, the value decreases continuously.

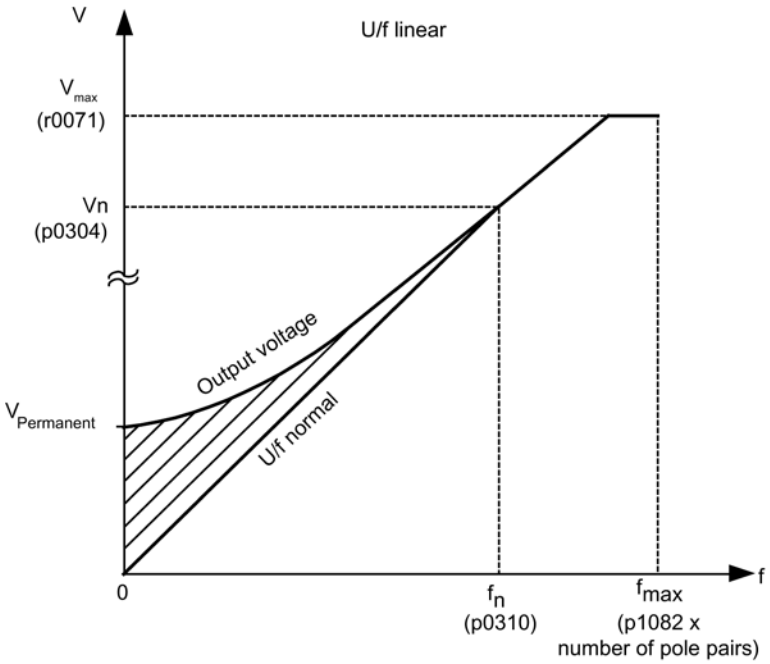


Figure 7-7 Permanent voltage boost (example: p1300 = 0, p1310 >0, p1311 = p1312 = 0)

Voltage boost during acceleration (p1311)

The voltage boost is only effective for one acceleration operation and only until the setpoint is reached.

Voltage boost is only effective if the signal "ramp-up active" (r1199.0 = 1) is present.

You can use parameter r0056.6 to observe whether the voltage boost is active during acceleration.

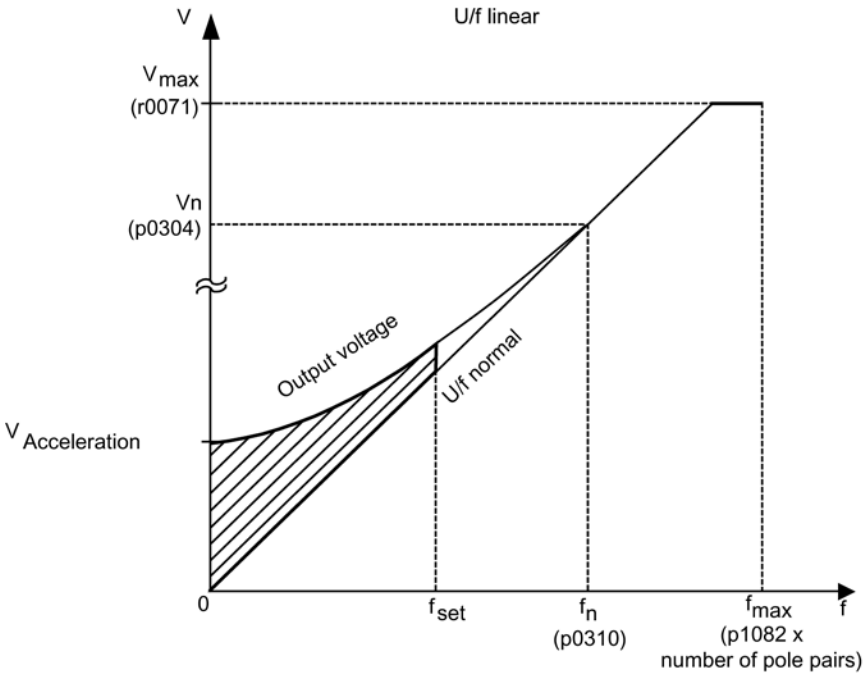


Figure 7-8 Voltage boost during acceleration (example: p1300 = 0, p1310 = 0, p1311 > 0)

Voltage boost at startup (p1312)

The voltage boost is only effective for the first acceleration operation after pulse enable and only until the setpoint is reached.

Voltage boost is only effective if the signal "ramp-up active" (r1199.0 = 1) is present.

You can use parameter r0056.5 to observe whether the voltage boost is active at startup.

Function diagram

FP 6300 V/f characteristic and voltage boost

Parameter

- r0056.5 Voltage boost at startup active/inactive
- r0056.6 Acceleration voltage active/inactive
- p0304 Rated motor voltage
- p0305 Rated motor current
- r0395 Stator resistance, actual
- p1310 Starting current (voltage boost) permanent
- p1311 Starting current (voltage boost) when accelerating
- p1312 Starting current (voltage boost) when starting
- r1315 Voltage boost total

7.3.2 Resonance damping

Description

Resonance damping damps oscillations in the active current, which often occur during no-load operation.

The resonance damping is active in a range from approximately 6% of the rated motor frequency (p0310). The switch-off frequency is determined by p1349.

For p1300 = 5 and 6 (textiles) the resonance damping is internally disabled in order to be able to precisely set the output frequency.

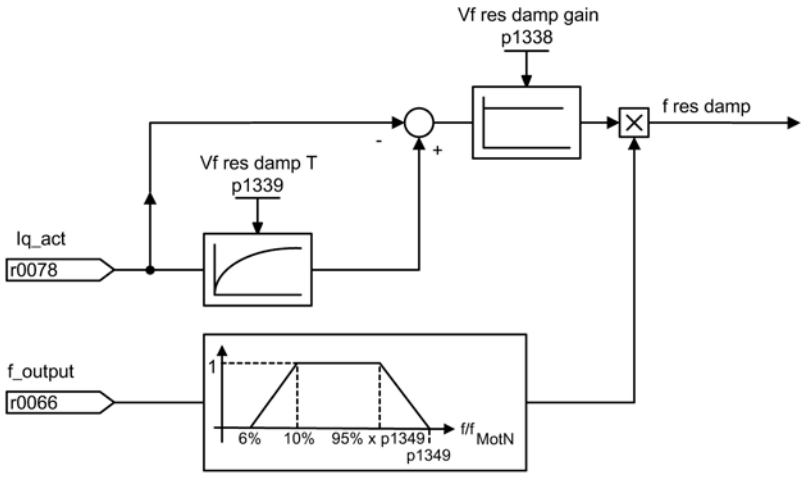


Figure 7-9 Resonance damping

Note

Automatic setting

When p1349 = 0, the changeover limit is automatically set to 95% of the rated motor frequency, but only up to 45 Hz.

Function diagram

FP 6310 Resonance damping and slip compensation

Parameters

- r0066 Output frequency
- r0078 Torque-generating actual current value
- p1338 V/f control resonance damping gain
- p1339 V/f control resonance damping filter time constant
- p1349 V/f control resonance damping maximum frequency

7.3.3 Slip compensation

Description

Slip compensation essentially keeps the speed of induction motors constant irrespective of the load (M_1 or M_2).
When the load is increased from M_1 to M_2, the setpoint frequency is increased automatically so that the resulting frequency and thus also the motor speed remain constant. For a decrease in the load from M_2 to M_1, the setpoint frequency is automatically decreased accordingly.

For p1300 = 4 and 7 (V/f controllers with ECO), the slip compensation must be activated to ensure correct operation.

For p1300 = 5 and 6 (textiles) the slip compensation is internally disabled in order to be able to precisely set the output frequency.

If a motor holding brake is applied, a setting value can be specified at the slip compensation output via p1351. If parameter p1351 > 0 then the slip compensation is switched on automatically (p1335 = 100%).

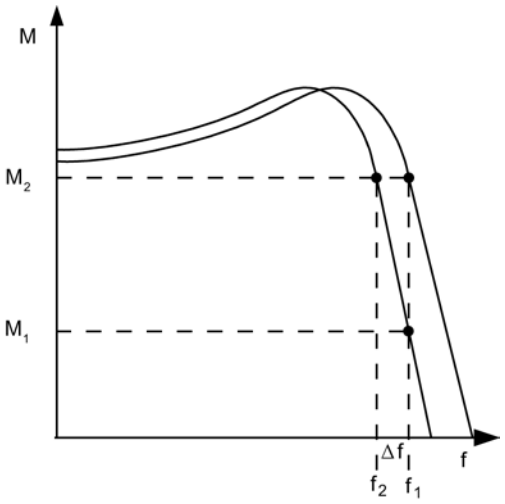


Figure 7-10 Slip compensation

Function diagram

FP 6310 Resonance damping and slip compensation

Parameters

- r0330 Rated motor slip
- p1334 Slip compensation start frequency
- p1335 Slip compensation, scaling
  p1335 = 0.0%: slip compensation is deactivated.
  p1335 = 100.0%: slip is fully compensated.
- p1336 Slip compensation limit value
- r1337 CO: Actual slip compensation
- p1351 CO: Motor holding brake start frequency

7.4 Vector speed/torque control with/without encoder

Description

Compared with V/f control, vector control offers the following benefits:

- Stability vis-à-vis load and setpoint changes
- Short rise times with setpoint changes (–> better command behavior)
- Short settling times with load changes (–> better disturbance characteristic)
- Acceleration and braking are possible with maximum adjustable torque
- Motor protection due to variable torque limitation in motor and regenerative mode
- Drive and braking torque controlled independently of the speed
- Maximum breakaway torque possible at speed 0

These benefits are available without speed feedback.

Vector control can be used with or without an encoder.

The following criteria indicate when an encoder is required:

- Maximum speed accuracy requirements
- Maximum dynamic response requirements
  - Better command behavior
  - Shortest settling times when disturbances occur
- Torque control is required in a control range greater than 1:10
- Allows a defined and/or variable torque for speeds below approx. 10% of the rated motor frequency (p0310) to be maintained.
- A speed controller is normally always required for applications in which an unknown speed can represent a safety risk (where a load can be dropped, e.g. lifting gear, elevators, etc).

With regard to setpoint input, vector control is divided into:

- Speed control
- Torque/current control (in short: torque control)

7.4.1 Vector control without encoder

Description

For sensorless vector control only (SLVC: Sensorless Vector Control), the position of the flux and actual speed must be determined via the electric motor model. The model is buffered by the incoming currents and voltages. At low frequencies (approx. 1 Hz), the model cannot determine the speed.

For this reason and due to uncertainties in the model parameters or inaccurate measurements, the system is switched from closed-loop to open-loop operation in this range.

The changeover between closed-loop/open-loop operation is controlled on the basis of time and frequency conditions (p1755, p1756, p1758 - only for induction motors). The system does not wait for the time condition to elapse if the setpoint frequency at the ramp-function generator input and the actual frequency are below p1755 x (1 - (p1756 / 100 %)) simultaneously.

Transition from open-loop to closed-loop operation always takes place when the changeover speed in p1755 (characteristic "1" in the figure below). If the speed increase is set very slow and a changeover delay time >0 is set in p1759, transition takes place after the changeover delay time (characteristic "2" in the figure below).

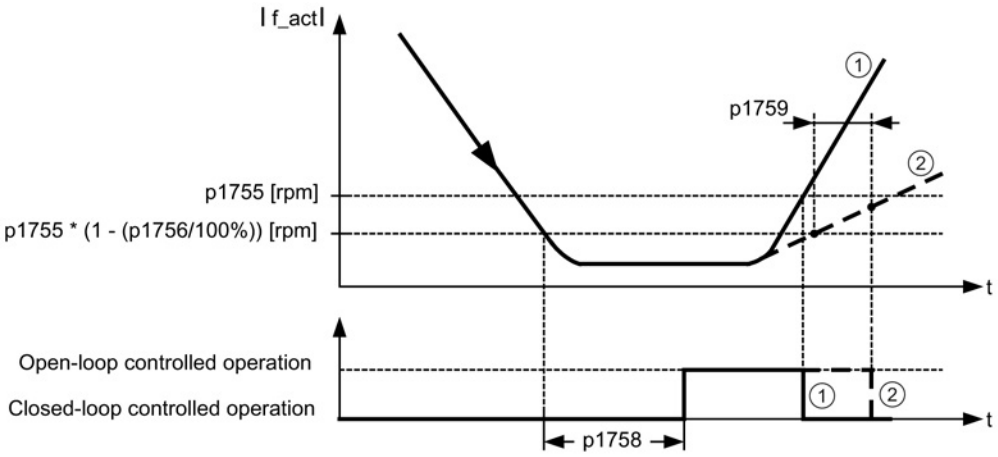


Figure 7-11 Changeover conditions

Setting the torque setpoint

In open-loop operation, the calculated actual speed value is the same as the setpoint value. For vertical loads and when accelerating, parameters p1610 (static torque setpoint) and p1611 (additional acceleration torque) must be adjusted to the necessary maximum torque in order to generate the static or dynamic load torque of the drive. If, on induction motors, p1610 is set to 0%, only the magnetizing current r0331 is injected; at a value of 100%, the rated motor current p0305 is injected.

For permanent-magnet synchronous motors, at p1610 = 0%, a pre-control absolute value derived from the supplementary torque r1515 remains instead of the magnetizing current for induction motors. To ensure that the drive does not stall during acceleration, p1611 can be

increased or acceleration pre-control for the speed controller can be used. This is also advisable to ensure that the motor is not subject to thermal overload at low speeds.

If the moment of inertia of the drive is almost constant, acceleration precontrol using p1496 offers more advantages than the supplementary accelerating torque with p1611. For the rotating measurement, the moment of inertia of the drive is determined using p1900 = 3 and p1960 = 1.

Vector control without a speed sensor has the following characteristics at low frequencies:

- Closed-loop controlled operation for passive loads up to approx. 0 Hz output frequency (p0500 = 2), for p1750.2 = 1 and p1750.3 = 1).
- Start an induction motor in the closed-loop controlled mode (after the motor has been completely excited), if the speed setpoint before the ramp-function generator is greater than p1755.
- Reversing without the need to change into the open-loop controlled mode is possible, if the range of the changeover speed (p1755) is passed through in a shorter time than the selected changeover delay time (p1758), and the speed setpoint in front of the ramp-function generator lies outside the open-loop controlled speed range (p1755).
- In the closed-loop torque controlled mode, at low speeds, the system always switches over into the open-loop controlled mode.

Note

Precondition

In this case, the speed setpoint upstream of the ramp-function generator must be greater than the changeover speed in p1755.

Closed-loop operation up to approx. 0 Hz (settable via parameter p1755) and the ability to start or reverse at 0 Hz directly in closed-loop operation (settable via parameter p1750) result in the following benefits:

- No switchover operation required within closed-loop control (bumpless behavior, no frequency dips, no discontinuities in the torque).
- Closed-loop speed control without encoder down to and including 0 Hz
- Passive loads down to a frequency of 0 Hz
- Steady-state closed-loop speed control down to approx. 0 Hz possible
- Higher dynamic performance when compared to open-loop controlled operation

Note

Automatic changeover

If, in the closed-loop controlled mode, start from 0 Hz or reversing takes longer than 2 s, or the time set in p1758 - then the system automatically switches over from closed-loop controlled into open-loop controlled operation.

Note

Operation in sensorless torque control

Operation in sensor less torque control only makes sense if, in the speed range below the changeover speed of the motor model (p1755), the setpoint torque is greater than the load torque. The drive must be able to follow the setpoint and the associated setpoint speed (p1499).

Closed-loop operation down to standstill for passive loads

By restricting to a passive load at the starting point, it is possible to maintain stationary closed-loop operation down to zero frequency (standstill) without having to change over to open-loop operation.

Parameter p1750.2 must be set to 1.

Closed-loop control without changeover is restricted to applications with passive load: These include applications in which the load cannot produce a regenerative torque on startup and the motor comes to a standstill when pulses are inhibited; for example, moments of inertia, brakes, pumps, fans, centrifuges, extruders, etc.

Standstill of any duration is possible without holding current, only the motor magnetization current is impressed.

Steady-state regenerative operation at a frequency close to 0 Hz is not possible.

It is also possible to select sensorless control for passive loads during commissioning by setting p0500 = 2 (technology application = passive loads (for sensorless control down to f = 0)).

This function is activated automatically if quick commissioning is exited with p3900 > 0, or if automatic calculation is called (p0340 = 1, 3, 5 or p0578 = 1).

Blocking drives

If the load torque is higher than the torque limiting of the sensorless vector control, the drive is braked to zero speed (standstill). To avoid open-loop controlled mode being selected after the time p1758, p1750.6 can be set to 1. Under certain circumstances p2177 (Motor blocked delay time) must be increased.

Note

Exception for reversing drives

It is not permissible to use this setting if the load can force the drive to reverse.

Active loads

Active loads, which can reverse the drive, e.g. hoisting gear, must be started in the open-loop speed control mode. In this case, bit p1750.6 must be set to 0 (open-loop controlled operation when the motor is blocked). The static (steady state) torque setpoint (p1610) must be greater than the maximum occurring load torque.

Note

Loads that can drive the motor

For applications with high regenerative load torques at low speeds, p1750.7 can also be set to 1 As a result, the speed changeover limits of the motor model are increased and a faster changeover can be made into open-loop controlled operation.

Permanent-magnet synchronous motors

Standard procedure: open-loop controlled operation at low speeds

Normally, permanent-magnet synchronous motors are started and reversed in open-loop controlled operation. The changeover speeds are set to 10% or 5% of the rated motor speed. Changeover is not subject to any time condition (p1758 is not evaluated). Prevailing load torques (motor or regenerative) are adapted in open-loop operation, facilitating constant-torque crossover to closed-loop operation even under high static loads. Whenever the pulses are enabled, the rotor position is identified.

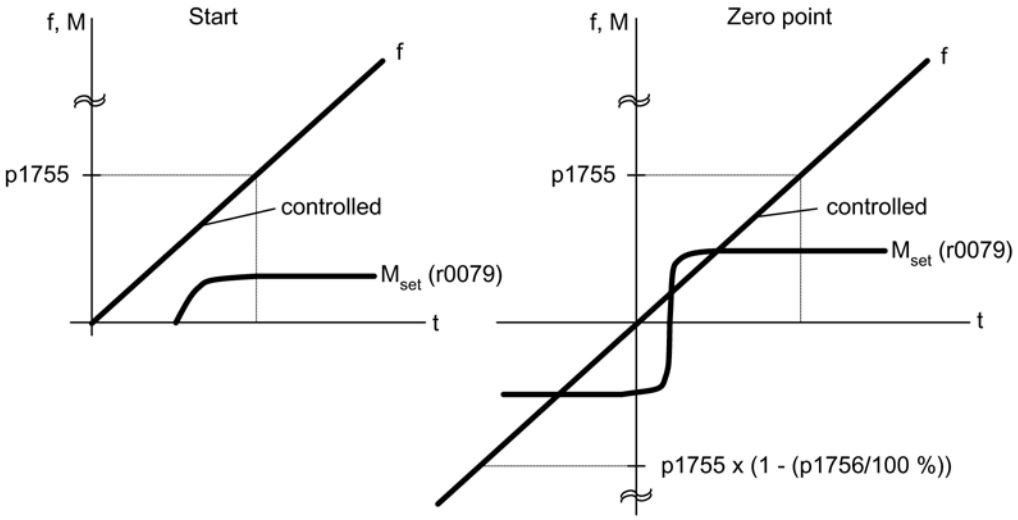


Figure 7-12 Zero crossing in open-loop controlled operation at low speeds

Extended procedure: closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed

By superimposing high-frequency pulses on the driving fundamental voltage and evaluating the resulting offset pulse in the machine current, it is possible to determine the continuous rotor position up to frequency zero (standstill).

1FW4 and 1PH8 series Siemens torque motors can be started from standstill with any load up to the rated torque or even hold the load at standstill.

The procedure is suitable for motors with internal magnets.

Note

Use of a sine-wave filter

If a sine-wave filter is used, the open-loop controlled procedure should be used.

The following advantages are obtained by maintaining closed-loop controlled operation:

- No switchover required within closed-loop control (smooth switching, no discontinuities in the torque).
- Sensorless closed-loop speed and torque control down to and including 0 Hz
- Higher dynamic performance when compared to open-loop controlled operation.
- Encoderless operation of drive line-ups (e.g. in the paper industry, master-slave operation).
- Active (including hanging/suspended) loads down to zero frequency.

Supplementary conditions for the use of third-party motors:

- Experience shows that the procedure is very suitable for motors with magnets within the rotor core (IPMSM - Interior Permanent Magnet Synchronous Motors).
- The ratio of stator quadrature reactance (Lsq): Stator direct-axis reactance (Lsd) must be > 1 (recommendation: minimum > 1.5).
- The possible operating limits of the procedure depend upon up to what current the asymmetrical reactance ratio (Lsq:Lsd) is retained in the motor. If the procedure should be operable up to the rated motor torque, then the reactance ratio must be retained up to the rated motor current.

A prerequisite for optimum behavior is the entry of the following parameters:

- Enter the saturation characteristic: p0362 - p0369
- Enter the load characteristic: p0398, p0399

Commissioning sequence for closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed:

- Run through the commissioning with motor identification at standstill.
- Enter the parameters for the saturation characteristic and the load characteristic.
- Activate closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed via parameter p1750 bit 5.

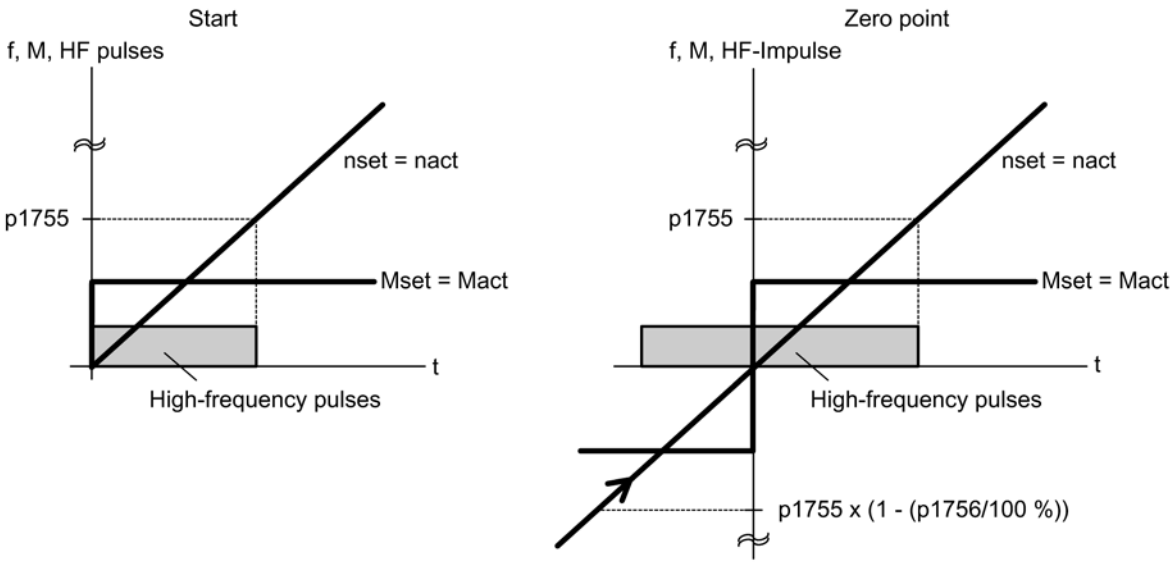


Figure 7-13 Zero crossing in closed-loop controlled operation to zero speed

Function diagram

FP 6730	Interface to Motor Module (ASM), p0300 = 1)
FP 6731	Interface to Motor Module (PEM), p0300 = 2)

Parameter

- p0305 Rated motor current
- r0331 Motor magnetizing current/short-circuit current
- p0362 Saturation characteristic flux 1
  ... ...
  p0365 Saturation characteristic flux 4
- p0366 Saturation characteristic I_mag 1
  ... ...
  p0369 Saturation characteristic I_mag 4
- p0398 Magnet angle. Decoupling (cross saturation) coefficient 1
- p0398 Magnet angle. Decoupling (cross saturation) coefficient 3
- p0500 Technology application
- p0578 Calculating technology/unit-dependent parameters
- p1605 Pulse technique pattern configuration
- r1606 CO: Actual pulse technique pattern
- p1607 Pulse technique stimulus
- r1608 CO: Pulse technique answer
- p1610 Torque setpoint static (SLVC)
- p1611 Supplementary accelerating torque (SLVC)
- p1750 Motor model configuration
- p1755 Motor model changeover speed sensorless operation
- p1756 Motor model changeover speed hysteresis
- p1758 Motor model changeover delay time, closed/open-loop control
- p1759 Motor model changeover delay time open/closed loop control
- r1762.1 Motor model deviation component 1 - deviation model 2
- p1798 Motor model pulse technique speed adaptation Kp
- p1810.3 Modulator configuration - current measurement oversampling activated (for pulse technique PEM)

7.4.2 Vector control with encoder

Description

Benefits of vector control with an encoder:

- The speed can be controlled right down to 0 Hz (standstill)
- Stable control response throughout the entire speed range
- Allows a defined and/or variable torque for speeds below approx. 10 % of the rated motor speed to be maintained
- Compared with speed control without an encoder, the dynamic response of drives with an encoder is significantly better because the speed is measured directly and integrated in the model created for the current components.

Motor model change

A model change takes place between the current model and the observer model within the speed range p1752 x (100 % - p1753) and p1752. In the current-model range (i.e., at lower speeds), torque accuracy depends on whether thermal tracking of the rotor resistance is carried out correctly. In the observer-model range and at speeds of less than approx. 20% of the rated speed, torque accuracy depends primarily on whether thermal tracking of the stator resistance is carried out correctly. If the resistance of the supply cable is greater than 20 to 30 % of the total resistance, this should be entered in p0352 before motor data identification is carried out (p1900/p1910).

To deactivate thermal adaptation, set p0620 = 0. This may be necessary if adaptation cannot function accurately enough due to the following general conditions. For example, if a KTY sensor is not used for temperature detection and the ambient temperatures fluctuate significantly or the overtemperatures of the motor (p0626 to p0628) deviate significantly from the default settings due to the design of the motor.

Function diagram

FP 4715	Actual speed value and rotor position measurement, motor encoder
FD 6030	Speed setpoint, droop
FP 6040	Speed controller with/without encoder
FP 6050	Speed controller adaptation (Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation)
FP 6060	Torque setpoint
FP 6490	Speed control configuration

7.4.3 Actual speed value filter

Description

The speed actual value filter is used to suppress cyclic disturbance variables in speed acquisition.

The speed actual value filter can be set as follows:

- Low-pass 2nd order (PT2: -40 dB/decade)
- General 2nd order filter

Bandstop and low-pass with reduction are converted into the parameters of the general 2nd order filter using STARTER.

The speed actual value filter is activated with p1656.4 = 1. The properties of the speed actual value filter are set in p1677 to p1681.

As long as changes to the data of the actual speed value filter are being made, the conversion of the new filter data can be prevented using p1699 = 1.
When p1699 = 0 is set, the calculation will be performed and the new values applied.

Note

For the vector control, there are 2 current setpoint filters and one actual speed value filter. The actual speed value filter has been allocated the number "5".

Function diagrams

FP 4715 Encoder evaluation - speed actual value and pole position sensing, motor encoder (encoder1), n_act_filter 5

Parameter

- p1655[4] CI: Speed actual value filter 5 natural frequency tuning
- p1656.4 Speed actual value filter 5 activation
- p1677 Actual speed value filter 5 type
- p1678 Actual speed value filter 5 denominator natural frequency
- p1679 Actual speed value filter 5 denominator damping
- p1680 Actual speed value filter 5 numerator natural frequency
- p1681 Actual speed value filter 5 numerator damping
- p1699 Filter data acceptance

7.4.4 Speed controller

Description

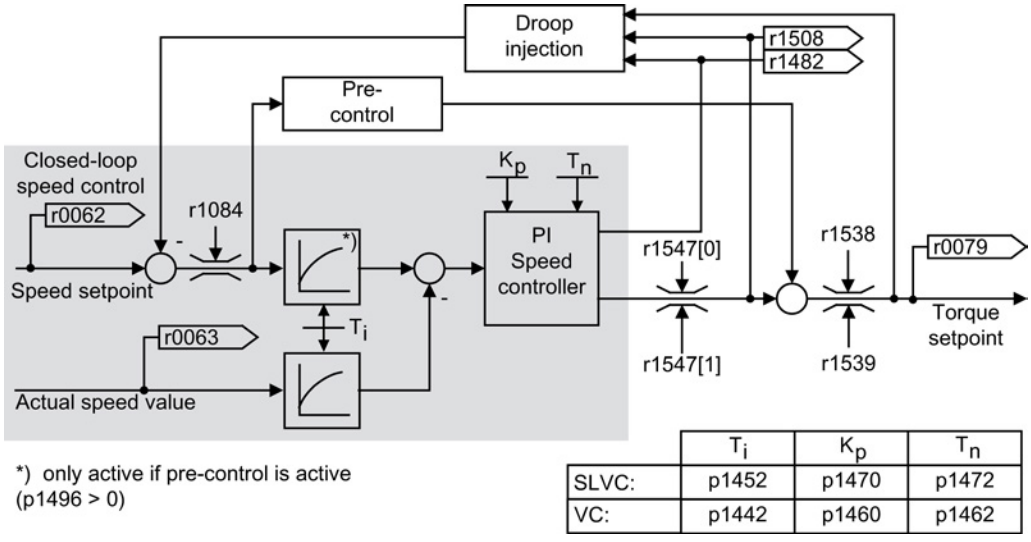
Both closed-loop control techniques with and without encoder (SLVC, VC) have the same speed controller structure that contains the following components as kernel:

- PI controller
- Speed controller pre-control
- Droop Function

The torque setpoint is generated from the total of the output variables and reduced to the permissible magnitude by means of torque setpoint limitation.

The speed controller receives its setpoint (r0062) from the setpoint channel and its actual value (r0063) either directly from the speed actual value encoder (vector control with encoder) or indirectly via the motor model (encoderless vector control). The system difference is increased by the PI controller and, in conjunction with the pre-control, results in the torque setpoint.

When the load torque increases, the speed setpoint is reduced proportionately when the droop function is active, which means that the single drive within a group (two or more mechanically connected motors) is relieved when the torque becomes too great.



	T_i	K_p	T_n
SLVC:	p1452	p1470	p1472
VC:	p1442	p1460	p1462

Figure 7-14 Speed controller

The optimum speed controller setting can be determined via the automatic speed controller optimization function (p1900 = 1, rotating measurement).

If the moment of inertia has been specified, the speed controller (Kp, Tn) can be calculated by means of automatic parameterization (p0340 = 4). The controller parameters are defined in accordance with the symmetrical optimum as follows:

Tn = 4 x Ts

Kp = 0.5 x r0345 / Ts = 2 x r0345 / Tn

Ts = Sum of the short delay times (includes p1442 and p1452).

If vibrations occur with these settings, the speed controller gain (Kp) will need to be reduced manually. Actual-speed-value smoothing can also be increased (standard procedure for gearless or high-frequency torsion vibrations) and the controller calculation performed again because this value is also used to calculate Kp and Tn.

The following relationships apply for optimization:

- If Kp is increased, the controller becomes faster, although overshoot is increased. However, signal ripples and vibrations in the speed control loop will increase.
- Although reducing Tn will also speed up the controller, it will increase overshoot.

When setting speed control manually, you are advised to define the dynamic response via Kp (and actual-speed-value smoothing) first, so that the integral time can subsequently be reduced as much as possible. Please remember that closed-loop control must also remain stable in the field-weakening range.

To suppress any vibrations that occur in the speed controller, it is usually only necessary to increase the smoothing time in p1452 for operation without an encoder or p1442 for operation with an encoder, or reduce the controller gain.

The integral output of the speed controller can be monitored via r1482 and the limited controller output via r1508 (torque setpoint).

Note

Reduced dynamic response for encoderless operation

In comparison with speed control with an encoder, the dynamic response of drives without an encoder is significantly reduced. The actual speed is derived by means of a model calculation based on the converter output variables for current and voltage that have a corresponding interference level. To this end, the actual speed must be adjusted by means of filter algorithms in the software.

Function diagram

FP 6040 Speed controller with/without encoder

Parameter

- r0062 CO: Speed setpoint after the filter
- r0063 CO: Actual speed value smoothed
- p0340 Automatic calculation of motor/control parameters
- r0345 Rated motor startup time
- p1442 Speed controller actual speed value smoothing time
- p1452 Speed controller actual speed value smoothing time (without encoder)
- p1460 Speed controller P gain with encoder
- p1462 Speed controller integral time with encoder

- p1470 Speed controller encoderless operation P gain
- p1472 Speed controller encoderless operation integral time
- r1482 CO: Speed controller I torque output
- r1508 CO: Torque setpoint before supplementary torque
- p1960 Rotating measurement selection

Examples of speed controller settings

A few examples of speed controller settings with vector control without encoders (p1300 = 20) are provided below. These should not be considered to be generally valid and must be checked in terms of the control response required.

- **Fans (large centrifugal masses) and pumps**

  Kp (p1470) = 2 … 10

  Tn (p1472) = 250 … 500 ms

  The Kp = 2 and Tn = 500 ms settings result in asymptotic approximation of the actual speed to the setpoint speed after a setpoint step change. During many simple control procedures, this is satisfactory for pumps and fans.

- **Stone mills, separators (large centrifugal masses)**

  Kp (p1470) = 12 … 20

  Tn (p1472) = 500 … 1000 ms

- **Kneader drives**

  Kp (p1470) = 10

  Tn (p1472) = 200 … 400 ms

  Note

  Check speed control gain

  We recommend checking the effective speed control gain (r1468) during operation. If this value changes during operation, the Kp adaptation is being used (p1400.5 = 1). Kp adaptation can if necessary be deactivated or its behavior changed.

- **When operating with encoder (p1300 = 21)**

  A smoothing value for the actual speed value (p1442) = 5 … 20 ms ensures quieter operations for motors with gear units.

7.4.4.1 Speed controller pre-control (integrated pre-control with balancing)

Description

The command behavior of the speed control loop can be improved by calculating the accelerating torque from the speed setpoint and connecting it on the line side of the speed controller. This torque setpoint mv is applied directly as an additive reference variable on the input side/supply side of the current controller by means of adaptation elements (enabled via p1496).
The torque setpoint (mv) is calculated from:

mv = p1496 x J x (dn/dt) = p1496 x p0341 x p0342 x (dn/dt)

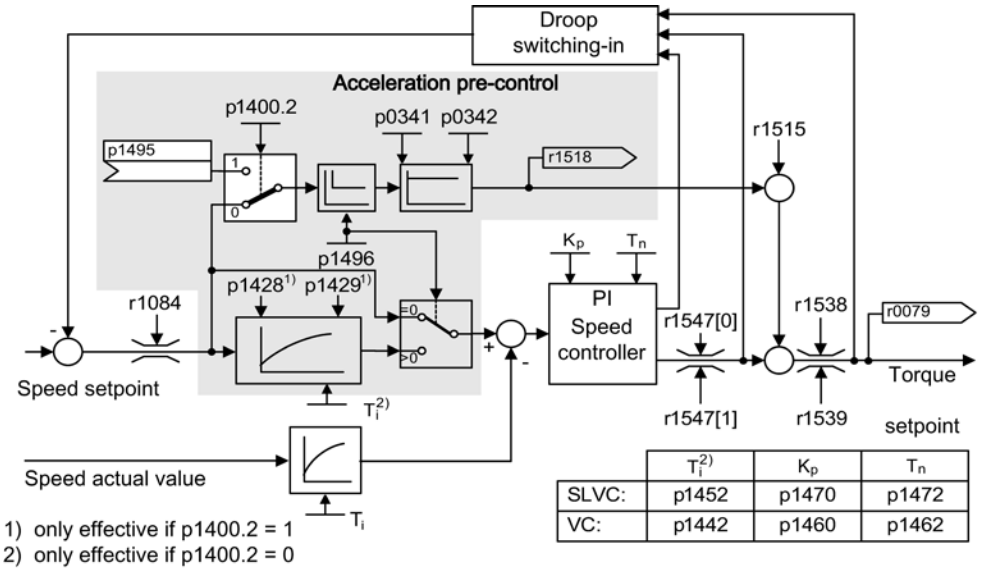
The motor moment of inertia p0341 is calculated when commissioning the drive system. The factor p0342 between the total moment of inertia J and the motor moment of inertia must be determined manually or by optimizing the speed controller. The acceleration is calculated from the speed difference over the time dn/dt.

Note

When using speed controller optimization

When speed controller optimization is carried out, the ratio between the total moment of inertia and that of the motor (p0342) is determined and acceleration pre-control scaling (p1496) is set to 100 %.

If p1400.2 = p1400.3 = 0, then the pre-control balancing is automatically set.



	T_i 2)	K_p	T_n
SLVC:	p1452	p1470	p1472
VC:	p1442	p1460	p1462

Figure 7-15 Speed controller with pre-control

When correctly adapted, when accelerating, the speed controller only has to compensate disturbance variables in its control loop. This is achieved with a relatively minor controlled variable change at the controller output.

The effect of the pre-control variable can be adapted according to the application using the weighting factor p1496. For p1496 = 100%, pre-control is calculated according to the motor and load moment of inertia (p0341, p0342). A balancing filter is used automatically to prevent the speed controller acting against the injected torque setpoint. The time constant of the balancing filter corresponds to the equivalent delay time of the speed control loop. Speed controller pre-control is correctly set (p1496 = 100%, calibration using p0342) if the I component of the speed controller (r1482) does not change while ramping-up or ramping-down in the range n > 20% x p0310. Thus, pre-control allows a new speed setpoint to be approached without overshoot (prerequisite: torque limiting does switch in and the moment of inertia remains constant).

If the speed controller is pre-controlled by means of injection, the speed setpoint (r0062) is delayed with the same smoothing time (p1442 or p1452) as the actual value (r1445). This ensures that no target/actual difference (r0064) occurs at the controller input during acceleration, which would be attributable solely to the signal propagation time.

When speed pre-control is activated, the speed setpoint must be specified continuously or without a higher interference level (avoids sudden torque changes). An appropriate signal can be generated by smoothing the speed setpoint or activating ramp-function generator rounding p1130 – p1131.

The startup time r0345 ($T_{startup}$) is a measure for the total moment of inertia J of the machine and describes the time during which the unloaded drive can be accelerated with the rated motor torque r0333 ($M_{mot,rated}$) from standstill to the rated motor speed p0311 ($n_{mot,rated}$).

r0345 = $T_{startup}$ = J x (2 x π x $n_{mot,rated}$) / (60 x $M_{mot,rated}$) = p0341 x p0342 x (2 x π x p0311) / (60 x r0333)

The ramp-up and ramp-down times should always be set to values larger than the startup time.

Note

Setting the ramp-function generator

The ramp-up and ramp-down times (p1120; p1121) of the ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel should be set accordingly so that the motor speed can track the setpoint during acceleration and braking. This will optimize the function of speed controller pre-control.

Acceleration pre-control using a connector input (p1495) is activated by the parameter settings p1400.2 = 1 and p1400.3 = 0. p1428 (dead time) and p1429 (time constant) can be set for balancing purposes.

Function diagram

FP 6031 Precontrol balancing reference/acceleration model

Parameter

- p0311 Rated motor speed
- r0333 Rated motor torque
- p0341 Motor moment of inertia
- p0342 Ratio between the total and motor moment of inertia
- r0345 Rated motor startup time
- p1400.2 Acceleration pre-control source
- p1428 Speed pre-control balancing dead time
- p1429 Speed pre-control balancing time constant
- p1496 Acceleration pre-control scaling
- r1518 Acceleration torque

7.4.4.2 Reference model

Description

The reference model is activated with p1400.3 = 1.

The reference model is used to emulate the speed control loop with a P speed controller.

The loop emulation can be set in p1433 to p1435. It becomes effective if p1437 is connected to the output of the model r1436.

The reference model delays the setpoint-actual value deviation for the integral component of the speed controller so that settling (stabilizing) operations can be suppressed.

The reference model can also be externally emulated and the external signal entered via p1437.

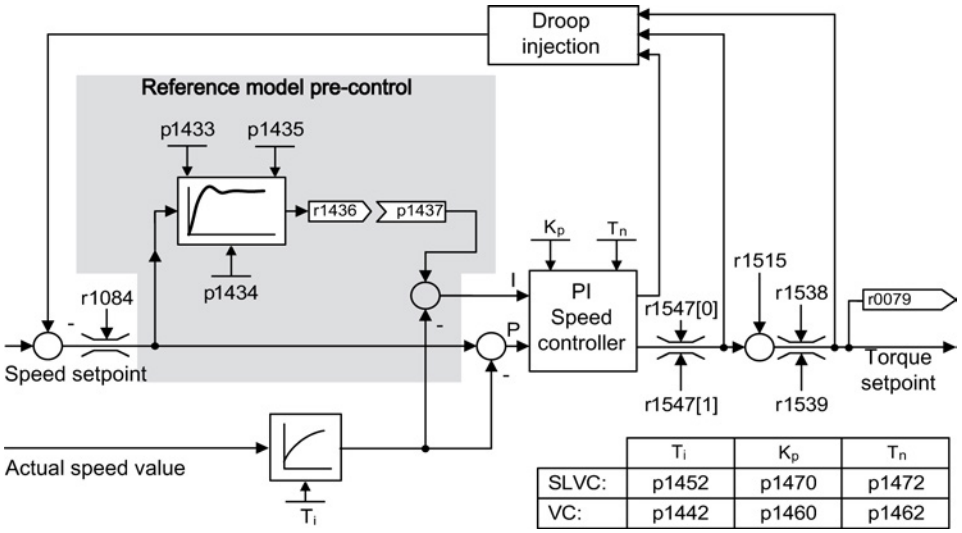


Figure 7-16 Reference model

Function diagram

FP 6031 Precontrol balancing reference/acceleration model

Parameter

- p1400.3 Reference model speed setpoint I component
- p1433 Speed controller reference model natural frequency
- p1434 Speed controller reference model damping
- p1435 Speed controller reference model dead time
- r1436 Speed controller reference model speed setpoint output
- p1437 Speed controller reference model I component input

7.4.4.3 Speed controller adaptation

Description

Two adaptation methods are available, namely free Kp_n adaptation and speed-dependent Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation.

Free Kp_n adaptation is also active in "operation without encoder" mode and is used in "operation with encoder" mode as an additional factor for speed-dependent Kp_n adaptation.

Speed-dependent Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation is only active in "operation with encoder" mode and also affects the Tn_n value.

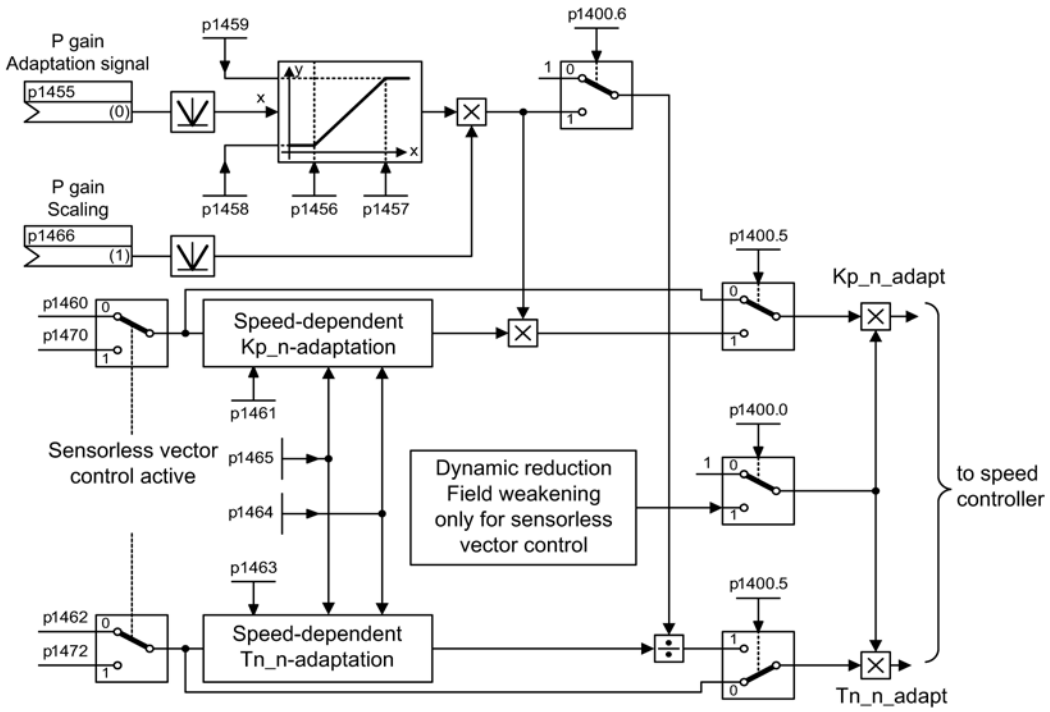


Figure 7-17 Free Kp adaptation

A dynamic response reduction in the field-weakening range can be activated in encoderless operation (p1400.0). This is activated when the speed controller is optimized in order to achieve a greater dynamic response in the base speed range.

Example of speed-dependent adaptation

Note

Only for operation with encoder

This type of adaptation is only active in "operation with encoder" mode.

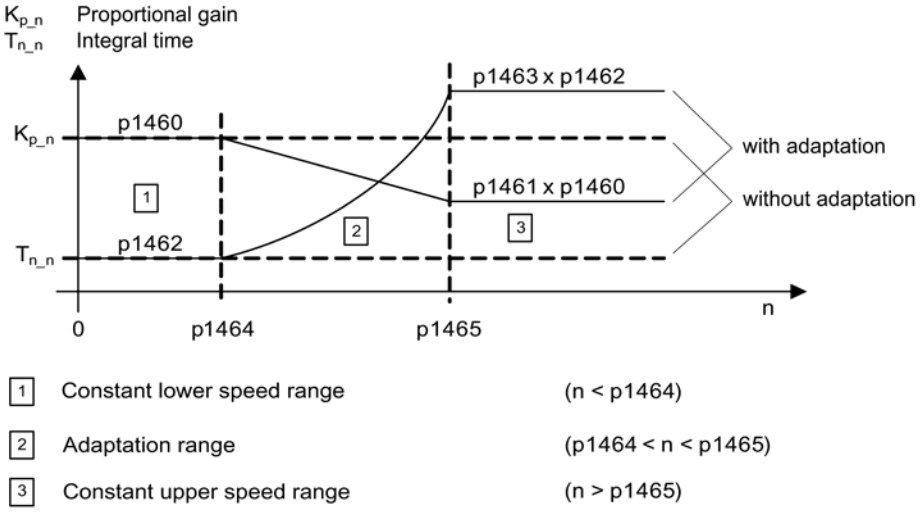


Figure 7-18 Example of speed-dependent adaptation

Function diagram

FP 6050 Speed controller adaptation (Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation)

Parameter

- p1400.5 Speed control configuration: Kp/Tn adaptation active
- p1400.6 Speed control configuration: Free Tn adaptation active

Free Kp_n adaptation

- p1455 Speed controller P gain adaptation signal
- p1456 Speed controller P gain adaptation lower starting point
- p1457 Speed controller P gain adaptation upper starting point
- p1458 Adaptation factor lower
- p1459 Adaptation factor upper
- p1470 Speed controller encoderless operation P gain

Speed-dependent Kp_n/Tn_n adaptation (VC only)

- p1460 Speed controller P gain adaptation speed lower
- p1461 Speed controller Kp adaptation speed, upper scaling
- p1462 Speed controller integral time adaptation speed lower
- p1463 Speed controller Tn adaptation speed, upper scaling
- p1464 Speed controller adaptation speed lower
- p1465 Speed controller adaptation speed upper
- p1466 Speed controller P gain scaling

Dynamic response reduction field weakening (encoderless VC only)

- p1400.0 Speed control configuration: Automatic Kp/Tn adaptation active

7.4.4.4 Droop function

Description

Droop (enabled via p1492) ensures that the speed setpoint is reduced proportionally as the load torque increases.

The droop function has a torque limiting effect on a drive that is mechanically coupled to a different speed (e.g. guide roller on a goods train). In this way, a very effective load distribution can also be realized in connection with the torque setpoint of a leading speed-controlled drive. In contrast to torque control or load distribution with overriding and limitation, with the appropriate setting, such a load distribution controls even a smooth mechanical connection.

This method is only suitable to a limited extent for drives that are accelerated and braked with significant changes in speed.

The droop feedback is used, for example, in applications in which two or more motors are connected mechanically or operate with a common shaft and fulfill the above requirements. It limits the torque differences that can occur as a result of the mechanical connection between the motors by modifying the speeds of the individual motors (drive is relieved when the torque becomes too great).

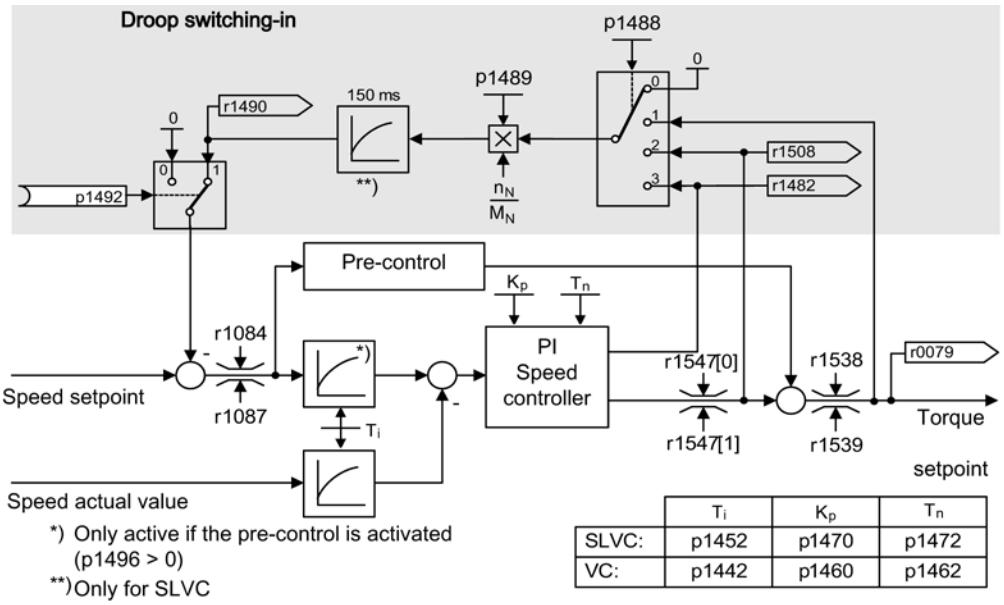


Figure 7-19 Speed controller with droop

Precondition

- All connected drives must be operated with vector and speed control (with or without speed actual value encoder).
- The setpoints at the ramp function generators of the mechanically connected drives must be identical; the ramp function generators must have identical ramp-up and ramp-down times.

Function diagram

FP 6030 Speed setpoint, droop

Parameter

- r0079 Total speed setpoint
- r1482 Speed controller I torque output
- p1488 Droop input source
- p1489 Droop feedback scaling
- r1490 Droop feedback speed reduction
- p1492 Droop feedback enable
- r1508 Torque setpoint before supplementary torque

7.4.4.5 Open actual speed value

Description

Via parameter p1440 (CI: speed controller, speed actual value) is the signal source for the speed actual value of the speed controller. The unsmoothed actual speed value r0063[0] has been preset as the signal source in the factory.

Depending on the machine, parameter p1440 can be used, for example, to switch on a filter in the actual value channel or feed in an external actual speed value.

Parameter r1443 is used to display the actual speed value present at p1440.

Note

Feed in an external actual speed value

When infeeding an external actual speed value, care should be taken that the monitoring functions continue to be derived from the motor model.

Behavior for speed control with an encoder (p1300 = 21)

A motor encoder must always be available for the speed or position signal of the motor model (e.g. evaluation via SMC, see p0400). The actual speed of the motor (r0061) and the position information for synchronous motors still come from this motor encoder and are not influenced by the setting in p1440.

Interconnection of p1440:
When interconnecting connector input p1440 with an external actual speed value, ensure the speed scaling is the same (p2000).

The external speed signal should correspond to the average speed of the motor encoder (r0061).

Behavior for speed control without an encoder (p1300 = 20)

Depending on the transmission path of the external speed signal, dead times will accumulate; these dead times must be taken into account in the speed controller's parameter assignment (p1470, p1472) and can lead to commensurate losses in dynamic performance.
Signal transmission times must therefore be minimized.

p1750.2 = 1 should be set so that the speed controller is also able to work at standstill (closed-loop controlled operation to zero frequency for passive loads). Otherwise, at low speeds it switches over to speed-controlled operation, so that the speed controller is switched off and the measured actual speed no longer has an influence.

Monitoring of the speed deviation between motor model and external speed

The external actual speed (r1443) is compared with the actual speed of the motor model (r2169). If the deviation is greater than the tolerance threshold set in p3236, after the switch-off delay time set in p3238 expires, fault F07937 (Drive: Speed deviation motor model to external speed) is generated and the drive switched-off corresponding to the set response (factory setting: OFF2).

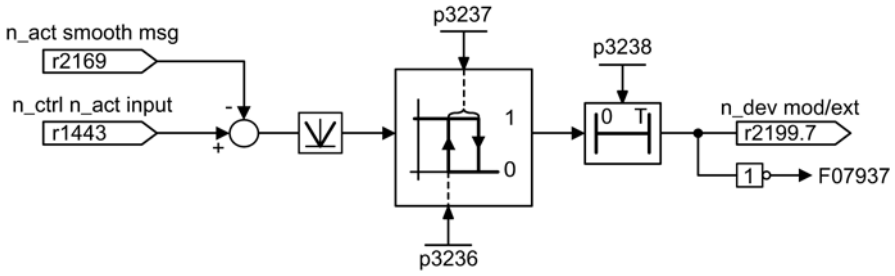


Figure 7-20 Monitoring "Speed deviation model / external in tolerance"

Function diagram

FP 6040	Vector control – speed controller with/without encoder
FP 8012	Signals and monitoring function – Torque messages, motor blocked/stalled

Parameter

- r0063[0] Actual speed value unsmoothed
- p1440 CI: Speed controller actual speed value
- p1442 Speed controller actual speed value smoothing time
- r1443 CO: Speed controller actual speed value at actual value input
- p1452 Speed controller actual speed value smoothing time (without encoder)
- r2169 CO: Actual speed value smoothed messages
- r2199.7 Speed deviation model / external in tolerance
- p3236 Speed threshold 7
- p3237 Hysteresis speed 7
- p3238 Switch-off delay n_act_motor model = n_act_external

7.4.5 Closed-loop torque control

Description

For sensorless closed-loop speed control (p1300 = 20) or closed-loop speed control with encoder VC (p1300 = 21), it is possible to change over to closed-loop torque control using BICO parameter p1501. It is not possible to change over between closed-loop speed and torque control if closed-loop torque control is directly selected with p1300 = 22 or 23. The torque setpoint and/or supplementary setpoint can be entered using BICO parameter p1503 (CI: torque setpoint) or p1511 (CI: supplementary torque setpoint). The supplementary torque acts both for closed-loop torque as well as for the closed-loop speed control. As a result of this characteristic, a pre-control torque can be implemented for the closed-loop speed control using the supplementary torque setpoint.

Note

No assignment to fixed torque setpoints

For safety reasons, assignments to fixed torque setpoints are currently not possible.

Note

Regenerative energy without feedback capability

If energy is regenerated and cannot be injected back into the line supply, then a Braking Module with connected braking resistor must be used.

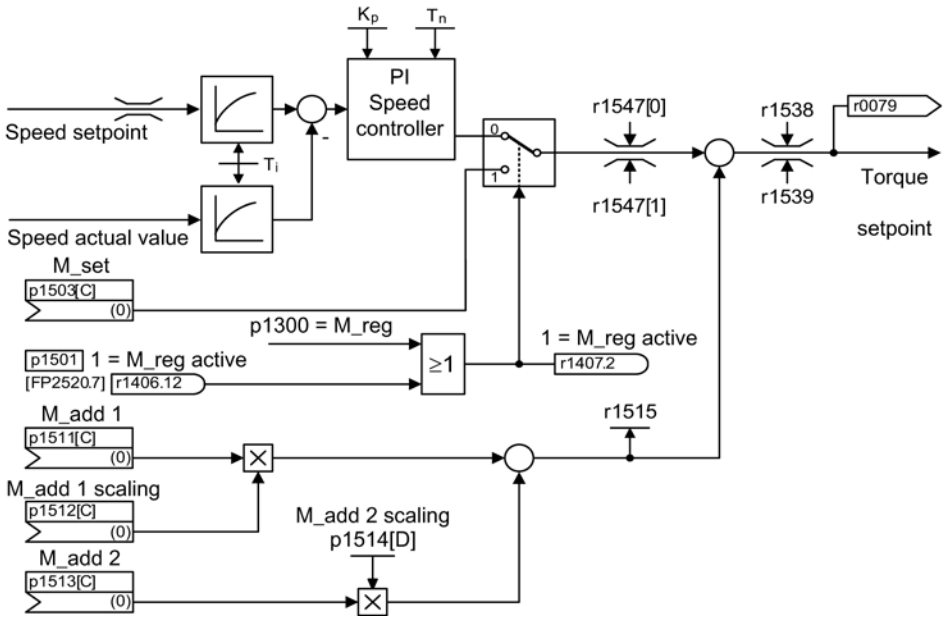


Figure 7-21 Closed-loop speed/torque control

The total of the two torque setpoints is limited in the same way as the speed control torque setpoint. Above the maximum speed (p1082), a speed limiting controller reduces the torque limits in order to prevent the drive from accelerating any further.

A "real" closed-loop torque control (with a speed that automatically sets itself) is only possible in the closed-loop control range but not in the open-loop control range of the sensorless closed-loop vector control. In the open-loop controlled range, the torque setpoint changes the setpoint speed via a ramp-up integrator (integrating time ~ p1499 x p0341 x p0342). This is the reason that sensorless closed-loop torque control close to standstill is only suitable for applications that require an accelerating torque there and no load torque (e.g. traversing drives). Closed-loop torque control with encoder does not have this restriction.

OFF responses

- OFF1 and p1300 = 22, 23
  - Response as for OFF2
- OFF1, p1501 = "1" signal and p1300 ≠ 22, 23
  - No separate braking response; the braking response is provided by a drive that specifies the torque.
  - The pulses are inhibited when the brake application time (p1217) expires. Standstill is detected when the speed actual value of the speed threshold (p1226) is undershot or when the monitoring time (p1227) started when speed setpoint ≤ speed threshold (p1226) expires.
  - Switching on inhibited is activated.

- OFF2
  - Immediate pulse suppression, the drive coasts to standstill.
  - The motor brake (if parameterized) is closed immediately.
  - Switching on inhibited is activated.
- OFF3
  - Switch to speed-controlled operation
  - n_set = 0 is input immediately to brake the drive along the OFF3 deceleration ramp (p1135).
  - When standstill is detected, the motor brake (if parameterized) is closed.
  - The pulses are inhibited when the motor brake closing time (p1217) has elapsed. Standstill is detected when the speed actual value of the speed threshold (p1226) is undershot or when the monitoring time (p1227) started when speed setpoint ≤ speed threshold (p1226) expires.
  - Switching on inhibited is activated.

Function diagram

FP 6060 Torque setpoint

Parameter

- p0341 Motor moment of inertia
- p0342 Ratio between the total and motor moment of inertia
- p1300 Open-loop/closed-loop control mode
- p1499 Accelerating for torque control, scaling
- p1501 Change over between closed-loop speed/torque control
- p1503 Torque setpoint
- p1511 Supplementary torque 1
- p1512 Supplementary torque 1 scaling
- p1513 Supplementary torque 2
- p1514 Supplementary torque 2 scaling
- r1515 Supplementary torque total

7.4.6 Torque limiting

Description

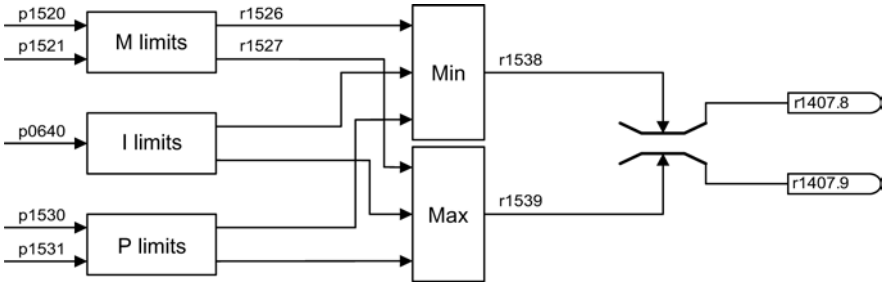


Figure 7-22 Torque limiting

The value specifies the maximum permissible torque whereby different limits can be parameterized for motor and regenerative mode.

- p0640 Current limit
- p1520 CO: Torque limit, upper/motoring
- p1521 CO: Torque limit, lower/regenerative
- p1522 CI: Torque limit, upper/motoring
- p1523 CI: Torque limit, lower/regenerative
- p1524 CO: Torque limit, upper/motoring, scaling
- p1525 CO: Torque limit, lower/regenerative scaling
- p1530 Power limit, motoring
- p1531 Power limit, regenerating

The currently active torque limit values are displayed in the following parameters:

- r0067 Maximum drive output current
- r1526 Torque limit, upper/motoring without offset
- r1527 Torque limit, lower/regenerative without offset

All of the following limits act on the torque setpoint – that is either available at the speed controller output for closed-loop speed control or as torque input, for closed-loop torque control. The minimum or the maximum is used for the various limits. This minimum or maximum is cyclically calculated and is displayed in r1538 or r1539.

- r1538 Upper effective torque limit
- r1539 Lower effective torque limit

These cyclical values therefore limit the torque setpoint at the speed controller output/torque input or indicate the instantaneous max. possible torque. If the torque setpoint is limited, then this is displayed using parameter p1407.

- r1407.8 Upper torque limit active
- r1407.9 Lower torque limit active

Function diagram

FP 6060	Torque setpoint
FP 6630	Upper/lower torque limit
FP 6640	Current/power/torque limits

7.4.7 Current setpoint filters

Description

The current setpoint filters are for suppressing cyclic disturbance variables that can be caused, for example, by mechanical vibrations in the drive train.

The current actual value filters can be set as follows:

- Low-pass 2nd order (PT2: -40 dB/decade)
- General 2nd order filter

Bandstop and low-pass with reduction are converted into the parameters of the general 2nd order filter using STARTER.

The current actual value filters are activated with p1656.0 = 1 or p1656.1 = 1. The properties of the current actual value filters are set in p1657 to p1666.

As long as changes to the data of the current setpoint filter are being made, the conversion of the new filter data can be prevented using p1699 = 1.
When p1699 = 0 is set, the calculation will be performed and the new values applied.

Function diagrams

FP 6710	Current setpoint filters

Parameter

- p1655[0] CI: Current setpoint filter 1 natural frequency tuning
- p1655[1] CI: Current setpoint filter 2 natural frequency tuning
- p1656.0 Current setpoint filter 1 activation
- p1657 Current setpoint filter 1 type
- p1658 Current setpoint filter 1 denominator natural frequency
- p1659 Current setpoint filter 1 denominator damping
- p1660 Current setpoint filter 1 numerator natural frequency
- p1661 Current setpoint filter 1 numerator damping
- p1656.1 Current setpoint filter 2 activation
- p1662 Current setpoint filter 2 type
- p1663 Current setpoint filter 2 denominator natural frequency
- p1664 Current setpoint filter 2 denominator damping
- p1665 Current setpoint filter 2 numerator natural frequency
- p1666 Current setpoint filter 2 numerator damping
- p1699 Filter data acceptance

7.4.8 Permanent-magnet synchronous motors

Description

Permanent-magnet synchronous motors without encoders are supported during operations without encoders.

Typical applications include direct drives with torque motors which are characterized by high torque at low speeds, e.g. Siemens complete torque motors of the 1FW3 series. When these drives are deployed, gear units and mechanical parts subject to wear can be dispensed with if the application allows this.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life as a result of electric shock when permanent magnet synchronous motors rotate

As soon as the motor rotates, a voltage is generated at the terminals, which when touched, can result in death or severe injury.

- Electrically disconnect the motor when working on the converter.
- If it is not possible to disconnect the connecting cables to the motor, secure the motor so that it cannot undesirably rotate, e.g. using a holding brake.

Features

- Field weakening of up to approx. 1.2 x rated speed (depending on the supply voltage of the converter and motor data, also see supplementary conditions)
- Flying restart (during operation without encoders, only when a VSM records the motor speed and phase angle (option K51))
- Speed and torque control vector
- V/f control for diagnostics vector
- Motor identification
- Speed controller optimization (rotary measurement)

Supplementary conditions

- Maximum speed or maximum torque depend on the converter output voltage available and the back EMF of the motor (calculation specifications: EMF must not exceed $V_{rated,\ converter}$).
- Calculating the maximum speed:

$$n_{max} = n_n \cdot \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}} \cdot \frac{U_{DC\ link\ max} \cdot I_n}{P_n}$$

- Depending on the terminal voltage and load cycle, the maximum torque can be taken from the motor data sheets / configuration instructions.
- No thermal model is available for the closed-loop control of a permanent-magnet synchronous motor. The motor can only be protected against overheating by using temperature sensors (PTC, KTY). To achieve a high level of torque accuracy, we recommend a temperature sensor (KTY) to measure the motor temperature.

Commissioning

The following sequence is recommended for commissioning:

- Configure the drive

  When the drive is being commissioned using STARTER or the AOP30 operator panel, the permanent-magnet synchronous motor must be selected. The motor data specified in the table below must then be entered. Finally, the motor identification routine and speed optimization (p1900) are activated. Encoder adjustment is activated automatically together with the motor identification routine.
- Motor identification (standstill measurement, p1910)
- Speed controller optimization (rotary measurement, p1960)

Motor data for permanent-magnet synchronous motors

Table 7- 2 Motor data type plate

Parameter	Description	Comment
p0304	Rated motor voltage	If this value is not known, the value "0" can also be entered. Entering the correct value, however, means that the stator leakage inductance (p0356, p0357) can be calculated more accurately.
p0305	Rated motor current	
p0307	Rated motor power	
p0310	Rated motor frequency	
p0311	Rated motor speed	
p0314	Motor pole pair number	If this value is not known, the value "0" can also be entered.
p0316	Motor torque constant	If this value is not known, the value "0" can also be entered.

If the torque constant k_T is not stamped on the type plate or specified in the data sheet, you can calculate this value from the rated motor data or from the stall current I_0 and stall torque M_0 as follows:

$$k_T = \frac{M_N}{I_N} = \frac{60\frac{s}{min} \times P_N}{2\pi \times n_N \times I_N}$$

or

$$k_T = \frac{M_0}{I_0}$$

The optional motor data can be entered if it is known. Otherwise, this data is estimated from the type plate data or determined by means of motor identification or speed controller optimization.

Table 7- 3 Motor data type plate

Parameter	Description	Comment
p0320	Rated motor short-circuit current	This is used for the field weakening characteristic
p0322	Maximum motor speed	Maximum mechanical speed
p0323	Maximum motor current	De-magnetization protection
p0325	Rotor position identification current, 1st phase	-
p0327	Optional load angle	Optional otherwise leave at 90°
p0328	Reluctance torque constant	-
p0329	Rotor position identification current	-
p0341	Motor moment of inertia	For speed controller pre-control
p0344	Motor weight	-
p0350	Stator resistance, cold	-
p0356	Quadrature axis stator inductance Lq	-
p0357	In-line stator inductance Ld	-

Short-circuit protection

For short-circuits that can occur in the drive converter or in the motor cable, the rotating machine would supply the short-circuit until it comes to a standstill. An output contactor can be used for protection. This should be located as close as possible to the motor. This is particularly necessary if the motor can still be driven by the load when a fault develops. The contactor must be provided with a protective circuit against overvoltage on the motor side so that the motor winding is not damaged as a result of the shutdown.

Control signal r0863.1 (VECTOR) controls the contactor via a free digital output; the checkback contact of the contactor is connected to parameter p0864 via a free digital input.

This means that if the drive converter develops a fault with a shutdown response, at the instant in time that the pulses are inhibited, the motor is isolated from the drive converter so that energy is not fed back to the fault location.

Function diagram

FP 6721	Vector control - Id setpoint (PEM, p0300 = 2)
FP 6724	Vector control – field weakening controller (PEM, p0300 = 2)
FP 6731	Vector control - interface to Motor Module (PEM, p0300 = 2)

Output terminals

8

8.1 Chapter content

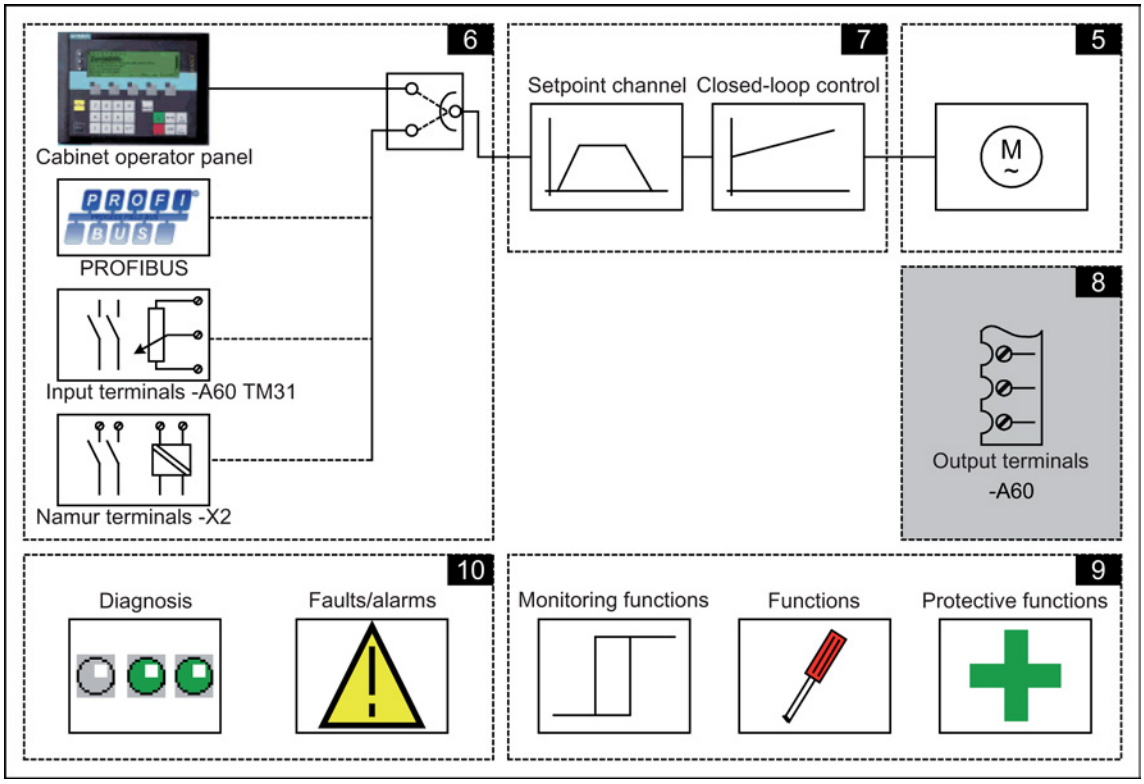
This chapter provides information on:

- Analog outputs
- Digital outputs

The analog/digital outputs described are located on the TM31 customer terminal block, which is available only with option G60.

As an alternative to the analog/digital outputs of the TM31, it is possible to use the terminals on the Control Unit or on the Terminal Board TB30 (option G62).

Some of the outputs on the Control Unit and on the TM31 are pre-assigned at the factory; the outputs on the TB30 are not pre-assigned at the factory.



Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

8.2 Analog outputs

Description

When using option G60, the customer terminal strip has two analog outputs two output setpoints via current or voltage signals.

Delivery condition:

- AO0: Actual speed value 0 to 20 mA
- AO1: Actual motor current, 0 to 20 mA

Signal flow diagram

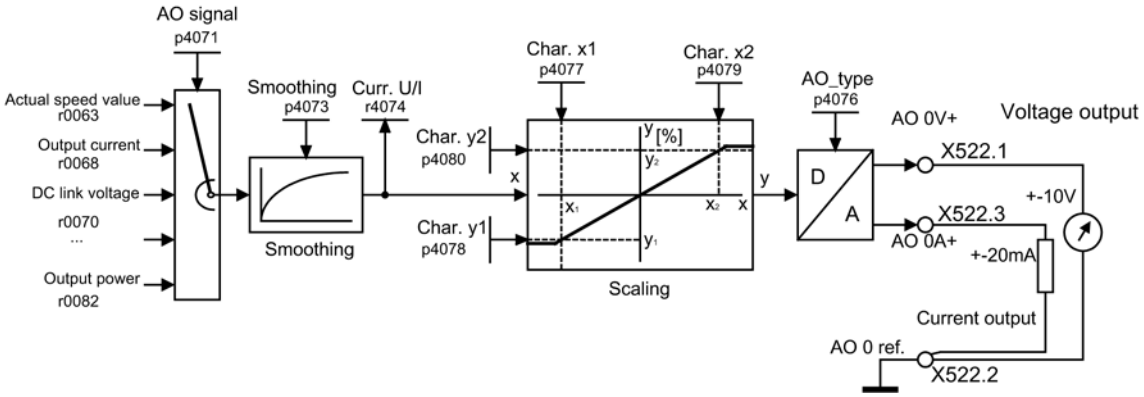


Figure 8-1 Signal flow diagram: analog output 0

Function diagram

FP 1840, FP 9572	TM31 - analog outputs (AO 0 to AO 1)

Parameter

- p4071 TM31 analog outputs, signal source
- p4073 TM31 analog outputs, smoothing time constant
- r4074 Analog outputs, actual output voltage/current
- p4076 TM31 analog outputs, type
- p4077 TM31 analog outputs, characteristic, value x1
- p4078 TM31 analog outputs, characteristic, value y1
- p4079 TM31 analog outputs, characteristic, value x2
- p4080 TM31 analog outputs, characteristic, value y2

8.2.1 List of signals for the analog signals

List of signals for the analog outputs

Table 8- 1 List of signals for the analog outputs

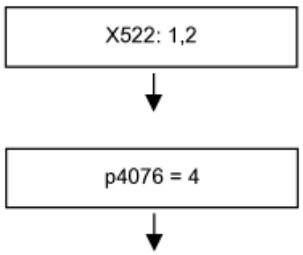
Signal	Parameters	Unit	Scaling (100 %=...) See table below
Speed setpoint before the setpoint filter	r0060	rpm	p2000
Motor speed unsmoothed	r0061	rpm	p2000
Actual speed smoothed	r0063	rpm	p2000
Output frequency	r0066	Hz	Reference frequency
Output current	r0068	Aeff	p2002
DC link voltage	r0070	V	p2001
Torque setpoint	r0079	Nm	p2003
Output power	r0082	kW	r2004
For diagnostic purposes			
Control deviation	r0064	rpm	p2000
Modulation depth	r0074	%	Reference modulation depth
Torque-generating current setpoint	r0077	A	p2002
Torque-generating actual current	r0078	A	p2002
Flux setpoint	r0083	%	Reference flux
Actual flux	r0084	%	Reference flux
For further diagnostic purposes			
Speed controller output	r1480	Nm	p2003
I component of speed controller	r1482	Nm	p2003

Scaling

Table 8- 2 Scaling

Size	Scaling parameter	Default for quick commissioning
Reference speed	100 % = p2000	p2000 = Maximum speed (p1082)
Reference voltage	100 % = p2001	p2001 = 1000 V
Reference current	100 % = p2002	p2002 = Current limit (p0640)
Reference torque	100 % = p2003	p2003 = 2 x rated motor torque
Reference power	100 % = r2004	r2004 = (p2003 x p2000 x π) / 30
Reference frequency	100 % = p2000/60	
Reference modulation depth	100 % = Maximum output voltage without overload	
Reference flux	100 % = Rated motor flux	
Reference temperature	100% = p2006	p2006 = 100°C

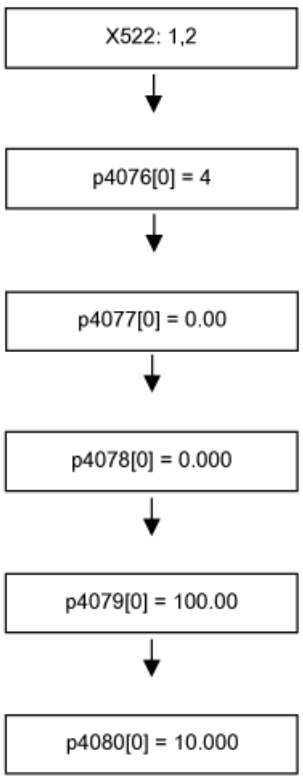
Changing analog output 0 from current to voltage output –10 V ... +10 V (example)



Voltage output present at terminal 1, ground is at terminal 2

Set analog output type 0 to -10 ... +10 V.

Changing the analog output 0 from current to voltage output –10 ... +10 V (example) and setting the characteristic



Voltage output present at terminal 1, ground is at terminal 2

Set TM31.AO_type [analog output 0] to -10 ... +10 V.

Set TM31.AO_char. x1 to 0.00%.

Set TM31.AO_char. y1 to 0.000 V.

Set TM31.AO_char. x2 to 100.00%.

Set TM31.AO_char. y2 to 10.000 V.

8.3 Digital outputs

Description

Four bi-directional digital outputs (terminal X541) and two relay outputs (terminal X542) are available. These outputs are, for the most part, freely parameterizable.

Signal flow diagram

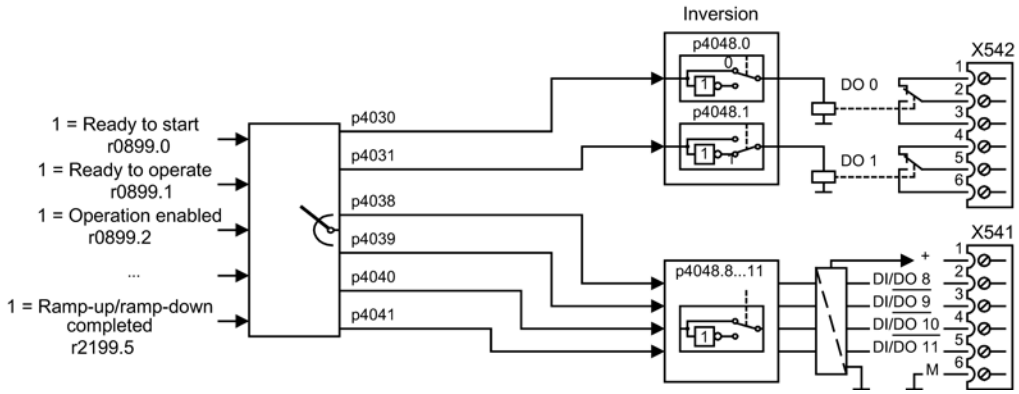


Figure 8-2 Signal flow diagram: Digital outputs

Delivery condition

Table 8- 3 Digital outputs, delivery condition

Digital output	Terminal	Delivery condition
DO0	X542: 2,3	"Enable pulses"
DO1	X542: 5,6	"No fault"
DI/DO8	X541: 2	"Ready to start"
DI/DO9	X541: 3	
DI/DO10	X541:4	
DI/DO11	X541: 5	

Selection of possible connections for the digital outputs

Table 8- 4 Selection of possible connections for the digital outputs

Signal	Bit in status word 1	Parameter
1 = Ready to start	0	r0899.0
1 = Ready	1	r0899.1
1 = Operation enabled	2	r0899.2
1 = Fault present	3	r2139.3
0 = Coast to stop active (OFF2 active)	4	r0899.4
0 = Fast stop active (OFF3 active)	5	r0899.5
1 = Closing lockout active	6	r0899.6
1 = Alarm present	7	r2139.7
1 = Speed setpoint/actual deviation within the tolerance band	8	r2197.7
1 = Master control requested	9	r0899.9
1 = f or n comparison value reached or exceeded	10	r2199.1
1 = I, M or P limit reached	11	r1407.7
1 = Open holding brake	12	r0899.12
0 = Alarm, motor overtemperature	13	r2135.14
1 = Motor rotates forward (n_act ≥ 0) 0 = Motor rotates backward (n_act < 0)	14	r2197.3
0 = Alarm thermal overload in power unit (A5000)	15	r2135.15
1 = Pulses enabled		r0899.11
1 = n_act ≤ p2155		r2197.1
1 = n_act > p2155		r2197.2
1 = Ramp-up/ramp-down completed		r2199.5
1 = |n_act| < p2161 (preferably as n_min or n=0 message)		r2199.0
1 = |M_set| < p2174		r2198.10
1 = LOCAL mode active (control via operator panel or control panel)		r0807.0
1 = Motor blocked		r2198.6

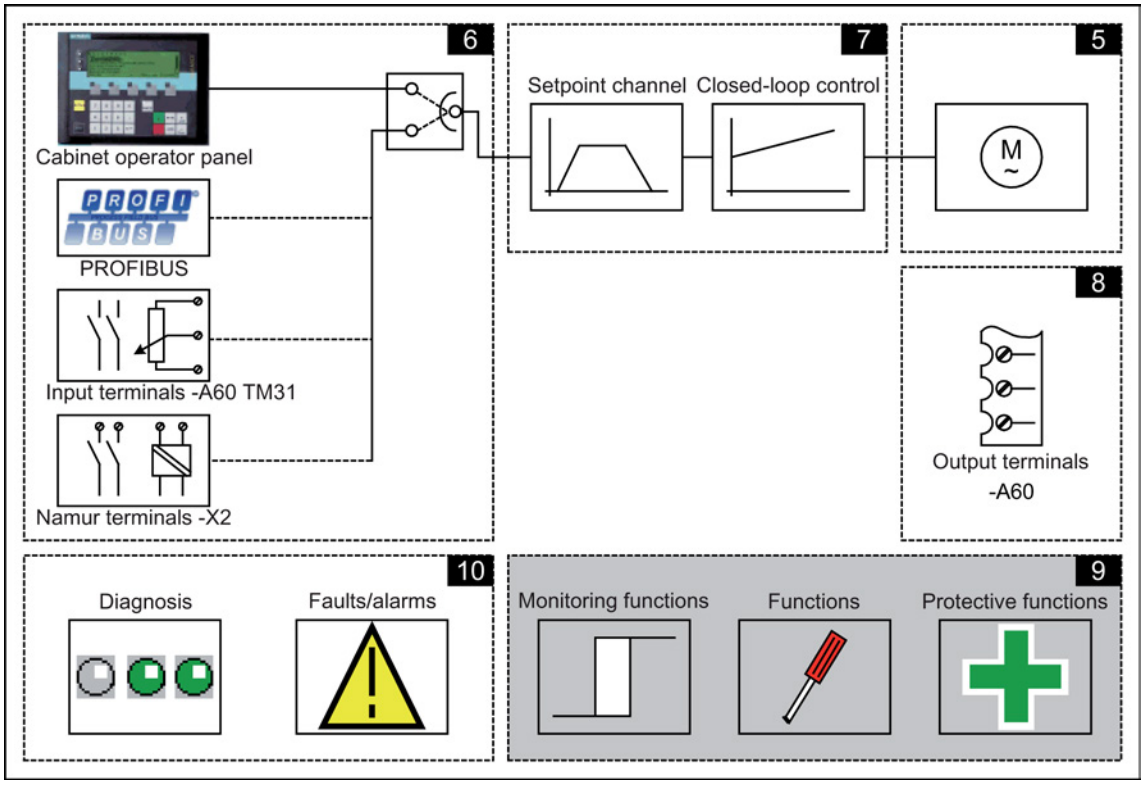
Functions, monitoring, and protective functions

9

9.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on:

- Drive functions:
  Motor identification, efficiency optimization, quick magnetization for induction motors, Vdc control, automatic restart, flying restart, motor changeover, friction characteristic, armature short-circuit braking, DC braking, increase in the output frequency, pulse frequency wobbling, runtime, simulation operation, direction reversal, unit changeover, derating behavior with increased pulse frequency, simple brake control, energy savings indicator for fluid-flow machines, write protection, know-how protection, emergency operation, web server.
- Extended functions:
  Technology controller, bypass function, extended brake control, extended monitoring functions
- Monitoring and protective functions:
  Power unit protection, thermal monitoring functions and overload responses, blocking protection, stall protection, thermal motor protection.



Function diagrams

At certain points in this chapter, reference is made to function diagrams. These can be found on the customer DVD in the "SINAMICS G130/G150 List Manual", which provides experienced users with detailed descriptions of all the functions.

9.2 Drive Functions

9.2.1 Motor data identification and automatic speed controller optimization

Description

Two motor identification options, which are based on each other, are available:

- Motor identification with p1910 (standstill measurement)
- Rotating measurement with p1960 (speed controller optimization)

These can be selected more easily via p1900. p1900 = 2 selects the motor identification (motor not rotating). p1900 = 1 also activates the rotating measurement; setting p1910 = 1 and p1960 depending on the current control type (p1300).

Parameter p1960 is set depending on p1300 as follows:

- p1960 = 1, if p1300 = 20 or 22 (encoderless control)
- p1960 = 2, if p1300 = 21 or 23 (control with encoder)

The measurements parameterized using p1900 are started in the following sequence after the corresponding drive has been enabled:

- Motor identification at standstill, after the measurement has been completed, the pulses are inhibited and parameter p1910 is reset to 0.
- Encoder adjustment - after the measurement has been completed, the pulses are inhibited and parameter p1990 is reset to 0.
- Rotating measurement - after the measurement has been completed, the pulses are inhibited and parameter p1960 is reset to 0.
- After all of the measurements activated using p1900 have been successfully completed, p1900 itself is set to 0.

Note

Non-volatile saving

To set the new controller setting permanently, the data must be saved with p0977 or p0971 in a non-volatile memory.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life if the motor unexpectedly moves during motor identification in the rotating mode

When selecting motor identification with optimization in the rotating mode, after commissioning, the drive initiates that the motor rotates with speeds that can reach the maximum motor speed.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are fully functional when commissioning the drive.

9.2.1.1 Motor data identification

Description

Motor identification with p1910 is used for determining the motor parameters at standstill (see also p1960: speed controller optimization):

- Equivalent circuit diagram data p1910 = 1
- Magnetization characteristic p1910 = 3

For control engineering reasons, you are strongly advised to carry out motor identification because the equivalent circuit diagram data, motor cable resistance, IGBT on-state voltage, and compensation for the IGBT lockout time can only be estimated if the data on the type plate is used. For this reason, the stator resistance for the stability of sensorless vector control or for the voltage boost with the V/f characteristic is very important.

Motor identification is essential if long supply cables or third-party motors are used. When motor data identification is started for the first time, the following data is determined with p1910 = 1 on the basis of the data on the type plate (rated data):

Table 9- 1 Data determined using p1910

	Induction motor	Permanent-magnet synchronous motor
p1910 = 1	• Stator resistance (p0350) • Rotor resistance (p0354) • Stator leakage inductance (p0356) • Rotor leakage inductance (p0358) • Magnetizing inductance (p0360) • Drive converter valve threshold voltage (p1825) • Converter valve interlocking times (p1828 ... p1830)	• Stator resistance (p0350) • Stator resistance q axis (p0356) • Stator inductance d axis (p0357) • Drive converter valve threshold voltage (p1825) • Converter valve interlocking times (p1828 ... p1830)
p1910 = 3	• Saturation characteristics (p0362 ... p0366)	not recommended Notice: When encoder adjustment is complete, the motor is automatically rotated approx. one revolution in order to determine the zero marker of the encoder.

Since the type plate data provides the initialization values for identification, you must ensure that it is entered correctly and consistently (taking into account the connection type (star/delta)) so that the above data can be determined.

It is advisable to enter the motor supply cable resistance (p0352) before the standstill measurement (p1910) is performed, so that it can be subtracted from the total measured resistance when the stator resistance is calculated (p0350).

Entering the cable resistance improves the accuracy of thermal resistance adaptation, particularly when long supply cables are used. This governs behavior at low speeds, particularly during encoderless vector control.

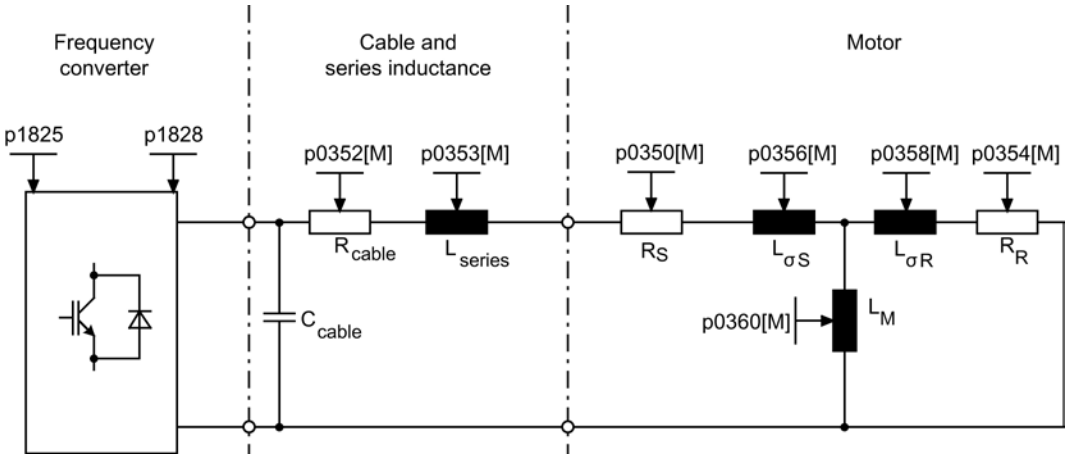


Figure 9-1 Equivalent circuit diagram for induction motor and cable

If an output filter (see p0230) or series inductance (p0353) is used, its data must also be entered before the standstill measurement is carried out.

The inductance value is then subtracted from the total measured value of the leakage. With sine-wave filters, only the stator resistance, valve threshold voltage, and valve interlocking time are measured.

Note

Large spread of the rated motor impedance

Leakage values in excess of 35 to 40% of the rated motor impedance will restrict the dynamic response of speed and current control in the voltage limit range and in field-weakening operation.

Note

Perform standstill measurement with the motor in a cold state

Standstill measurement must be carried out when the motor is cold. In p0625, enter the estimated ambient temperature of the motor during the measurement (with KTY sensor: set p0600, p0601 and read r0035). This is the reference point for the thermal motor model and thermal R_S/R_R adaptation.

In addition to the equivalent circuit diagram data, motor data identification (p1910 = 3) can be used for induction motors to determine the magnetization characteristic of the motor.

Due to the higher accuracy, the magnetization characteristic should, if possible, be determined during rotating measurement (without encoder: p1960 = 1, 3; with encoder: p1960 = 2, 4). If the drive is operated in the field-weakening range, this characteristic should be determined for vector control in particular. The magnetization characteristic can be used to calculate the field-generating current in the field-weakening range more accurately, thereby increasing torque accuracy.

Note

Results of the rotating measurement

In comparison with standstill measurement (p1910) for induction motors, rotating measurement (p1960) allows the rated magnetization current and saturation characteristic to be determined more accurately.

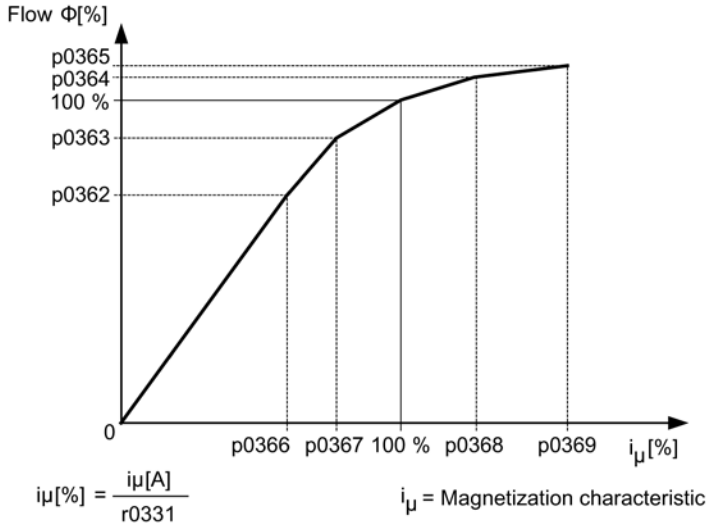


Figure 9-2 Magnetization characteristic

Carrying out motor identification

- Enter p1910 > 0. Alarm A07991 is displayed.
- Identification starts when the motor is switched on.
- p1910 resets itself to "0" (successful identification) or fault F07990 is output.
- r0047 displays the current status of the measurement.

Note

Non-volatile saving

To set the new controller setting permanently, the data must be saved with p0977 or p0971 in a non-volatile memory.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life as a result of unexpected motor movement when identifying the motor

When the motor identification is selected, after commissioning the drive may cause the motor to move.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are fully functional when commissioning the drive.

9.2.1.2 Rotating measurement and speed controller optimization

Description

"Rotating measurement" can be activated via p1960 or p1900 = 1.

The main difference between rotating measurement and standstill measurement is speed control optimization, with which the drive's moment of inertia is ascertained and speed controller is set. On induction motors, the saturation characteristic and rated magnetization current are also measured.

If rotating measurement is not to be carried out at the speed set in p1965, this parameter can be changed before the measurement is started. Higher speeds are recommended.

The same applies to the speed in p1961, at which the saturation characteristic is determined and the encoder test is carried out.

The speed controller is set to the symmetrical optimum in accordance with dynamic factor p1967. p1967 must be set before the optimization run and only affects the calculation of the controller parameters.

If, during the measurement, it becomes clear that the the drive cannot operate in a stable manner with the specified dynamic factor or that the torque ripples are too great, the dynamic response is reduced automatically and the result displayed in r1968. The drive must also be checked to ensure that it is stable across the entire range. The dynamic response might need to be reduced or Kp/Tn adaptation for the speed controller parameterized accordingly.

When commissioning induction machines, you are advised to proceed as follows:

- Before connecting the load, a complete "rotating measurement" (without encoder: p1960 = 1; with encoder: p1960 = 2) should be carried out. Since the induction machine is idling, you can expect highly accurate results for the saturation characteristic and the rated magnetization current.
- When the load is connected, speed controller optimization should be repeated because the total moment of inertia has changed. This is realized by selecting parameter p1960 (without encoder: p1960 = 3; with encoder: p1960 = 4).
  During the speed optimization, the saturation characteristic recording is automatically deactivated in parameter p1959.

When permanent-magnet synchronous motors are commissioned, the speed controller should be optimized (p1960 = 2/4) when the load is connected.

Carrying out the rotating measurement (p1960 > 0)

The following measurements are carried out when the enable signals are set and a switch-on command is issued in accordance with the settings in p1959 and p1960.

- Encoder test
  If a speed encoder is used, the direction of rotation and the pulse number are checked.
- Only for induction motors:
  - Measurement of the magnetization characteristic (p0362 to p0369)
  - Measurement of the magnetization current (p0320) and determination of the offset voltage of the converter for offset compensation
  - Measurement of the saturation of the leakage inductance and setting of the current controller adaptation (p0391 to p0393)
    This is automatically activated with 1LA1 and 1LA8 motors (p0300 = 11, 18) (see p1959.5).
- Speed controller optimization
  - p1470 and p1472, if p1960 = 1 (encoderless operation)
  - p1460 and p1462, if p1960 = 2 (operation with encoder)
  - Kp adaptation switch-off
- Acceleration pre-control setting (p1496)
- Setting for ratio between the total moment of inertia and that of the motor (p0342)

Note

Non-volatile saving

To set the new controller setting permanently, the data must be saved with p0977 or p0971 in a non-volatile memory.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life if the motor unexpectedly moves during motor identification in the rotating mode

When selecting motor identification with optimization in the rotating mode, after commissioning, the drive initiates that the motor rotates with speeds that can reach the maximum motor speed.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are fully functional when commissioning the drive.

Note

Speed controller optimization for operation with encoder

If speed controller optimization is carried out for operation with an encoder, the control mode will be temporarily changed over to encoderless speed control automatically, in order to be able to carry out the encoder test.

9.2.1.3 Shortened rotating measurement

A normal rotating measurement cannot always be performed when the load is connected. When switching on the motor for the first time, a moment of inertia measurement and the measurement of the magnetization current and the saturation characteristic can be performed with a simplified measuring procedure. There are two methods for this shortened rotating measurement:

- Measurement shortened (p1959.12 = 1)
- After measurement: Direct transfer to operation (p1959.13 = 1)

During the shortened rotating measurement, the drive is not moved up to the rated speed but up to the value set in p1965 (factory setting 40%). Parameter p1961 can be adjusted at the plant, but it must be high enough to ensure that the machine has left open-loop controlled operation. The machine should be operated in no-load operation (torque < 30% of M_{rated}) as far as is possible.

During the shortened rotating measurement the saving of parameters is disabled, because parameter adjustments are automatically made for the measurement, which are to be reassigned after the measurement.

Shortened measurement (p1959.12 = 1)

If p1959.12 = 1 is set, a shortened rotating measurement is carried out. In this case, the magnetizing current and moment of inertia are determined with a somewhat lower degree of accuracy; the vibration test is no longer required.

After the end of the measurement, the drive is moved to standstill and all the parameters modified for performing the measurement are set to their original values.

After measurement: Direct transfer to operation (p1959.13 = 1)

If p1959.13 = 1 is set, the drive is not stopped after the end of the shortened measurement, but is instead moved to the desired setpoint speed with the set ramp up.

Since braking to standstill cannot be performed during this measurement and no pulses are locked, no more parameters can be changed that could later be written back during operation.

Do not change controller parameters during the measurement (p1959.11 = 1)

With the rotating measurement, the drive independently changes its speed controller parameters during start-up. This also occurs if bits 3 and 4 of parameter 1959 are not set. In many cases, however, the decoupling of drives is linked to high cost. The loads have high moments of inertia. The controller parameters set by the drive do not always match the drive application and may therefore potentially cause damage to the mechanical system.

If p1959.11 = 1 is set, the recalculation of the speed controller parameters is prevented.

9.2.1.4 Parameters

- r0047 Motor data identification and speed controller optimization
- p1300 Open-loop/closed-loop control operating mode
- p1900 Motor data identification and rotating measurement
- p1959 Rotating measurement configuration
- p1960 Rotating measurement selection
- p1961 Saturation characteristic speed to determine
- p1965 Speed controller optimization speed
- p1967 Speed controller optimization dynamic factor
- r1968 Speed controller optimization actual dynamic factor
- r1969 Speed controller optimization inertia identified
- r1973 Rotating measurement encoder test pulse number determined
- p1980 Pole position identification procedure
- r3925 Identification final display
- r3927 Motor data identification, control word
- r3928 Rotating measurement configuration

9.2.2 Efficiency optimization

Description

The following can be achieved when optimizing efficiency using p1580:

- Lower motor losses in the partial load range
- Minimization of noise in the motor

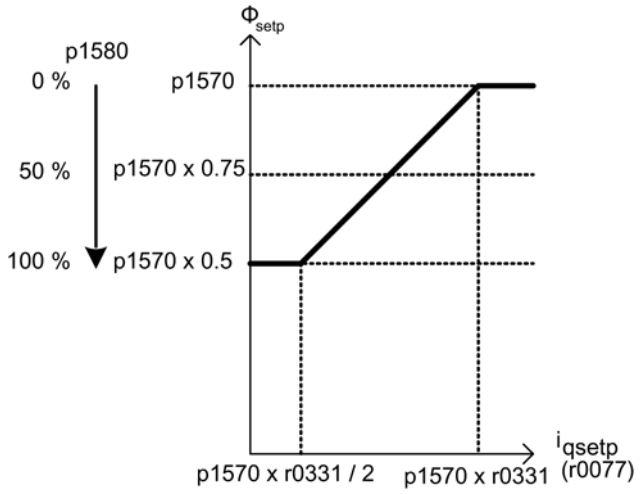


Figure 9-3 Efficiency optimization

It only makes sense to activate this function if the dynamic response requirements of the speed controller are low (e.g. pump and fan applications).

For p1580 = 100%, the flux in the motor under no-load operating conditions is reduced to half of the setpoint (reference flux) (p1570/2). As soon as load is connected to the drive, the setpoint (reference) flux increases linearly with the load and, reaching the setpoint set in p1570 at approx. r0077 = r0331 x p1570.

In the field-weakening range, the final value is reduced by the actual degree of field weakening. The smoothing time (p1582) should be set to approx. 100 to 200 ms. Flux differentiation (see also p1401.1) is automatically deactivated internally following magnetization.

Function diagram

FP 6722	Field weakening characteristic, Id setpoint (ASM, p0300 = 1)
FP 6723	Field weakening controller, flux controller for induction motor (p0300 = 1)

Parameter

- r0077 Current setpoints, torque-generating
- r0331 Motor magnetizing current/short-circuit current (actual)
- p1570 Flux setpoint
- p1580 Efficiency optimization
- p1582 Flux setpoint smoothing time

9.2.3 Fast magnetization for induction motors

Description

Fast magnetization for induction motors reduces delay time during magnetization.

Features

- Rapid flux build-up by impressing a field-producing current at the current limit, which considerably reduces the magnetization time.
- If the "Flying restart" function is activated, the excitation build-up time set in p0346 is still used.

Commissioning

Parameter setting p1401.6 = 1 is necessary to activate fast magnetization.

This setting initiates the following sequence during motor starting:

- Parameter p0644 ("induction motor excitation current limit") sets the maximum excitation current of the induction motor (based on the permitted rated current of the power section (r0207[0])).
- The field-forming current setpoint jumps to the value parameterized in p0644 or maximum to Imax = 0.9 x r0067 (field-forming current setpoint upper limit).
- The flux increases as fast as physically possible with the specified current.
- The flux setpoint r0083 is made to follow accordingly.
- As soon as the flux threshold value programmed in p1573 is reached (min.: 10%, max. 200%, factory setting: 100%), excitation ceases and the speed setpoint is enabled. The flux threshold value must not be set too low for a large load because the torque-producing current is limited during magnetization.

  Note

  Influence of the flux threshold value

  The flux threshold value set in parameter p1573 is effective only if the actual flux during magnetization reaches the value programmed in p1573 before the timer set in p0346 runs down.

- The flux is increased further until the flux setpoint in p1570 has been reached.
- The field-producing current setpoint is reduced by means of a flux controller with P gain (p1590) and the parameterized smoothing factor (p1616).

Notes

When quick magnetization is selected (p1401.6 = 1), smooth starting is deactivated internally and alarm A07416 displayed.

When the stator resistance identification function is active (see p0621 "Identification of stator resistance after restart"), quick magnetization is deactivated internally and alarm A07416 displayed.

The parameter does not work when combined with the "flying restart" function (see p1200), i.e. flying restart is performed without quick magnetization.

Function diagram

FP 6491	Flux control configuration
FP 6722	Field weakening characteristic, Id setpoint (ASM, p0300 = 1)
FP 6723	Field weakening controller, flux controller (ASM, p0300 = 1)

Parameter

- p0320 Motor rated magnetization current / short-circuit current
- p0346 Motor excitation build-up time
- p0621 Stator resistance identification after restart
- p0640 Current limit
- p0644 Induction motor excitation current limit
- p1401 Flux control configuration
- p1570 Flux setpoint
- p1573 Flux threshold value magnetization
- p1590 Flux controller P gain
- p1616 Current setpoint smoothing time

9.2.4 Vdc control

Description

The "Vdc control" function can be activated using the appropriate measures if an overvoltage or undervoltage is present in the DC link.

- Overvoltage in the DC link
  - Typical cause:
    The drive operates in regenerative mode and is supplying too much energy to the DC link.
  - Remedy:
    By reducing the regenerative torque, the DC-link voltage is maintained within permissible limits.

    Note

    Fault F30002 "DC-link overvoltage"

    When switching off or during rapid load changes, if failure often arises and fault F30002 "DC-link overvoltage" is reported, you may be able to improve the situation by increasing the gain factor for the Vdc controller p1250 (p1290), e.g. from "1.00" to "2.00".

- Undervoltage in the DC link
  - Typical cause:
    Failure of the supply voltage or infeed for the DC link.
  - Remedy:
    Specify a regenerative torque for the rotating drive to compensate the existing losses, thereby stabilizing the voltage in the DC link. This process is known as kinetic buffering.
    Kinetic buffering is only possible as long as energy is generated by the movement of the drive.

Properties

- Vdc control
  - Comprises Vdc_max control and Vdc_min control (kinetic buffering), which are independent of each other.
  - Contains a joint PI controller. The dynamic factor is used to set Vdc_min and Vdc_max control independently of each other.
- Vdc_min control (kinetic buffering)
  - The kinetic energy of the motor is used for buffering the DC-link voltage in the event of a momentary power failure, thereby delaying the drive.
- Vdc_max control
  - Control momentary regenerative load without shutdown using "overvoltage in the DC link".
  - Vdc_max control is only recommended for a supply without active closed-loop control for the DC link and without feedback.

Description of Vdc_min control (kinetic buffering)

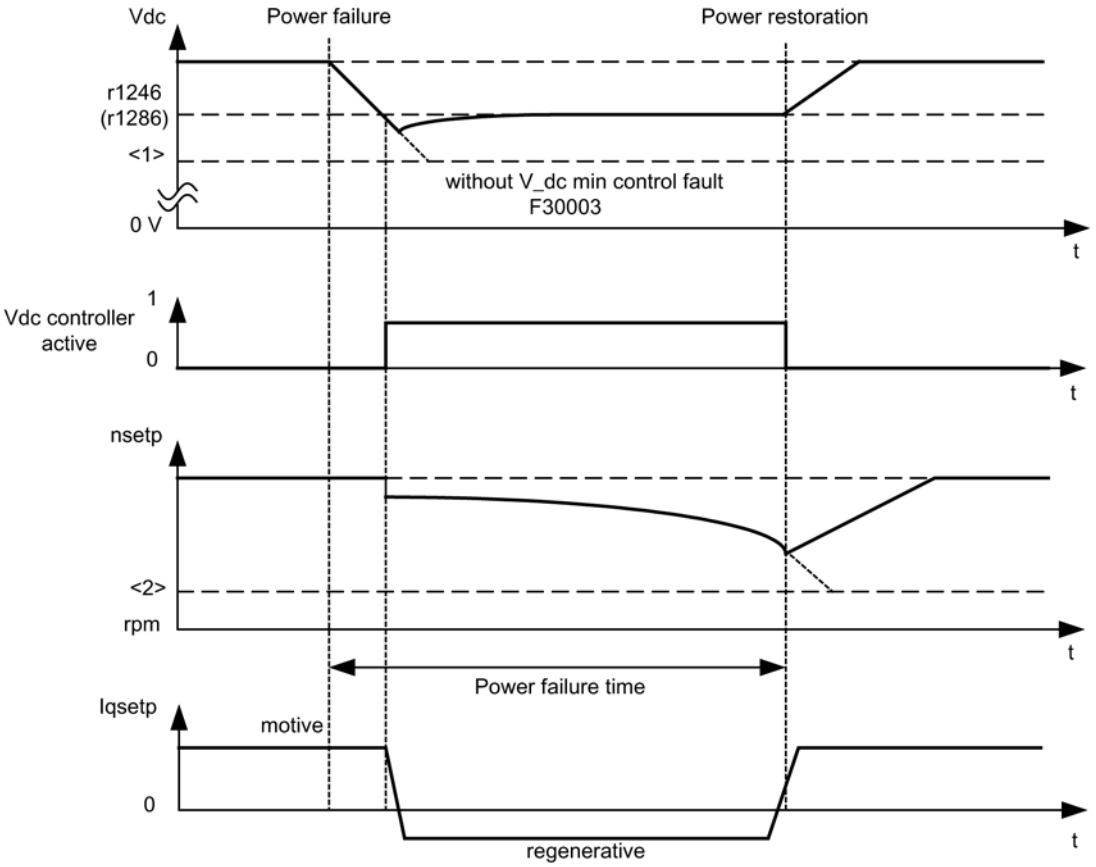


Figure 9-4 Switching Vdc_min control on/off (kinetic buffering)

Note

Activation of kinetic buffering

Kinetic buffering must only be activated in version A in conjunction with an external power supply.

When Vdc_min control is enabled with p1240 = 2.3 (p1280), it is activated if the power fails when the Vdc_min switch-in level (r1246 (r1286)) is undershot. In general, the regenerative power (braking energy) of the drive machine generated when the motor speed is reduced is used to buffer the DC link voltage of the drive; in other words, when Vdc_min control is active, the motor speed no longer follows the main setpoint and can be reduced to zero. The drive continues operating until the shutdown threshold of the DC link voltage is undershot (see "Switching Vdc_min control on/off" <1>).

Note

Parameter specifications in brackets

All parameter specifications in parentheses refer to V/f control.

Distinction between V/f control and speed control:

- V/f control
  The Vdc_min controller acts on the speed setpoint channel. When Vdc_min control is active, the drive setpoint speed is reduced so that the drive becomes regenerative.
- Speed control
  The Vdc_min controller acts on the speed controller output and affects the torque-generating current setpoint. When Vdc_min control is active, the torque-generating current setpoint is reduced so that the drive becomes regenerative.

If the power fails, the DC link voltage decreases due to the lack of power from the supply system. When the DC link voltage threshold set via parameter p1245 (p1285) is reached, the Vdc_min controller is activated. Due to the PID properties of the controller, the motor speed is reduced to the extent that the regenerative drive energy maintains the DC link voltage at the level set in p1245 (p1285). The kinetic energy of the drive governs the dropout characteristic of the motor speed and, in turn, the buffering duration. In centrifugal mass drives (e.g. fans), buffering can last a few seconds. In drives with a low centrifugal mass (e.g. pumps), however, buffering can last just 100 to 200 ms. When the power is restored, the Vdc_min controller is deactivated and the drive is ramped up to its setpoint speed at the ramp-function generator ramp. As long as the Vdc_min controller is active, an alarm A7402 (drive: DC link voltage minimum controller active) will be issued.

If the drive can no longer generate any regenerative energy (because, for example, it is almost at a standstill), the DC link voltage continues to drop. If the minimum DC link voltage is undershot (see "Switching Vdc_min control on/off" <1>), the drive will shut down with fault F30003 (power unit: DC link undervoltage).

If a speed threshold set with parameter p1257 (p1297) is undershot when Vdc_min control is active (see diagram "Switching Vdc_min control on/off" <2>), the drive is shut down with F7405 (drive: kinetic buffering minimum speed not reached).
If a shutdown with undervoltage in the DC link (F30003) occurs without the drive coming to a standstill despite the fact that Vdc_min control is active, the controller may have to be optimized via dynamic factor p1247 (p1287). Increasing the dynamic factor in p1247 (p1287) causes the controller to intervene more quickly. The default setting for this parameter, however, should be sufficient for most applications.

Parameter p1256 = 1 (p1296) can be used to activate time monitoring for kinetic buffering. The monitoring time can be set in parameter p1255 (p1295). If buffering (i.e. the power failure) lasts longer than the time set here, the drive is switched off with fault F7406 (drive: kinetic buffering maximum time exceeded). The standard fault reaction for this fault is OFF3, which means that this function can be used for controlled drive deceleration in the event of a power failure. In this case, excess regenerative energy can only be dissipated via an additional braking resistor.

Description of Vdc_max control

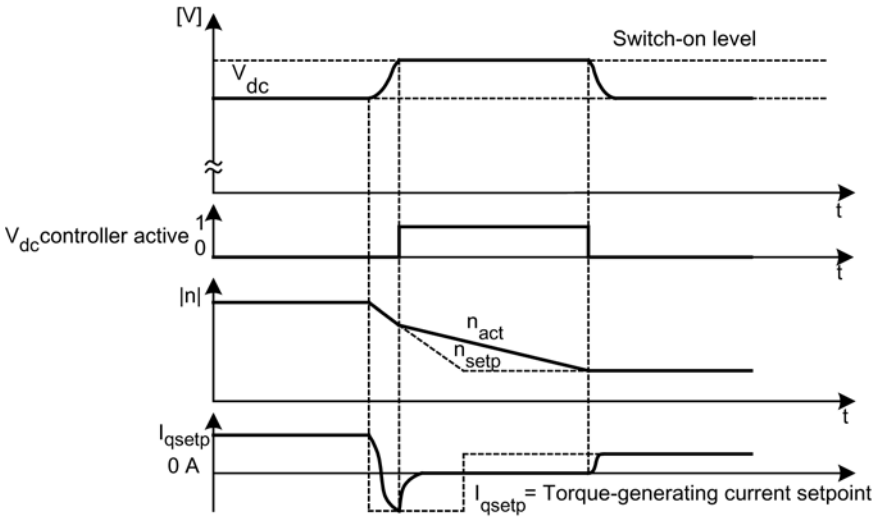


Figure 9-5 Activating/deactivating the Vdc_max control

The switch-on level of the Vdc_max control (r1242 or r1282) is calculated as follows:

- when the automatic switch-on level sensing is disabled (p1254 (p1294) = 0)
  - ACAC device: r1242 (r1282) = 1.15 x √2 x p0210 (device supply voltage)
  - DCAC device: r1242 (r1282) = 1.15 x p0210 (device supply voltage)
- when the automatic switch-on level sensing is enabled (p1254 (p1294) = 1)
  r1242 (r1282) = Vdc_max - 50 V (Vdc_max: overvoltage threshold of the converter)

Function diagram

FP 6220 (FP 6320)	Vdc_max controller and Vdc_min controller

Parameter

- p1240 (p1280) Vdc controller or Vdc monitoring configuration
- r1242 (r1282) Vdc_min controller switch-in level
- p1243 (p1283) Vdc_max controller dynamic factor
- p1245 (p1285) Vdc_min controller switch-on level (kinetic buffering)
- r1246 (r1286) Vdc_min controller switch-on level (kinetic buffering)
- p1247 (p1287) Vdc_min controller dynamic factor (kinetic buffering)
- (p1288) Vdc_max controller ramp-function generator feedback factor (V/f)
- p1249 (p1289) Vdc_max controller speed threshold
- p1250 (p1290) Vdc controller proportional gain
- p1251 (p1291) Vdc controller integral action time
- p1252 (p1292) Vdc controller derivative-action time
- (p1293) Vdc_min controller output limit (V/f)
- p1254 (p1294) Vdc_max controller automatic ON level detection
- p1255 (p1295) Vdc_min controller time threshold
- p1256 (p1296) Vdc_min controller response (kinetic buffering)
- p1257 (p1297) Vdc_min controller speed threshold
- r1258 (r1298) Vdc controller output

9.2.5 Automatic restart function

Description

The automatic restart function automatically restarts the cabinet unit after an undervoltage or a power failure. The alarms present are acknowledged and the drive is restarted automatically.

The drive can be restarted using:

- The standard procedure starting from standstill, or
- The flying restart function.
  For drives with small moments of inertia and load torques facilitating the stopping of the drive within a matter of seconds (e.g., pump drives operating against a pressure head), starting from standstill is recommended.

Note

Drives with high moments of inertia

The flying restart function can also be activated for drives with large moments of inertia (such as fan drives). This enables you to switch to the motor that is still rotating.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life as a result of unexpected motor movement when automatically restarting

If p1210 is set to values >1, the motor can be restarted automatically without the need to issue the ON command.

In the event of prolonged power failures and when the automatic restart function is activated (p1210 > 1), the drive may have been at a standstill for a long time and mistakenly considered to have been switched off.

For this reason, entering the area around the drive when it is in this condition can cause death, severe injury or material damage.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are always fully functional.

Automatic restart mode

Table 9- 2 Automatic restart mode

p1210	Mode	Meaning
0	Disables automatic restart	Automatic restart inactive
1	Acknowledges all faults without restarting	If p1210 = 1, pending faults will be acknowledged automatically once their cause has been rectified. If further faults occur after faults have been acknowledged, these will also be acknowledged automatically. A minimum time of p1212 + 1 s must expire between successful fault acknowledgement and a fault re-occurring if the signal ON/OFF1 (control word 1, bit 0) is at a HIGH signal level. If the ON/OFF1 signal is set to LOW, the time between when a fault is acknowledged and another one occurs must be at least 1 s. If p1210 = 1, fault F07320 will not be generated if the acknowledge attempt fails (e.g., because the faults occurred too frequently).
4	Automatic restart after power failure, without additional startup attempts	If p1210 = 4, an automatic restart will only be performed if in addition fault F30003 occurs on the Motor Module or there is a high signal at binector input p1208[1], or in the case of an infeed drive object (A_Infeed), F06200 is pending. If additional faults are pending, then these faults will also be acknowledged; if this is successful, the startup attempt will be resumed. The failure of the CU's 24 V power supply will be interpreted as a line supply failure.
6	Restart after fault with additional startup attempts	If p1210 = 6, an automatic restart will be performed after any fault or at p1208[0] = 1. If the faults occur one after the other, then the number of startup attempts is defined using p1211. Monitoring over time can be set using p1213.
14	Restart after power failure after manual acknowledgement	As for p1210 = 4. But pending faults must be acknowledged manually.
16	Restart after fault after manual acknowledgement	As for p1210 = 6. But pending faults must be acknowledged manually.

Startup attempts (p1211) and waiting time (p1212)

p1211 is used to specify the number of startup attempts. The number is decremented internally after each successful fault acknowledgement (line supply voltage must be restored or the infeed signals that it is ready). Fault F07320 is output when the number of parameterized startup attempts is reached.

If p1211 = x, x + 1 startup attempts will be made.

Note

Start of a startup attempt

A startup attempt starts immediately when the fault occurs.

The faults are acknowledged automatically at intervals of half the waiting time p1212.

Following successful acknowledgement and restoration of the voltage, the system is automatically powered up again.

The startup attempt has been completed successfully once the flying restart and magnetization of the motor (induction motor) has been completed (r0056.4 = 1) and one additional second has expired. The startup counter is not reset to the initial value p1211 until this point.

If additional faults occur between successful acknowledgement and the end of the startup attempt, then the startup counter, when it is acknowledged, is also decremented.

Automatic restart monitoring time (p1213)

- p1213[0] = Monitoring time for restart

  The monitoring time starts when the faults are detected. If the automatic acknowledgements are not successful, the monitoring time will continue. If the drive has not successfully restarted by the time the monitoring time expires (flying restart and motor magnetization must have been completed: r0056.4 = 1), fault F07320 is output.

  Monitoring is deactivated by setting p1213 = 0. If p1213 is set to a value lower than the sum of p1212, the magnetization time r0346 and the additional delay time due to flying restart, then fault F07320 will be generated on every restart attempt. If, for p1210 = 1, the time in p1213 is set to a value lower than p1212, then fault F07320 will also be generated on every restart attempt.

  The monitoring time must be extended if the faults that occur cannot be immediately and successfully acknowledged (e.g. when faults are permanently present).

  For p1210 = 14, 16 manual acknowledgement of the pending fault must take place within the time in p1213[0]. Otherwise the fault F07320 is generated after the time set.

- p1213[1] = Monitoring time for resetting the starting counter

  The starting counter (see r1214) is only reset to starting value p1211 once the time in p1213[1] has expired after a successful restart. The delay time is not effective for error acknowledgment without an automatic restart (p1210 = 1). If the power supply fails (blackout), the wait time only starts once the power has been restored and the Control Unit is ramped up. The starting counter is reset to the starting value p1211, if F07320 occurred, the switch-on command is recalled and the fault acknowledged.

  If starting value p1211 or mode p1210 is changed, the starting counter is immediately updated.

Faults without automatic restart (p1206)

Up to 10 fault numbers for which the automatic restart should not be effective can be selected via p1206[0...9].

The parameter is only effective if p1210 = 6 and p1210 = 16.

Parameter

- p1206[0...9] Faults without automatic restart
- p1210 Automatic restart mode
- p1211 Automatic restart, start attempts
- p1212 Automatic restart, delay time start attempts
- p1213 Automatic restart monitoring time
- r1214 Automatic restart status

Settings

To prevent the motor from switching to phase opposition when the drive is being restarted, there is a delay while the motor demagnetizes (t = 2.3 x motor magnetization time constant). Once this time has elapsed, the inverter is enabled and the motor is supplied with power.

9.2.6 Flying restart

Description

The "Flying restart" function (enabled via p1200) allows the converter to switch to a motor that is still rotating. Switching on the converter without the flying restart function would not allow any flux to build up in the motor while it is rotating. Since the motor cannot generate any torque without flux, this can cause it to switch off due to overcurrent (F07801).

The flying restart function first determines the speed of the drive with which V/f or vector control is initialized so that the converter and motor frequency can be synchronized.

During the standard start-up procedure for the converter, the motor must be at a standstill. The converter then accelerates the motor to the setpoint speed. In many cases, however, the motor is not at a standstill.

Two different situations are possible here:

1. The drive rotates as a result of external influences, such as water (pump drives) or air (fan drives). In this case, the drive can also rotate against the direction of rotation.
2. The drive rotates as a result of a previous shutdown (e.g. OFF 2 or a power failure). The drive slowly coasts to a standstill as a result of the kinetic energy stored in the drive train (example: induced-draft fan with a high moment of inertia and a steeply descending load characteristic in the lower speed range).

In accordance with the setting chosen (p1200), the flying restart function is activated in the following situations:

- Once power has been restored and the automatic restart function is active
- After a shutdown with the OFF2 command (pulse inhibit) when the automatic restart function is active
- When the ON command is issued.

Note

Applications for flying restart function

The flying restart function must be used when the motor may still be running or is being driven by the load to prevent shutdowns due to overcurrent (F7801).

Note

Information on flying restart function

If the value set for parameter p1203 (search speed factor) is higher, the search curve is flatter and, as a result, the search time is longer. A lower value has the opposite effect.

In motors with a low moment of inertia, the flying restart function can cause the drive to accelerate slightly.

In group drives, the flying restart function should not be activated due to the different coasting properties of the individual motors.

9.2.6.1 Flying restart without encoder

Description

Depending on parameter p1200, the flying restart function is started with the maximum search speed $n_{search,max}$ once the de-excitation time (p0347) has elapsed (see diagram "Flying restart").

$n_{Search,max} = 1.25 \times n_{max}$ (p1082)

The flying restart function behaves differently with V/f control and vector control:

- V/f characteristic (p1300 < 20):
  The search speed yielded from parameter p1203 reduces the search frequency in accordance with the motor current. The parameterizable search current (p1202) is injected here. If the search frequency is similar to the rotor frequency, a current minimum

occurs. Once the frequency has been found, the motor is magnetized. The output voltage during the magnetization time (p0346) is increased to the voltage value yielded from the V/f characteristic (see "Flying restart").

- Vector control without encoder:
  The motor speed is determined using the speed adaptation control loop for the electric motor model. To begin with, the search current (p1202) is injected and then the controller is activated starting from the maximum search frequency. The dynamic response of the controller can be altered using the search speed factor (p1203). If the deviation of the speed adaptation controller is not too great, the motor continues to be magnetized for the duration parameterized in p0346.

Once the excitation build-up time (p0346) has elapsed, the ramp-function generator is set to the actual speed value and the motor ramped up to the current setpoint frequency.

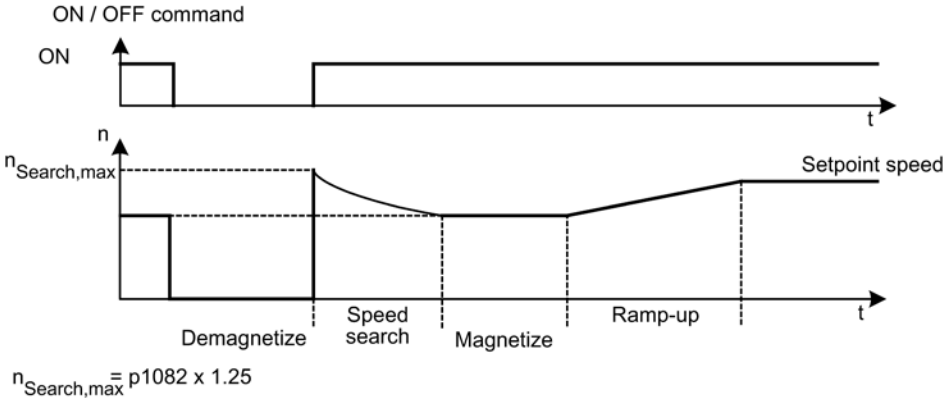


Figure 9-6 Flying restart

⚠WARNING

Danger to life as a result of unexpected motor movement when activating flying restart

When the flying restart (p1200) function is active, the drive may still be accelerated by the search current despite the fact that it is at standstill and the setpoint is 0!

For this reason, death, serious injury, or considerable material damage can occur if personnel enter the working area of a motor in this state.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are always fully functional.

Note

Flying restart without encoder for permanently-excited synchronous motors

The flying restart without encoder for permanently-excited synchronous motors is possible only when a VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module is used to acquire the motor speed (option K51).

Flying restart without encoder for long cables

In the case of long motor cables, the procedure described above can lead to problems during a flying restart. In such cases, the following settings can improve the flying restart function:

- Enter the cable resistance in parameter p0352 before motor data identification.
- Set parameter p1203 to at least 300%.
  With this setting, flying restart takes longer than for values below 300%.

Note

Optimize the flying restart function

To optimize the flying restart, a trace recording should check the function. If necessary, you can improve the result by making settings for parameters p1202 and p1203.

Fast flying restart (only for induction motors)

The "Fast flying restart" function can be activated during operation without encoder (vector control, V/f control linear and parabolic). For fast flying restart the starting frequency is set to zero.
In this procedure, the flying restart function is performed successfully for a period of approximately 200 ms.

The fast flying restart function works only under the following conditions:

- With a current regulator cycle time of 250 µs or 400 µs (without motor-side filter and without long cables)
- Up to 4x rated speed for vector control
- Up to the rated speed for V/f control

Note

The "Fast flying restart" function is only possible with induction motors.

The settings for fast flying restart are configured in the expert list.

1. The "Fast flying restart" procedure is selected by setting p1780.11 = 1.

   For operation with encoder, the settings of this bit are ignored, because no fast flying restart is possible here.
2. Fast flying restart is activated using the p1200 parameter, as with the normal flying restart.
3. For the determination of the line resistance, a motor data identification must be carried out at standstill (p1900 = 2).

   The critical parameters are the motor stator resistance (p0350) and the motor stator leakage inductance (p0356).

The fast flying restart condition codes are the following:

- For V/f control: r1204.14 (fast flying start activated).
- For vector control: r1205.16 (fast flying restart activated) or r1205.17 (fast flying restart finished).

Note

Search current must not be too small

If you have any problems with the fast flying restart it can be useful to set the search current (p1202) to values > 30%. Problems can occur if the drive is operated far into the field weakening, or if it is operated with motor-side filters or long lines.

Fast flying restart with voltage acquisition via VSM10

The time for the connection to a rotating induction motor can be shortened when the terminal voltage of the motor is measured.

Settings for the fast flying restart with voltage acquisition:

1. Select the voltage measurement for the fast flying restart: p0247.5 = 1.
2. Activate the flying restart: p1200 > 0.

The following status bits indicate the characteristic of the flying restart:

1. For V/f control: r1204.15
2. For vector control: r1205.18, r1205.19, r1205.20

Note

Voltage amplitude must not be too small

If the measured voltage amplitude undershoots the 1% limit of the converter rated voltage, the flying restart with voltage acquisition is deactivated and the motor speed sought.

9.2.6.2 Flying restart with encoder

Description

The flying restart function behaves differently with V/f control and vector control:

- V/f characteristic (p1300 < 20):
  Flying restart without an encoder (see section "Flying restart without an encoder")
- Vector control with a speed encoder:
  Since the speed is known from the start, the motor can be magnetized immediately at the appropriate frequency. The duration of magnetization is specified in p0346. Once the excitation build-up time has elapsed, the ramp-function generator is set to the actual speed value and the motor ramped up to the current setpoint speed.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life as a result of unexpected motor movement when activating flying restart

When the flying restart (p1200) function is active, the drive may still be accelerated by the search current despite the fact that it is at standstill and the setpoint is 0!

For this reason, death, serious injury, or considerable material damage can occur if personnel enter the working area of a motor in this state.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are always fully functional.

9.2.6.3 Parameters

- p0352 Cable resistance
- p1200 Flying restart operating mode
  - 0: Flying restart inactive
  - 1: Flying restart always active (start in setpoint direction)
  - 2: Flying restart active after On, error, OFF2 (start in setpoint direction)
  - 3: Flying restart active after error, OFF2 (start in setpoint direction)
  - 4: Flying restart always active (start only in setpoint direction)
  - 5: Flying restart active after On, error, OFF2 (start only in setpoint direction)
  - 6: Flying restart active after error, OFF2 (start only in setpoint direction)
- p1202 Flying restart search current
- p1203 Flying restart search speed factor
- r1204 Flying restart, V/f control status
- r1205 Flying restart, vector control status

Note

Set search direction for the flying restart

For p1200 = 1, 2, 3, the following applies: Search in both directions, start only in the setpoint direction.

For p1200 = 4, 5, 6, the following applies: Search only in the setpoint direction.

9.2.7 Motor changeover/selection

9.2.7.1 Description

The motor data set changeover is, for example, used for:

- Changing over between different motors
- Motor data adaptation

Note

Switch to a rotating motor

To switch to a rotating motor, the "flying restart" function must be activated.

9.2.7.2 Example of changing over between two motors

Preconditions

- The drive has been commissioned for the first time.
- 2 motor data sets (MDS), p0130 = 2
- 2 drive data sets (DDS), p0180 = 2
- 2 digital outputs to control the auxiliary contactors
- 2 digital inputs to monitor the auxiliary contactors
- 1 digital input to select the data set
- 2 auxiliary contactors with auxiliary contacts (1 NO contact)
- 2 motor contactors with positively-driven auxiliary contacts (1 NC contact, 1 NO contact)

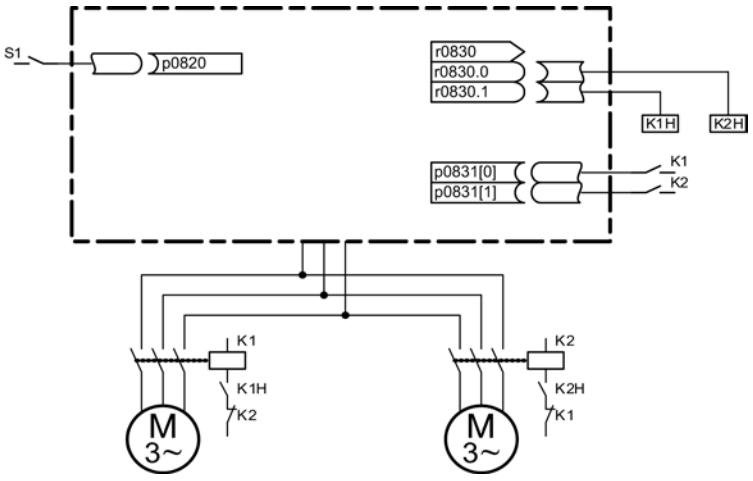


Figure 9-7 Example of motor changeover

Table 9- 3 Settings for the motor changeover example

Parameter	Settings	Comment
p0130	2	Configure 2 MDS
p0180	2	Configure 2 DDS
p0186[0..1]	0, 1	The MDS are assigned to the DDS.
p0820	Digital input, DDS selection	The digital input to change over the motor is selected via the DDS. Binary coding is used (p0820 = bit 0, etc.).
p0821 to p0824	0	
p0826[0..1]	1, 2	Different numbers mean different thermal models.
p0827[0..1]	0, 1	The bits of r0830 are assigned to the MDSs. If p0827[0] = 0, for example, bit r0830.0 is set via DDS0 when MDS0 is selected.
r0830.0 and r0830.1	Digital outputs, auxiliary contactors	The digital outputs for the auxiliary contactors are assigned to the bits.
p0831[0..1]	Digital inputs, auxiliary contacts	The digital inputs for the feedback signal of the motor contactors are assigned.
p0833.00 and .01	0, 0	The drive controls the contactor circuit and pulse inhibition.

Motor changeover sequence

1. Pulse suppression:
   The pulses are suppressed following the selection of a new drive data set using p0820 to p0824.
2. Open motor contactor:
   Motor contactor 1 is opened (r0830 = 0) and the status bit "Motor changeover active" (r0835.0) is set.
3. Change over drive data set:
   The requested data set is activated (r0051 = data set currently effective, r0837 = requested data set).
4. Energize motor contactor:
   After the feedback signal (motor contactor opened) from motor contactor 1, the appropriate bit of r0830 is set and motor contactor 2 is energized.
5. Enable pulses:
   After the feedback signal (motor contactor closed) from motor contactor 2, the bit "motor data set changeover active" (r0835.0) is reset and the pulses are enabled. The motor has now been changed over.

9.2.7.3 Function diagram

FP 8565 Drive Data Set (DDS)
FP 8575 Motor Data Sets (MDS)

9.2.7.4 Parameters

- r0051 Drive data set DDS effective
- p0130 Motor data sets (MDS) number
- p0180 Drive data set (DDS) number
- p0186 Motor data sets (MDS) number
- p0819[0...2] Copy drive data set DDS
- p0820 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 0
- p0821 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 1
- p0822 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 2
- p0823 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 3
- p0824 BI: Drive data set selection DDS, bit 4
- p0826 Motor changeover, motor number
- p0827 Motor changeover status word bit number
- p0828 Motor changeover, feedback signal
- r0830 Motor changeover, status
- p0831 Motor changeover, contactor feedback signal
- p0833 Data set changeover configuration

9.2.8 Friction characteristic curve

Description

The friction characteristic is used to compensate for the frictional torque of the motor and driven load. A friction characteristic allows the speed controller to be pre-controlled and improves the control response..

10 points along the characteristic are used for the friction characteristic. The coordinates of every interpolation point are defined by a speed parameter (p382x) and a torque parameter (p383x) (point 1 = p3820 and p3830, point 10 = p3829 and p3839).

Features

- There are 10 points along the characteristic to represent the friction characteristic.
- An automatic function supports the friction characteristic plot.
- A connector output (r3841) can be interconnected as friction torque (p1569).
- The friction characteristic can be activated and deactivated (p3842).

Commissioning

Speeds for making measurements as a function of the maximum speed p1082 are pre-assigned in p382x when commissioning the drive system for the first time. These can be appropriately changed corresponding to the actual requirements.

The automatic friction characteristic plot can be activated using p3845. The characteristic is then plotted the next time that it is enabled.

The following settings are possible:

- p3845 = 0 Friction characteristic plot deactivated
- p3845 = 1 Friction characteristic plot activated, all directions
  The friction characteristic is plotted in both directions of rotation. The result of the positive and negative measurement is averaged and entered into p383x.
- p3845 = 2 Friction characteristic plot activated, positive direction
- p3845 = 3 Friction characteristic plot activated, negative direction

p3847 (friction characteristic plot warm-up period) can be used to set a time for the drive to warm up to the specified operating temperature. During this time, the drive is brought up to and kept at the greatest speed set for plotting the friction characteristic, so that the drive warms up to the operating temperature. Then measurement is started with the highest speed.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life as a result of unexpected motor movement for the friction characteristic plot

When the friction characteristic is plotted, the drive can cause the motor to move. As a result, the motor may reach maximum speed.

For this reason, entering the area around the drive when it is in this condition can cause death, severe injury or material damage.

- Observe the general safety instructions.
- Ensure that the EMERGENCY STOP functions are always fully functional.

Function diagram

FP 7010 Friction characteristic curve

Parameter

- p3820 Friction characteristic, value n0
- ...
- p3839 Friction characteristic, value M9
- r3840 Friction characteristic status word
- r3841 Friction characteristic, output
- p3842 Activate friction characteristic
- p3843 Friction characteristic smoothing time friction moment difference
- p3844 Friction characteristic number changeover point at the top
- p3845 Activate friction characteristic plot
- p3846 Friction characteristic plot ramp-up/ramp-down time
- p3847 Friction characteristic plot warm-up period

9.2.9 Armature short-circuit braking, DC braking

9.2.9.1 General

The "External armature short-circuit" function for permanent-magnet synchronous motors initiates an external contactor which short-circuits the motor via resistors when the pulses are canceled. This reduces the kinetic energy of the motor.

The "Internal armature short-circuit braking" function for permanent-magnet synchronous motors short-circuits a half-bridge in the power unit to control the motor power consumption, thus braking the motor.

The "DC braking" function for induction motors injects direct current into the motor, thus braking the motor.

9.2.9.2 External armature short-circuit braking

Description

External armature short-circuit braking is only available for synchronous motors. It is used preferably when braking in a hazardous situation, if controlled braking via the drive is no longer possible (for example, in the event of a power failure, an EMERGENCY OFF, etc.) or if no regenerative infeed is used. In this case, the motor stator windings are short-circuited via external braking resistors. This means that an additional resistance is inserted in the motor circuit that supports reducing the kinetic energy of the motor.

The external armature short circuit is activated via p1231 = 1 (with contactor feedback signal) or p1231 = 2 (without contactor feedback signal). It is initiated when the pulses are canceled.

This function controls an external contactor via output terminals, which then short-circuits the motor through resistors when the pulses are canceled.

A prerequisite for the use of the external armature short circuit is the use of a permanent-magnet synchronous motor (p0300 = 2xx).

NOTICE
Material damage when using motors that are not short-circuit proof
When using motors that are not short-circuit proof, activating the external armature short-circuit braking can damage these motors. • Only use motors that are short-circuit proof. • Use suitable resistors for short-circuiting.

Note

Consequences of incorrect parameterization

In case of incorrect parameterization (e.g., induction motor and external armature short-circuit selected), fault F07906 "Armature short circuit / internal voltage protection: Parameterization error" is output.

Function diagram

FP 7014 Technology functions - External armature short circuit

Parameter

- p0300: Mot type selection
- p1230 BI: Armature short-circuit/DC braking activation
- p1231 Armature short-circuit/DC braking configuration
  - 1: External armature short-circuit with contactor feedback signal
  - 2: External armature short-circuit without contactor feedback signal
- p1235 BI: External armature short-circuit, contactor feedback signal
- p1236 External armature short-circuit, contactor feedback signal monitoring time
- p1237 External armature short-circuit, delay time when opening
- r1238 CO: External armature short-circuit state
- r1239 CO/BO: Armature short-circuit/DC braking status word

9.2.9.3 Internal armature short-circuit braking

Description

Internal armature short-circuit braking is only available for synchronous motors. It is used preferably when braking in a hazardous situation, if controlled braking via the drive is no longer possible (for example, in the event of a power failure, an EMERGENCY OFF, etc.) or if no regenerative infeed is used. In this case, the motor stator windings are short-circuited via a half-bridge in the power unit. This means that an additional resistance is inserted in the motor circuit that supports reducing the kinetic energy of the motor.

The internal armature short circuit is configured via p1231 = 4 and activated via p1230. It is initiated when the pulses are canceled.

A permanent-magnet synchronous motor (p0300 = 2xx) is required in order to use the internal armature short-circuit.



⚠DANGER

Danger to life due to electric shock for armature short-circuit braking

When the armature short-circuit is active, after the pulses have been cancelled all the motor terminals are at half the DC link potential.

Contact with live parts can result in death or serious injury.

- Observe the general safety instructions.

NOTICE

Material damage by using motors that are not short-circuit proof or an incorrectly dimensioned Power Module/Motor Module

When using motors that are not short-circuit proof, activating the external armature short-circuit braking can damage the motors or the Power Module/Motor Module.

- Only use motors that are short-circuit proof.
- Use suitable resistors for short-circuiting.
- Dimension the Power Module/Motor Module for 1.8 times the short circuit current of the motor.

Function diagram

FP 7016 Technology functions - Internal armature short circuit

Parameter

- p0300: Mot type selection
- p1230 BI: Armature short-circuit/DC braking activation
- p1231 Armature short-circuit/DC braking configuration
  - 4: Internal armature short-circuit/DC braking
- r1239 CO/BO: Armature short-circuit/DC braking status word

9.2.9.4 DC braking

Description

DC braking is only available for induction motors. It is used preferably when braking in a hazardous situation, if controlled braking via the drive is no longer possible (for example, in the event of a power failure, an EMERGENCY OFF, etc.) or if no regenerative infeed is used.

DC braking is activated via p1231 = 4 or via p1231 = 14. It can be initiated via an input signal p1230 (signal = 1) or a fault response.

Activation of DC braking via input signal

p1231 = 4 (internal armature short-circuit/DC braking)

If DC braking is activated by the digital input signal, the first step is that the pulses are blocked for the duration of the demagnetization time (p0347) of the motor in order to demagnetize the motor - the parameter p1234 (speed at the start of DC braking) is ignored.

Then the braking current (p1232) is applied as long as the input is initiated in order to brake the motor or hold it at standstill.

p1231 = 14 (DC braking below the starting speed)

DC braking is initiated, if during operation a 1-signal is pending at the binector input p1230 and the actual speed is below the starting speed (p1234).

After the preceding demagnetization (p0347) of the motor for the period set in p1233, the braking current p1232 is applied and subsequently switched off automatically.

Cancellation of the input signal for DC braking

If DC braking is withdrawn, the drive returns to its selected operating mode.

The following applies:

- With vector control (closed-loop controlled with or without encoder):
  The drive is synchronized with the motor frequency if the "Flying restart" function is activated, and then returns to closed-loop controlled mode. If the "Flying restart" function is not active, the drive can only be restarted from standstill without overcurrent fault.
- In V/f mode:
  With the "Flying restart" function activated, the converter frequency is synchronized with the motor frequency, and the drive will then return to V/f mode. If the "Flying restart" function is not activated, the drive can only be restarted from standstill without overcurrent fault.

DC braking as a fault response

Activation via p0491 = 4, p2101 = 6 (armature short-circuit, internal/DC braking)

If DC braking is activated as a fault response, the motor is initially braked in field-oriented mode along the braking ramp up to the threshold set in p1234 (speed at the start of DC braking). The slope of the ramp is identical with that of the OFF1 ramp (parameterized using p1082, p1121). Subsequently, the pulses are disabled for the period in p0347 (demagnetizing time) in order to demagnetize the motor. DC braking will start for the duration set in p1233 (DC braking duration).

- If an encoder is present, braking will continue until the speed drops to below standstill threshold p1226.
- If no encoder is present, only the period in p1233 is effective.

Activation via p1231 = 5 (DC braking for OFF1/OFF3)

DC braking is activated with OFF1 or OFF3

- If the motor speed ≥ p1234, the motor is braked down to p1234. As soon as the motor speed is < p1234, the pulses are disabled and the motor is demagnetized.
- If the motor speed at OFF1/OFF3 is already < p1234, the pulses are immediately inhibited and the motor is demagnetized.

DC braking is activated for the period set in p1233 (DC braking duration), then switched off.

When OFF1/OFF3 is prematurely canceled, then normal operation is resumed.

DC braking as emergency braking of a fault response remains active.

Function diagram

FP 7017 Technology functions - DC braking

Parameter

- p0300: Mot type selection
- p0491 Motor encoder fault response: ENCODER
- p1226 Threshold for standstill detection
- p1230 BI: Armature short-circuit/DC braking activation
- p1231 Armature short-circuit/DC braking configuration
  - 4: Internal armature short-circuit/DC braking
  - 5: DC braking OFF1/OFF3
  - 14: DC braking below starting speed
- p1232 DC braking, braking current
- p1233 DC braking duration
- p1234 Speed at the start of DC braking
- r1239 CO/BO: Armature short-circuit/DC braking status word
- p1345 I_max voltage controller proportional gain
- p1346 I_max voltage controller integral time
- p2101 Setting the fault response

9.2.10 Increasing the output frequency

9.2.10.1 Description

In applications that require higher output frequencies, the pulse frequency of the converter may have to be increased.

It may also be necessary to change the pulse frequency to prevent resonances from occurring.

Since increasing the pulse frequency also increases the switching losses, a derating factor for the output current must be taken into account when the drive is configured.

Once the pulse frequency has been increased, the new output currents are automatically included in the calculation for power unit protection.

Note

Use of a sine-wave filter

Use of a sine-wave filter (option L15) must be selected using p0230 = 3 when commissioning. This setting fixes the pulse frequency to 4 kHz or 2.5 kHz and it cannot be changed.

9.2.10.2 Default pulse frequencies

The specified maximum output frequencies can be achieved with the default pulse frequencies listed below.

Table 9- 4 Maximum output frequency with default pulse frequency

Converter rating [kW]	Default pulse frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]
Line voltage 3 AC 380 ... 480 V		
110 ... 250	2	160
315 ... 900	1.25	100
Line voltage 3 AC 500 ... 600 V		
110 ... 1000	1.25	100
Line voltage 3 AC 660 ... 690 V		
75 ... 1500	1.25	100

The pulse frequencies set in the factory are also the minimum frequencies.

The scanning times for the inputs and outputs of the customer terminal block TM31 are set in the factory to 4000 µs. This is also the minimum limit.

9.2.10.3 Increasing the pulse frequency

Description

The pulse frequency can be increased in a virtually continuously variable manner to between the value preassigned in the factory and the maximum pulse frequency which can be set.

Procedure

1. Parameter p0009 on the Control Unit must be set to 3 "Basic drive configuration".
2. Parameter p0112 "Sampling times default setting p0115" of the DO VECTOR must be set to 0 "Expert".
3. Use p0113 to enter any pulse frequency between 1 kHz and 2 kHz. If a higher pulse frequency is to be set (e.g., 2.2 kHz), this value must be divided by 2 or by 4 to obtain a result between 1 kHz and 2 kHz (e.g., 2.2 kHz divided by 2 is 1.1 kHz).
4. Not all pulse frequencies are accepted in parameter p0113; in such cases, the alarm "Impermissible value" is output.
5. If the frequency entered in parameter p0113 is not accepted, parameter r0114[0] recommends a different frequency that can deviate from the entered pulse frequency by several Hertz. This frequency should be entered in p0113.

6. After entering the frequency in p0113, parameter p0009 on the Control Unit must be set to 0 "Ready" again.
7. The Control Unit re-initializes. After booting, the pulse frequencies recommended in r0114[i] (i = 1, 2, ...) can be entered in parameter p1800 "Pulse frequency" of the DO VECTOR.

Note

Entering the pulse frequency

The pulse frequency entered in p1800 must correspond precisely to the value given in r0114[i]; otherwise, the entry will be rejected.

9.2.10.4 Maximum output frequency achieved by increasing the pulse frequency

By multiplying the basis pulse frequency (with integers), the following output frequencies can be achieved (taking into account the derating factors):

Table 9- 5 Maximum output frequency achieved by increasing the pulse frequency

Pulse frequency [kHz]	Maximum output frequency [Hz]
1.25	100
2	160
2.5	200
≥4	300 [1]

[1] The maximum output frequency is limited to 300 Hz due to the closed-loop control.

9.2.10.5 Parameters

- p0009 Device commissioning parameter filter
- p0112 Sampling times pre-setting p0115
- p0113 Selects the minimum pulse frequency
- p0115 Sampling times
- p1800 Pulse frequency

9.2.11 Derating behavior at increased pulse frequency

Description

To reduce motor noise or to increase output frequency, the pulse frequency can be increased relative to the factory setting.

The increase in the pulse frequency normally results in a reduction of the maximum output current (see "Technical data/current derating depending on the pulse frequency").

When commissioning the converter the behavior at overload is adjusted in such a manner that the pulse frequency is variably reduced so that the required power can be obtained.

Characteristics:

- The reaction to overload depends on the setting of parameter p0290:
  - p0290 = 0: Reduce output current or output frequency
  - p0290 = 1: No reduction, shutdown when overload threshold is reached
  - p0290 = 2: Reduce the output current or output and pulse frequency (not using I^2t).
  - p0290 = 3: Reduce the pulse frequency (not using I^2t)
- With p0290 = 2, for overload, the pulse frequency (and consequently the output frequency) is first reduced until it has dropped to rated pulse frequency; then the output frequency is reduced if overload continues to persist.
  The rated pulse frequency is half the inverse value of the current controller clock cycle: 0.5 x 1/p0115[0].
- Reduction of the pulse frequency is executed in whole multiples based on the rated pulse frequency (5 kHz -> 2.5 kHz -> 1.25 kHz or 4 kHz -> 2 kHz).
- After entering the maximum speed in p1082, the system automatically calculates whether the pulse frequency is sufficient for the entered maximum speed, if necessary the pulse frequency is increased automatically to a value that is necessary to achieve this.
  For an overload condition, also for p0290 = 2 or 3, this new pulse frequency will no longer be fallen below, the subsequent response (reduce output voltage or shutdown) will be triggered.

Exceptions:

- With an activated sinus filter (p0230 = 3, 4), this behavior is not permitted because the factory set pulse frequency (2.5 kHz or 4 kHz) should not be changed through this measure. Consequently in this case the selection possibility for the parameter p0290 is limited to "0" and "1".

Activation of the variable pulse frequency

At commissioning the parameter p 0290 is automatically set to the value "2". This activates pulse frequency reduction at overload.

Deactivation of the variable pulse frequency

By changing the parameter p0290 to "0" or "1" the variable pulse frequency is deactivated.

Function diagram

FP 8014	Signals and monitoring functions - thermal monitoring power unit

Parameter

- r0036 Power unit overload I2t
- r0037 CO: Power unit temperatures
- p0115 Sampling times for internal control loops
- p0230 Drive filter type, motor side
- p0290 Power unit overload response
- p1082 Maximum speed
- r2135.13 Fault thermal overload power unit
- r2135.15 Alarm, thermal overload power unit

9.2.12 Pulse frequency wobbling

Description

Pulse frequency wobbling is when the pulse frequency is varied slightly according to a statistical process. The average pulse frequency value is still the value set; the statistical variation of the instantaneous value results in a modified noise spectrum.

This procedure reduces the subjectively noticeable motor noise, especially for the relatively low pulse frequencies set in the factory.

Pulse frequency wobbling is activated with p1810.2 = 1. The amplitude of the static wobbling signal can be set in the range from 0% to 20% via p1811.

For units connected in parallel, pulse frequency wobbling is activated automatically during commissioning.

Restrictions

- Pulse frequency wobbling can only be activated under the following conditions (p1810.2 = 1):
  - The drive is pulse suppressed.
  - p1800 < 2 x 1000 / p0115[0]
- p1811 (Pulse frequency wobbling amplitude) can only be set under the following conditions:
  - p1802.2 = 1
  - p0230 (output filter) < 3 (no sine-wave filter)
- When pulse frequency wobbling is activated and impulses are enabled, the maximum pulse frequency (p1800) can be set as follows:
  - For p1811 = 0: p1800 ≤ 2 x 1000 / p0115[0]
  - For p1811 > 0: p1800 ≤ 1000 / p0115[0]
- When pulse frequency wobbling is activated and impulses are enabled, if the maximum pulse frequency (p1800) is set to be greater than 1000 / p0115[0], then p1811 is set to 0.
- When pulse frequency wobbling is activated and impulses are suppressed, if the maximum pulse frequency (p1800) is set to be greater than 2 x 1000 / p0115[0], then p1811 and p1810.2 are set to 0.

Note

Disable pulse frequency wobbling

If pulse frequency wobbling is deactivated (p1810.2 = 0), then all the indices of parameter p1811 are set to 0.

Parameter

- p1800 Pulse frequency setpoint
- p1810.2 Wobbling activated
- p1811[D] Pulse frequency wobbling amplitude

9.2.13 Runtime (operating hours counter)

Total system runtime

The entire system runtime is displayed in r2114 (Control Unit); it is made up of r2114[0] (milliseconds) and r2114[1] (days).
Index 0 indicates the system runtime in milliseconds; after reaching 86.400.000 ms (24 hours), the value is reset. Index 1 indicates the system runtime in days.

The value is saved when the system is switched off.
Once the drive unit has been switched on, the counter continues to run with the value that was saved the last time the drive was switched off.

Relative system runtime

The relative system runtime since the last POWER ON is displayed in p0969 (Control Unit). The value is indicated in milliseconds and the counter overflows after 49 days.

Actual motor operating hours

The motor operating hours counter p0650 (drive) resumes when the pulses are enabled. When the pulse enable is withdrawn, the counter is stopped and the value saved.

The counter is deactivated with p0651 = 0.

If the maintenance interval set in p0651 is reached, alarm A01590 is triggered. Once the motor has been maintained, the maintenance interval must be reset.

Note

If the motor data set is switched during the star/delta changeover without the motor being replaced, the two values in p0650 must be added to determine the correct number of motor operating hours.

Operating hours counter for the fan

The operating hours of the fan in the power unit are displayed in p0251 (drive).

The number of hours operated can only be reset to 0 in this parameter (e.g. after a fan has been replaced).

The service life of the fan is entered in p0252 (drive).

Alarm A30042 (service life of the fan reached or exceeded) is output when this figure is reached, and also 500 hours beforehand. Evaluation of the fault value in the alarm provides details of the cause of the alarm.

Monitoring is deactivated with p0252 = 0.

Time stamp mode

The mode for the time stamp can be set via parameter p3100.

Setting	Explanation
p3100 = 0	Time stamp based on operating hours
p3100 = 1	Time stamp UTC format
p3100 = 2	Time stamp operating hours + 01.01.2000 Additional setting for firmware V4.7 and above. With this setting the value in p3102 is used as the time stamp for the error messages. For firmware versions prior to V4.7 the time basis of p2114 was used with the setting p3100 = 0.

Note

Time stamp settings depending on the firmware version

If a project is upgraded from firmware V4.6 to V4.7 then the time stamp settings for the old project are retained. The times displayed for the error messages do not therefore differ from those in the old firmware version.

If a new project is created in firmware version V4.7 and above, the factory setting for the p3100 = 2 and therefore a different time basis for error messages. If the behavior desired is the one for older versions than V4.7 then p3100 = 0 should be set.

9.2.14 Simulation operation

Description

The simulation function is predominantly used to simulate the drive without a motor being connected and without a DC link voltage. In this case, it should be noted that the simulation mode can only be activated under an actual DC link voltage of 40 V. If the voltage lies above this threshold, the simulation mode is reset, and a fault message F07826 is issued.

Communications with a higher-level automation system can be tested using the simulation mode. If the drive is also to return actual values, note that it must be switched over to encoderless operation during simulation mode. This means that large parts of the SINAMICS software (e.g., software channel, sequence control, communications, technology function, etc.) can be tested in advance without requiring a motor.

Another application is to test the correct functioning of the power unit. Especially for drive units with higher power ratings 75 kW (690 V) and 110 kW (400 V), after repairs, it is necessary to test the gating of the power semiconductors. This is done by injecting a low DC voltage as DC link voltage (e.g., 12 V). The drive unit is then powered-up and the pulses enabled.

Note

Deactivated functions in simulation mode

The following functions are deactivated in the simulation mode:

- Motor data identification
- Motor data identification, rotating without encoder
- Pole position identification

No flying restart is carried-out for V/f control and sensorless closed-loop vector control.

Note

Activating binector output r0863.1 in the simulation mode

In the simulation mode, binector output r0863.1 is set = 1. Therefore, before activating the simulation mode, check as to whether additional devices are switched on using the signal. If necessary, the corresponding BICO interconnection should be temporarily removed.

Commissioning

Simulation is activated using p1272 = 1; the following pre-requisites must be fulfilled:

- The drive unit must have been commissioned for the first time (default: Standard induction motors).
- The DC link voltage must lie below 40 V (observe the tolerance of the DC link voltage sensing).

Alarm A07825 (simulation mode activated) must be output during simulation operation.

Parameter

- p1272 Simulation operation

9.2.15 Direction reversal

Description

The direction of rotation of the motor can be reversed using direction reversal via p1821 without having to change the motor rotating field by interchanging two phases on the motor and inverting the encoder signals using p0410.

Reversal via p1821 can be detected from the motor direction of rotation. The speed setpoint and actual value, torque setpoint and actual value remain unchanged, as does the relative position change.

A pulse inhibit must be set prior to attempting reversal.

Direction reversal can be set differently for each drive data set.

Note

Drive data set changeover with differently set direction reversal

When changing over the drive data set to differently set reversing and with pulse approval, fault F7434 is issued.

Reversing can be observed by checking parameters r0069 (phase currents) and r0089 (phase voltage). The absolute position reference is lost on reversal.

The output direction of rotation of the converter can be additionally reversed using p1820. This means that the rotating field can be changed without having to interchange the power connections. If an encoder is being used, the direction of rotation must, when required, be adapted using p0410.

NOTICE

Material damage when the drive undesirably accelerates with an external speed actual value

When using an external speed actual value for the speed controller via p1440, positive feedback can occur in the speed control loop. As a consequence, the drive accelerates up to its speed limit and can be damaged.

- When using external speed actual values for the speed controller, additionally change its polarity when reversing the direction of rotation (p1821 = 1).

Function diagram

FD 4704, 4715 Encoder evaluation
FD 6730, 6731 Interface to the Motor Module

Parameter

- r0069 Phase currents actual value
- r0089 Phase voltage actual value
- p0410 Encoder inversion actual value
- p1820 Reverse output phase sequence
- p1821 Direction of rotation

9.2.16 Unit changeover

Description

Parameters and process variables for input and output can be switched to a suitable units system (SI units, US units or referenced variables (%)) with the help of the unit changeover function.

The following constraints apply to the unit changeover:

- Unit changeover is only possible for the "VECTOR" drive object.
- Parameters of the rating plate of the drive converter or the motor rating plate can be changed over between SI/US units; however, a per unit representation is not possible.
- Once the changeover parameter has been changed, all parameters that are assigned to a unit group depending on this parameter are jointly changed over to the new unit.
- A separate parameter is available for selecting technological units (p0595) for the representation of technological variables in the technology controller.
- If a changeover is made to referenced variables and the reference variable is subsequently changed, the % value entered in a parameter will not change.

  Example:

  – With a reference speed of 1500 1/min, a fixed speed of 80 % corresponds to a value of 1200 1/min.
  – If the reference speed is changed to 3000 1/min, the value of 80 % is retained and is now 2400 1/min.

Restrictions

- When a unit changeover occurs, rounding to the decimal places is carried out. This can mean that the original value might change by up to one decimal place.
- If a referenced form is selected and the reference parameters (e.g. p2000) are changed retrospectively, the physical significance of some of the control parameters is also adjusted, which can affect the control behavior.
- If the reference variables (p2000 to p2007) are changed in the offline mode in STARTER, there is a risk that the parameter value ranges will be violated. In this case, appropriate fault messages will be displayed when the parameters are loaded to the drive unit.

Changing over the units

The units can be changed over via the AOP30 and via STARTER.

- Unit changeover via AOP30 is always carried out immediately. Once the corresponding parameters have been changed, the values affected are displayed in the new selected unit.
- If STARTER is used, unit changeover can only take place in offline mode in the configuration screen of the corresponding drive object. The new units are not displayed until after the download ("Load project to target system") and subsequent upload ("Load project to PG") have been completed.

Unit groups

Each parameter that can be switched is assigned to a unit group which can be switched within certain limits depending on the group.

This assignment and the units groups for each parameter appear in the parameter list in the SINAMICS List Manual.

The unit groups can be individually switched using 4 parameters (p0100, p0349, p0505 and p0595).

Parameter

- p0010 Commissioning parameter filter
- p0100 IEC/NEMA mot stds
- p0349 Unit system, motor equivalent circuit diagram data
- p0505 Unit system selection
- p0595 Technological unit selection
- p0596 Technological unit reference variable
- p2000 Reference speed reference frequency
- p2001 Reference voltage
- p2002 Reference current
- p2003 Reference torque
- r2004 Reference power
- p2005 Reference angle
- p2006 Reference temperature
- p2007 Reference acceleration

9.2.17 Simple brake control

Description

The "Simple brake control" is used exclusively for the control of holding brakes. The holding brake is used to secure drives against unwanted motion when deactivated.

The control command for releasing and applying the holding brake is transmitted directly to the converter via DRIVE-CLiQ from the Control Unit, which logically combines the signals with the system-internal processes and monitors these signals.

The converter then performs the action and controls the output for the holding brake appropriately.
The operating principle of the holding brake can be configured using parameter p1215.

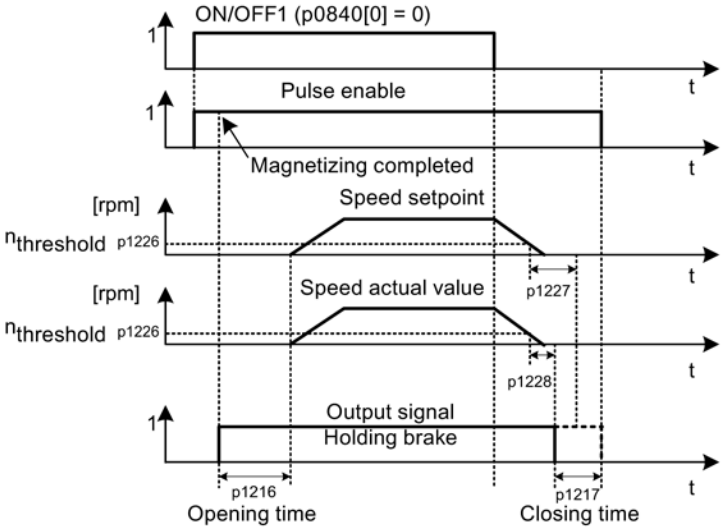


Figure 9-8 Sequence diagram, simple brake control

The start of the closing time for the brake depends on the expiration of the shorter of the two times p1227 (standstill detection monitoring time) and p1228 (pulse cancellation delay time).

⚠WARNING

Danger to life when incorrectly using the basic brake control

Accidents causing serious injury or death can occur if the basic brake control is incorrectly used.

- Do not use the basic brake control as service brake.
- Carefully observe the special technological and machine-specific conditions and standards for ensuring personnel and machine safety.
- Take into account the risks that can result, e.g. from suspended axes.

Features

- Automatic activation by means of sequence control
- Standstill (zero-speed) monitoring
- Forced brake release (p0855, p1215)
- Application of brake for a 1 signal "Unconditionally close holding brake" (p0858)
- Application of brake after "Enable speed controller" signal has been canceled (p0856)

Signal connections

The holding brake is controlled using free digital outputs on the Control Unit or the TM31 (for option G60). If necessary, control must be realized by means of a relay to connect a holding brake with higher voltage or with higher power demand.

For this, parameter p1215 must be set to "3" (motor holding brake the same as sequence control, connection via BICO) and the appropriate BICO parameters of the selected digital outputs must be interconnected.

Commissioning

If p1215 is set to "0" (no brake available) during initial commissioning and a connected brake is recognized, simple brake control is activated automatically (p1215 = 1). In this case, fault F07935 "Motor holding brake detected" appears and must be acknowledged.

NOTICE
Material damage due to a destroyed brake for an incorrectly set configuration If a motor holding brake is being used, the parameter setting p1215 = "0" (no motor holding brake available) means that the motor holding brake remains closed. The brake will be destroyed when the motor moves. • If there is a motor brake, set parameter p1215 to values > 1.

Notes on setting the release (opening) time (p1216):

- The release time (p1216) should be set longer than the actual release time of the holding brake. As a result, the drive will not accelerate when the brake is closed.

Notes on setting the closing time (p1217):

- The closing time (p1217) should be set longer than the actual closing time of the holding brake. As a result, the pulses are suppressed only after the holding brake is closed.
- If the closing time (p1217) is set too low compared to the actual closing time of the holding brake, the load may drop suddenly.
- If the closing time (p1217) is set too high compared to the actual closing time of the holding brake, the controller acts against the holding brake and thus reduces its service life.

Function diagram

FP 2701	Simple brake control (r0108.14 = 0)

Parameter

- r0056.4 Magnetizing completed
- r0060 CO: Speed setpoint before the setpoint filter
- r0063[0...2] CO: Actual speed value
- r0108.14 Extended brake control
- p0855[C] BI: Unconditionally release holding brake
- p0856 BI: Speed controller enabled
- p0858 BI: Unconditionally apply holding brake
- r0899.12 BO: Holding brake open
- r0899.13 BO: Command, close holding brake
- p1215 Motor holding brake configuration
- p1216 Motor holding brake release time
- p1217 Motor holding brake closing time
- p1226 Threshold for standstill detection
- p1227 Standstill detection monitoring time
- p1228 Pulse suppression delay time
- p1278 Brake control diagnostic evaluation

9.2.18 Synchronization

Description

The "Synchronization" function and an existing VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module (to measure the line voltage) synchronizes a motor to the line supply. The connection to the line supply or the required contactor activation can be made via the available bypass function or via a higher-level control system.

The use of the bypass function permits the temporary (e.g. to perform maintenance work without system standstill) or permanent operation of the motor on the line supply.

The p3800 parameter activates the synchronization. The voltage is acquired via a VSM10 assigned to the drive (via DRIVE-CLiQ) and measures the line supply voltage.

Features

- Connector inputs for the actual voltage sensing of the motor via VSM10 (p3661, r3662)
- Setting a phase difference (p3809)
- Can be activated by parameter (p3800)
- Enable via parameter (p3802)

Function diagram

FP 7020	Technology functions - Synchronizing

Parameter

- p3800[0...n] Sync network drive activation
- p3801[0...n] Sync-line-drive drive object number
- p3802[0...n] BI: Sync network drive enable
- r3803 CO/BO: Sync network drive control word
- r3804 CO: Sync network drive target frequency
- r3805 CO: Sync network drive frequency difference
- p3806[0...n] Sync network drive frequency difference threshold value
- r3808 CO: Sync network drive phase difference
- p3809[0...n] Sync network drive phase setpoint value
- p3811[0...n] Sync network drive frequency limitation
- r3812 CO: Sync network drive correction frequency
- p3813[0...n] Sync network drive phase synchronism threshold value
- r3814 CO: Sync network drive voltage difference
- p3815[0...n] Sync network drive voltage difference threshold value
- r3819.0...7 CO/BO: Sync network drive status word

9.2.19 Energy saving indicator for pumps, fans, and compressors

Function of the energy savings indicator

This function determines the amount of energy used by pumps, fans, and compressors and compares it with the interpolated energy requirement for similar equipment controlled using conventional throttle control.
The amount of energy saved is calculated over the last 100 operating hours and is displayed in kWh. For an operating time of less than 100 hours, the potential energy-saving is interpolated up to 100 operating hours.
The pump, fan or compressor characteristic with the conventional throttle control is specified using 5 adjustable interpolation points.

Background

In a conventionally controlled pump, fan or compressor, the flow rate of the medium is controlled using valves or throttles. In so doing, the machine runs constantly at the rated speed. The system efficiency decreases significantly if the flow rate is reduced by means of valves or throttles. The pressure in the system increases. The motor even consumes energy when the valves or throttles are completely closed, i.e., with flow rate Q = 0. In addition, undesirable process-related situations can occur; for example, cavitation in the pumps, fans, and compressors or increased temperature rise of pumps, fans, and compressors and the medium.

As a result of variable speed operation, a drive operating under partial load conditions consumes considerably less energy than with conventional process control using valves or throttles. This applies in particular for pumps, fans, and compressors with parabolic load characteristics. With SINAMICS, a closed-loop control of the flow rate or pressure is achieved by employing closed-loop speed control of the pump, fan or compressor. As a consequence, the plant or system is controlled close to its maximum efficiency over the complete operating range.

In comparison to pumps, fans, and compressors, machines with linear or constant load characteristic (e.g. conveyor drives or positive displacement pumps) have lower potential savings.

Energy saving by using a variable speed drive

When a variable speed drive is used, the flow rate of the pump, fan, or compressor is controlled as a function of speed. The flow rate changes proportionally with the speed of the continuous-flow machine. Any existing valve or throttle remains open. Therefore, the equipment works close to optimum efficiency and consumes considerably less energy, particularly in the partial load range, than equipment controlled by means of valves or throttles.

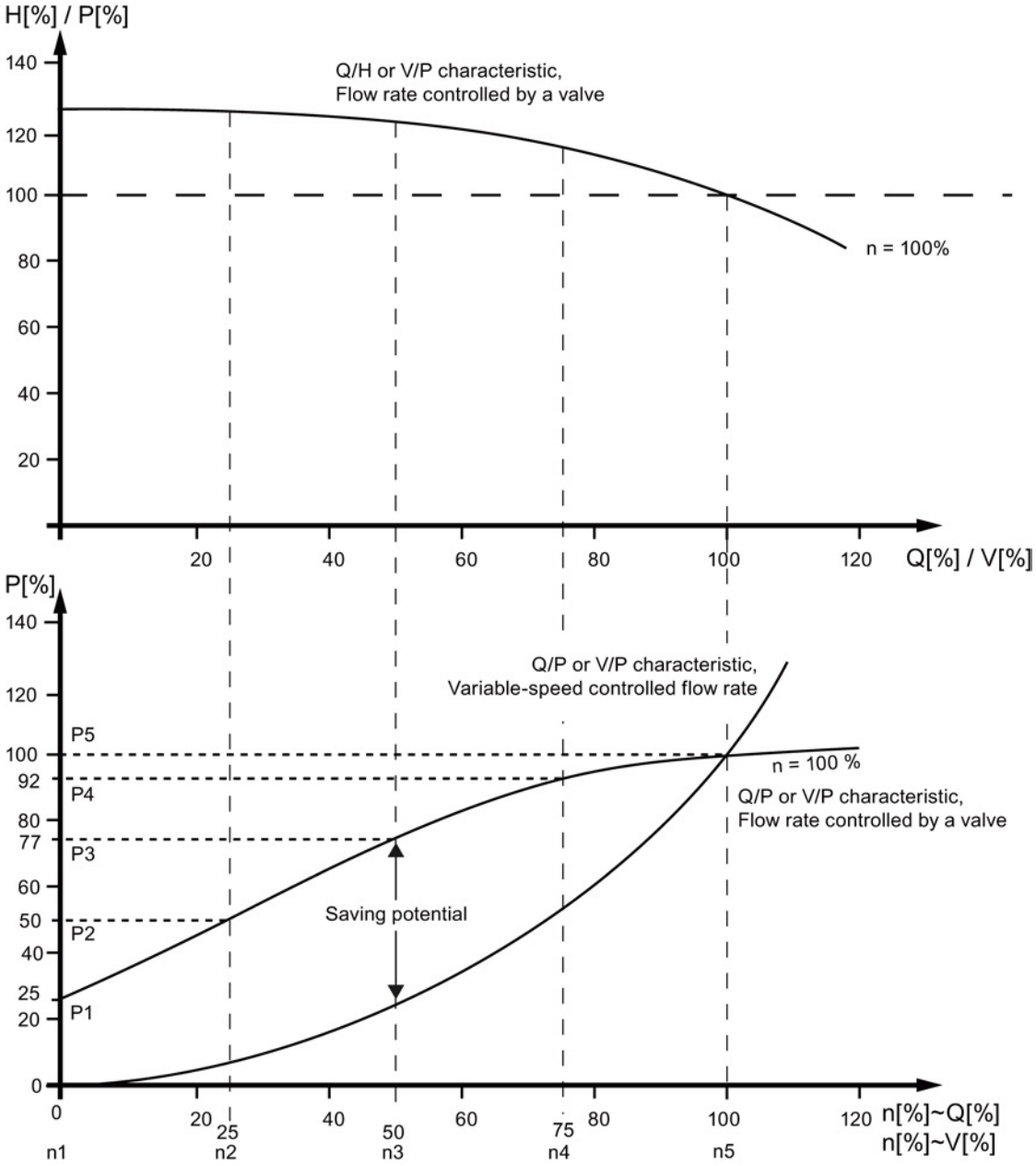


Figure 9-9 Potential for energy savings

Legend for top characteristic:
H[%] = Head, P[%] = Flow pressure, Q[%] = Flow rate, V[%] = Volumetric flow

Legend for bottom characteristic:
P[%] = Power drawn by the conveyor motor, n[%] = Speed of conveyor motor
Interpolation points p3320 to p3329 for system characteristic with n = 100%:

P1...P5 = Power drawn, n1...n5 = Speed in accordance with variable speed motor

Adapting the pump, fan, or compressor characteristic

The 5 interpolation points of the pump, fan, or compressor characteristic are entered using parameters p3320 to p3329. This characteristic can be configured individually for each drive data set.

Table 9- 6 Interpolation points of the pump, fan, or compressor characteristic

Interpolation point	Parameter	Factory setting: P: Power in % n: Speed in %	
1	p3320	P1 = 25.00	
	p3321	n1 = 0.00	
2	p3322	P2 = 50.00	
	p3323	n2 = 25.00	
3	p3324	P3 = 77.00	
	p3325	n3 = 50.00	
4	p3326	P4 = 92.00	
	p3327	n4 = 75.00	
5	p3328	P5 = 100.00	
	p3329	n5 = 100.00	

Note

Consequences of not adjusting the pump, fan, or compressor curve

If the interpolation points of the pump, fan, or compressor curve are not adapted, the factory setting will be used to calculate the energy saving indicator. The values of the factory setting could then deviate from the equipment characteristic and cause incorrect calculation of the actual energy savings.

Energy saving indication

The energy saving is displayed in parameter r0041.

By setting p0040 = 1, the value of parameter r0041 is reset to 0. Parameter p0040 is then automatically set to 0.

9.2.20 Write protection

Description

Write protection is used to prevent setting parameters from being accidentally changed. No password is required for write protection.

Activating write protection

Write protection can be activated as follows:

- With STARTER in the online mode, after selecting the drive unit via **Project > Write protection drive unit > Activate**.
- Using the AOP30 operator panel via p7761 = 1.

All setting parameters involved with write protection can no longer be changed.

In STARTER all write-protected setting parameters have a gray background in the expert list and in the operating screen forms.

If, in AOP30, an attempt is made to change a write-protected setting parameter, then this is rejected with the corresponding error message.

Write requests from write-protected setting parameters via communication are treated in different ways:

- Parameter changes involving class 1 controllers (controls, e.g. SIMATIC) are executed.
- Parameter changes of class 2 controllers (engineering or commissioning total, e.g. STARTER) are not executed.

Deactivating write protection

Write protection can be deactivated as follows:

- With STARTER in the online mode, after selecting the drive unit via **Project > Write protection drive unit > Deactivate**.
- Using the AOP30 operator panel via p7761 = 0.

Write protection status

The status of write protection can be displayed using parameter r7760.0:

- r7760.0 = 0: Write protection is not active
- r7760.0 = 1: Write protection is active

Exceptions when write protection is active

The following functions or adjustable parameters are excluded from the write protection:

- Changing the access level (p0003)
- Commissioning the parameter filter (p0009)
- Module detection via LED (p0124, p0144, p0154)
- Resetting parameters (p0972, p0976)
- Saving parameters (p0977)
- Acknowledge a fault (p2102, p3981)
- RTC time stamp, set time, synchronization (p3100, p3101, p3103)
- Master control mode selection (p3985)
- Trace (p 4700ff.)
- Function generator (p4800ff.)
- Activating/deactivating write protection (p7761)
- Flashing component (p9210, p9211)

Note

List of the exceptions for activated write protection

A list of the adjustable parameters which, in spite of the write protection, can be changed is provided in the List Manual.
The list has the designation "WRITE_NO_LOCK".

Write protection for multi-master fieldbus systems

For fieldbus systems (e.g. CAN bus), which can be operated as multi-master bus systems, when write protection is activated, all setting parameters can be accessed.

For these bus systems, parameter p7762 can be used to set the behavior when write protection is activated:

- p7762 = 0: Write access independent of p7761
- p7762 = 1: Write access dependent on p7761

Parameter

- r7760 Write protection/know-how protection status
- p7761 Write protection
- p7762 Write protection multi-master fieldbus system access behavior

9.2.21 Know-how protection

9.2.21.1 Description

The know-how protection is used, for example, so that machine manufacturers can encrypt their configuration know-how and protect it against changes and copying.

For know-how protection, a password is required; saved data is encrypted.

When know-how protection is activated, most of the setting parameters cannot be changed and cannot be read out. The display parameters are shown unchanged. The contents of screen forms in STARTER are not displayed.

Know-how protection can be combined with copy protection.

Characteristics when know-how protection is activated

- Except for a small number of system parameters and the parameters specified in an exception list, all other parameters are locked.
- The values of these parameters are not visible in the expert list and so cannot be changed. The text "know-how protected" appears instead of the parameter values.
- Know-how protected parameters can be hidden in the expert list. This requires that the "not know-how protected" filter is set in the "Online value" column.
- The values of display parameters remain visible.
- The contents of screen forms are not displayed when know-how protection is active.
- Know-how protection can be combined with copy protection.
- The same know-how protection is used for scripts.
- The drive unit as well as the drive objects and DCC charts therein can be displayed as inconsistent.

Functions, which can be executed when know-how protection is active

The following functions can be executed although know-how protection is active:

- Restoring factory settings
- Saving parameters
- Acknowledging faults
- Displaying faults and alarms
- Displaying the history of faults and alarms
- Reading out the diagnostic buffer
- Switching over to the control panel (complete control panel functionality: Fetch master control, all buttons and setting parameters)
- Displaying created acceptance documentation

Note

List of the exceptions when know-how protection is activated

A list of the adjustable parameters which, in spite of activated know-how protection, can be changed, is provided in the List Manual.
The list has the designation "KHP_WRITE_NO_LOCK".

Functions, which cannot be executed when know-how protection is active

The following functions cannot be executed when know-how protection is active:

- Download
- Automatic controller setting
- Stationary/rotating measurement
- Clear fault buffer
- Create acceptance documentation

Functions that can be executed optionally when know-how protection is active

The functions listed below can be executed for activated know-how protection provided diagnostic functions were permitted when it was activated:

- Trace function
- Function generator
- Measuring functions

Setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is active

The following setting parameters cannot be changed, but can be read, when know-how protection is activated:

- Motor parameters (p0100, p0300, p0304, p0305, p0349)
- Data sets (p0120, p0130, p0140, p0150, p0170, p0180)
- Encoder type (p0400)
- Reference quantities (p2000, p2001, p2002, p2003, p2005, p2006, p2007)

These parameters are shown in STARTER in the expert list with a gray background.

Note

List of the setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is active

A list of the setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is activated, are provided in the List Manual.
The list has the designation "KHP_ACTIVE_READ".

AOP30 with activated know-how protection

When know-how protection is activated, the AOP30 operator panel does not show protected parameters.

The setting parameters, which can only be read when know-how protection is active, are displayed. An attempt to change such an adjustable parameter, will be rejected and an error message displayed.

9.2.21.2 Activating know-how protection

Know-how protection can be activated via STARTER in the online mode.

Activating know-how protection

Know-how protection is activated via STARTER in the online mode as follows:

- Select the drive unit via **Project > Know-how protection drive unit > Activate**.
- A dialog appears in which the following settings can be made:
  - It can be selected as to whether know-how protection should be realized with or without copy protection.
  - By clicking on **Define** an additional dialog opens, in which the password can be entered and acknowledged. The password must comprise at least one character, it may not exceed a length of 30 characters, all characters are permissible.
  - By selecting **Copy from RAM to ROM** the settings are permanently saved after exiting the screen form.
    If **Copy RAM to ROM** is not selected, then the settings for know-how protection are only saved in a volatile fashion and are no longer available after the system has been switched on the next time.
- After closing the dialog with **OK** know-how protection is activated, the data (parameters, DCC) are saved, encrypted on the memory card.
  In all of the protected setting parameters, in the expert list, instead of the parameter value, the "know-how protected" text is displayed.

Note

Password check for know-how protection and Windows language settings

A change to the Windows language settings after activating know-how protection can cause errors for a subsequent password verification. As a consequence, only characters from the ASCII character set should be used for the password.

Note regarding know-how protection

Note

Safely deleting existing unencrypted data

If unencrypted data have already been saved on the memory card before saving encrypted data, then this data will not be safely deleted. No special deletion method is applied in order to completely and finally remove unencrypted data from the memory card.

In this case, users must ensure that the unencrypted data are safely and reliably deleted, for instance by using special PC-based tools.

9.2.21.3 Deactivating know-how protection

Know-how protection can be deactivated via STARTER in the online mode.

Deactivating know-how protection

Know-how protection is deactivated via STARTER in the online mode as follows:

- Select the drive unit via **Project > Know-how protection drive unit > Deactivate**.
- A dialog appears in which the know-how protection can be temporarily or permanently deactivated:
  - Temporary deactivation:
    Select **temporary** and enter the password, accept using **OK**.
  - Final deactivation:
    Select **final** and enter the password, select **Copy RAM to ROM** and accept using **OK**.

Note when deactivating know-how protection

Note

Permanently or temporarily deactivating know-how protection

Temporary deactivation means that know-how protection is active again after a POWER ON. Data is still saved on the memory card in an encrypted form. The existing password is used to reactivate know-how protection.

Final deactivation means that know-how protection is no longer active, even after a POWER ON. Data is saved on the memory card in an unencrypted form (i.e. data is no longer encrypted).

Even if know-how protection has been finally deactivated, it can still be reactivated when required.

9.2.21.4 Changing the know-how protection password

Changing the password for know-how protection can be realized via STARTER in the online mode.

Changing the password

The password for know-how protection can be changed as follows via STARTER in the online mode:

- Select the drive unit via **Project > Know-how protection drive unit > Change password**.
- A dialog appears in which the following entries can be made:
  - Enter the old password
  - Enter the new password
    The password must comprise at least one character, it may not exceed a length of 30 characters, all characters are permissible.
  - Confirm the new password
- After closing the dialog with **OK**, the changed password is activated.

9.2.21.5 OEM exception list

Setting parameters can be excluded from know-how protection using the OEM exception list. The parameters contained in the exception list can also be read and changed even when know-how protection is activated.

The exception list can only be generated via the expert list in STARTER in online mode. Parameter p7763 is used to define the number of parameters that should be contained in the exception list. In parameter p7764, in each index, the parameter number that should be included in the exception list is entered. The exception list can be separately generated for each drive object.

Note

Changing parameter p7763

After parameter p7763 has been changed, a "Load to PG" must be realized so that the index field of parameter p7764 is adapted.

In the factory setting, the exception list of the Control Unit consists of one parameter (p7763 = 1). p7766 (password input) is entered into parameter p7764[0] of the Control Unit; this means that when know-how protection is activated, the password for deactivation can be entered.

Note

Absolute know-how protection

If parameter p7766 is removed from the exception list and know-how protection is activated, then a password can no longer be entered. This means that know-how protection can no longer be deactivated!
In this case, the drive can only be accessed by restoring the factory settings.

9.2.21.6 Memory card copy protection

Using the memory card copy protection function, it can be ensured that the encrypted data saved on the memory card (parameter and DCC data) cannot be copied to another memory card where they are then subsequently used.

The memory card copy protection can be activated when activating the know-how protection via STARTER.

When know-how protection is activated and the memory card copy protection is activated, data (parameters and DCC) is encrypted, taking into account the serial number of the memory card (r7843) and the Control Unit (r7758).

When the drive unit is powered up, the serial numbers saved on the memory card and the Control Unit are compared to the actual serial numbers. If these serial numbers do not match, then fault F13100 is output and the device can no longer be operated. The individual cause can be determined by evaluating the default value.

9.2.21.7 Replacing devices for know-how protection with copy protection

When transferring configuration data with know-how protection and memory card copy protection between machine manufacturers (OEMs) and end customers, it may be necessary to replace a damaged memory card or a defective Control Unit.

For this particular case, there is a sequence which is then applied when transferring data between the machine manufacturer (OEM) and end customer.

Replacing a defective memory card or a defective Control Unit at the end customer

Assumptions:

- The drive is protected with know-how protection and memory card copy protection
- The end customer has a replacement memory card and/or a replacement Control Unit on-site
- The required STARTER project has not been saved by the end customer.
- The machine manufacturer has the same type of Control Unit as the end customer.

Sequence:

- The end customer tells the machine manufacturer the serial number of the memory card and the Control Unit.
- The machine manufacturer links the STARTER project with the serial numbers of the memory card (p7769) and the Control Unit (p7759).
- The machine manufacturer loads the STARTER project into the drive unit.
- Online, the machine manufacturer activates, after the download, the copy protection and the know-how protection (p7765, p7767, p7768).
- The machine manufacturer saves the project using p0971 or p0977 onto the memory card.
- The machine manufacturer takes the PS-ACX and possibly generated DCC-YDB files from the "..\USER\SINAMICS\DATA" area of the memory card and sends them to the end customer. (for example by E-mail).
- The end customer copies the files into the "..\USER\SINAMICS\DATA" area of his memory card, inserts this into the Control Unit and switches on the drive unit.
- After power-up, the end customer saves the project (using p0971 or p0977); if required, parameters must be reentered from the OEM exception list.

9.2.21.8 Overview of important parameters

- r7758[0...19] KHP Control Unit serial number
- p7759[0...19] KHP Control Unit reference serial number
- r7760 Write protection/know-how protection status
- p7761 Write protection
- p7762 Write protection multi-master fieldbus system access behavior
- p7763 KHP OEM exception list number of indices for p7764
- p7764[0...n] KHP OEM exception list
- p7765 KHP memory card copy protection
- p7766[0...29] KHP password input
- p7767[0...29] KHP password new
- p7768[0...29] KHP password confirmation
- p7769}0...20] KHP memory card reference serial number
- r7843[0...20] Memory card serial number

KHP: Know-how protection

9.2.22 Essential service mode

Description

Essential **S**ervice **M**ode (ESM) enables the the drive to be operated for as long as possible if needed, even when errors occur.

For instance, this function can be used in applications in which an undesirable standstill can cause significant subsequent damage.
For example, if a fire breaks out in a large building, a fan should extract smoke and other gases so that people can be evacuated.

Features

- In essential service mode, the automatic restart function is activated irrespective of the setting of parameter p1210. The result of this is that the drive is automatically switched back on if an OFF2 occurs due to an internal fault.
- In essential service mode, converter shutdown due to faults is suppressed. Exceptions to this rule are faults that would lead to the destruction of the device.
- Essential service mode is triggered by a continuous signal via the digital input, which is set as a signal source via p3880.
- If the drive is in bypass mode when essential service mode is activated, the motor will automatically switch over to converter operation.
- When essential service mode ends, the converter returns to normal operation and responds according to the currently pending commands and setpoints.

Note

Loss of warranty for an converter operated in the essential service mode

Should essential service mode apply, the customer can no longer lodge any claims for warranty.

The essential service mode is an exceptional state, and is not suitable for continuous operation.

Please note that the essential service mode can result in exceptionally high temperatures, including open fire, as well as emissions of light, noise, particles, gases, etc. can occur inside and outside the converter.

The converter logs the essential service mode, and the faults that occur while in essential service mode in a password-protected memory. This data is only accessible for the service and repair organization.

Activating essential service mode

Essential service mode is activated through a continuous signal to the digital input, which is set as a signal source via p3880.

Only the digital inputs on the Control Unit are permitted as signal sources:

- r0722.x (high active)
- r0723.x (low active)

x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 20, 21

Setpoint source for essential service mode

When essential service mode is activated, the setpoint which is set via p3881 is switched to:

- p3881 = 0: Last known setpoint (r1078 smoothed) - factory setting
- p3881 = 1: Fixed speed setpoint 15 (p1015)
- p3881 = 3: Fieldbus
- p3881 = 5: TB30/TM31 analog input
- p3881 = 6: Enable of response OFF1
- p3881 = 7: Enable of response OFF2

When using the analog setpoint value from TB30/TM31 (p3881 = 5) the setpoint is used that is set via p3886.

If, when setting p3881 = 3 or 5, the setpoint is lost (e.g. cable break or fieldbus failure), then the alternative setpoint that is set via p3882 is automatically switched to:

- p3882 = 0: Last known setpoint (r1078 smoothed) - factory setting
- p3882 = 1: Fixed speed setpoint 15 (p1015)
- p3882 = 2: Maximum speed (p1082)

Direction of rotation in essential service mode

Depending on your system, you may have to invert the setpoint locally for essential service mode. To do this, parameter p3883 can be linked with a free digital input:

- Signal in p3883 = 0: The direction of rotation of the setpoint parameterized for essential service mode is maintained
- Signal in p3883 = 1: Reversal of the direction of rotation of the setpoint parameterized for essential service mode

Automatic restart

In essential service mode, if the automatic restart function is activated and the settings of parameters p1206, 1210 and p1212 then have no effect. The settings in p1211 (automatic restart, start attempts) and p1213 (automatic restart monitoring time) are still effective. The setting of p1213 [0] = p1213 [1] = 0.0 s allows an unlimited number of startup attempts.

Bypass as a fallback strategy

If the converter fails due to an internal, non-acknowledgeable fault, essential service mode is no longer possible. In this case, the motor can be operated via the controller in bypass mode in the event of converter failure. For this purpose, bit 7 of the status word for the automatic restart (r1214.7) must be interconnected with p1266.
The bypass function must also be activated (p1260 ≠ 0). and the changeover source for the bypass must be set to "Bypass via signal (BI:I: p1266)" (p1267 = 1).

Behavior in the event of an encoder error

When operating in vector control with encoder in the essential service mode, there is an automatic switchover to sensorless operation and movement of the drive continues in the event of an encoder error.

Function diagram

FP 3040	Setpoint channel - Direction limitation and direction reversal
FP 7033	Technology functions - essential service mode (ESM)

Parameter

- p3880 BI: ESM activation signal source
- p3881 ESM setpoint source
- p3882 ESM alternative setpoint source
- p3883 BI: ESM direction of rotation signal source
- p3886 CI: ESM setpoint TB30/TM31 analog input
- r3887[0...1] ESM activations/faults, quantity
- p3888 ESM activations/faults, reset quantity
- r3889.0...10 CO/BO: ESM status word

9.2.23 Web server

9.2.23.1 Description

General information

The integrated web server provides information about the drive unit via its web pages. This is accessed via an Internet browser. The information on the Web pages is shown in English. For information about message texts, drive object states and parameter names, there is a language selection which allows a switchover of the display to the languages that are stored on the memory card.

The most important functions of the Web server are described below. However, the "Files" and "User´s Area" display areas of the Web server are described in detail in a separate document (see "User-defined Web pages"). For this reason, these display areas are not described in this description.

Activation/configuration

The web server is already active in the factory settings.

The web server is configured via parameter p8986 (web server configuration).

Data transfer

Access is performed by unsecured (http) or secured transmission (https).

The type of transmission is defined by entering the corresponding address.

For safety reasons, secure transmission can be forced by deactivation of the http port.

Access

The web server is accessed via the following interfaces:

- LAN interface of the Control Unit CU320-2 DP or CU320-2 PN
- PROFINET interface of the CU320-2 PN

Addressing of the drive is based on the IP address.
The IP address can be taken from the following parameters.

- Integrated Ethernet interface (LAN interface): r8911[0...3]
- PROFINET interface: r8931[0...3]

Access rights

There are two users, who have different authorizations:

- User "SINAMICS" (activated in the factory setting):
  - Calling diagnostics pages
  - Resetting the fault memory
  - Creating/expanding/removing parameter lists
  - Reading/writing/saving parameters
- User "Administrator," additionally:
  - Updating the configuration
  - Updating the firmware
  - Loading user-defined pages to the drive

The settings of the write and know-how protection also apply to the drive parameters and configuration when accessing the web server.

Browsers supported

Access to the web server is possible with the following Internet browsers:

- Microsoft Internet Explorer from 8 and from Version 10 and higher
- Mozilla Firefox as of Version 24
- Opera as of Version 12.16
- Chrome as of Version 30.0

User-defined Web pages

You can extend the standard Web pages for the Web server using some self-created Web pages. The SIEMENS Industry Online Support contains detailed information on:

1. Go to the following SIEMENS website in your browser:

   SINAMICS Application Examples (https://www.automation.siemens.com/mc-app/sinamics-application-examples/Home/Index?language=en)
2. Select drive type "S120" in the search screen and "Web server" as the special feature.
3. Click on the desired tooltip in the list of results.

   The corresponding tooltip is then displayed in the SIEMENS Industry Online Support. Via the tooltip you can then download a detailed description as a PDF file.

9.2.23.2 Starting the web server

Preconditions

- The web server is already active in the factory settings.
- A functional commissioned drive project.
- PG/PC is connected to the Control Unit (to the target device).

Starting the web server

1. Enter the IP address of the SINAMICS drive in the address line of the Internet browsers (e.g. http://169.254.11.22.
   The start page of the Web server opens.

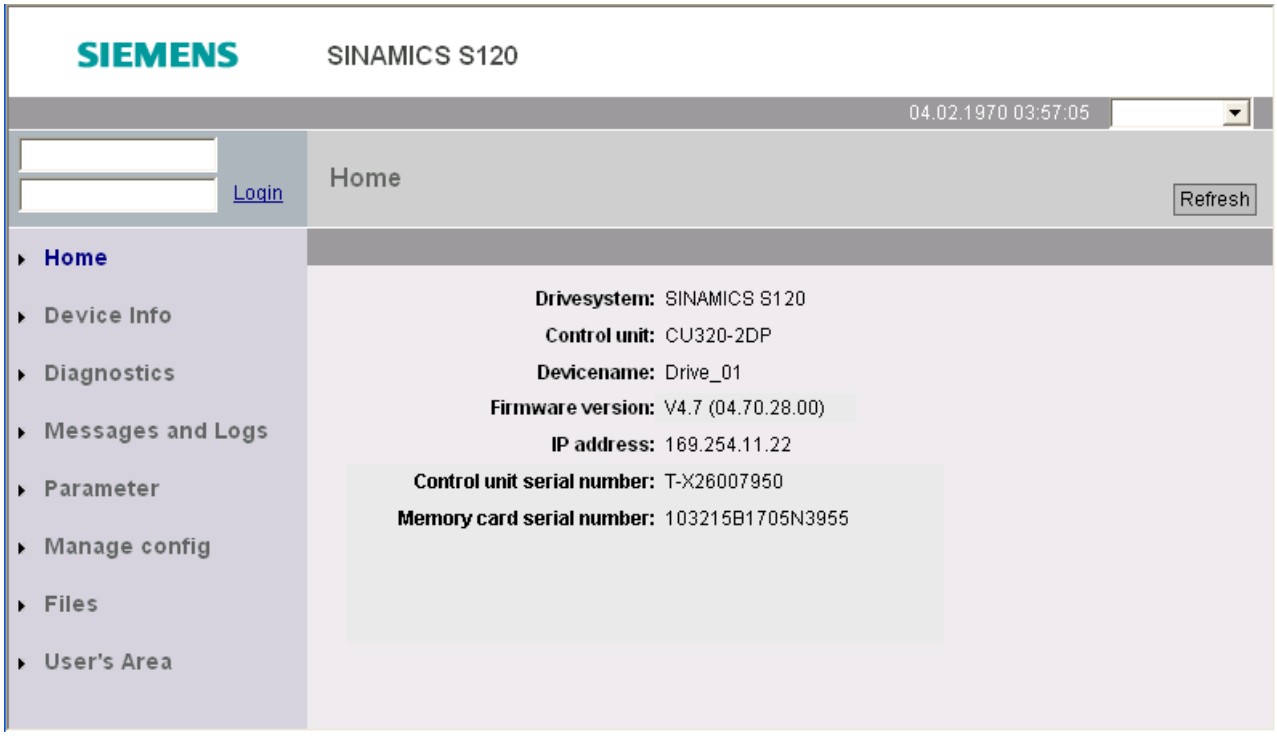


Figure 9-10 Start page of the web server

2. Enter the login name (e.g. SINAMICS) top left and the password if necessary.
   In the factory setting, only the "SINAMICS" user is enabled, a password is not allocated.
3. Click "Login" to confirm the input.

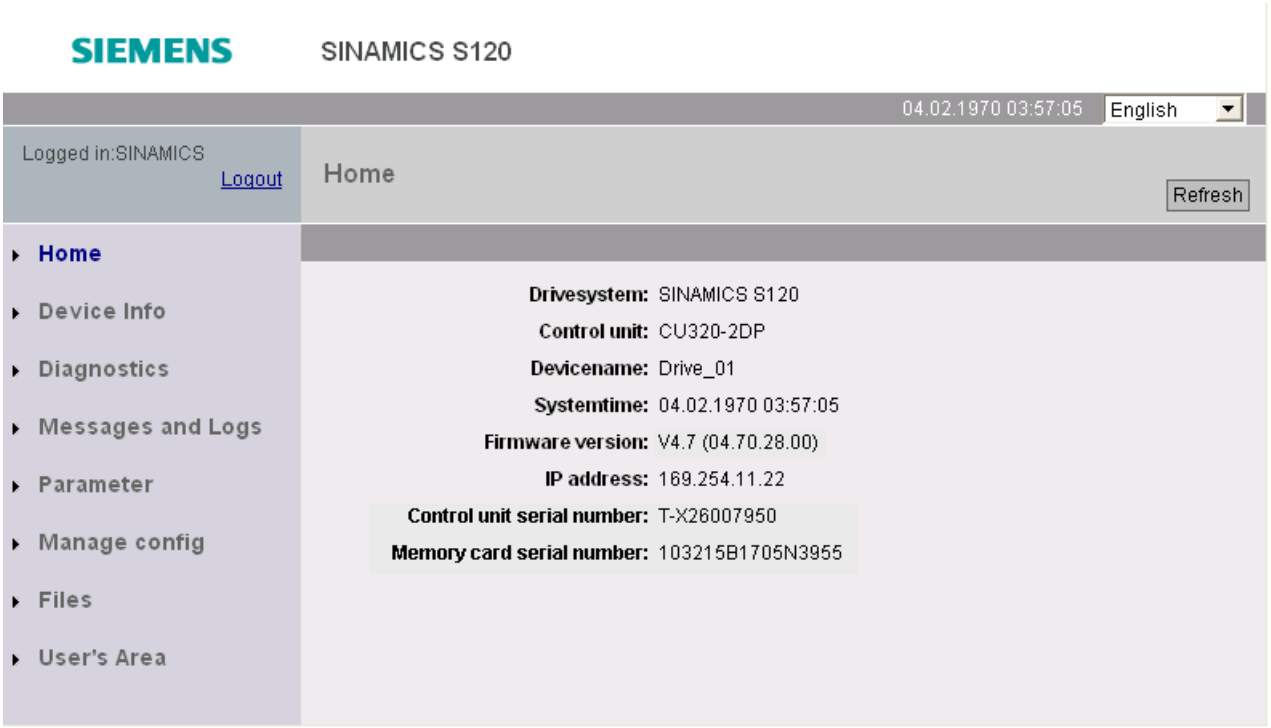


Figure 9-11 Start page after logging in

After login, you can go to the various display areas of the web server using the navigation on the left-hand side.

Logout

If you no longer require the web server or want to block the detailed display areas, you can log out.

Click "Logout" at the top left in the navigation.

9.2.23.3 Web server configuration

Configuration via STARTER

The configuration dialog box is opened by selecting the drive in the project navigator and clicking "Web server" in the shortcut menu.

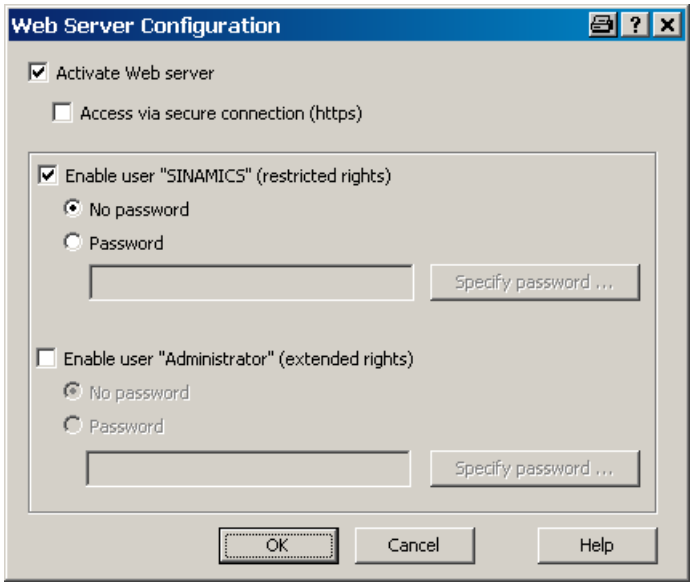


Figure 9-12 Configuring web server via STARTER

Activating the web server

The web server is already active in the factory settings.

Access can be restricted to a secure connection (https) if necessary.

Note

Access via a secure connection (https)

You require security certificates for both SINAMICS and the Internet browser to access the web server via an https connection. These security certificates must be installed on every computer, from which the web server is to be called.

Contact your system administrator about this.

Enabling users

The user "SINAMICS" is enabled in the factory settings. A password can be defined for this if necessary.

The user "Administrator" is not enabled in the factory settings. If it is enabled, a password can also be defined.

Note

Secure passwords

No password rules are defined for the assignment of passwords. You can assign any passwords without restriction. No checks are made for illegal characters or passwords which have already been used. Therefore, as the user, you are responsible for the required password security.

Use a sufficiently long password (e.g. 10 characters). Use special characters and avoid passwords which you have already used elsewhere.

Please note that if the Windows language settings are changed, errors can occur when subsequently checking the password. If you use language-specific special characters, you must ensure that the same language setting is active when the password is entered subsequently.

Configuration via AOP30 or via the expert list

Configuration is performed in parameters p8986 (web server configuration):

Bit 00: Activating the web server (factory settings: activated)
Bit 01: Access only permitted with https (factory setting: not activated)
Bit 02: Activating user "SINAMICS" (factory setting: activated)
Bit 03: Activating the user "Administrator" (factory setting: not activated)

Note

Password assignment after assignment of the user "Administrator"

After the user "Administrator" has been activated via parameter p8986 (via AOP30 or via the expert list), it is necessary to assign a password via STARTER. Otherwise, the user "Administrator" will not be able to access the web server.

9.2.23.4 Display areas

The web server has different display areas, which are opened via the menu items in the navigation.

Home

The start page of the web server is opened via this menu item.

Device Info

This menu item shows the most important device information.

Diagnostics

From this menu item, under the "Service overview" tab, the operating state is displayed for each drive object.
In addition, color coding is used to indicate as to whether a fault or alarm is active for the particular drive object.

Under the "Tracefiles" tab, trace files are displayed that are located on the memory card in the "USER/SINAMICS/DATA/TRACE" directory.

Messages and Logs

The diagnostics buffer is displayed on the "Diagbuffer" tab via this menu item.

The faults and warnings of the drive are shown on the "Alarms drive" tab. With the "Reset alarms" button, you can reset the acknowledgeable faults.

Parameter

With this menu item, you can create and manage self-defined parameter lists. Up to 20 parameter lists with 40 parameters each can be managed.

For each parameter list access rights (read, write, modify) of the two users ("SINAMICS" and "Administrator") can be defined separately.

The settings of the write and know-how protection also apply to the parameters when accessing the web server.

The created parameter lists are saved on the memory card of the drive. Therefore, a parameter selection performed once is retained for further access even after the drive is switched off.

Manage config

Via this menu item, the user "Administrator" can upload and update firmware and project files.

Files

Via this menu item, the user "Administrator" can load user-defined pages into the drive.

User's Area

Via this menu item, the user "Administrator" can open user-defined pages.

9.2.23.5 Overview of important parameters

- r8911 IE IP Address of Station active
- r8931 PN IP Address of Station active
- p8986 Web server configuration
- p8987[0...1] Web server port assignment

9.3 Extended functions

9.3.1 Technology controller

Description

The "technology controller" function module allows simple control functions to be implemented, e.g.:

- Liquid level control
- Temperature control
- Dancer position control
- Pressure control
- Flow control
- Simple control without higher-level control
- Tension control

The technology controller features:

- Two scalable setpoints
- Scalable output signal
- Separate fixed values
- Separate motorized potentiometer
- The output limits can be activated and deactivated via the ramp-function generator.
- The D component can be switched to the system deviation or actual value channel.
- The motorized potentiometer of the technology controller is only active when the drive pulses are enabled.

The technology controller is designed as a PID controller, whereby the differentiator can be switched to the control deviation channel or the actual value channel (factory setting). The P, I, and D components can be set separately.

A value of 0 deactivates the corresponding component. Setpoints can be specified via two connector inputs. The setpoints can be scaled via parameters p2255 and p2256.

A ramp-function generator in the setpoint channel can be used to set the setpoint ramp-up/ramp-down time via parameters p2257 and p2258. The setpoint and actual value channel each have a smoothing element. The smoothing time can be set via parameters p2261 and p2265.

The setpoints can be specified via separate fixed setpoints (p2201 to p2215), the motorized potentiometer, or via the field bus (e.g. PROFIBUS).

Pre-control can be integrated via a connector input.

The output can be scaled via parameter p2295 and the control direction reversed. It can be limited via parameters p2291 and p2292 and interconnected as required via a connector output (r2294).

The actual value can be integrated, for example, via an analog input on the TM31.

If a PID controller has to be used for control reasons, the D component is switched to the setpoint/actual value difference (p2263 = 1) unlike in the factory setting. This is always necessary when the D component is to be effective, even if the reference variable changes. The D component can only be activated when p2274 > 0.

Note

Ramp-up/down time freeze

With the entry "0" sec. as power up time or ramp-down time for the ramp function generator of the technology controller, the current values of the respective ramp function generator will be frozen.

Commissioning

The "technology controller" function module can be activated by running the commissioning Wizard. Parameter r0108.16 indicates whether the function module has been activated.

Example: liquid level control

The objective here is to maintain a constant level in the container.

This is carried out by means of a variable-speed pump in conjunction with a sensor for measuring the level.

The level is determined via an analog input (e.g. AI0 TM31) and sent to the technology controller. The level setpoint is defined in a fixed setpoint. The resulting controlled variable is used as the setpoint for the speed controller.

In this example, a Terminal Module (TM31) is used.

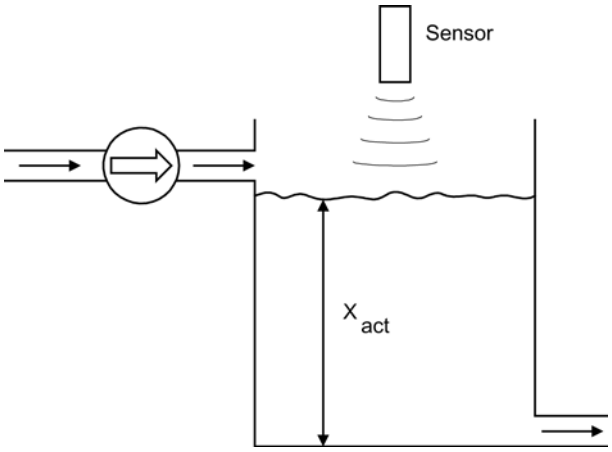


Figure 9-13 Level control: Application

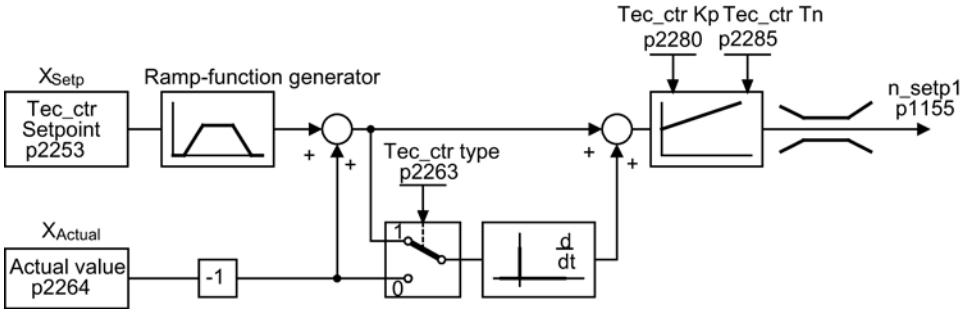


Figure 9-14 Level control: Controller structure

Function diagram

FD 7950	Technology controller – fixed values, binary selection
FP 7951	Technology controller – fixed values, direct selection
FD 7954	Technology controller – motorized potentiometer
FD 7958	Technology controller – closed-loop controller

Key control parameters

- p1155 = r2294 CI: Speed controller speed setpoint 1 [FP 3080]
- p2253 = r2224 Technology controller setpoint effective via fixed setpoint [FD 7950]
- p2263 = 1 D component in fault signal [FD 7958]
- p2264 = r4055 Actual value signal X_{actual} via AI0 of TM31 [FP 9566]
- p2280 = Kp Calculate P gain by means of optimization
- p2285 = Tn Calculate integral time by means of optimization
- p2200 = 1 Technology controller enabled

9.3.2 Bypass function

The bypass function uses digital drive outputs to activate two contactors and uses digital inputs to evaluate the contactor's feedback (e.g., via TM31). This circuit allows the motor to be operated using the converter or directly on the supply line. The contactors are activated by the converter. The feedback signals for the contactor positions have to be returned to the converter.

The bypass circuit can be implemented in two ways:

- without synchronizing the motor to the line supply
- with synchronizing the motor to the supply.

The following applies to all bypass versions:

- The bypass switch is also shut down when one of the "OFF2" or "OFF3" control word signals is canceled.
- Exception:
  If necessary, the bypass switch can be interlocked by a higher-level controller such that the drive can be shut down completely (i.e., including the controller electronics) while the motor is operated on the supply.
  The protective interlocking must be implemented on the system side.
- When the converter is started up again after POWER OFF, the status of the bypass contactors is evaluated. After powering up, the converter can thereby change straight into "Ready to start and bypass" status. This is only possible if the bypass is activated via a control signal, the control signal (p1266) is still present once the system has been ramped up, and the automatic restart function (p1200 = 4) is active.
- Changing the converter into "Ready to start and bypass" status after powering up, is of a higher priority than switching back on automatically.
- Monitoring of the motor temperatures using temperature sensors is active while the converter is in one of two statuses "Ready to start and bypass" or "Ready for operation and bypass".
- The two motor contactors must be designed for switching under load.

Note

Information on the examples

The examples contained in the following descriptions are only basic circuits designed to explain the basic function. The dimensions of specific circuit configurations (contactors, protective equipment) must be calculated for specific systems.

Precondition

The bypass function is only available for sped control without encoders (p1300 = 20) or V/f-control (p1300 = 0...19) and when using an asynchronous motor.

Establishing the bypass function

The bypass function is part of the "technology controller" function module that can be activated by running the commissioning Wizard. Parameter r0108.16 indicates whether the function module has been activated.

9.3.2.1 Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1)

Description

The "Bypass with synchronization with degree of overlapping" is used for drives with a low moment of inertia. These are drives for which their speed would sink very fast when the K1 contactor opens.

When "Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1)" is activated, the synchronized motor is transferred to the supply and retrieved again. During the changeover, both contactors K1 and K2 are closed at the same time for a period (phase lock synchronization).

This bypass type requires a VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module that measures the line voltage for the drive to be synchronized.

A reactor de-couples the drive converter from the line supply - the uk value for the reactor is 10 (± 2) %.

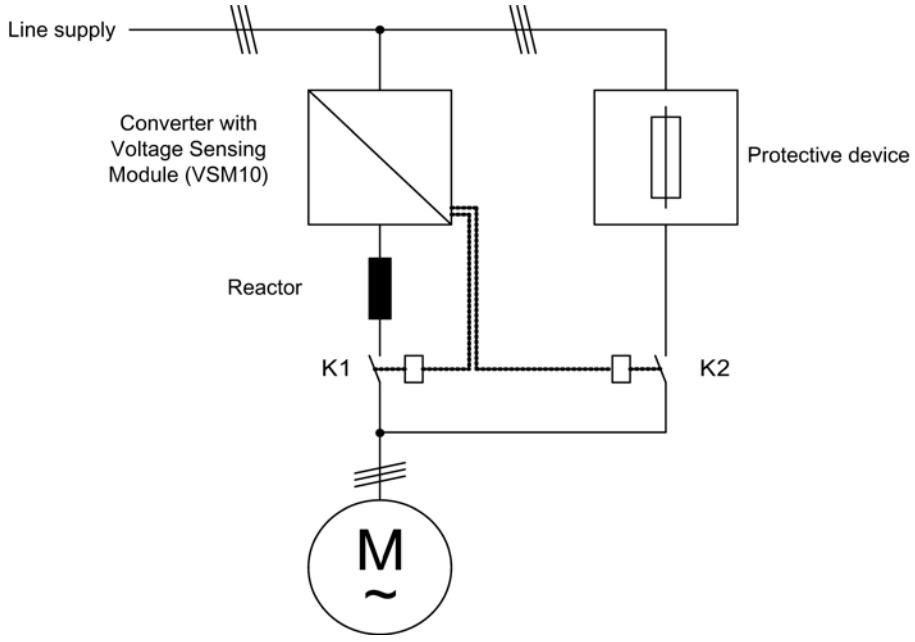


Figure 9-15 Typical circuit diagram for bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping

Activation

The function with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1) function can only be activated using a control signal. It cannot be activated using a speed threshold or a fault.

Parameterization

Once the bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping (p1260 = 1) function has been activated, the following parameters must be set:

Table 9- 7 Parameter settings for bypass function with synchronizer with degree of overlapping

Parameter	Description
p1266 =	Control signal setting when p1267.0 = 1
p1267.0 = 1 p1267.1 = 0	Bypass function is initiated using the control signal
p1269[0] =	Signal source for contactor K1 feedback
p1269[1] =	Signal source for contactor K2 feedback
p3800 = 1	Synchronization is activated
p3802 = r1261.2	Synchronizer activation is triggered by the bypass function.

Transfer process

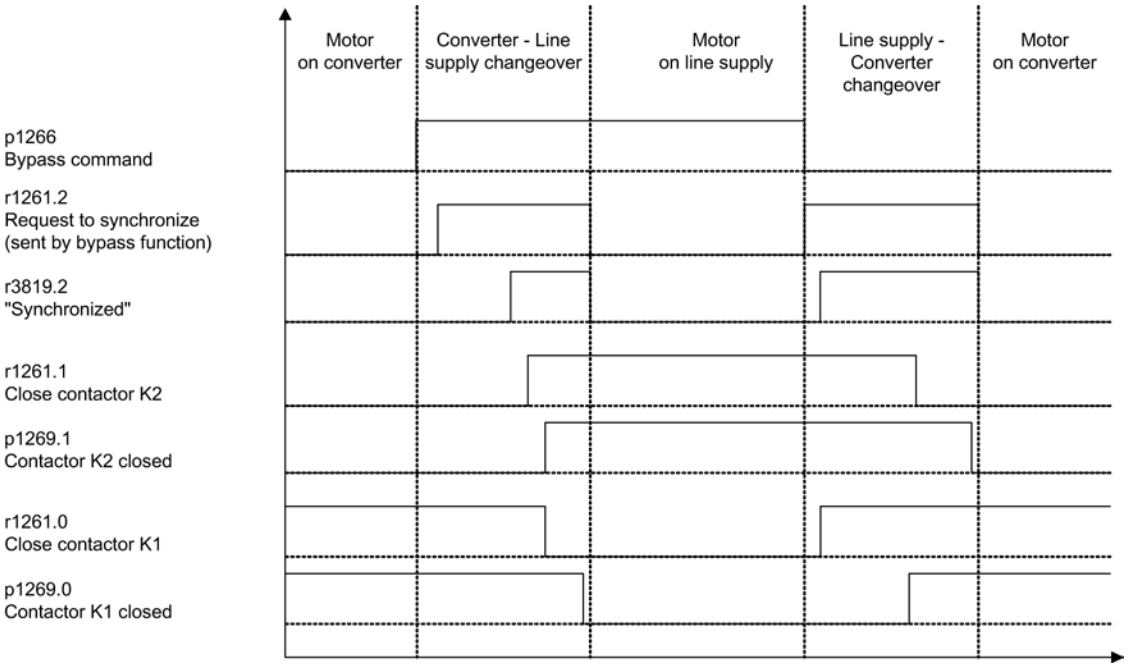


Figure 9-16 Signal diagram, bypass with synchronization with overlap

Transfer of motor to the line supply
(contactors K1 and K2 are activated by the converter):

- The initial state is as follows: Contactor K1 is closed, contactor K2 is open and the motor is fed from the converter.
- The control bit "bypass command" (p1266) is set (e.g. by the higher-level automation).
- The bypass function sets the control word bit "synchronizing" (r1261.2).
- Since the bit is set while the converter is running, the "Transfer motor to line supply" synchronization process is started.
- Once motor synchronization to line frequency, line voltage and line phasing is complete, the synchronization algorithm reports this state (r3819.2).
- The bypass mechanism evaluates this signal and closes contactor K2 (r1261.1 = 1). The signal is evaluated internally - BICO wiring is not required.
- After contactor K2 has fed back the "closed" state (r1269[1] = 1), contactor K1 is opened and the converter inhibits the pulses. The converter is in "Ready for operation and bypass" state.
- If the On command is cancelled in this phase, the converter will change to "Ready to start and bypass" state. If the appropriate contactors are being used, the converter will be isolated from the line supply and the DC link discharged.

To transfer the motor back from the line supply, the sequence is simply reversed: At the start of the process, contactor K2 is closed and contactor K1 is open.

- The "Command bypass" control bit is canceled (e.g. by the higher-level automation).
- The bypass function sets the control word bit "synchronizing".
- The pulses are enabled. Since "synchronizing" is set before "pulse enable", the converter interprets this as a command to retrieve the motor from the line supply.
- Once converter synchronization to line frequency, line voltage and line phasing is complete, the synchronization algorithm reports this state.
- The bypass mechanism evaluates this signal and closes contactor K1. The signal is evaluated internally - BICO wiring is not required.
- Once contactor K1 has reported "closed" state, contactor K2 is opened and the motor returns to operation on the converter.

9.3.2.2 Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2)

Description

When "Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2)" is activated, contactor K2 (to be closed) is only closed when contactor K1 is opened (anticipatory type synchronization). During this time, the motor is not connected to a line supply so that its speed is determined by the load and the friction. Consequently, this bypass type is suitable for drives with large moment of inertia (see following note). The phase position of the motor voltage before synchronization must be set to establish a "lead" before the line supply to which the system should be synchronized. This is realized by setting the synchronization

setpoint (p3809). A phase and frequency difference of around zero is produced when closing contactor K2 by braking the motor in the brief period in which both contactors are open.

This bypass type requires a VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module that measures the line voltage for the drive to be synchronized.

For the function to run correctly, the moment of inertia of the drive and the load must be sufficiently high.

Note

Sufficiently high moment of inertia

A sufficiently high moment of inertia is characterized by a change in the motor speed when contactors K1 and K2 are opened, which is approximately equal to the rated slip. The electrical angular difference of the motor relative to the phase difference of the line supply may only change to the extent that it can still be compensated using p3809.

It is no longer necessary to use the de-coupling reactor after having determined the synchronizing setpoint (p3809) in the manner described above.

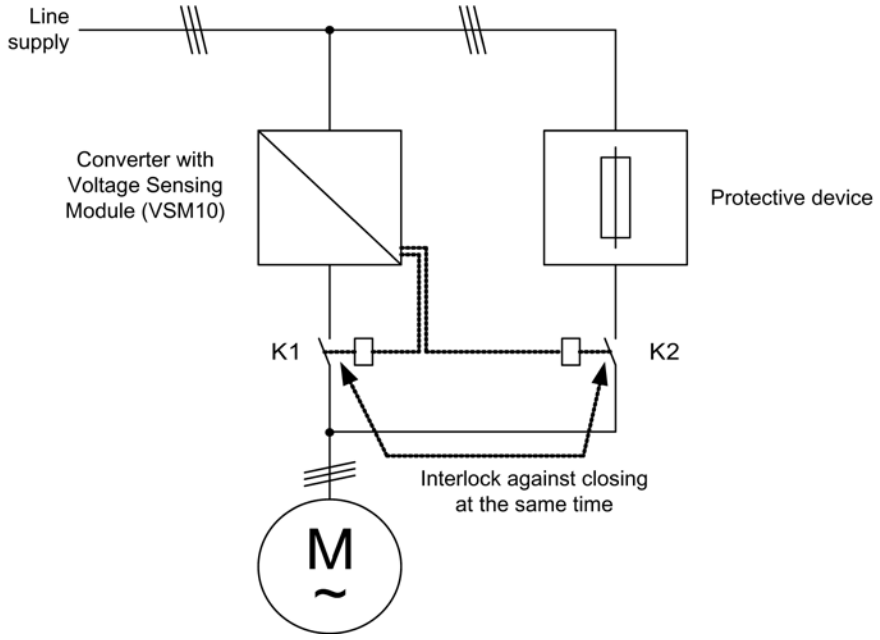


Figure 9-17 Example circuit for bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping

Activation

The bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2) function can only be activated using a control signal. It cannot be activated using a speed threshold or a fault.

Parameterization

Once the bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping (p1260 = 2) function has been activated, the following parameters must be set:

Table 9- 8 Parameter settings for bypass function with synchronizer without degree of overlapping

Parameter	Description
p1266 =	Control signal setting when p1267.0 = 1
p1267.0 = 1 p1267.1 = 0	Bypass function is initiated using the control signal
p1269[0] =	Signal source for contactor K1 feedback
p1269[1] =	Signal source for contactor K2 feedback
p3800 = 1	Synchronization is activated
p3802 = r1261.2	Synchronization activation is triggered by the bypass function
p3809 =	Setting the phase setpoint for synchronizing the drive to the line supply

9.3.2.3 Bypass without synchronizer (p1260 = 3)

Description

When the motor is transferred to the supply, contactor K1 is opened (following converter's pulse inhibit). The system then waits for the motor excitation time to elapse after which contactor K2 is closed and the motor is run directly on the supply.
If the motor is connected to the supply in a non-synchronized manner, an equalizing current flows when the motor is switched in, and this must be taken into account when designing the protective equipment (see diagram "Circuit for bypass without synchronization"). Consequently, this bypass type is suitable only for low power drives.

When the motor is being transferred from the supply by the converter, initially contactor K2 is opened and after the excitation time, contactor K1 is closed. The converter then captures the rotating motor and the motor is operated on the converter.

This bypass type does not require a VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module.

Contactor K2 must be designed for switching under load.

Contactors K1 and K2 must be interlocked against closing at the same time.

The "flying restart" function must be activated (p1200 = 1).

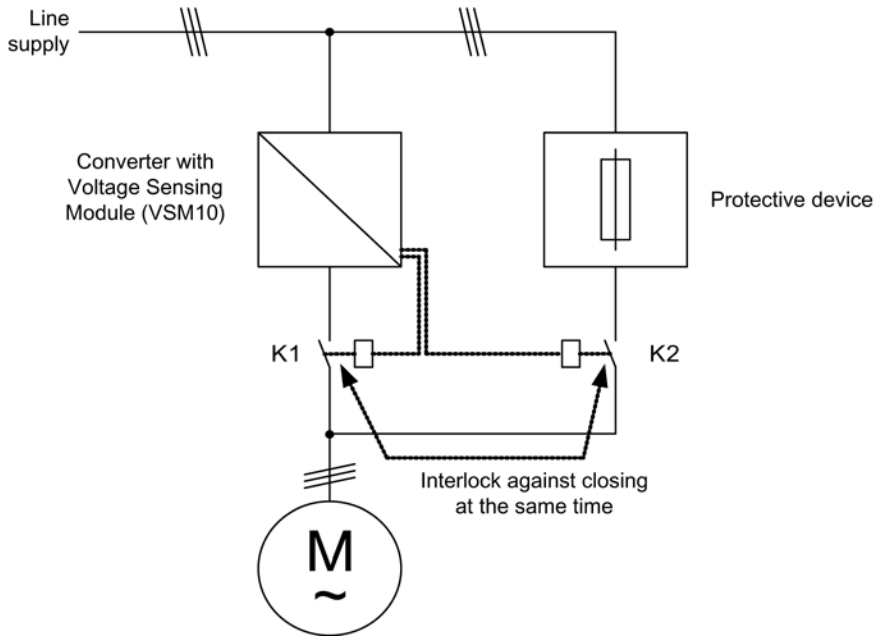


Figure 9-18 Example circuit for bypass without synchronization

Activation

The bypass with synchronizer (p1260 = 3) can be triggered by the following signals (p1267):

- Bypass using control signal (p1267.0 = 1):
  The bypass can be activated using a digital signal (p1266) (e.g. from a higher-level automation system). If the digital signal is canceled, a swichover to converter operations is triggered once the debypass delay time (p1263) has expired.
- Bypass at speed threshold (p1267.1 = 1):
  Once a certain speed is reached, the system switches into the bypass mode (i.e. the converter is used as a starting converter). The bypass cannot be connected until the speed setpoint is greater than the bypass speed threshold (p1265).
  The system reverts to converter mode when the setpoint (at the input of the ramp-function generator, r1119) falls below the bypass speed threshold (p1265). The setpoint > comparison value condition prevents the bypass from being reactivated straight away if the actual speed is still above the bypass speed threshold (p1265) after switching back to converter operations.

The bypass time, debypass time, bypass speed variables and the command source for switching over are set using parameters.

Parameterization

Once the bypass without synchronizer (p1260 = 3) function has been activated, the following parameters must be set:

Table 9- 9 Parameter settings for bypass function with synchronizer without degree of overlapping

Parameter	Description
p1262 =	Bypass dead time setting
p1263 =	Debypass dead time setting
p1264 =	Bypass delay time setting
p1265 =	Speed threshold setting when p1267.1 = 1
p1266 =	Control signal setting when p1267.0 = 1
p1267.0 = p1267.1 =	Trigger signal setting for bypass function
p1269[1] =	Signal source for contactor K2 feedback
p3800 = 0	Synchronization is deactivated.
P1200 = 1	The "flying restart" function is always active.

9.3.2.4 Function diagram

FP 7020 Synchronization

9.3.2.5 Parameters

Bypass function

- p1200 Flying restart operating mode
- p1260 Bypass configuration
- r1261 CO/BO: Bypass control/status word
- p1262 Bypass dead time
- p1263 Debypass delay time
- p1264 Bypass delay time
- p1265 Bypass speed threshold
- p1266 BI: Bypass control command
- p1267 Bypass changeover source configuration
- p1268 BI: Bypass feedback signal synchronization completed
- p1269 BI: Bypass switch feedback signal
- p1274 BI: Bypass switch monitoring time

Synchronization

- p3800 Sync–supply–drive activation
- p3801 Sync–supply–drive drive object number
- p3802 BI: Sync–supply–drive enable
- r3803 CO/BO: Sync–supply–drive control word
- r3804 CO: Sync–supply–drive target frequency
- r3805 CO: Sync–supply–drive frequency difference
- p3806 Sync–supply–drive frequency difference threshold
- r3808 CO: Sync–supply–drive phase difference
- p3809 Sync–supply–drive phase setpoint
- p3811 Sync–supply–drive frequency limitation
- r3812 CO: Sync–supply–drive correction frequency
- p3813 Sync–supply–drive phase synchronism threshold
- r3814 CO: Sync–supply–drive voltage difference
- p3815 Sync–supply–drive voltage difference threshold
- r3819 CO/BO: Sync–supply–drive status word

9.3.3 Extended brake control

Description

The "Extended brake control" function module allows complex braking control for motor holding brakes and holding brakes for example.

The brake is controlled as follows (the sequence reflects the priority):

- Via parameter p1215
- Via binector parameters p1219[0..3] and p0855
- Via zero speed detection
- Via a connector interconnection threshold value

Commissioning

The "Extended brake control" function module can be activated by running the commissioning wizard. Parameter r0108.14 indicates whether the function module has been activated.

Parameter p1215 must be set to "3" and the brake controlled via a digital output (for example at the customer terminal block TM31).

Extended brake control when braking with feedback

When braking with a feedback signal (p1275.5 = 1), the brake control reacts to the feedback signal contacts of the brake. If the timer p1216 is greater than the time to the feedback signal, then the approach is delayed by the corresponding time difference.

In order to be able to approach with as little delay as possible, the opening time set in p1216 must be shorter than the time to the feedback signal. However, if the timer in p1216 is set shorter, then alarm A07931 "Brake does not open" appears.

Remedy:

1. Activate the "Release with feedback signal" (p1275.6 = 1).

   The pulse enable (BO: r1229.3) and setpoint enable (BO: r0899.15) are now independent of the set timer (p1217, p1216). The associated enable is determined only by the feedback signal (BI: p1222, BI: p1223). The timers (p1216, p1217) only affect the warnings A07931 "Brake does not open" and A07932 "Brake does not close".

2. Optional: To make the two warnings stop appearing, set both timers (p1217, p1216) to 0 ms.

   Result: The monitoring of the brake and the display of the alarms are switched off.

Example 1: Starting against a closed brake

When the device is switched on, the setpoint is enabled immediately (if other enable signals are issued), even if the brake has not yet been released (p1152 = 1). The factory setting p1152 = r0899.15 must be separated here. The drive first establishes a torque against the applied brake. The brake is not released until the motor torque or current (p1220) has exceeded braking threshold 1 (p1221).

Depending on the type and design of the brake, the time required to completely release the brake differs. It must be taken into consideration that, once the braking threshold torque has been exceeded, the operation enable signal (p0899.2) is interrupted for the time interval that the brake is being released (p1216) to ensure that the motor current does not exceed the permissible limit values during this period and the motor torque generated does not damage the brake. Time interval p1216 must be set depending on the time the brake actually requires to release.

This configuration is used, for example, when the drive is connected to a belt that is under tension (loop accumulator in the steel industry).

Example 2: Emergency brake

In the case of emergency braking, electrical and mechanical braking should be realized at precisely the same time. This can be achieved if OFF3 is used as a tripping signal for emergency braking:

p1219[0] = r0898.2 and p1275.00 = 1 (OFF3 to "apply brake immediately" and invert signal).

To prevent the converter working in opposition to the brake, the OFF3 ramp (p1135) should be set to 0 seconds. Any prevailing regenerative energy must be converted into heat via a braking resistor.

This is often used, for example, in calendar stacks, cutting tools, running gears, and presses.

Example 3: Service brake on crane drives

For cranes with manual control, it is important that the drive responds immediately when the control lever is moved (master switch). To this end, the drive is powered up using the on command (p0840) (the pulses are enabled). Speed setpoint (p1142) and speed controller (p0856) are inhibited. The motor is magnetized. The magnetization time generally applicable for three-phase motors (1 to 2 seconds) is, therefore, eliminated.

Now, only the brake opening time will delay the motor starting to rotate following activation of the master switch. Movement of the master switch generates a "setpoint enable from the control" (bit interconnected with p1142, p1229.2, p1224.0). The speed controller is enabled immediately and the speed setpoint is enabled once the brake opening time (p1216) has elapsed. When the master switch is in the zero position, the speed setpoint is inhibited and the drive ramps down along the ramp-function generator's ramp-down ramp. The brake closes once the standstill limit (p1226) is undershot. Once the brake closing time (p1217) has elapsed, the speed controller is inhibited (the motor is no longer generating any force). Extended braking control is used with the modifications described below.

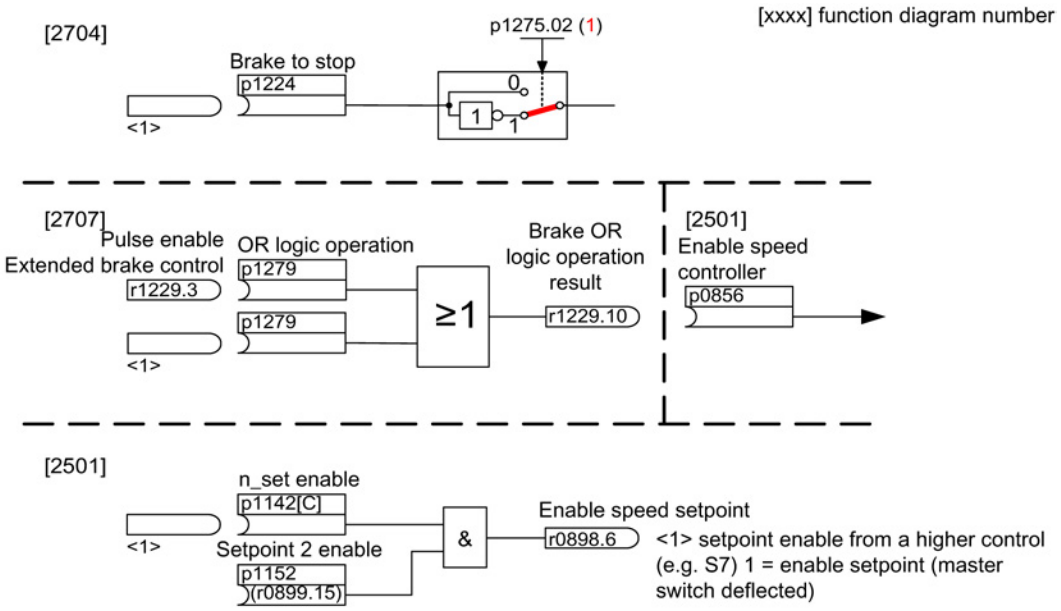


Figure 9-19 Example: Service brake on a crane drive

Control and status messages for extended brake control

Table 9- 10 Control of extended brake control

Signal name	Binector input	Control word sequence control/interconnection parameters
Enable speed setpoint	p1142 BI: Enable speed setpoint	STWA.6
Enable setpoint 2	p1152 BI: Setpoint 2 enable	p1152 = r899.15
Unconditionally release holding brake	p0855 BI: Unconditionally release holding brake	STWA.7
Enable speed controller	p0856 BI: Enable speed controller	STWA.12
Unconditionally apply holding brake	p0858 BI: Unconditionally apply holding brake	STWA.14

Table 9- 11 Status message of extended brake control

Signal name	Parameter	Brake status word
Command, release brake (continuous signal)	r1229.1	B_STW.1
Pulse enable, extended brake control	r1229.3	B_STW.3
Brake does not release	r1229.4	B_STW.4
Brake does not close	r1229.5	B_STW.5
Brake threshold exceeded	r1229.6	B_STW.6
Brake threshold fallen below	r1229.7	B_STW.7
Brake monitoring time expired	r1229.8	B_STW.8
Request, pulse enable missing/n_ctrl inhibited	r1229.9	B_STW.9
Brake OR logic operation result	r1229.10	B_STW.10
Brake AND logic operation result	r1229.11	B_STW.11

Function diagram

FP 2704	Extended brake control – standstill detection (r0108.14 = 1)
FP 2707	Extended brake control – release/close brake (r0108.14 = 1)
FP 2711	Extended brake control – signal outputs (r0108.14 = 1)

Parameter

- r0108.14 Extended brake control
- r0899 CO/BO: Status word sequence control

Standstill (zero-speed) monitoring

- r0060 CO: Speed setpoint before the setpoint filter
- r0063[0...2] CO: Speed actual value
- p1224[0...3] BI: Apply motor holding brake at standstill
- p1225 CI: Standstill detection threshold value
- p1226 Standstill monitoring speed threshold
- p1227 Standstill detection monitoring time
- p1228 Standstill detection delay time
- p1276 Motor holding brake standstill detection bypass

Release/apply brake

- p0855 BI: Unconditionally release holding brake
- p0858 BI: Unconditionally apply holding brake
- p1216 Motor holding brake release time
- p1217 Motor holding brake closing time
- p1218[0...1] BI: Release motor holding brake
- p1219[0...3] BI: Immediately apply motor holding brake
- p1220 CI: Release motor holding brake, signal source, threshold
- p1221 Release motor holding brake, threshold
- p1277 Motor holding brake, delay, braking threshold exceeded
- p1279 BI: Motor holding brake OR/AND logic operation

Brake monitoring functions

- p1222 BI: Motor holding brake, feedback signal, brake closed
- p1223 BI: Motor holding brake, feedback signal, brake released

Configuration, control/status words

- p1215 Motor holding brake configuration
- r1229 CO/BO: Motor holding brake status word
- p1275 Motor holding brake control word
- p1278 Motor holding brake type

9.3.4 Extended monitoring functions

Description

The "extended monitoring functions" function module enables additional monitoring functions:

- Speed setpoint monitoring: |n_set| ≤ p2161
- Speed setpoint monitoring: n_set > 0
- Load monitoring

Description of load monitoring

This function monitors power transmission between the motor and the working machine. Typical applications include V-belts, flat belts, or chains that loop around the belt pulleys or cog wheels of drive and outgoing shafts and transfer the peripheral speeds and forces. Load monitoring can be used here to identify blockages in the working machine and interruptions to the power transmission.

For load monitoring, the current speed/torque curve is compared with the programmed speed/torque curve (p2182 to p2190). If the current value is outside the programmed tolerance bandwidth, a fault or alarm is triggered depending on parameter p2181. The fault or alarm message can be delayed by means of parameter p2192 to prevent false alarms caused by brief transitional states.

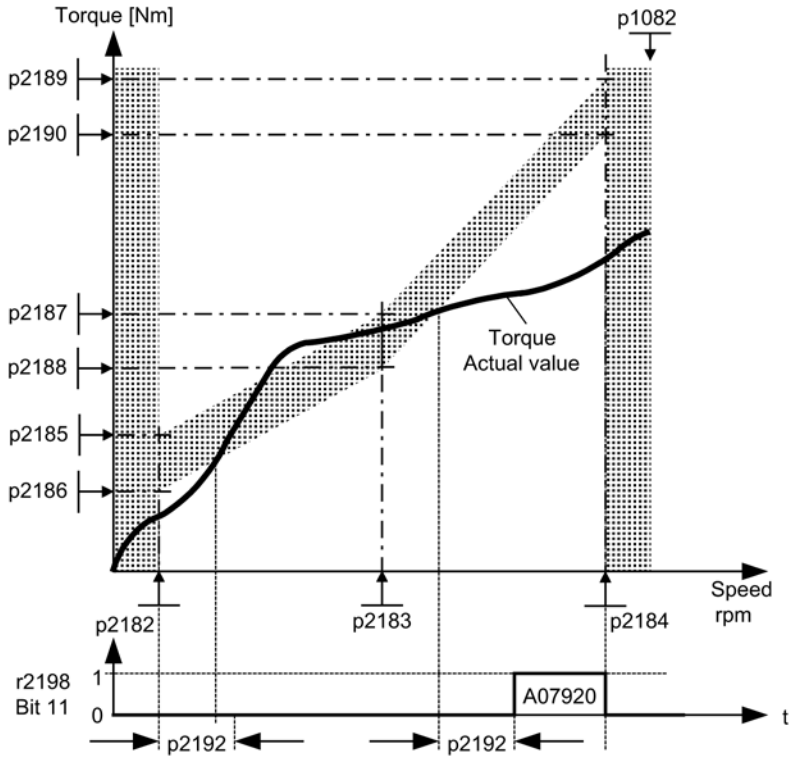


Figure 9-20 Load monitoring (p2181 =1)

Commissioning

The "extended monitoring functions" function module can be activated by running the commissioning wizard. Parameter r0108.17 indicates whether it has been activated.

Function diagram

FD 8010	Speed messages 1
FP 8011	Speed messages 2
FD 8013	Load monitoring

Parameter

- p2150 Hysteresis speed 3
- p2151 CI: Speed setpoint for messages
- p2161 Speed threshold 3
- p2181 Load monitoring, response
- p2182 Load monitoring, speed threshold 1
- p2183 Load monitoring, speed threshold 2
- p2184 Load monitoring, speed threshold 3
- p2185 Load monitoring, speed threshold 1 upper
- ...
- p2190 Load monitoring, speed threshold 3 lower
- p2192 Load monitoring, delay time
- r2198.4 |n_set| ≤ p2161
- r2198.5 n_set > 0
- r2198.11 Load monitoring displays alarm
- r2198.12 Load monitoring displays fault

9.4 Monitoring and protective functions

9.4.1 Protecting power components

Description

SINAMICS power modules offer comprehensive protection of power components.

Table 9- 12 General protection for power units

Protection against:	Protective measure	Response
Overcurrent[1)]	Monitoring with two thresholds: • First threshold exceeded	A30031, A30032, A30033 Current limiting in phase U has responded. Pulsing in this phase is inhibited for one pulse period. F30017 -> OFF2 is triggered if the threshold is exceeded too often.
	• Second threshold exceeded	F30001 "Overcurrent" -> OFF2
DC link overvoltage [1)]	Comparison of DC link voltage with hardware shutdown threshold	F30002 "Overvoltage" -> OFF2
DC link undervoltage [1)]	Comparison of DC link voltage with hardware shutdown threshold	F30003 "Undervoltage" -> OFF2
Short-circuit[1)]	Second monitoring threshold checked for overcurrent Uce monitoring for IGBT module	F30001 "Overcurrent" -> OFF2 F30022 "Monitoring Uce" -> OFF2
Ground fault	Monitoring the sum of all phase currents	After threshold in p0287 is exceeded: F30021 "power unit: Ground fault" -> OFF2 Note: The sum of all phase currents is displayed in r0069[6]. For operation, the value in p0287[1] must be greater than the sum of the phase currents when the insulation is intact.
Line phase-failure detection [1)]		F30011 "Line phase-failure in main circuit" -> OFF2

[1)] The monitoring thresholds are permanently set in the converter and cannot be changed by the user.

9.4.2 Thermal monitoring and overload responses

Description

The thermal power unit monitor is responsible for identifying critical situations. Possible reactions can be assigned and used when alarm thresholds are exceeded to enable continued operation (e.g., with reduced power) and prevent immediate shutdown. The parameterization options, however, only enable intervention below the shutdown thresholds, which cannot be changed by the user.

The following thermal monitoring options are available:

- i²t monitoring – A07805 – F30005
  i²t monitoring is used to protect components that have a high thermal time constant compared with semiconductors. Overload with regard to i²t is present when the converter load (r0036) is greater than 100% (load as a % of rated operation).
- Heat sink temperature – A05000 – F30004
  Used to monitor the temperature r0037[0] of the heat sinks on the power semiconductors (IGBT).
- Chip temperature – A05001 – F30025
  Significant temperature differences can occur between the barrier junction of the IGBT and the heat sink. The calculated barrier junction temperature is displayed in r0037[13...18]; the monitoring ensures that the specified maximum barrier junction temperature is not exceeded.

If an overload occurs with respect to any of these three monitoring functions, an alarm is first output. The alarm threshold p0294 (i²t monitoring) can be parameterized relative to the shutdown (trip) values.

Example

The temperature difference between two sensors must not exceed 15 Kelvin (K); a temperature difference of 5 K is set for the temperature monitoring of the heat sink and the air intake. This means that 15 K or 5 K below the shutdown threshold an alarm is issued regarding the pending overtemperature. Parameter p0294 merely allows a change in the alarm threshold so that an alarm is received earlier and, if necessary, steps can be taken to intervene in the drive process (e.g., reduce the load, reduce the ambient temperature).

Overload responses

The power unit responds with alarm A07805. The Control Unit initiates the responses assigned via p0290 at the same time that the alarm is issued. Possible responses include:

- Reduction in pulse frequency (p0290 = 2, 3)
  This is a highly effective method of reducing losses in the power unit, since switching losses account for a high proportion of overall losses. In many applications, a temporary pulse frequency reduction in favor of maintaining the process can be tolerated.
  Disadvantage:
  The pulse frequency reduction increases the current ripple, which can cause increased torque ripple on the motor shaft (when moment of inertia is low) and increased noise level. Reducing the pulse frequency does not affect the dynamic response of the current control circuit, since the sampling time for the current control circuit remains constant.
- Reduction of the output frequency (p0290 = 0, 2)
  This version is recommended if you do not need to reduce the pulse frequency or if the pulse frequency has already been set to the lowest level. Further, the load should also have a characteristic similar to a fan, that is, a square law torque characteristic with decreasing speed. Reducing the output frequency has the effect of significantly reducing the converter output current which, in turn, reduces losses in the power unit.
- No reduction (p0290 = 1)
  You should choose this option if it is not possible to reduce the pulse frequency or the output current. The converter does not change its operating point once an alarm threshold has been overshot, which means that the drive can be operated until it reaches its shutdown values. Once the shutdown threshold is reached, the converter switches off with an "overtemperature" or "overload" fault. The time until shutdown, however, is not defined and depends on the degree of overload. Only the alarm threshold can be changed so that an alarm is received earlier and, if necessary, steps can be taken to intervene in the drive process (e.g., reduce the load, reduce the ambient temperature).

Function diagram

FP 8014 Thermal monitoring, power unit

Parameter

- r0036 CO: Power unit overload I2t
- r0037 CO: Power unit temperatures
- p0290 Power unit overload response
- r0293 CO: Power unit alarm threshold model temperature
- p0294 Power unit alarm I2t overload
- r2135.13 Fault thermal overload power unit
- r2135.15 Alarm, thermal overload power unit

9.4.3 Block protection

Description

The "Motor blocked" fault is only triggered when the speed of the drive is below the adjustable speed threshold in p2175. With vector control, it must also be ensured that the speed controller is at the limit. With V/f control, the current limit must already have been reached.
Once the ON delay (p2177) has elapsed, the message "Motor locked" and fault F07900 are generated.

The blocking monitoring enable can be deactivated via p2144.

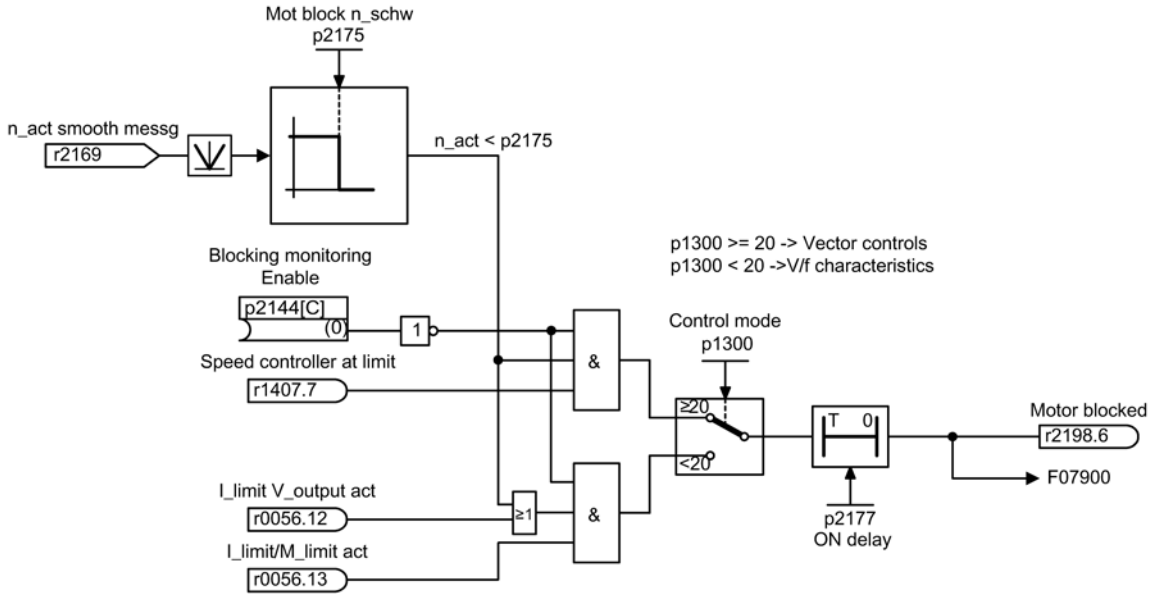


Figure 9-21 Blocking protection

Function diagram

FP 8012 Signals and monitoring functions - torque messages, motor locked/stalled

Parameter

- p2144 BI: Motor stall monitoring enable (negated)
- p2175 Motor locked speed threshold
- p2177 Motor locked delay time

9.4.4 Stall protection (only for vector control)

Description

If, for closed-loop speed control with encoder, the speed threshold set in p1744 for stall detection is exceeded, then r1408.11 (speed adaptation, speed deviation) is set.

If the fault threshold value set in p1745 is exceeded when in the low speed range (less than p1755 x (100% - p1756)), r1408.12 (motor stalled) is set.

If one of these two signals is set, then after the delay time in p2178, fault F07902 (motor stalled) is returned.

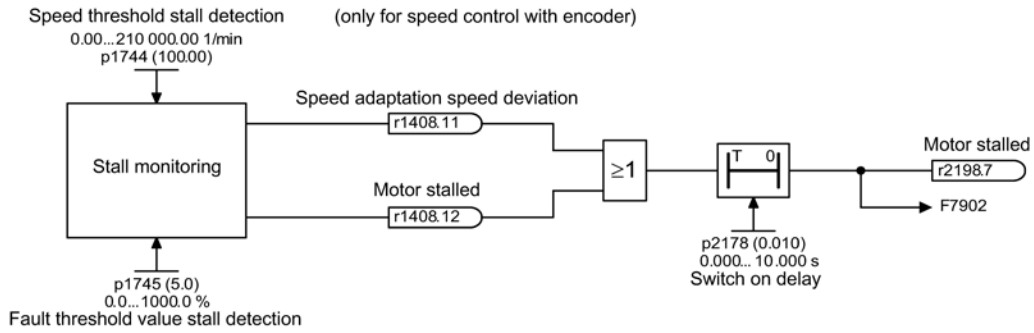


Figure 9-22 Stall protection

Function diagram

FP 6730	Vector control - Interface to Motor Module (ASM, p0300 = 1)
FP 8012	Messages and monitoring - Torque messages, motor blocked/stalled

Parameter

- r1408 CO/BO: Control status word 3
- p1744 Motor model speed threshold stall detection
- p1745 Motor model error threshold stall detection
- p1755 Motor model changeover speed encoderless operation
- p1756 Motor model changeover speed hysteresis encoderless operation
- p2178 Motor stalled delay time

9.4.5 Thermal motor protection

9.4.5.1 Description

Description

The priority of thermal motor protection is to identify critical situations. Possible reactions can be assigned (p0610) and used when alarm thresholds are exceeded to enable continued operation (e.g., with reduced power) and prevent immediate shutdown.

- Effective protection is also possible without a temperature sensor (p0600 = 0 or p4100 = 0). The temperatures of different motor components (stators, core, rotors) can be determined indirectly using a temperature model.
- Connecting temperature sensors allows the motor temperature to be determined directly. In this way, accurate start temperatures are available immediately when the motor is switched on again or after a power failure.

9.4.5.2 Temperature sensor connection at the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60)

Temperature measurement via KTY

The device is connected to terminals X522:7 (Temp+) and X522:8 (Temp-) on the customer terminal block (TM31) in the forward direction of the diode. The measured temperature is limited to between –140 °C up to +188.6 °C and is available for further evaluation.

- Activating the motor temperature measurement via the external sensor: p0600 = 10
  If the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) is available and after commissioning has been completed, the source for the external sensor is set to the customer terminal block (p0603 = {TM31} r4105).
- Set the KTY temperature sensor type: p4100 = 2.

Temperature measurement via PTC

The device is connected to terminal X522:7/8 at the customer terminal block (TM31). The threshold for switching to an alarm or fault is 1650 Ω. If the threshold is exceeded, the system switches internally from an artificially generated temperature value of -50 °C to +250 °C and makes it available for further evaluation.

- Activating the motor temperature measurement via the external sensor: p0600 = 10
  If the customer terminal block TM31 (option G60) is available and after commissioning has been completed, the source for the external sensor is set to the customer terminal block (p0603 = {TM31} r4105).
- Set the PTC temperature sensor type: p4100 = 1.

9.4.5.3 Temperature sensor connection at a Sensor Module (option K50)

Temperature measurement via KTY

The device is connected to the appropriate terminals Temp- and Temp+ on the Sensor Module in the forward direction of the diode (see corresponding section in chapter "Electrical installation").

- Activate motor temperature measurement via encoder 1: p0600 = 1.
- Set the KTY temperature sensor type: p0601 = 2.

Temperature measurement via PTC

The device is connected to the appropriate terminals Temp- and Temp+ on the Sensor Module (see corresponding section in chapter "Electrical installation"). The threshold for changing over to an alarm or fault is 1650 Ω.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via encoder 1: p0600 = 1.
- Set the PTC temperature sensor type: p0601 = 1.

9.4.5.4 Temperature sensor connection directly to the Control Interface Module

Temperature measurement via KTY

The device is connected to terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) on the Control Interface Module in the forward direction of the diode.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the KTY temperature sensor type: p0601 = 2.

Temperature measurement via PTC

The connection is made at the terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) at the Control Interface Module. The threshold for changing over to an alarm or fault is 1650 Ω.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the PTC temperature sensor type: p0601 = 1.

Temperature measurement using the bimetal normally closed contact

The connection is made at the terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) at the Control Interface Module. The threshold for changing over to an alarm or fault is 100 Ω.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the temperature sensor type bimetal normally closed contact: p0601 = 4.

Temperature measurement via PT100

The connection is made at the terminals X41:3 (Temp-) and X41:4 (Temp+) at the Control Interface Module. p0624 can be used to set the temperature offset for the PT100 measured value.

- Activate motor temperature measurement via Motor Module: p0600 = 11.
- Set the PT100 temperature sensor type: p0601 = 5.

Sensor connection to units connected in parallel

In the case of units connected in parallel, the number of the power unit to which the temperature sensor is connected must be specified in p0602.

9.4.5.5 Temperature sensor evaluation

Temperature measurement via KTY or PT100

- When the alarm threshold is reached (set via p0604; delivery state after commissioning 120 °C), alarm A07910 is triggered.

  Parameter p0610 can be used to set how the drive responds to the alarm triggered:

  – 0: No response, only alarm, no reduction of I_max
  – 1: Alarm and reduction of I_max and fault (F07011)
  – 2: Alarm and fault (F07011), no reduction of I_max
  – 12: Alarm and fault (F07011), no reduction of I_max, temperature saved
- When the fault threshold is reached (set via p0605, delivery state after commissioning 155 °C), fault F07011 is triggered in conjunction with the setting in p0610.

Temperature measurement via PTC or bimetallic normally closed contact

- Once the PTC or the bimetallic normally closed contact responds, alarm A07910 is initiated.
- Fault F07011 is triggered once the waiting time defined in p0606 has elapsed.

Sensor monitoring for wire breakage/short-circuit

A sensor monitoring function for a short-circuit in the sensor cable is possible for a PTC and a KTY84 . Wire breakage monitoring is possible for a KTY84 sensor:

If the temperature of the motor temperature monitor is outside the range -140 to +250 °C, then the sensor cable is broken or has a short-circuit – and Alarm A07015 "Motor temperature sensor alarm" is triggered. Fault F07016 (“Drive: Motor temperature sensor fault”) is triggered once the waiting time defined in p0607 has elapsed.

Fault F07016 can be suppressed using p0607 = 0. When an induction motor is connected, the drive continues operating with the data calculated in the thermal motor model.

If the system detects that the motor temperature sensor set in p0600 is not connected, alarm A07820 "Temperature sensor not connected" is triggered.

9.4.5.6 Thermal motor models

Thermal motor models are used so that thermal motor protection without a temperature sensor or with temperature sensor deactivated (p0600 = 0) is guaranteed.

The simultaneous deployment of temperature sensors and a thermal motor model also makes sense. For example, a very fast temperature increase, which is not detected by the sensors in sufficient time, can potentially damage the motor. This situation can occur for motors with a low thermal capacity.

Depending on the particular model, the temperature rise is either assigned different motor parts (stator, rotor), or is calculated from the motor current and the thermal time constant. A combination of motor temperature model with additional temperature sensors can also be deployed.

NOTICE
Material damage caused by overheating for motor operation without sensor A thermal motor model cannot fully replace a sensor. The thermal model cannot protect the motor if incorrectly installed, for increased ambient temperatures or if errors were made in the parameter settings. Without temperature sensors, thermal motor models are not in a position to identify or take into account the ambient temperatures or the initial motor temperature. This can cause motor overheating and so material damage. • Do not deploy thermal motor models when a higher environment temperature or a higher initial temperature of the motor can occur.

Thermal motor model 1 (for permanent-magnet synchronous machines)

By deploying the thermal I2t motor model, the temperature rise of the motor windings as a result of dynamic motor loads is also determined in addition to data acquired using a temperature sensor.

If the thermal I2t motor model is activated via p0612.0 = 1, it calculates the motor load (r0034) from the following values:

- Absolute value of the actual current, unsmoothed (r0068[0])
- Motor stall current (p0318)
- I2t motor model thermal time constant (p0611)
- Measured motor temperature (r0035) or motor ambient temperature (p0625) for operation without temperature sensor

If the fault threshold is exceeded (set via p0605; delivery state after commissioning 155° C), alarm A07012 "I2t motor model overtemperature" is triggered.

When the I2t motor model fault threshold is reached (p0615), fault F07011 is triggered in conjunction with the setting in p0610.

Thermal motor model 2 (for induction motors)

The thermal motor model 2 is deployed for induction motors. It is a thermal 3-mass model.

This makes thermal motor protection possible, even for operation without temperature sensor or with the temperature sensor deactivated (p0600 = 0).

The thermal 3-mass model is activated with p0612.1 = 1. The total motor mass is entered in p0344.

The 3-mass model splits up the total motor mass as follows:

- p0617 = thermally active iron mass (stator): laminated cores and frame as a percentage of p0344
- p0618 = thermally active copper mass (stator: windings) as a percentage of p0344
- p0619 = thermally active rotor mass (rotor) as a percentage of p0344
- p0625 = ambient temperature
- p0626 = overtemperature, stator iron
- p0627 = overtemperature, stator winding
- p0628 = rotor winding temperature rise

Motor temperature rises are calculated on the basis of motor measured values. The calculated temperature rises are indicated in the following parameters:

- r0630 Motor temperature model ambient temperature
- r0631 Motor temperature model stator iron temperature
- r0632 Motor temperature model stator winding temperature
- r0633 Motor temperature model rotor temperature

For operation with a KTY sensor, the calculated temperature value of the 3-mass model permanently tracks the measured temperature value. After the temperature sensor is switched off (p0600 = 0), the last temperature value continues to be used for calculation.

9.4.5.7 Function diagram

FP 8016	Thermal monitoring motor
FP 8017	Thermal motor models
FP 9576	TM31 - temperature evaluation (KTY/PTC)

9.4.5.8 Parameters

Temperature sensor evaluation

- r0035 CO: Motor temperature
- p0600 Motor temperature sensor for monitoring
- p0601 Motor temperature sensor type
- p0603 Motor temperature signal source
- p0604 Motor overtemperature fault threshold
- p0605 Motor overtemperature fault threshold
- p0606 Motor overtemperature timer
- p0607 Temperature sensor fault timer
- p0610 Motor overtemperature response
- p0614 Thermal resistance adaptation reduction factor
- p0624 Motor temperature offset PT100
- p4100 TM31 temperature evaluation sensor type
- r4105 CO: TM31 temperature evaluation actual value

Thermal motor model 1 (for permanent-magnet synchronous machines)

- r0034 CO: Motor utilization
- r0068[0] CO: Absolute value of actual current, unsmoothed
- p0318 Motor stall current
- p0605 Motor overtemperature fault threshold
- p0610 Motor overtemperature response
- p0611 I2t motor model thermal time constant
- p0612 Thermal motor model configuration
- p0615 I2t motor model fault threshold
- p0625 Motor ambient temperature

Thermal motor model 2 (for induction motors)

- p0344 Motor weight
- p0612 Thermal motor model configuration
- p0617 Stator thermally relevant iron component
- p0618 Stator thermally relevant copper component
- p0619 Rotor thermally relevant mass
- p0625 Motor ambient temperature
- p0626 Motor overtemperature, stator iron
- p0627 Motor overtemperature, stator winding
- p0628 Motor overtemperature, rotor winding
- r0630 Mot_temp_mod ambient temperature
- r0631 Mot_temp_mod stator iron temperature
- r0632 Mot_temp_mod stator winding temperature
- r0633 Mot_temp_mod rotor temperature

9.4.6 Temperature measurement via TM150 (option G51)

9.4.6.1 Description

The Terminal Module 150 (TM150) has 6x 4-pole terminals for temperature sensors. Temperature sensors can be connected in a 1x2, 1x3 or 1x4-wire system. In a 2x2-wire system, up to 12 input channels can be evaluated. 12 input channels can be evaluated in the factory setting. The temperature channels can be combined into three groups and evaluated together.

PTC, KTY84, bimetallic NC contact, PT100 and PT1000 temperature sensors can be connected and evaluated. The fault and/or alarm thresholds of the temperature values can be set from -99° C up to 251° C.

The temperature sensors are connected at terminal strips X531 to X536 according to the following table.

The TM150 temperature inputs are not electrically isolated.

Selecting the sensor types

- p4100[0...11] sets the sensor type for the respective temperature channel.
- r4105[0...11] indicates the actual value of the temperature channel.
  - For switching temperature sensors, such as e.g. PTC and bimetallic NC contact, symbolically two limit values are displayed:

    - r4105[0...11] = -50° C: The actual temperature value is below the rated response temperature.

    - r4105[0...11] = +250° C: The actual temperature value is above the rated response temperature.

Note

PTC and bimetallic NC contact

What is shown in r4105[0...11] does not correspond to the actual temperature value.

Table 9- 13 Selecting the sensor types

Value of p4100[0...11]	Temperature sensor	Temperature display range r4105[0...11]
0	Evaluation disabled	-
1	PTC thermistor	-50° C or +250° C
2	KTY84	-99° C to +250° C
4	Bimetallic NC contact	-50° C or +250° C
5	PT100	-99° C to +250° C
6	PT1000	-99° C to +250° C

Measuring the cable resistances

When using 2-wire sensors (1x2, 2x2 wire systems), to increase the measuring accuracy, the cable resistance can be measured and saved.

Procedure for determining the cable resistance:

1. Select the measuring method (1x2/2x2) for the corresponding terminal block (p4108[0...5] = 0, 1).
2. Set the required sensor type for the relevant channel (p4100[x] = 1 ... 6, x = 0...5 or 0...11).
3. Bypass/jumper the sensor to be connected (short-circuit the sensor cable close to the sensor).
4. Connect the sensor cables to the relevant terminals 1(+), 2(-) or 3(+), 4(-).
5. For the corresponding channel, start measurement of the cable resistance (p4109[x] = 1).
6. After p4109[x] = 0, check the measured resistance value in p4110[x].
7. Remove the jumper across the temperature sensor.

The measured cable resistance is then taken into account when evaluating the temperature. The cable resistance value is saved in p4110[0...11].

Note
Cable resistance

The value for the cable resistance can also be directly entered into p4110[0...11].

Line filter

A line filter is available to suppress radiated noise. Using p4121, the filter can be set to a 50 Hz or 60 Hz rated line frequency.

9.4.6.2 Measurement with up to 6 channels

Temperature measurement with a sensor in 2-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 0, you sense the signals from a sensor in 2-wire technology at a 4-wire connection at terminals 1(+) and 2(-).
Terminals 3 and 4 remain open.

Temperature measurement with a sensor in 3-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 2, you sense the signals from a sensor in 3-wire technology at a 4-wire connection at terminals 3(+) and 4(-).
The measuring cable is connected at terminal 1 (+).
You must short-circuit terminals 2 (-) and 4 (-).

Temperature measurement with a sensor in 4-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 3, you sense the signals from a sensor in 4-wire technology at a 4-wire connection at terminals 3(+) and 4(-).
The measuring cable is connected at terminal 1(+) and 2(-).

9.4.6.3 Measurement with up to 12 channels

Temperature measurement with two sensors in 2-wire technology

With p4108[0...5] = 1 you can acquire the signals from two sensors in 2-wire technology.
The first sensor is connected at terminal 1(+) and 2(-).
The second sensor (number = first sensor + 6) is connected at terminals 3(+) and 4(-).

When connecting two sensors in 2-wire technology to terminal X531, the first sensor is assigned to temperature channel 1 and the second sensor is assigned to channel 7 (1+6).

Note

Connection diagram for 12 temperature channels

The temperature sensors connected to a TM150 are not numbered consecutively. The first 6 temperature channels retain their numbering of 0 to 5. The other 6 temperature channels are consecutively numbered from 6 to 11, starting at terminal X531.

Example of 8 temperature channels:

- 2x2 conductors at terminal X531: p4108[0] = 1 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 0 and sensor 2 is at channel 6
- 2x2 conductor at terminal X532: p4108[1] = 1 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 1 and sensor 2 is at channel 7
- 1x3 conductor at terminal X533: p4108[2] = 2 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 2
- 1x3 conductor at terminal X534: p4108[3] = 2 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 3
- 1x4 conductor at terminal X535: p4108[4] = 3 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 4
- 1x2 conductor at terminal X536: p4108[5] = 0 ≙ sensor 1 is at channel 5

9.4.6.4 Forming groups of temperature sensors

Using p4111[0...2], temperature channels can be combined to form groups. For each group, the following calculated values are provided from the temperature actual values (r4105[0...11]):

- Maximum: r4112[0...2], (index 0,1,2 = group 0,1,2)
- Minimum: r4113[0...2]
- Average value: r4114[0...2]

Example:

The temperature actual value from channels 0, 3, 7, and 9 should be combined in group 1:

- p4111[1].0 = 1
- p4111[1].3 = 1
- p4111[1].7 = 1
- p4111[1].9 = 1

The calculated values from group 1 are available in the following parameters for interconnection:

- r4112[1] = maximum
- r4113[1] = minimum
- r4114[1] = average value

Note

Forming groups of temperature channels

Only form groups of continuously measuring temperature sensors. Depending on the status, the switching temperature sensors PTC and bimetal NC contacts are only assigned two temperatures - 50 °C and +250 °C.
Within a group with continuously measuring temperature sensors, the calculation of the maximum/minimum/average values, is significantly falsified when taking into account switching temperature sensors.

9.4.6.5 Evaluating temperature channels

For each of the individual 12 temperature channels, using p4102[0...23] an alarm threshold and a fault threshold can be set (straight parameter indices: Alarm thresholds, odd parameter indices: Fault thresholds). The temperature thresholds can be set for each channel from -99 °C to +251 °C. For p4102[0...23] = 251, the evaluation of the corresponding threshold is deactivated.
Using p4118[0...11], for each channel a hysteresis for the fault/alarm thresholds can be set in p4102[0...23].

The following applies for the alarm thresholds:

- If the temperature actual value associated with a channel exceeds the set alarm threshold (r4105[x] > p4102[2x]), the corresponding alarm is output. Timer p4103[0...11] is started at the same time.
- The alarm remains until the temperature actual value (r4105[x]) has reached or fallen below the alarm threshold (p4102 [2x]) - hysteresis (p4118 [x]).
- If, after the timer has expired, the temperature actual value is still above the alarm threshold, then the appropriate fault is output.

The following applies for the fault thresholds:

- If the temperature actual value associated with a channel exceeds the set fault threshold (r4105[x] > p4102[2x+1]), the corresponding fault is output.
- The fault remains until the temperature actual value (r4105[x]) has reached or fallen below the fault threshold (p4102 [2x+1]) - hysteresis (p4118 [x]) and the fault has been acknowledged.

Using p4119[0...11], for each channel, a filter can be activated to smooth the temperature signal.
The time constant of the filter depends on the number of active temperature channels and can be read in r4120.

Failure of a sensor within a group

Using parameter p4117[0...2], the response to the failure of a temperature sensor can be set within a group:

- p4117[x] = 0: The failed sensor is not taken into account in the group.
- p4117[x] = 1: When a sensor fails, for the maximum value, minimum value and the average value of the group, a value of 300 °C is output.

9.4.6.6 Function diagram

FP 9625	TM150 - temperature evaluation structure (channel 0 ... 11)
FP 9626	TM150 - temperature evaluation 1x2, 3, 4-wire (channel 0 ... 5)
FP 9627	TM150 - temperature evaluation 2x2-wire (channel 0 ... 11)

9.4.6.7 Parameter

- p4100[0...11] TM150 sensor type
- r4101[0...11] TM150 sensor resistance
- p4102[0...23] TM150 fault threshold/alarm threshold
- p4103[0...11] TM150 delay time
- r4104.0...23 BO: TM150 temperature evaluation status
- r4105[0...11] CO: TM150 temperature actual value
- p4108[0...5] TM150 terminal block measurement method
- p4109[0...11] TM150 cable resistance measurement
- p4110[0...11] TM150 cable resistance value
- p4111[0...2] TM150 group channel assignment
- r4112[0...2] CO: TM150 group, temperature actual value maximum value
- r4113[0...2] CO: TM150 group, temperature actual value minimum value
- r4114[0...2] CO: TM150 group temperature actual value, average
- p4117[0...2] TM150 group, sensor fault effect
- p4118[0...11] TM150 fault threshold/alarm threshold hysteresis
- p4119[0...11] TM150 activate/deactivate smoothing
- r4120 TM150 temperature filter time constant
- p4121 TM150 filter, rated line frequency

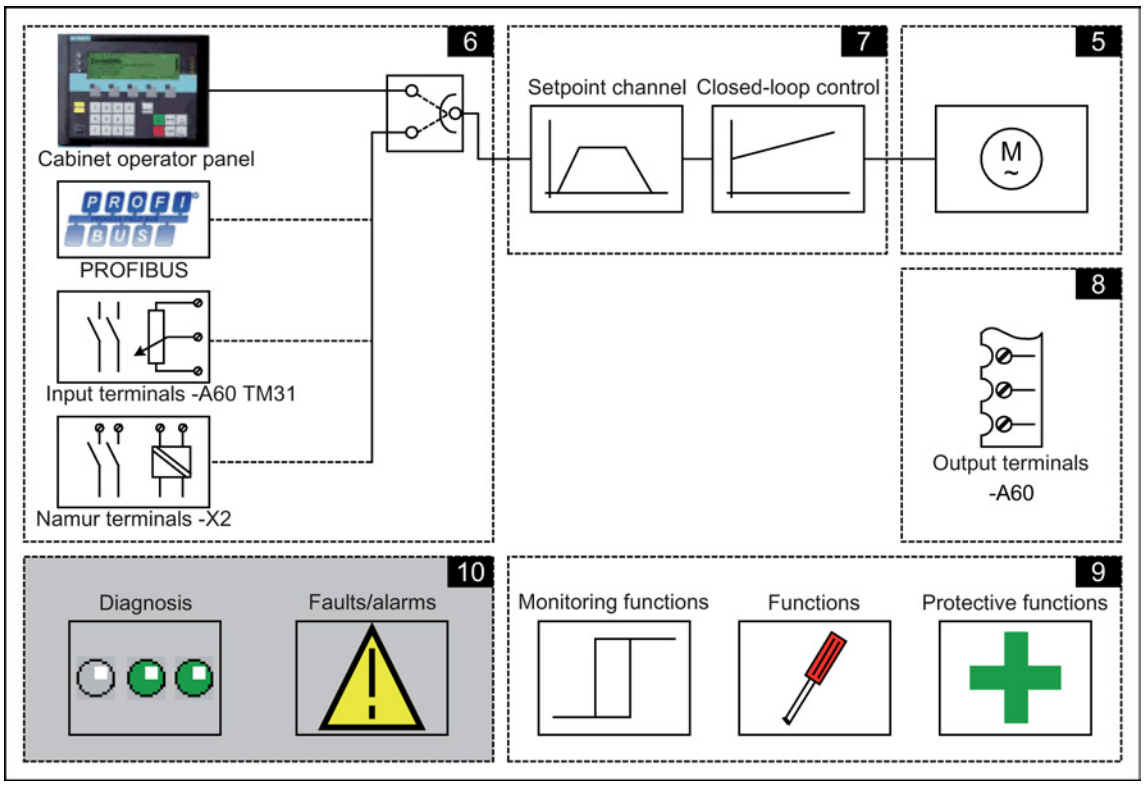
Diagnosis / faults and alarms

10

10.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Notes regarding diagnostic functions that are available and troubleshooting in the case of a fault



10.2 Diagnosis

Description

This section describes procedures for identifying the causes of problems and the measures you need to take to rectify them.

Note

Errors or malfunctions

If errors or malfunctions occur in the device, you must carefully check the possible causes and take the necessary steps to rectify them. If you cannot identify the cause of the problem or you discover that components are defective, your regional office or sales office should contact Siemens Service and describe the problem in more detail. Addresses of contact persons are listed in the preface.

10.2.1 Diagnostics using LEDs

Control Unit (-A10)

Table 10- 1 Description of the LEDs on the CU320-2 DP Control Unit

LED	Color	State	Description
RDY (READY)	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The Control Unit is waiting for initial commissioning.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Commissioning/reset
		2 Hz flashing light	Writing to the memory card.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	General fault
	Red/green	0.5 Hz flashing light	Control Unit is ready for operation. However, there are no software licenses.
	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for the connected DRIVE-CLiQ components.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware update of components has been completed. Wait for POWER ON of the respective component.
	Green/ orange or red/orange	2 Hz flashing light	Component detection via LED is activated (p0124[0]). Note: The two options depend on the LED status when component detection is activated via p0124[0] = 1.

LED	Color	State	Description
COM PROFIdrive cyclic operation	---	OFF	Cyclic communication is not (yet) running. Note: PROFIdrive is ready for communication when the Control Unit is ready for operation (see RDY LED).
	Green	Continuous light	Cyclic communication is taking place.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Cyclic communication has still not been fully established. Possible causes: - The controller is not transmitting any setpoints. - In isochronous mode, the controller did not send a Global Control or it sent a defective Global Control (GC).
	Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	PROFIBUS master is sending incorrect parameter assignment/configuration
		2 Hz flashing light	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established.
OPT (OPTION)	---	OFF	Electronic power supply missing or outside permissible tolerance range. The component is not ready for operation. The Option Board is missing or an associated drive object has not been created.
	Green	Continuous light	Option board is ready.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Depends on the option board being used.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	This component has at least one fault. The option board is not ready (e.g., after switching on).
RDY and COM	Red	2 Hz flashing light	Bus error - communication has been interrupted.
RDY and OPT	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for connected option board CBE20.

Table 10- 2 Description of the LEDs on the CU320-2 PN Control Unit

LED	Color	State	Description
RDY (READY)	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The Control Unit is waiting for initial commissioning.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Commissioning/reset
		2 Hz flashing light	Writing to the memory card.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	General fault
	Red/green	0.5 Hz flashing light	Control Unit is ready for operation. However, there are no software licenses.
	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for the connected DRIVE-CLiQ components.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware update of components has been completed. Wait for POWER ON of the respective component.
	Green/ orange or red/orange	2 Hz flashing light	Component detection via LED is activated (p0124[0]). Note: The two options depend on the LED status when component detection is activated via p0124[0] = 1.
COM PROFIdrive cyclic operation	---	OFF	Cyclic communication is not (yet) running. Note: PROFIdrive is ready for communication when the Control Unit is ready for operation (see RDY LED).
	Green	Continuous light	Cyclic communication is taking place.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Cyclic communication is still not completely running. Possible causes: - The controller is not transferring any setpoints. - For isochronous operation, either none or a faulty Global Control (GC) has been transferred from the controller. - "Shared Device" has been selected (p8929 = 2) and only one controller connected.
	Red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Bus error, incorrect parameter assignment/configuration
		2 Hz flashing light	Cyclic bus communication has been interrupted or could not be established.
OPT (OPTION)	---	OFF	Electronic power supply missing or outside permissible tolerance range. The component is not ready for operation. The Option Board is missing or an associated drive object has not been created.
	Green	Continuous light	Option board is ready.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	Depends on the option board being used.
	Red	2 Hz flashing light	This component has at least one fault. The option board is not ready (e.g., after switching on).
RDY and COM	Red	2 Hz flashing light	Bus error - communication has been interrupted.
RDY and OPT	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware update in progress for connected option board CBE20.

Customer Terminal Block TM31 (-A60)

Table 10- 3 Description of the LEDs on the TM31

LED	Color	State	Description
READY	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	Continuous light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	At least one fault is active for this component. Note: The LED is activated irrespective of any reprogramming of the corresponding messages.
	Green/red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being downloaded.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON.
	Green / orange or red / orange	Flashing light	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0154). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0154 = 1.

Control Interface Module – Interface module in the Power Module (-T1)

Table 10- 4 Description of the LEDs "READY" and "DC LINK" on the Control Interface Module

LED state		Description
READY	DC LINK	
OFF	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
Green	OFF	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is present.
	Red	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place. The DC link voltage is too high.
Orange	Orange	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
Red	---	At least one fault is active for this component. Note: The LED is activated irrespective of any reprogramming of the corresponding messages.
Flashing, 0.5 Hz: Green/red	---	Firmware is being downloaded.
Flashing, 2 Hz: Green/red	---	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON.
Flashing, 2 Hz: Green/orange or red/orange	---	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0124). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0124 = 1.

Table 10- 5 Meaning of the LED "POWER OK" on the Control Interface Module

LED	Color	State	Description
POWER OK	Green	OFF	DC link voltage < 100 V and voltage at -X9:1/2 less than 12 V.
		ON	The component is ready for operation.
		Flashing light	There is a fault. If the LED continues to flash after you have performed a POWER ON, please contact your Siemens service center.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life when live parts of the DC link are touched

Irrespective of the state of the LED "DC LINK", hazardous DC link voltages can always be present. This means that if live parts are touched, this can result in death or serious injury.

- Observe the warning information on the component.

SMC30 – encoder evaluation (-B83)

Table 10- 6 Description of the LEDs on the SMC30

LED	Color	State	Description
READY	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	Continuous light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	At least one fault is active for this component. Note: The LED is activated irrespective of any reprogramming of the corresponding messages.
	Green/red	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being downloaded.
		2 Hz flashing light	Firmware download is complete. Waiting for POWER ON.
	Green / orange or red / orange	Flashing light	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0144). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0144 = 1.
OUT>5 V	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range. Power supply ≤ 5 V.
	Orange	Continuous light	Electronic power supply for measuring system present. Supply voltage > 5 V. Notice: You must ensure that the connected encoder can be operated with a 24 V supply. Operating an encoder designed for a 5 V supply with a 24 V supply can damage the encoder electronics beyond repair.

CBE20 – Communication Board Ethernet

Table 10- 7 Description of the LEDs at ports 1-4 of the X1400 interface on the CBE20

LED	Color	State	Description
Link port	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range (link missing or defective).
	Green	Continuous light	A different device is connected to port x and a physical connection exists.
Activity port	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range (no activity).
	Yellow	Continuous light	Data is being received or sent at port x.

Table 10- 8 Description of the Sync and Fault LEDs on the CBE20

LED	Color	State	Description
Fault	---	OFF	If the link port LED is green: The CBE20 is operating normally, data is being exchanged with the configured IO Controller.
	Red	Flashing light	- The response monitoring time has elapsed. - Communication has been interrupted. - The IP address is incorrect. - Incorrect or missing configuration. - Incorrect parameter assignment. - Incorrect or missing device name. - IO controller not present/switched off but Ethernet connection present. - Other CBE20 errors.
		Continuous light	CBE20 bus fault - No physical connection to a subnet/switch. - Incorrect transmission rate. - Full-duplex transmission not activated.
Sync	---	OFF	If the link port LED is green: Control Unit task system is not synchronized with the IRT clock. An internal substitute clock is generated.
	Green	Flashing light	Control Unit task system has synchronized with the IRT clock and data is being exchanged.
		Continuous light	Task system and MC-PLL have synchronized with the IRT clock.

Table 10- 9 Description of the OPT LED on the Control Unit

LED	Color	State	Description
OPT	---	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range. Communication Board either defective or not inserted.
	Green	Continuous light	Communication Board is ready and cyclic communication is taking place.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	The Communication Board is ready, but cyclic communication is not yet taking place. Possible causes: - At least one fault is active. - Communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	Cyclic communication via PROFINET has not yet been established. However, acyclic communication is possible. SINAMICS is waiting for a parameterization/configuration telegram.
		0.5 Hz flashing light	The firmware download to the CBE20 has failed. Possible causes: - The CBE20 is defective. - The memory card for the Control Unit is defective. In this state, the CBE20 cannot be used.
		2 Hz flashing light	Communication between the Control Unit and the CBE20 is faulty. Possible causes: - The CBE20 was removed following power-up. - The CBE20 is defective.
	Orange	0.5 Hz flashing light	Firmware is being updated.

TM150 - temperature sensor module (-A151)

Table 10- 10 Description of the LEDs on the TM150

LED	Color	State	Description
READY	-	OFF	The electronic power supply is missing or lies outside the permissible tolerance range.
	Green	Continuous light	The component is ready for operation and cyclic DRIVE-CLiQ communication is taking place.
	Orange	Continuous light	DRIVE-CLiQ communication is being established.
	Red	Continuous light	At least one fault is present in this component. Note: The LED is activated regardless of whether the corresponding messages have been reconfigured.
	Green/red	Flashing light 0.5 Hz	Firmware is being downloaded.
		Flashing light 2 Hz	Firmware has been downloaded. Wait for POWER ON.
	Green / orange or red / orange	Flashing light 2 Hz	Detection of the components via LED is activated (p0154). Note: Both options depend on the LED status when module recognition is activated via p0154 = 1.

10.2.2 Diagnostics via parameters

All Objects: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0945	Fault code
	Displays the fault number. Index 0 is the most recent fault (last fault to have occurred).
r0948	Fault time received in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the fault occurred.
r0949	Fault value
	Displays additional information about the fault. This information is required for detailed fault diagnosis.
r2109	Fault time removed in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the fault was rectified.
r2122	Alarm code
	Displays the numbers of alarms that have occurred
r2123	Alarm time received in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the alarm occurred.
r2124	Alarm value
	Displays additional information about the alarm. This information is required for detailed alarm diagnosis.
r2125	Alarm time removed in milliseconds
	Displays the system runtime in ms at which the alarm was rectified.

Control Unit: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0002	Control Unit status display
	Status display for the Control Unit
r0018	Control Unit firmware version
	Displays the firmware version of the Control Unit. For the display parameters for the firmware version of the other connected components, see the parameter description in the List Manual.
r00037	Control Unit temperature
	Displays the measured temperature on the Control Unit.
r0721	CU digital inputs, terminal actual value
	Displays the actual value at the digital input terminals on the CU. This parameter shows the actual value, uninfluenced by simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r0722	CO/BO: CU digital inputs, status
	Displays the status of the digital inputs on the CU. This parameter shows the status of the digital inputs under the influence of simulation mode of the digital inputs.

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0747	CU, digital outputs status
	Display of the CU digital output status. This parameter shows the status of the digital inputs under the influence of simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r2054	PROFIBUS status
	Displays the status of the Profibus interface.
r8937	PN diagnostics
	Display to diagnose the cyclic PROFINET connections.
r9976[0..7]	System utilization
	Displays the system load. The individual values (computation load and cyclic load) are measured over short time slices; from these values, the maximum, the minimum and the average value are generated and displayed in the appropriate indices. Further, the degree of memory utilization of the data and program memory is displayed.

VECTOR: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0002	Drive operating display
	The value provides information about the current operating status and the conditions necessary to reach the next status.
r0020	Speed setpoint smoothed
	Displays the actual smoothed speed/velocity setpoint at the input of the speed/velocity controller or V/f characteristic (after the interpolator).
r0021	CO: Actual speed value smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual value of the motor speed/velocity.
r0024	CO: Output frequency, smoothed
	Displays the smoothed converter frequency.
r0026	CO: DC link voltage smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual value of the DC link.
r0027	CO: Absolute actual current, smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual value of the current.
r0031	Actual torque smoothed
	Displays the smoothed actual torque.
r0034	CO: Motor utilization
	Displays the motor utilization from the thermal I2t motor model.
r0035	CO: Motor temperature

Parameter	Name
	Description
	If r0035 does not equal -200.0 °C, the following applies: • This temperature indicator is valid. • An KTY sensor is connected. • If using an asynchronous motor, the thermal motor model is activated (p0600 = 0 or p0601 = 0). If r0035 equals -200.0 °C, the following applies: • This temperature indicator is invalid (temperature sensor fault). • An PTC sensor is connected. If using a synchronous motor, the thermal motor model is activated (p0600 = 0 or p0601 = 0).
r0037	CO: Power unit temperatures
	Displays the measured temperatures in the power unit.
r0046	CO/BO: Missing enable signals
	Displays missing enable signals that are preventing the closed-loop drive control from being commissioned.
r0049	Motor data set/encoder data set active (MDS, EDS)
	Displays the effective motor data set (MDS) and the effective encoder data sets (EDS).
r0050	CO/BO: Command Data Set CDS effective
	Displays the effective command data set (CDS)
r0051	CO/BO: Drive Data Set DDS effective
	Effective drive data set (DDS) display.
r0056	CO/BO: Status word, closed-loop control
	Displays the status word of the closed-loop control.
r0063	CO: Speed actual value
	Displays the actual speed for speed control and V/f control.
r0066	CO: Output frequency
	Displays the output frequency of the Motor Module.
r0070	CO: Actual DC link voltage
	Displays the measured actual value of the DC link voltage.
r0072	CO: Output voltage
	Displays the actual output voltage of the power unit (Motor Module).
r0082	CO: Active power actual value
	Displays the instantaneous active power.
r0206	Rated power unit power
	Displays the rated power unit power for various load duty cycles.
r0207	Rated power unit current
	Displays the rated power unit power for various load duty cycles.
r0208	Rated power unit line supply voltage
	Displays the rated line supply voltage of the power unit.
r0209	Power unit, maximum current
	Displays the maximum output current of the power unit.

TM31: key diagnostic parameters (details in List Manual)

Parameter	Name
	Description
r0002	TM31 operating display
	Operating display for Terminal Board 31 (TB31).
r4021	TM31 digital inputs, terminal actual value
	Displays the actual value at the digital input terminals on the TM31. This parameter shows the actual value, uninfluenced by simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r4022	CO/BO: TM31 digital inputs, status
	Displays the status of the digital inputs on the TM31. This parameter shows the status of the digital inputs under the influence of simulation mode of the digital inputs.
r4047	TM31 digital outputs, status
	Displays the status of the TM31 digital outputs. Inversion via p4048 is taken into account.

Additional diagnostic parameters for units that are connected in parallel (details in List Manual)

For units that are connected in parallel, there are additional diagnostic parameters that provide detailed information about individual Power Modules for a parallel circuit configuration.

- For 380 to 480 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GE41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GE41-6AAx
- For 500 to 600 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GF38-6AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GF41-4AAx
- For 660 to 690 V 3 AC:
  6SL3710-2GH41-1AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-4AAx, 6SL3710-2GH41-5AAx

r7000 to r7252 Special parameters for Power Modules in a parallel circuit configuration

10.2.3 Indicating and rectifying faults

The device features a wide range of functions that protect the drive against damage if a fault occurs (faults and alarms).

Indicating faults and alarms

If a fault occurs, the drive displays the fault and/or alarm on the AOP30 operator panel. Faults are indicated by the red "FAULT" LED and a fault screen is automatically displayed. You can use the F1 Help function to call up information about the cause of the fault and how to remedy it. You can use F5 Ack. to acknowledge a stored fault.

Any alarms are displayed by the yellow flashing "ALARM" LED. The system also displays a note in the status bar providing information on the cause.

Every fault and alarm is entered in the fault/alarm buffer along with time the error occurred. The time stamp refers to the relative system time in milliseconds (r0969).

Activate the "Set date/time - AOP synchronization -> Drive" setting to date- and time-stamp errors on the AOP30.

What is a fault?

A fault is a message from the drive indicating an error or other exceptional (unwanted) status. This could be caused by a fault within the converter or an external fault triggered, for example, from the winding temperature monitor for the induction motor. The faults are displayed and can be reported to a higher-level control system via PROFIdrive. In the delivery condition, the message "Drive fault" is also sent to a relay output. Once you have rectified the cause of the fault, you have to acknowledge the fault message.

What is an alarm?

An alarm is the response to a fault condition identified by the drive. It does not result in the drive being switched off and does not have to be acknowledged. Alarms are "self acknowledging", that is, they are reset automatically when the cause of the alarm has been eliminated.

10.3 Overview of warnings and faults

If a fault occurs, the drive indicates the fault and/or alarm. Faults and alarms are listed in a fault/alarm list, together with the following information:

- Fault/alarm number
- Standard drive response
- Description of the possible cause of the fault/alarm
- Description of the procedure for rectifying the problem
- Standard fault acknowledgement after it has been rectified

Note

List of faults and alarms

The list of faults and alarms is included on the customer DVD!

It also contains descriptions of possible fault responses (OFF1, OFF2, ...).

Note

Faults and alarms wired and preset at the factory

The faults and alarms described below have been wired specially for the cabinet units listed in this document and preset via macro. In this way, the appropriate reaction is triggered by the additional components in the cabinet unit when faults and alarms are signaled.

It is possible to reprogram the faults and alarms described, provided that the stated options are not included in the scope of the equipment.

10.3.1 "External alarm 1"

Causes

Alarm A7850 ("External alarm 1") is triggered by the following optional protection devices in the cabinet unit:

- Temperature sensor for triggering the alarm threshold in the Line Harmonics Filter compact (option L01)
- Thermistor motor protection unit alarm (option L83)
- PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86)

Remedy

When a fault is indicated, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Identify the cause by examining the specified devices (display or LEDs).
2. Check the fault display on the relevant protection device and establish the fault.
3. Rectify the displayed fault with the help of the appropriate operating instructions provided in "Additional Operating Instructions".

10.3.2 "External fault 1"

Causes

Fault code F7860 ("External Fault 1") is triggered by the following optional protection devices in the cabinet unit:

- Temperature sensor for triggering the fault threshold in the Line Harmonics Filter compact (option L01)
- Thermistor motor protection unit shutdown (option L84)
- PT100 Evaluation Unit (Option L86)

Remedy

When a fault is indicated, the following procedure is recommended:

1. Identify the cause by examining the specified devices (display or LEDs).
2. Check the fault display on the relevant protection device and establish the fault.
3. Rectify the displayed fault with the help of the appropriate operating instructions provided in "Additional Operating Instructions".

10.3.3 "External fault 2"

Causes

Fault code F7861 ("External Fault 2") is triggered when the braking resistor available with options L61 and L62 is subject to thermal overload, thereby activating the thermostat. The drive is switched off with OFF2.

Remedy

The cause of the braking resistor overload must be eliminated and the fault code acknowledged.

10.3.4 "External fault 3"

Causes

Fault code F7862 "External fault 3" is triggered when the braking unit fitted for options L61 and L62 triggers a fault. The drive is switched off with OFF2.

Remedy

The cause of the braking unit overload must be eliminated and the fault code acknowledged.

Maintenance and servicing 11

11.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- Maintenance and servicing procedures that have to be carried out on a regular basis to ensure the availability of the cabinet units.
- Exchanging device components when the unit is serviced
- Forming the DC link capacitors
- Upgrading the cabinet unit firmware
- Loading the new operator panel firmware from the PC.

⚠WARNING

Danger to life if the fundamental safety instructions and remaining risks are not carefully observed

The non-observance of the fundamental safety instructions and residual risks stated in Chapter 1 can result in accidents with severe injuries or death.

- Adhere to the fundamental safety instructions.
- When assessing the risk, take into account residual risks.



⚠DANGER

Danger to life through electric shock due to the residual charge of the DC link capacitors

Because of the DC link capacitors, a hazardous voltage is present for up to five minutes after the power supply has been switched off.

Contact with live parts can result in death or serious injury.

- Only open the device after five minutes have elapsed.
- Measure the voltage before starting work on the DCP and DCN DC link terminals.



⚠DANGER

Danger to life due to electric shock from external supply voltages

When the external power supply for individual options (L50 / L55) or the external 230 V AC auxiliary supply is connected, dangerous voltages are still present at the components even when the main switch is open.

Contact with live parts can result in death or serious injury.

- Switch off any external supply voltages and the external 230 VAC auxiliary supply before opening the device.



⚠WARNING

Danger to life from live parts and components for devices connected in parallel

Touching live components of sub-cabinets associated with devices connected in parallel can result in death or severe injury.

- When connecting, installing and repairing, electrically disconnect both partial cabinets from the line supply.

11.2 Maintenance

The cabinet unit mainly comprises electronic components. Apart from the fan(s), the unit contains very few components that are subject to wear or require maintenance or servicing. Maintenance aims to preserve the specified condition of the cabinet unit. Dirt and contamination must be removed regularly and parts subject to wear replaced.

The following points must generally be observed.

11.2.1 Cleaning

Dust deposits

Dust deposits inside the cabinet unit must be removed at regular intervals (or at least once a year) by qualified personnel in line with the relevant safety regulations. The unit must be cleaned using a brush and vacuum cleaner, and dry compressed air (max. 1 bar) for areas that cannot be easily reached.

Ventilation

The ventilation openings in the cabinet must never be obstructed. The fan must be checked to make sure that it is functioning correctly.

Cable and screw terminals

Cable and screw terminals must be checked regularly to ensure that they are secure in position, and if necessary, retightened. Cabling must be checked for defects. Defective parts must be replaced immediately.

Note

Maintenance intervals

The actual intervals at which maintenance procedures are to be performed depend on the installation conditions (cabinet environment) and the operating conditions.

Siemens offers its customers support in the form of a service contract. For further details, contact your regional office or sales office.

11.3 Maintenance

Servicing involves activities and procedures for maintaining and restoring the specified condition of the device.

Required tools

The following tools are required for replacing components:

- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 10)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 13)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 16/17)
- Spanner or socket spanner (w/f 18/19)
- Hexagon-socket spanner (size 8)
- Torque wrench
- Screwdriver size 1 / 2
- Screwdriver Torx T20 / T25 / T30

A socket wrench set with two long extensions is recommended.

Tightening torques for screw connections

The following tightening torques apply when tightening current-conducting connections (DC link connections, motor connections, busbars, lugs) and other connections (ground connections, protective conductor connections, steel threaded connections).

Table 11- 1 Tightening torques for screw connections

Thread	Ground connections, protective conductor connections, steel threaded connections	Aluminum threaded connections, plastic, busbars, lugs
M3	1.3 Nm	0.8 Nm
M4	3 Nm	1.8 Nm
M5	6 Nm	3 Nm
M6	10 Nm	6 Nm
M8	25 Nm	13 Nm
M10	50 Nm	25 Nm
M12	88 Nm	50 Nm
M16	215 Nm	115 Nm

Note

Screw connections for protective covers

The threaded connections for the protective covers made of Makrolon may only tightened with 2.5 Nm.

11.3.1 Installation device

Description

The installation device is used for installing and removing the power blocks.

It is used as an installation aid, which is placed in front of and secured to the module. The telescopic guide support allows the withdrawable device to be adjusted according to the height at which the power blocks are installed. Once the mechanical and electrical connections have been removed, the power block can be removed from the module, whereby the power block is guided and supported by the guide rails on the withdrawable devices.



Figure 11-1 Installation device

Order number

Order number for the installation device: 6SL3766-1FA00-0AA0.

11.3.2 Using crane lifting lugs to transport power blocks

Crane lifting lugs

The power blocks are fitted with crane lifting lugs for transportation on a lifting harness in the context of replacement.

The positions of the crane lifting lugs are illustrated by arrows in the figures below.

NOTICE
Damage to the device due to improper transport Improper transport can subject the power block housing or the busbars to mechanical loads, which damage the device. • When transporting the power blocks, use a lifting harness with vertical ropes or chains. • Do not use the power block busbars to support or secure lifting harnesses.

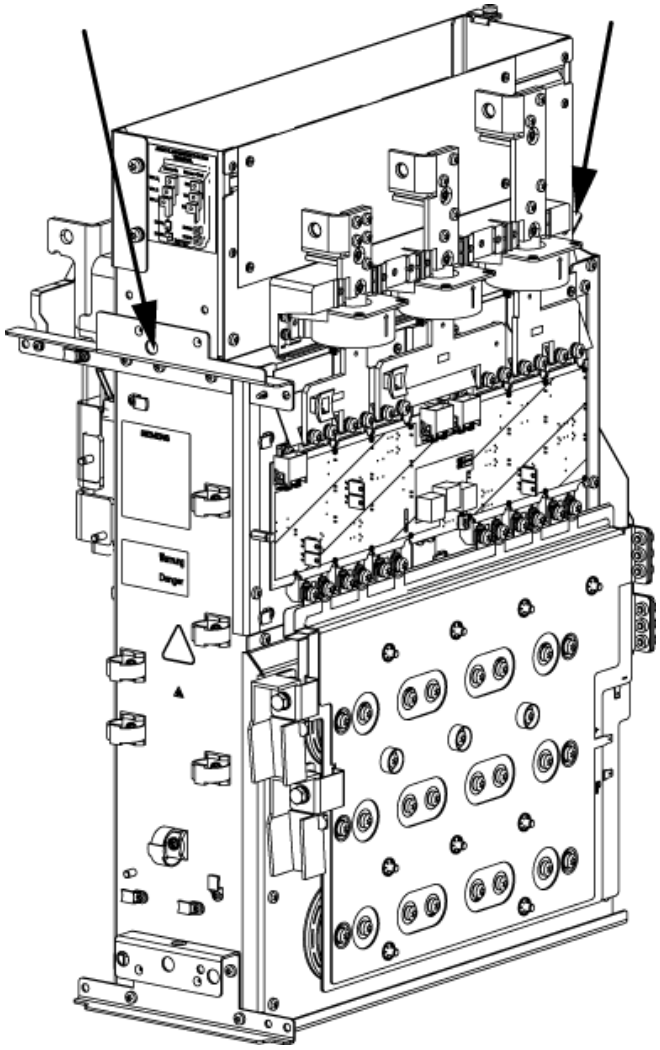


Figure 11-2 Crane lifting lugs on FX, GX power block

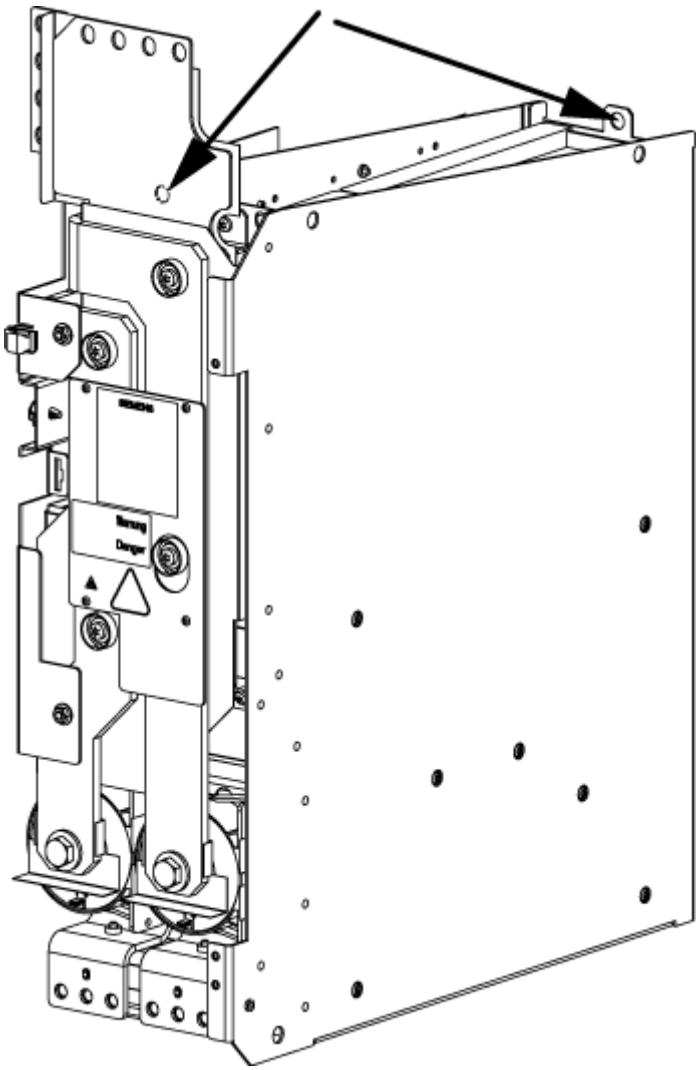


Figure 11-3 Crane lifting lugs on HX, JX power block

Note

Crane lifting lugs on power blocks HX, JX

On HX and JX power blocks, the front crane lifting lug is located behind the busbar.

11.4 Replacing components

⚠WARNING

Danger to life due to improper transport or installation of devices and components

Serious injury or even death and substantial material damage can occur if the devices are not transported or installed properly.

- Transport, mount, and remove the devices and components only if you are qualified to do so.
- Take into account that the devices and components are in some cases heavy and top-heavy; take the necessary precautionary measures.
  The weights of the individual power blocks are listed in the corresponding section.

11.4.1 Replacing the filter mats

The filter mats must be checked at regular intervals. If the mats are too dirty to allow the air supply to flow normally, they must be replaced.

Note

Replacing the filter mats

Filter mat replacement is only relevant for options M23, M43 and M54.

Not replacing contaminated filter mats can cause premature drive shutdown.

11.4.2 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

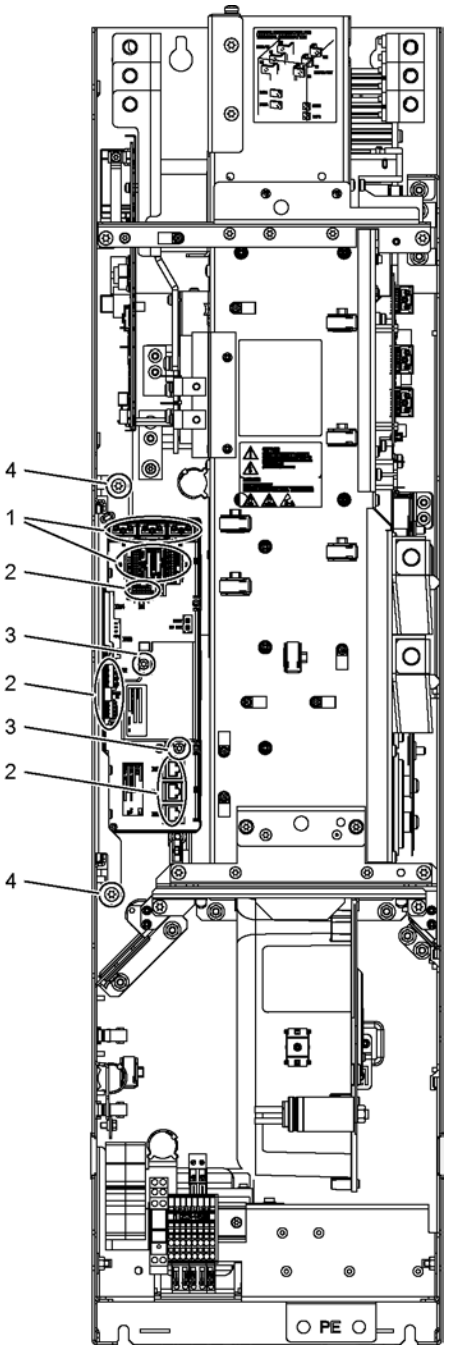


Figure 11-4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size FX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing

Signal cables can be damaged when the Control Interface Module is removed. This can cause the device to fail.

- When removing the Control Interface Module, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Tightening torque for the fixing screws of the Control Interface Module (M6 x 16, item ④): 6 Nm.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled to ensure that they are assigned correctly (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.3 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

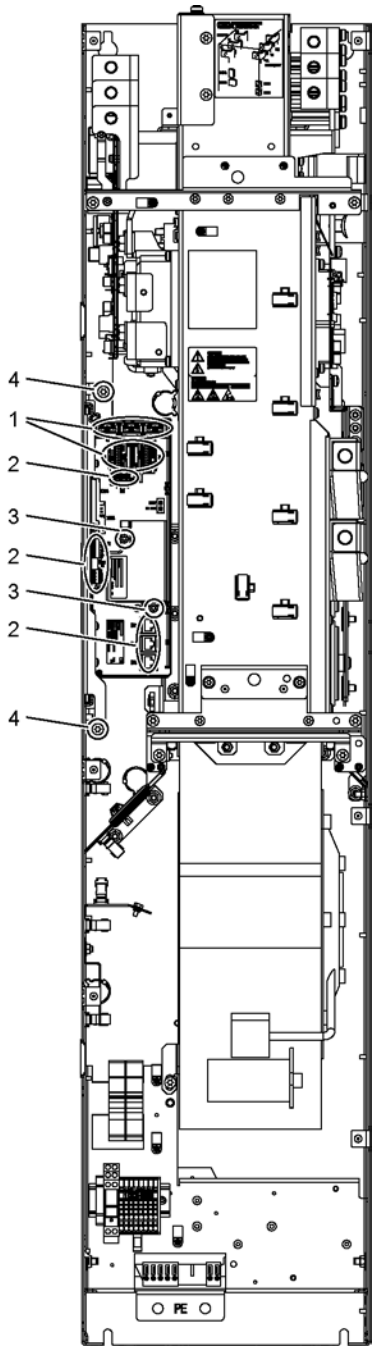


Figure 11-5 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size GX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws)

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing

Signal cables can be damaged when the Control Interface Module is removed. This can cause the device to fail.

- When removing the Control Interface Module, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Tightening torque for the fixing screws of the Control Interface Module (M6 x 16, item ④): 6 Nm.

Note

Information on the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled to ensure that they are assigned correctly (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.4 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

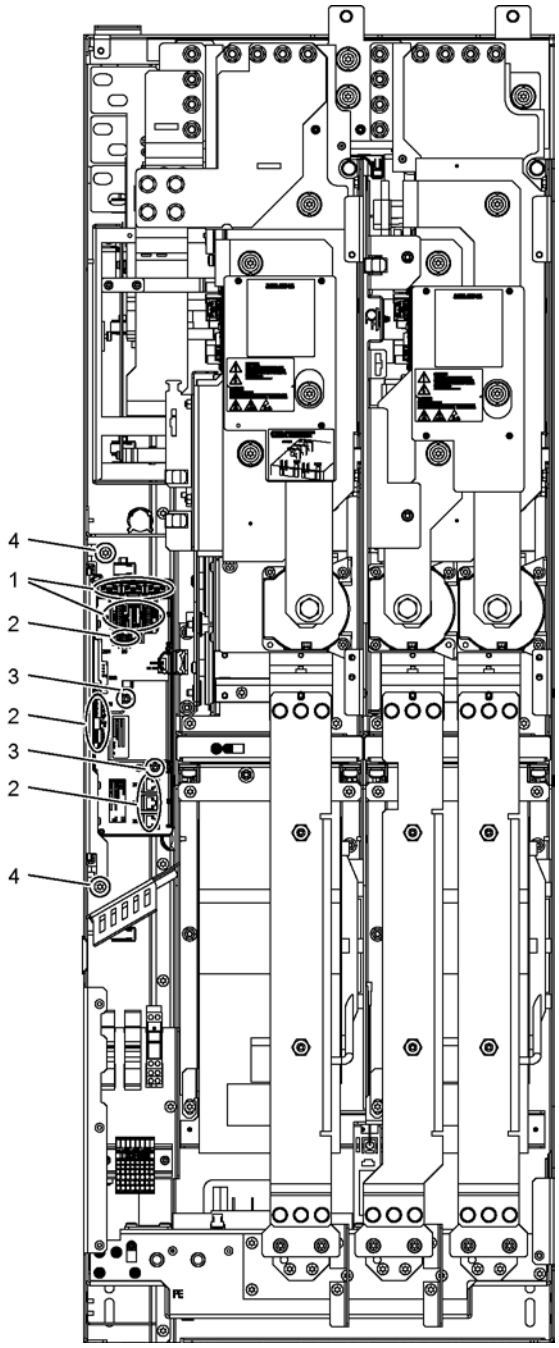


Figure 11-6 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size HX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing

Signal cables can be damaged when the Control Interface Module is removed. This can cause the device to fail.

- When removing the Control Interface Module, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Tightening torque for the fixing screws of the Control Interface Module (M6 x 16, item ④): 6 Nm.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled to ensure that they are assigned correctly (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.5 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX

Replacing the Control Interface Module

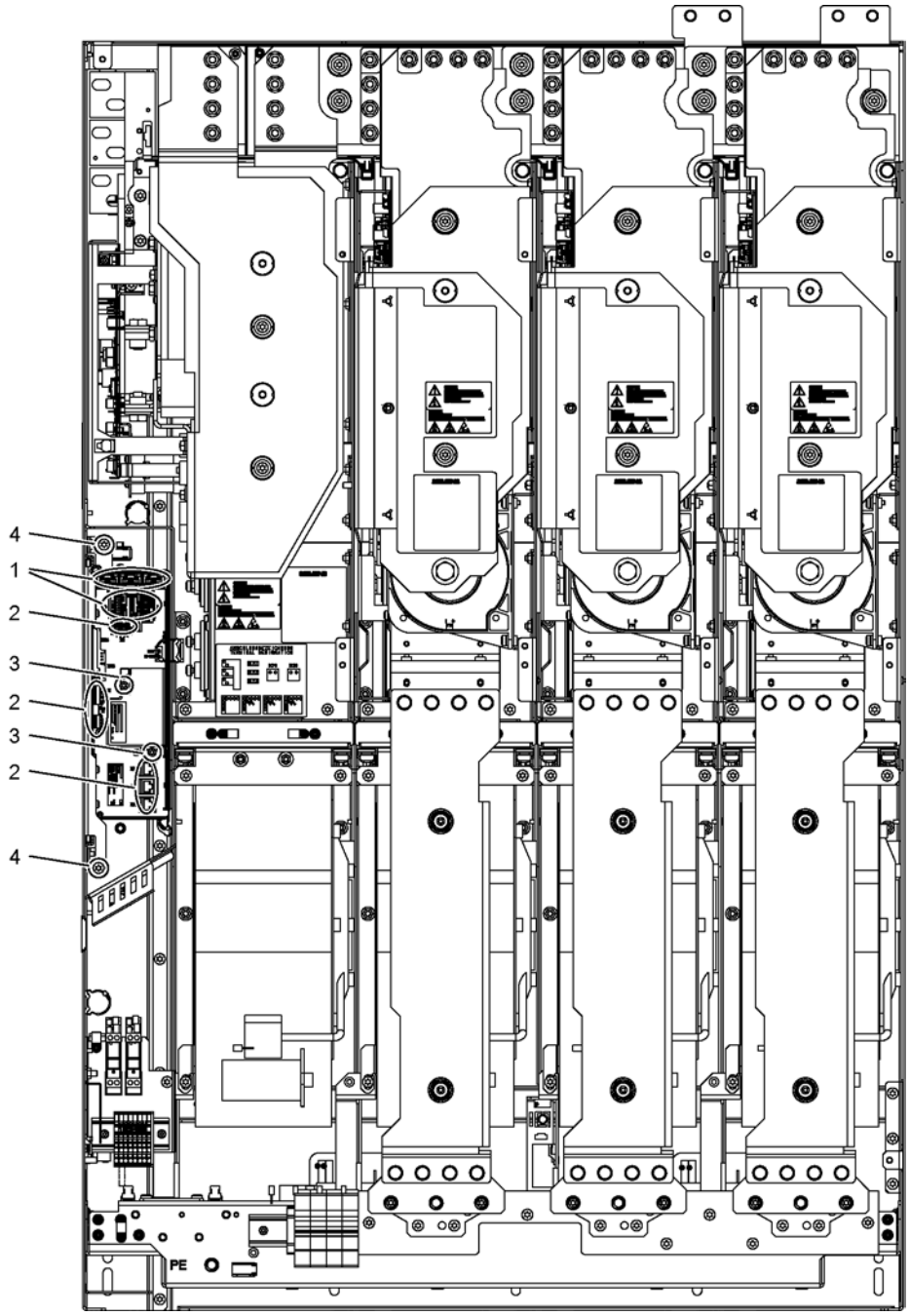


Figure 11-7 Replacing the Control Interface Module, frame size JX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (5 plugs).
2. Remove DRIVE-CLiQ cables and connections at - X41, -X42, -X46 (6 connectors).
   The DRIVE-CLiQ cables should be marked to ensure that they are subsequently correctly inserted.
3. Take out the retaining screws for the IPD card (2 screws) and remove the IPD card from plug -X45 on the Control Interface Module.
4. Remove the retaining screws for the Control Interface Module (2 screws).

When removing the Control Interface Module, you have to disconnect 5 additional plugs one after the other (2 at the top, 3 below).

NOTICE

Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing

Signal cables can be damaged when the Control Interface Module is removed. This can cause the device to fail.

- When removing the Control Interface Module, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Tightening torque for the fixing screws of the Control Interface Module (M6 x 16, item ④): 6 Nm.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

The fiber-optic cable plugs must be remounted at their original slot. Fiber-optic cables and sockets are labeled to ensure that they are assigned correctly (U11, U21, U31).

11.4.6 Replacing the power block (type FX)

Replacing the power block

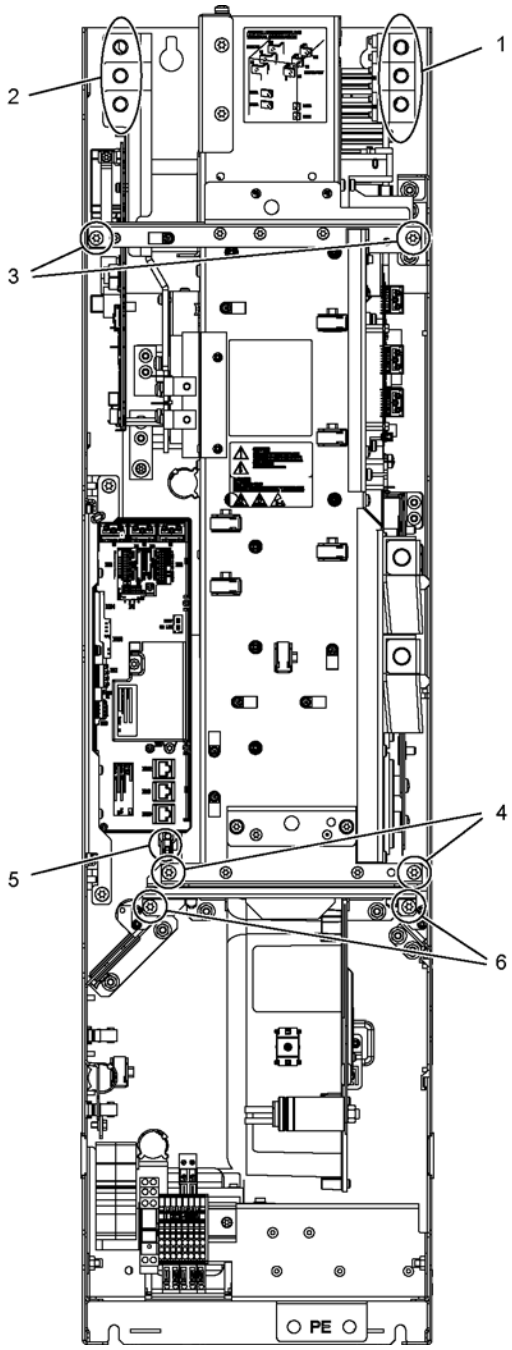


Figure 11-8 Replacing the power block, frame size FX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.
- Removing the Control Interface Module (see corresponding section)

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Unscrew the connection to the outgoing motor section (3 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the line supply (3 screws).
3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
6. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the equipment for assembling the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

Note

The power block weighs approx. 70 kg!

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the power block is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in Chapter "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

11.4.7 Replacing the power block (type GX)

Replacing the power block

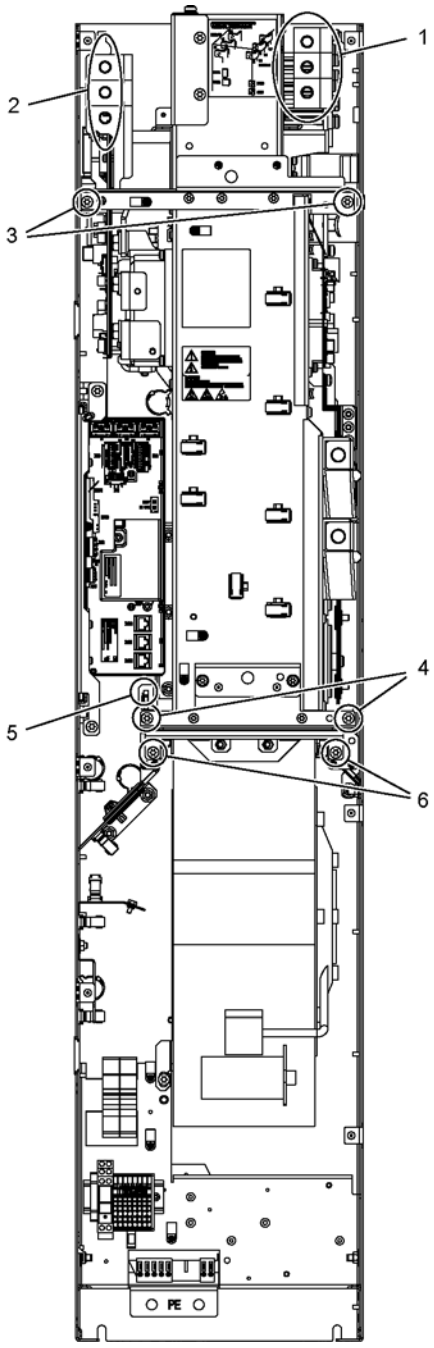


Figure 11-9 Replacing the power block, frame size GX

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.
- Removing the Control Interface Module (see corresponding section)

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Unscrew the connection to the outgoing motor section (3 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the line supply (3 screws).
3. Remove the retaining screws at the top (2 screws).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug for the thermocouple.
6. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the equipment for assembling the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

Note

The power block weighs approx. 102 kg!

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the power block is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in Chapter "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

11.4.8 Replacing the power block (type HX)

Replacing the left power block

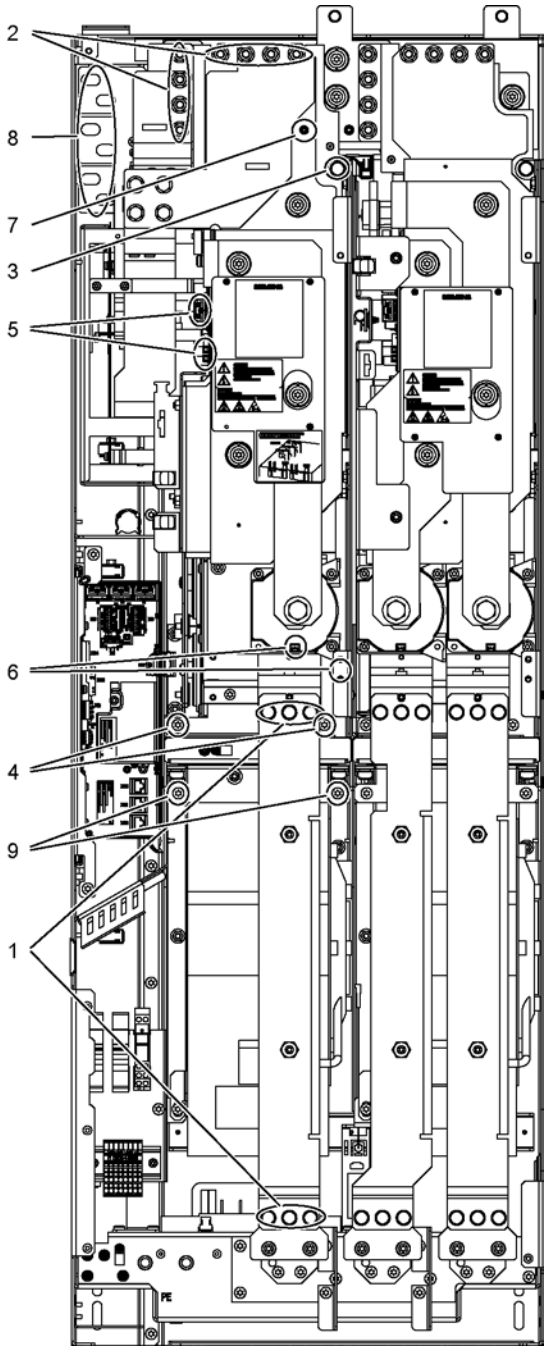


Figure 11-10 Replacing the power block, frame size HX, left power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (6 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (3 plugs).
6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (1 plug).
7. Remove the connection for the DC link sensor (1 nut).
8. Remove the power connections (6 screws).
9. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

Note

The power block weighs approx. 94 kg!

NOTICE

Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing

Signal cables can be damaged when the power block is removed. This can cause the device to fail.

- When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in Chapter "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

Replacing the right power block

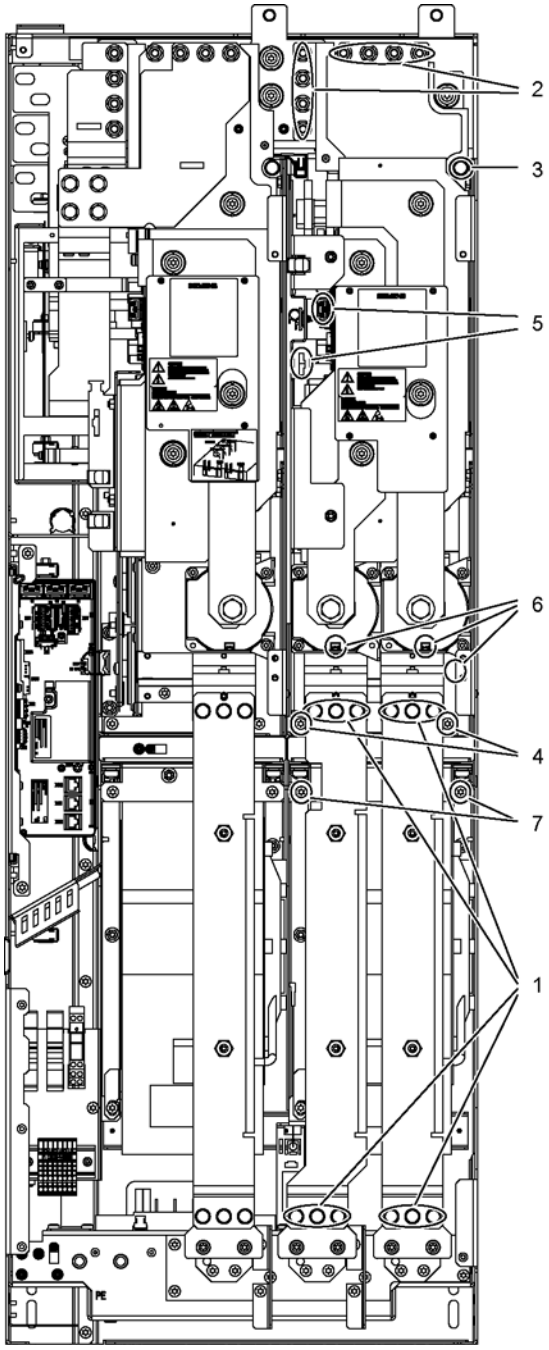


Figure 11-11 Replacing the power block, frame size HX, right power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbars (12 screws).
2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (3 plugs).
6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (2 plugs).
7. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

Note

The power block weighs approx. 88 kg!

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing
Signal cables can be damaged when the power block is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

11.4.9 Replacing the power block (type JX)

Replacing the left power block

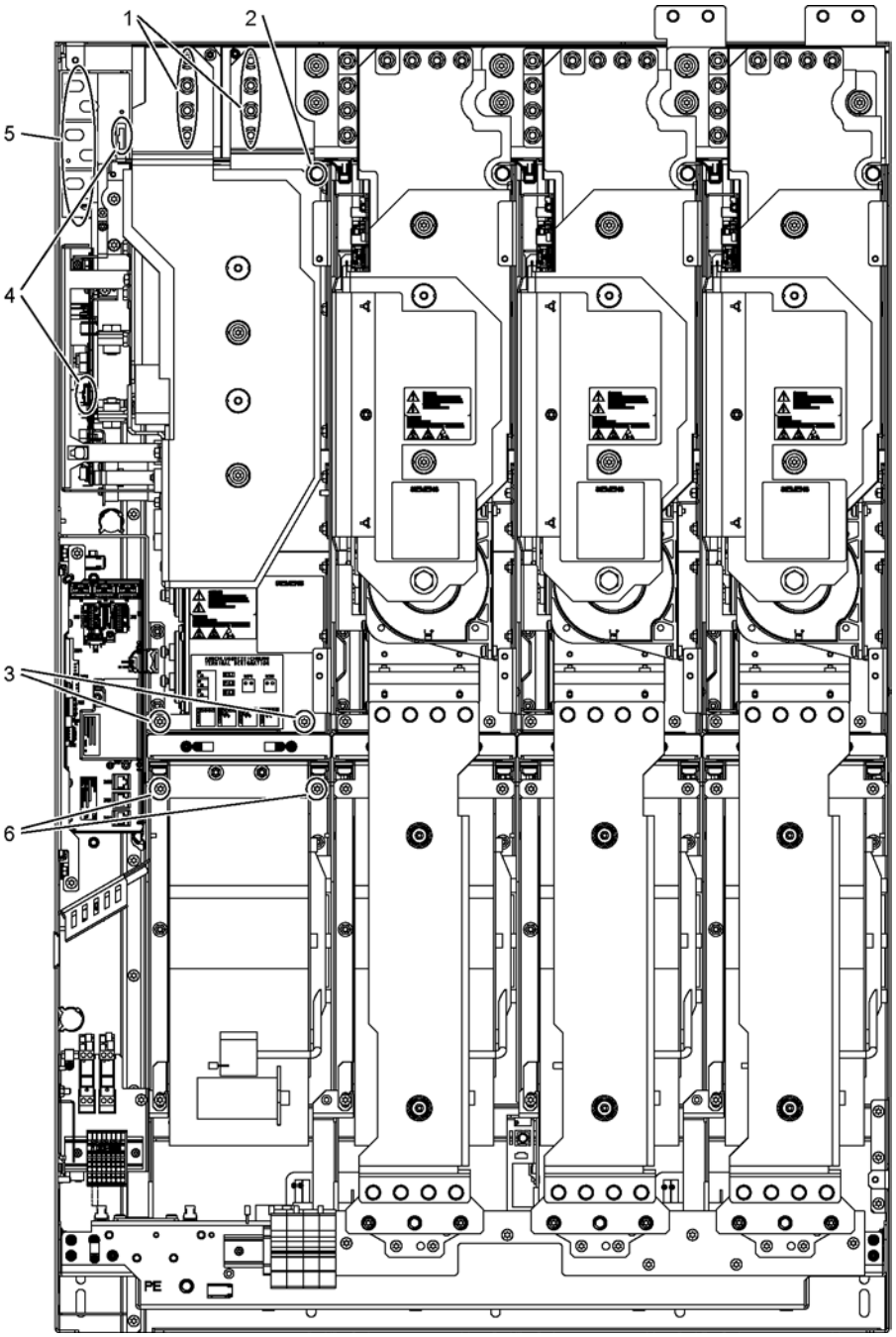


Figure 11-12 Replacing the power block, frame size JX, left power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
2. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
3. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
4. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs).
5. Remove the connections to the mains supply (6 screws).
6. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

Note

The power block weighs approx. 102 kg!

NOTICE

Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing

Signal cables can be damaged when the power block is removed. This can cause the device to fail.

- When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

Note

Connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor

The connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor is mounted on the spare power block together with a yellow warning label.

Please note the information in Chapter "Removing the connection clip to the interference-suppression capacitor for operation on an ungrounded line supply (IT system)".

Replacing the right power block

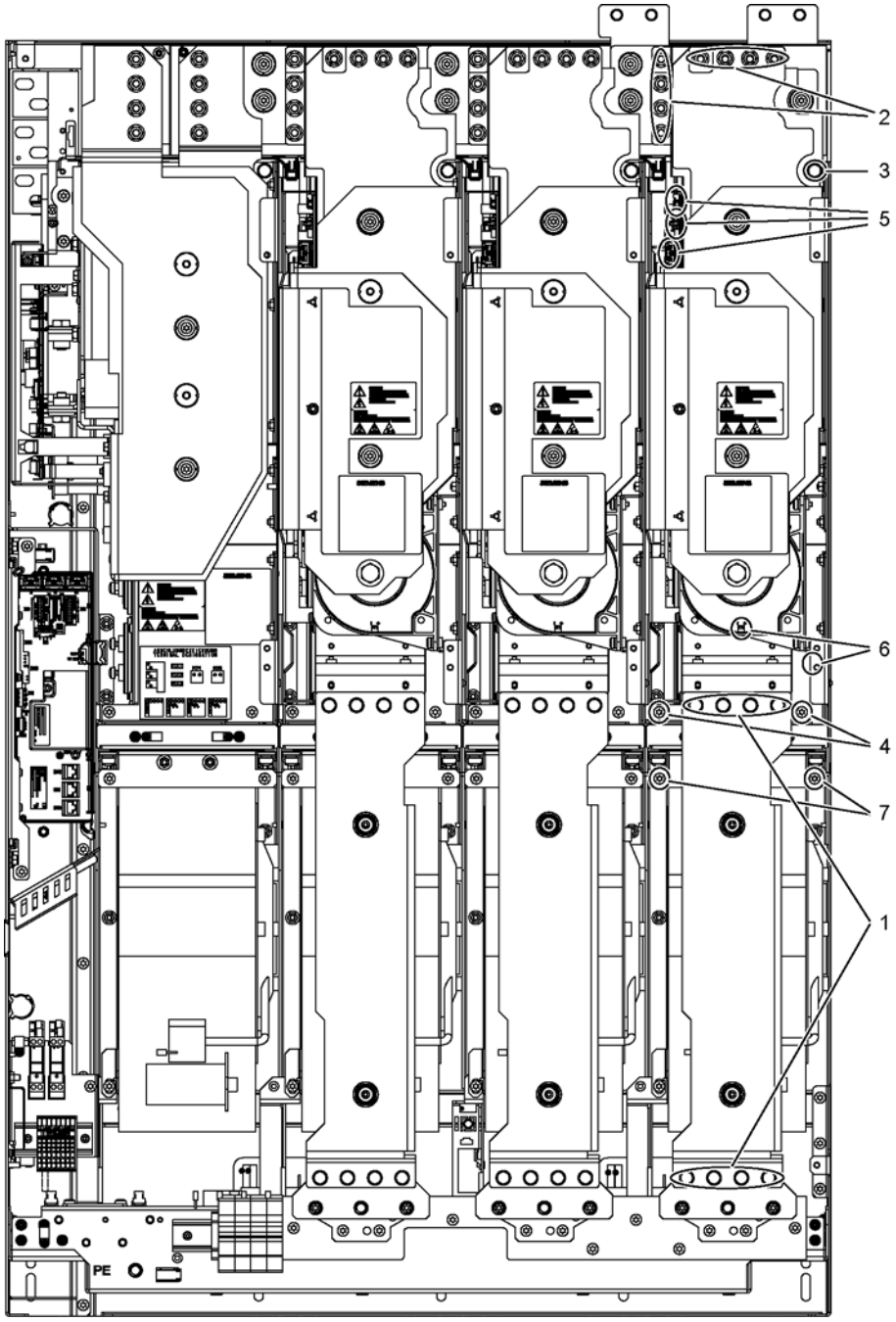


Figure 11-13 Replacing the power block, frame size JX, right power block

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access to the power block.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (8 screws)
2. Unscrew the connection to the DC link (8 nuts).
3. Remove the retaining screw at the top (1 screw).
4. Remove the retaining screws at the bottom (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the plug-in connections for the fiber-optic cables and signal cables (2 plugs).
6. Remove the connection for the current transformer and associated PE connection (1 plug).
7. Unscrew the two retaining screws for the fan and attach the tool for de-installing the power block at this position.

You can now remove the power block.

Note

The power block weighs approx. 90 kg!

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the power block is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the power block, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Specifications for the installation

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Carefully insert the plug-in connections and ensure that they are secure.

11.4.10 Replacing the fan (type FX)

Replacing the fan

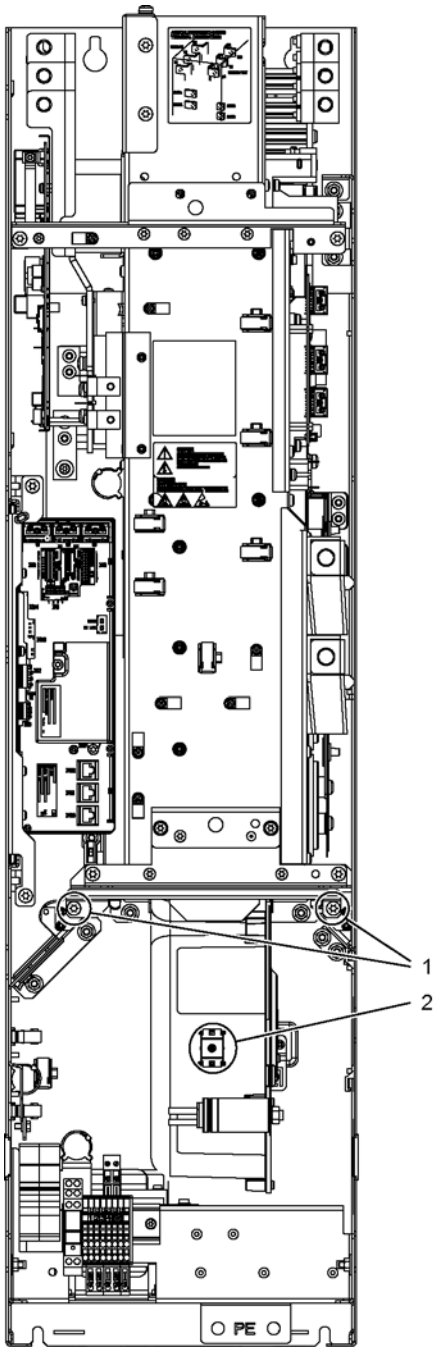


Figure 11-14 Replacing the fan, frame size FX

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (2 screws)
2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the fan is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the fan, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset using p0251 = 0.

11.4.11 Replacing the fan (type GX)

Replacing the fan

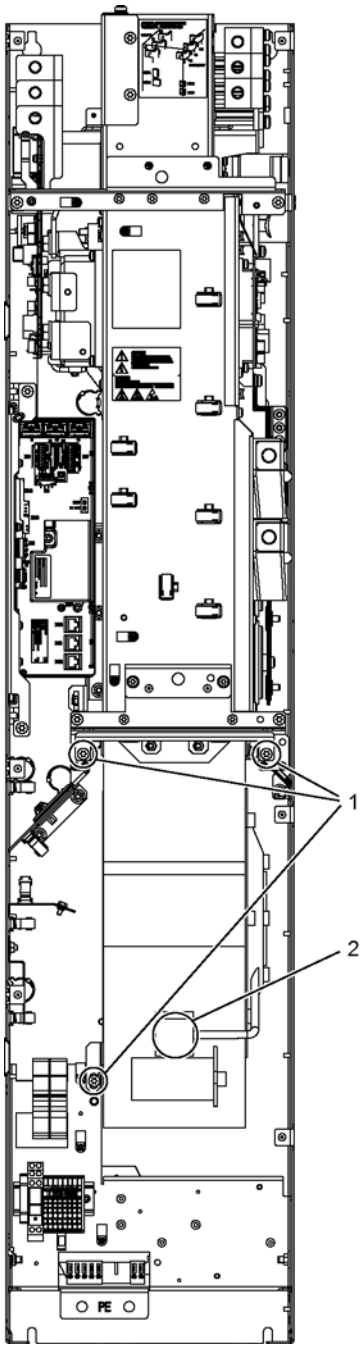


Figure 11-15 Replacing the fan, frame size GX

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the fan is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the fan, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset using p0251 = 0.

11.4.12 Replacing the fan (type HX)

Replacing the fan, left power block

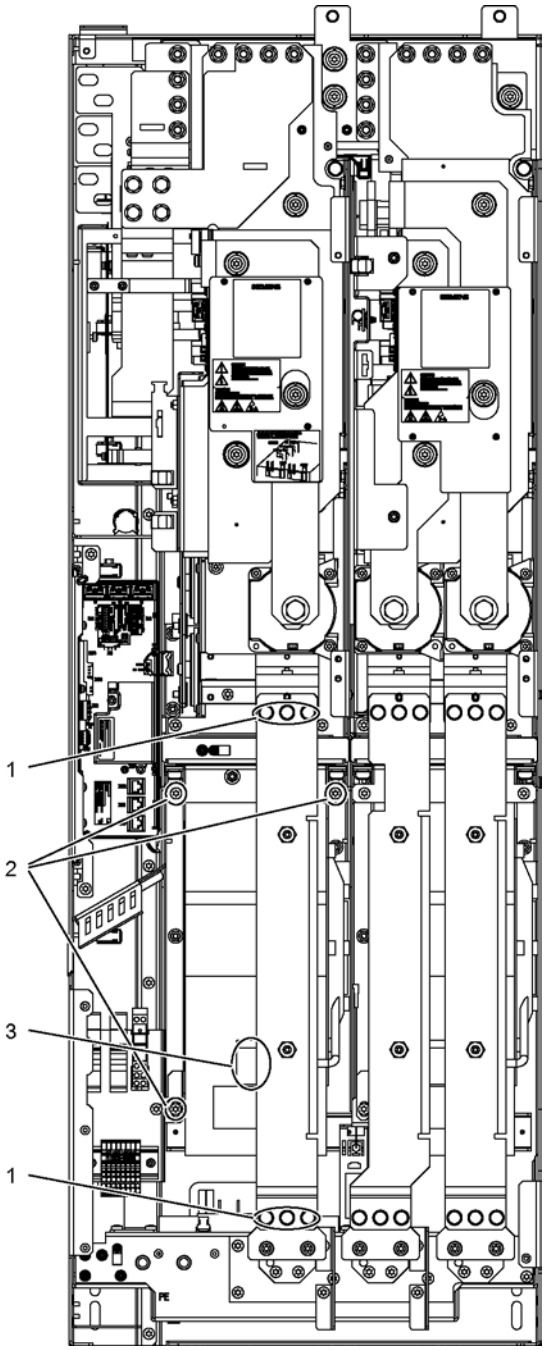


Figure 11-16 Replacing the fan, frame size HX, left power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (6 screws).
2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the fan is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the fan, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset using p0251 = 0.

Replacing the fan, right power block

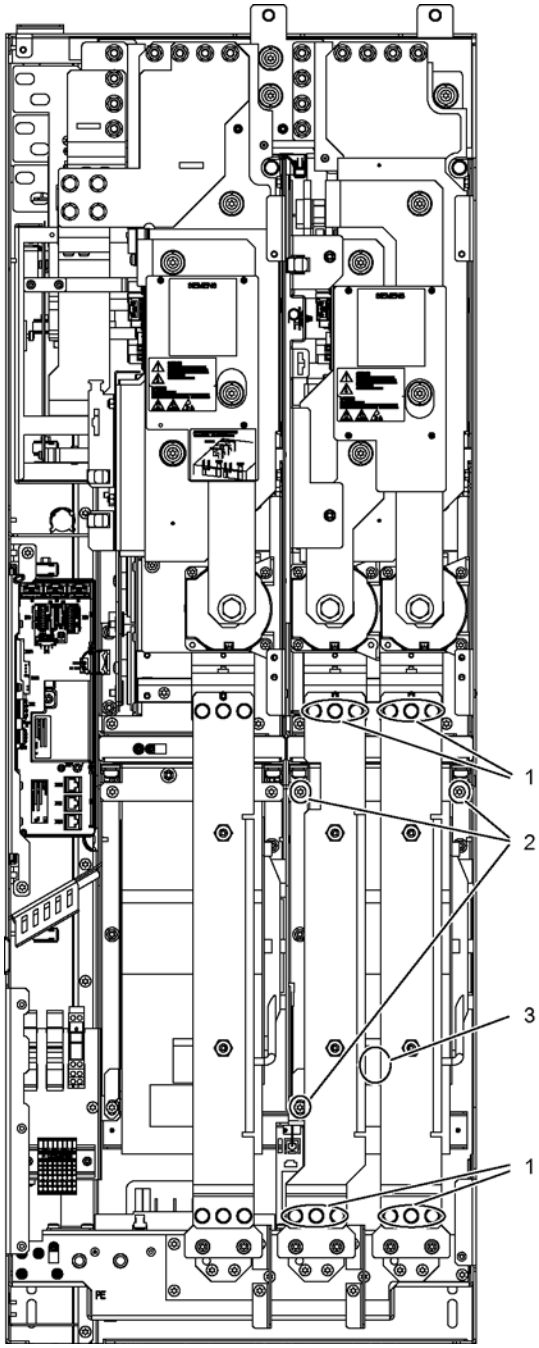


Figure 11-17 Replacing the fan, frame size HX, right power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (12 screws).
2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the fan is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the fan, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset using p0251 = 0.

11.4.13 Replacing the fan (type JX)

Replacing the fan, left power block

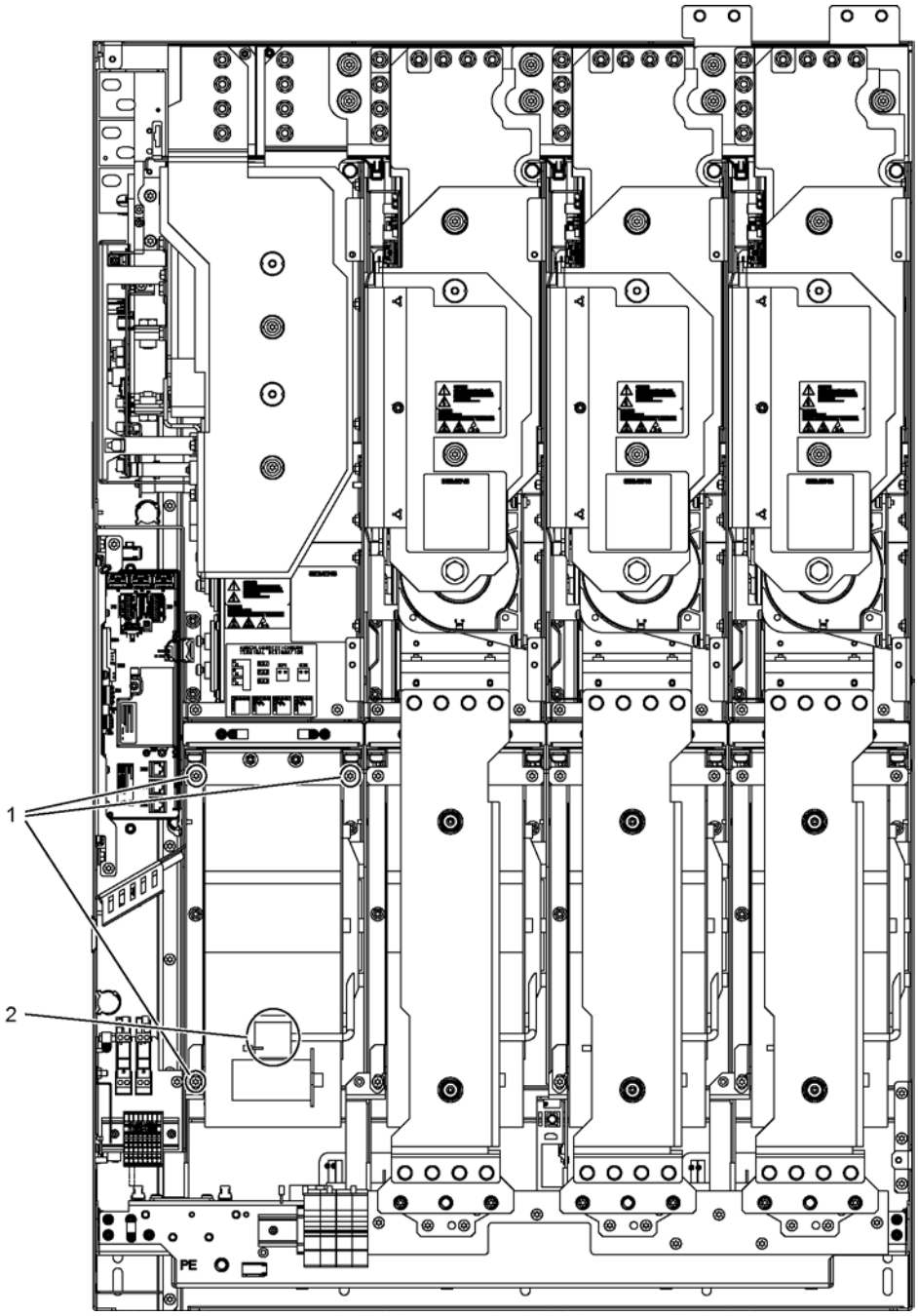


Figure 11-18 Replacing the fan, frame size JX, left power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
2. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the fan is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the fan, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset using p0251 = 0.

Replacing the fan, right power block

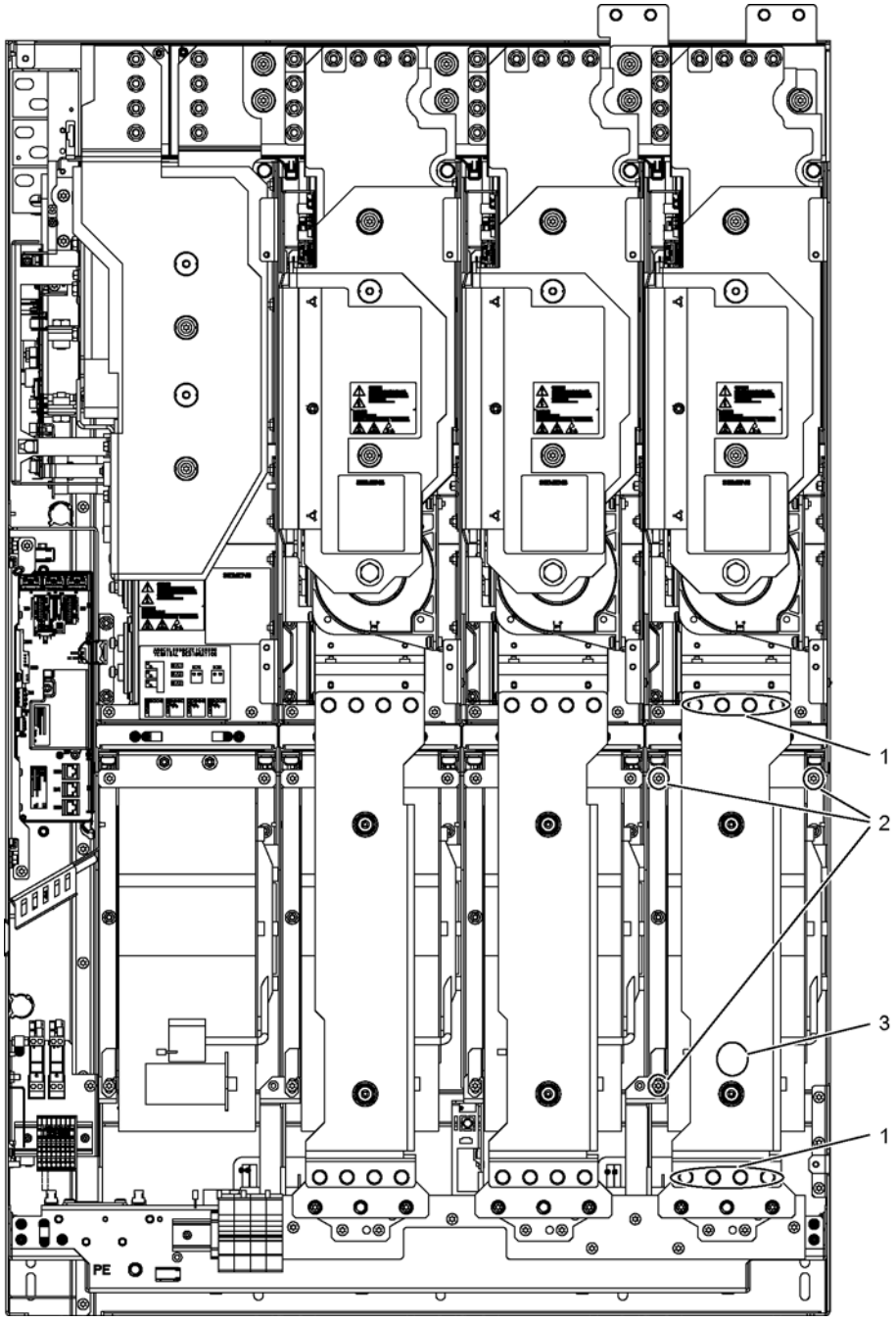


Figure 11-19 Replacing the fan, frame size JX, right power block

Description

The average service life of the device fans is 50,000 hours. In practice, however, the service life depends on other variables (e.g. ambient temperature, degree of cabinet protection, etc.) and, therefore, may deviate from this value.

The fans must be replaced in good time to maintain the availability of the cabinet unit.

Preparatory steps

- Disconnect the cabinet unit from the power supply.
- Allow unimpeded access.
- Remove the protective cover.

Removal steps

The removal steps are numbered in accordance with the numbers in the diagram.

1. Remove the busbar (8 screws)
2. Remove the retaining screws for the fan (3 screws)
3. Disconnect the supply cables (1 x "L", 1 x "N")

You can now carefully remove the fan.

NOTICE
Damage to the device if signal cables are damaged when removing Signal cables can be damaged when the fan is removed. This can cause the device to fail. • When removing the fan, ensure that you do not damage any signal cables.

Installation steps

To reinstall, perform the above steps in the reverse order.

Note

Pay attention to the tightening torques

The tightening torques specified in the table "Tightening torques for screw connections" must be observed.

Note

Reset the operating hours counter

Following fan replacement, the operating hours counter of the fan should be reset using p0251 = 0.

11.4.14 Replacing cylindrical fuses

The following fuses are cylindrical fuses:

- Fan fuses (-T1 -F10, -T1 -F11)
- Fuses for auxiliary power supply (-F11, -F12)
- Fuse for the internal 230 V AC supply (-F21)



Figure 11-20 Fuse holder

Order numbers for replacing fuses that have blown can be found in the spare parts list.

Note

Removing fault causes

Make sure that the cause of the fault is found before the fuse is replaced.

11.4.15 Replacing the LV HRC fuses

Description

NH fuses (low-voltage high-breaking-capacity fuses), also called knife fuses, are used, for example, in the on/off switches of the power supplies.



Figure 11-21 NH fuse

Preparatory steps

- Have the fuse equipment ready: NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuse-links
- National safety regulations must be followed.



Figure 11-22 NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuses

Note

The NH fuse puller can be ordered from Siemens with order number 3NX1 if required.

Removal steps

The NH fuse is removed in the following steps:

1. Switch the main switch to OFF
2. Front shock protection cover of the cabinet

Note

Cover over the line connections

Do not remove the cover (shock protection) over the line connections!

3. Put the NH fuse puller with forearm protection for NH fuse-links over the fuse
4. Remove the defective fuse.

NOTICE

Device failure after a DC fuse ruptures

The neighboring LV HRC fuses may also become damaged if a LV HRC fuse ruptures. Failure to replace all fuses at the same time can cause the device to fail.

- After a LV HRC fuse ruptures, always replace all LV HRC fuses at the same time. Always use fuses of the same type.

Installation steps

The NH fuse is installed in the following steps:

1. Attach the new fuse onto the NH fuse grip.
2. Insert the fuse into the fuse holder
3. Press the release button on the NH fuse puller to release the grip from the new fuse.
4. Attach the front shock protection cover

The power switch can then be closed.

11.4.16 Replacing the cabinet operator panel

1. Switch the unit into a no-voltage condition.
2. Open the cabinet.
3. Disconnect the power supply and communications line on the operator panel.
4. Release the fastenings on the operator panel.
5. Remove the operator panel.
6. Install the new operator panel.
7. Carry out any other work by reversing the sequence.

11.4.17 Replacing the Backup Battery for the Cabinet Operator Panel

Table 11- 2 Technical specifications of the backup battery

Type	CR2032 3 V lithium battery
Manufacturer	Maxell, Sony, Panasonic
Nominal capacity	220 mAh
Self-discharge at 20 °C	1 %/year
Service life (in backup mode)	> 1 year at 70 °C; >1.5 years at 20 °C
Service life (in operation)	> 2 years

Replacement

1. Switch the unit into a no-voltage condition.
2. Open the cabinet.
3. Disconnect the 24 V DC power supply and communications line on the operator panel.
4. Open the cover of the battery compartment.
5. Remove the old battery.
6. Insert the new battery.
7. Close the cover of the battery compartment.
8. Reconnect the 24 V DC power supply and communications line.
9. Close the cabinet.

Note

Time for replacing the battery

The battery must be replaced within one minute to ensure that no AOP settings are lost.

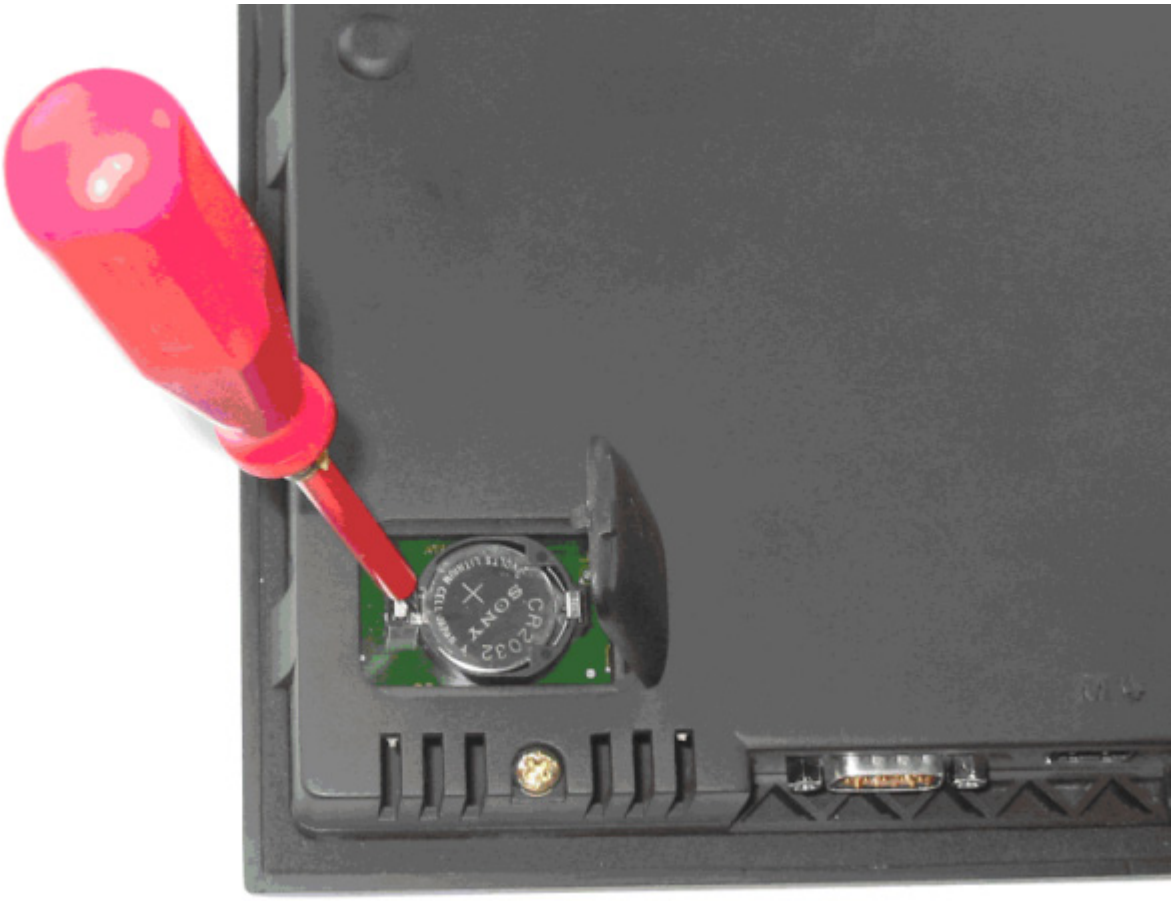


Figure 11-23 Replacing the backup battery for the cabinet operator panel

Note

Battery disposal

The battery must be disposed of in accordance with the applicable country-specific guidelines and regulations.

11.5 Forming the DC link capacitors

Description

If the device is kept in storage for more than two years, the DC-link capacitors have to be re-formed.

If the cabinet is commissioned within two years of its date of manufacture, the DC-link capacitors do not need to be re-formed. The date of manufacture is indicated in the serial number on the type plate (see "Device Overview").

NOTICE
Material damage caused by omitted forming If no forming is performed on a device after that has been stored for more than two years, operation with load can cause material damage on the device. • Form a device that has been in storage for more than two years.

Note

Storage period

It is important that the storage period is calculated from the date of manufacture and not from the date that the equipment was shipped.

Procedure

The DC-link capacitors are re-formed by applying the rated voltage without load for at least 30 minutes at room temperature.

- Operation via PROFIBUS:
  - Set bit 3 of control word 1 (operation enable) permanently to "0".
  - Switch on the converter by means of an ON signal (bit 0 of the control word); all the other bits must be set in such a way that the converter can be operated.
  - Once the delay time has elapsed, switch off the converter and restore the original PROFIBUS setting.
- Operation via terminal block:
  - Set p0852 to "0" (factory setting is "1").
  - Switch on the converter (via digital input 0 on the customer terminal block).
  - Once the delay time has elapsed, switch off the converter and restore the original setting for p0852.

Note

Forming via AOP30

Forming cannot be carried out in LOCAL mode via the AOP30.

11.6 Messages after replacing DRIVE-CLiQ components

After DRIVE-CLiQ components are replaced (Control Interface Module, TM31, SMCxx) when service is required, generally no message is output after power-up, since an identical component is identified and accepted as component when the system boots.

The reason for this is that an identical component is detected and accepted as spare part when running-up. If, unexpectedly, a fault message of the "topology fault" category is displayed, then when replacing a component, one of the following faults/errors should have occurred:

- A Control Interface Module with different firmware data was installed.
- When connecting-up DRIVE-CLiQ cables, connections were interchanged.

Automatic firmware update

A firmware update for the replaced DRIVE-CLiQ component may run automatically after switching on the electronics.

- The following LEDs will flash slowly to indicate that an automatic firmware update is in progress: the "RDY" LED on the Control Unit (orange, 0.5 Hz) and an LED on the relevant DRIVE-CLiQ component (green/red, 0.5 Hz).

  Note

  Do not shut down the converter

  For this action, the converter should not be shutdown because otherwise the firmware update would need to be restarted.

- Once the automatic firmware update is complete, the "RDY" LED on the Control Unit will flash quickly (orange, 2 Hz) along with an LED on the relevant DRIVE-CLiQ component (green/red, 2 Hz).
- To complete the automatic firmware update process, a POWER ON is required (switch the device off and back on again).

11.7 Upgrading the cabinet unit firmware

Updating the drive firmware (by installing a new memory card with a new firmware version, for example), may also make it necessary to upgrade the firmware of the DRIVE-CLiQ components contained in the drive.

If the system detects that the firmware in the DRIVE-CLiQ components needs to be updated, it will trigger this process automatically when the automatic firmware update is performed.

Automatic firmware update sequence

1. During an automatic firmware update, the "RDY" LED on the Control Unit flashes slowly (orange, 0.5 Hz).
2. The firmware update is performed on each DRIVE-CLiQ component as needed; during the update process, an LED for the respective component flashes slowly (green/red, 0.5 Hz).
3. Once the firmware update for a specific DRIVE-CLiQ component is complete, the LED for that component will flash quickly (green/red, 2 Hz).
4. Once the firmware update for all components is complete, the LED for the Control Unit will flash quickly (orange, 2 Hz).
5. To complete the automatic firmware update process, a POWER ON is required (switch the device off and back on again).

Note

The power supply to the components should not be interrupted during the update, because otherwise the firmware update must be restarted.

Note

New firmware should only be installed if there is a problem with the cabinet unit.

11.8 Load the new operator panel firmware from the PC.

Description

Firmware might need to be loaded to the AOP if the AOP functionality needs to be upgraded.

If, once the drive has being switched on, the memory card is found to contain a newer version of the firmware, a message will appear on the AOP30 prompting you to load the new firmware. You should click "YES" in response to this prompt.
The firmware will then be loaded automatically on the operator panel and the following dialog screen will appear.

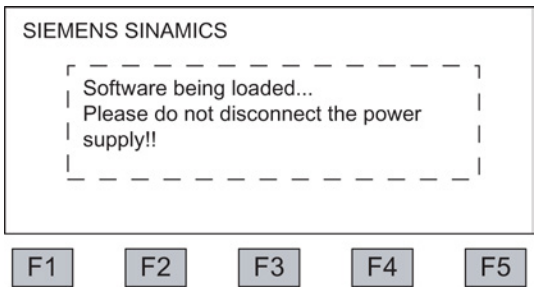


Figure 11-24 Dialog screen: loading firmware

If the firmware cannot be loaded successfully, it can be loaded using the following manual method.

The load program LOAD_AOP30 and the firmware file can be found on the customer DVD.

Loading the firmware

1. Establish the RS232 connection from the PC to the AOP30.
2. Provide the supply voltage (24 V DC).
3. Start the LOAD_AOP30 program on the PC.
4. Choose the PC interface (COM1, COM2).
5. Choose and open the firmware (AOP30.H86).
6. Follow the instructions in the status window of the program and connect the power supply for the AOP30 while pressing the red key (O).
7. The load procedure is started automatically.
8. Switch the power on (switch the power supply off and then back on).

Technical specifications

12

12.1 Chapter content

This chapter provides information on the following:

- General and specific technical specifications for the devices.
- Information on restrictions that apply when the devices are used in unfavorable ambient conditions (derating)

12.2 General data

Table 12- 1 General technical data

Electrical data	
Line system configurations	Grounded TN/TT systems or ungrounded IT systems (a grounded phase conductor is not permissible in 690 V line supplies)
Line frequency	47 ... 63 Hz
Output frequency	0 ... 300 Hz
Power factor - Fundamental mode - Total	 ≥ 0.96 0.75 ... 0.93
Converter efficiency	> 98 %
Switching at input	Once every 3 minutes
Overvoltage category	III per EN 61800-5-1
Mechanical data	
Degree of protection	IP20 (higher degrees of protection up to IP54 optional)
Class of protection	I per EN 61800-5-1
Cooling method	Forced air cooling AF per EN 60146
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m)	• at 50 Hz line frequency ≤ 72 dB(A) (single units) / ≤ 75 dB(A) (units connected in parallel) • at 60 Hz line frequency ≤ 75 dB(A) (single units) / ≤ 78 dB(A) (units connected in parallel)
Touch protection	EN 50274 and BGV A3 when used as intended
Cabinet system	Rittal TS 8, doors with double-barb lock, three-section base plates for cable entry
Paint finish	RAL 7035 (indoor requirements)

Compliance with standards			
Standards	EN 60146-1, EN 61800-2, EN 61800-3, EN 61800-5-1, EN 60204-1, EN 60529 [2]		
CE mark	To EMC Directive No. 2004/108/EC and Low-Voltage Directive No. 2006/95/EC and Machinery Directive No. 2006/42/EC		
RI suppression	In accordance with the EMC product standard for variable-speed drives EN 61800-3, "second environment." Application in "first environment" possible with line filters (option L00) [1].		
Ambient conditions	**Storage**	**Transport**	**Operation**
Ambient temperature	-25 ... +55 °C	-25 ... +70°C as of *–40 °C* for 24 hours	*0* ... +40 °C up to 50 °C with derating
Humidity range [2] (non-condensing) corresponds to class	*5 to 95 %* 1K4 to EN 60721-3-1	5 ... 95 % at 40 °C 2K3 to EN 60721-3-2	5 ... *95 %* 3K3 to EN 60721-3-3
Environmental class/harmful chemical substances [2]	1C2 to EN 60721-3-1	2C2 to EN 60721-3-2	3C2 to EN 60721-3-3
Organic/biological influences [2]	1B1 to EN 60721-3-1	2B1 to EN 60721-3-2	3B1 to EN 60721-3-3
Degree of pollution	2 according to EN 61800-5-1		
Installation altitude	Up to 2000 m above sea level without derating, > 2000 m above sea level with derating (see "Derating data")		
Mechanical strength	**Storage**	**Transport**	**Operation**
Vibrational load [2] - Displacement - Acceleration corresponds to class	 1.5 mm at *5* to 9 Hz 5 m/s² at > 9 to 200 Hz 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1	 *3.1 mm* at *5* ... 9 Hz 10 m/s² at > 9 ... 200 Hz 2M2 to EN 60721-3-2	 0.075 mm at 10 ... 58 Hz 10 m/s² at >58 ... 200 Hz -
Shock load [2] - Acceleration corresponds to class	 40 m/s² at 22 ms 1M2 to EN 60721-3-1	 100 m/s² at 11 ms 2M2 to EN 60721-3-2	 100 m/s² at 11 ms 3M4 to EN 60721-3-3

Deviations from the defined classes are shown in *italics*.

[1] Applies to cable lengths of up to 100 m.

[2] The EN standards specified are the European editions of the international IEC standards with the same designations.

12.2.1 Derating data

12.2.1.1 Current derating as a function of the ambient temperature

Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature

The cabinet devices and the associated system components are rated for an ambient temperature of 40 °C and installation altitudes up to 2000 m above sea level. The output current must be reduced if the cabinet devices are operated at ambient temperatures above 40 °C. Ambient temperatures above 50 °C are not permissible. The following tables specify the permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature for the different degrees of protection .

Table 12- 2 Current derating factors as a function of the ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP20/IP21/IP23/IP43

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of						
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %

Table 12- 3 Current derating factors as a function of the hambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP54

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air intake temperature) of						
	20 °C	25 °C	30 °C	35 °C	40 °C	45 °C	50 °C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %	80.0 %

12.2.1.2 Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m above sea level

If the SINAMICS G150 cabinet units are operated at an installation altitude >2000 m above sea level, it must be taken into account that the air pressure and, consequently, the air density decreases. The lower air density also reduces the cooling efficiency and the insulation capacity of the air.

Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m can be achieved by applying the following measures.

Reduce the ambient temperature and the output current

Due to the reduced cooling efficiency, it is necessary, on the one hand, to reduce the ambient temperature and, on the other, to lower heat loss in the cabinet unit by reducing the output current, whereby ambient temperatures lower than 40° C may be offset to compensate, and are taken into account in the tables. The following tables specify the permissible output currents as a function of installation altitude and ambient temperature for the different degrees of protection. The specified values already include a permitted correction in respect of installation altitude and ambient temperatures less than 40° C (incoming air temperature at the inlet to the cabinet unit). The values apply under the precondition that the cabinet layout ensures a cooling air flow though the units as stated in the technical data.

Table 12- 4 Current derating as a function of ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP20/IP21/IP23/IP43

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air inlet temperature) of						
	20° C	25° C	30° C	35° C	40° C	45° C	50° C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %
... 2500	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	96.3 %		
... 3000	100 %	100 %	100 %	98.7 %			
... 3500	100 %	100 %	100 %				
... 4000	100 %	100 %	96.3 %				
... 4500	100 %	97.5 %					
... 5000	98.2 %						

Table 12- 5 Current derating as a function of the ambient temperature (inlet air temperature at the air inlet of the cabinet unit) and installation altitude for cabinet units with degree of protection IP54

Installation altitude above sea level in m	Current derating factor at an ambient temperature (air inlet temperature) of						
	20° C	25° C	30° C	35° C	40° C	45° C	50° C
0 ... 2000	100 %	100 %	100 %	100 %	93.3 %	86.7 %	80.0 %
... 2500	100 %	100 %	100 %	96.3 %	89.8 %		
... 3000	100 %	100 %	98.7 %	92.5 %			
... 3500	100 %	100 %	94.7 %				
... 4000	100 %	96.3 %	90.7 %				
... 4500	97.5 %	92.1 %					
... 5000	93.0 %						

Using an isolating transformer to reduce transient overvoltages according to IEC 61800-5-1

This drops overvoltage category III to overvoltage category II, thereby reducing the requirements for insulation capacity of the air. Additional voltage derating (reduction of the input voltage) is not required if the following framework conditions are observed:

- The isolating transformer must be fed from a low-voltage or medium-voltage network and must not be power directly from a high-voltage supply system.
- The isolating transformer may be connected to one or more cabinet units.
- The cables between the isolating transformer and the cabinet unit(s) must be routed in such a manner as to rule out direct lightening strike, i.e. overland lines must not be used.
- The following types of system are permissible:
  - TN systems with grounded star point (no grounded outer conductor).
  - IT systems (operation with a ground fault must be restricted to the shorted possible time).

12.2.1.3 Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency

When the pulse frequency is increased, the derating factor of the output current must be taken into account. This derating factor must be applied to the currents specified in the technical data for the cabinet units.

Table 12- 6 Derating factor of the output current as a function of the pulse frequency for devices with a rated pulse frequency of 2 kHz

Order No.	Type rating	Output current at 2 kHz	Derating factor at the pulse frequency				
6SL3710-...	[kW]	[A]	2.5 kHz	4 kHz	5 kHz	7.5 kHz	8 kHz
Supply voltage 3-phase 380 VAC ... 480 VAC							
1GE32-1_Ax	110	210	95 %	82 %	74 %	54 %	50 %
1GE32-6_Ax	132	260	95 %	83 %	74 %	54 %	50 %
1GE33-1_Ax	160	310	97 %	88 %	78 %	54 %	50 %
1GE33-8_Ax	200	380	96 %	87 %	77 %	54 %	50 %
1GE35-0_Ax	250	490	94 %	78 %	71 %	53 %	50 %

Table 12- 7 Derating factor of the output current as a function of the pulse frequency for devices with a rated pulse frequency of 1.25 kHz

Order No.	Type rating	Output current at 1.25 kHz	Derating factor at the pulse frequency				
6SL3710-...	[kW]	[A]	2 kHz	2.5 kHz	4 kHz	5 kHz	7.5 kHz
Supply voltage 3-phase 380 VAC ... 480 VAC							
1GE36-1_Ax	315	605	83 %	72 %	64 %	60 %	40 %
1GE37-5_Ax	400	745	83 %	72 %	64 %	60 %	40 %
1GE38-4_Ax	450	840	87 %	79 %	64 %	55 %	40 %
1GE41-0_Ax	560	985	92 %	87 %	70 %	60 %	50 %
2GE41-1AAx	630	1120	83 %	72 %	64 %	60 %	40 %
2GE41-4AAx	710	1380	83 %	72 %	64 %	60 %	40 %
2GE41-6AAx	900	1560	87 %	79 %	64 %	55 %	40 %
Supply voltage 3-phase 500 VAC ... 600 VAC							
1GF31-8_Ax	110	175	92 %	87 %	70 %	60 %	40 %
1GF32-2_Ax	132	215	92 %	87 %	70 %	60 %	40 %
1GF32-6_Ax	160	260	92 %	88 %	71 %	60 %	40 %
1GF33-3_Ax	200	330	89 %	82 %	65 %	55 %	40 %
1GF34-1_Ax	250	410	89 %	82 %	65 %	55 %	35 %
1GF34-7_Ax	315	465	92 %	87 %	67 %	55 %	35 %
1GF35-8_Ax	400	575	91 %	85 %	64 %	50 %	35 %
1GF37-4_Ax	500	735	87 %	79 %	64 %	55 %	35 %
1GF38-1_Ax	560	810	83 %	72 %	61 %	55 %	35 %
2GF38-6AAx	630	860	92 %	87 %	67 %	55 %	35 %
2GF41-1AAx	710	1070	91 %	85 %	64 %	50 %	35 %
2GF41-4AAx	1000	1360	87 %	79 %	64 %	55 %	35 %
Supply voltage 3-phase 660 VAC ... 690 VAC							
1GH28-5_Ax	75	85	93 %	89 %	71 %	60 %	40 %
1GH31-0_Ax	90	100	92 %	88 %	71 %	60 %	40 %
1GH31-2_Ax	110	120	92 %	88 %	71 %	60 %	40 %
1GH31-5_Ax	132	150	90 %	84 %	66 %	55 %	35 %
1GH31-8_Ax	160	175	92 %	87 %	70 %	60 %	40 %
1GH32-2_Ax	200	215	92 %	87 %	70 %	60 %	40 %
1GH32-6_Ax	250	260	92 %	88 %	71 %	60 %	40 %
1GH33-3_Ax	315	330	89 %	82 %	65 %	55 %	40 %
1GH34-1_Ax	400	410	89 %	82 %	65 %	55 %	35 %
1GH34-7_Ax	450	465	92 %	87 %	67 %	55 %	35 %
1GH35-8_Ax	560	575	91 %	85 %	64 %	50 %	35 %
1GH37-4_Ax	710	735	87 %	79 %	64 %	55 %	35 %
1GH38-1_Ax	800	810	83 %	72 %	61 %	55 %	35 %
2GH41-1AAx	1000	1070	91 %	85 %	64 %	50 %	35 %
2GH41-4AAx	1350	1360	87 %	79 %	64 %	55 %	35 %
2GH41-5AAx	1500	1500	83 %	72 %	61 %	55 %	35 %

Note

Derating factors for pulse frequencies in the range between fixed values

For pulse frequencies in the range between the specified fixed values, the relevant derating factors can be determined by linear interpolation.

12.2.2 Overload capability

The converter is equipped with an overload reserve to deal with breakaway torques, for example.

In drives with overload requirements, the appropriate base load current must, therefore, be used as a basis for the required load.

The overloads apply under the precondition that the converter is operated at its base-load current before and after the overload (a duty cycle duration of 300 s is used as a basis here).

Low overload

The base-load current for low overload (I_L) is based on a load duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s.

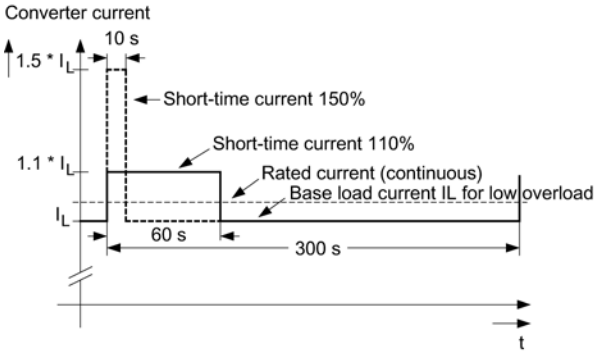


Figure 12-1 Low overload

High overload

The base-load current for a high overload I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s.

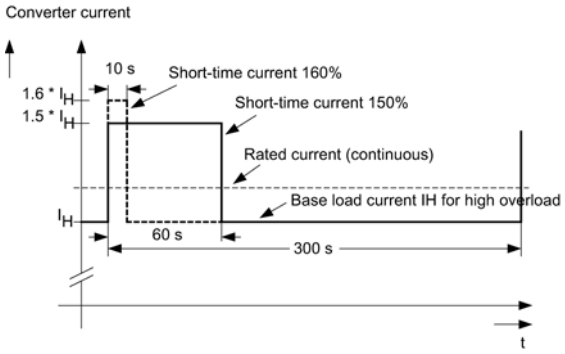


Figure 12-2 High overload

12.3 Technical specifications

Note

Notes on the technical data

Current, voltage and power figures in these tables are rated values.

The cables to the device are protected by fuses of operating class gG.

The cable cross-sections have been determined for three-core copper cables routed horizontally in air at 40° C ambient temperature (according to DIN VDE 0276-1000 and IEC 60364-5-52) with a permissible operating temperature of 70° C (e.g. Protodur NYY or NYCWY) and the recommended conductor protection according to DIN VDE 0100 section 430 and IEC 60364-4-43.

NOTICE

Material damage caused by impermissible cable temperatures

The improper laying of cables can produce short-circuits caused by damage of the insulation that result from excessive temperatures.

When the conditions differ from the above stated (cable routing, cable grouping, ambient temperature), the following instructions for routing the cables must be taken into account:

- The required cable cross-section depends on the amperage which flows through the cable.
- The permissible current loading of cables is defined, for example, in DIN VDE 0276-1000 and IEC 60364-5-52. It depends partly on ambient conditions such as temperature and partly on the type of routing. If the cables are routed individually, they will be cooled relatively well. If several cables are routed together, they may heat each other up. Please note the corresponding derating factors for these supplementary conditions in DIN VDE 0276-1000 and IEC 60364-5-52.

12.3.1 Cabinet unit version A, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC

Table 12- 8 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1AAx	1GE32-6AAx	1GE33-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	125	150	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	210	260	310
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	205	250	302
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	178	233	277
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	229	284	338
- Input current, max.	A	335	410	495
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.9	3.8	4.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.23	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 50	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	460	670

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1AAx	1GE32-6AAx	1GE33-1AAx
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3144	3NA3250	3NA3254
Rated current	A	250	300	355
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	315	350	500
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	2	2
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	3000	3600	4400

[1] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

[2] Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

[3] The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[4] The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

[5] The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

[6] The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

[7] In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

[8] Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

Table 12- 9 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8AAx	1GE35-0AAx	1GE36-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	300	400	500
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	250	350	350
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	380	490	605
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	370	477	590
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	340	438	460
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	395	509	629
- Input current, max.	A	606	781	967
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.3	6.4	8.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	70/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 150	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1000	1000	1200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	750
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3260	3NA3372	3NA3475
Rated current	A	400	630	800
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	4
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1334-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1438-2
Rated current	A	500	630	800
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8AAx	1GE35-0AAx	1GE36-1AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	4400	8000	10000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

Table 12- 10 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5AAx	1GE38-4AAx	1GE41-0AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	400	450	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	315	400	450
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	600	600	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	450	500	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	745	840	985
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	725	820	960
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	570	700	860
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	775	873	1024
- Input current, max.	A	1188	1344	1573
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.6	10.1	14.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	70/73	70/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	3 x 185	4 x 150	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (10 holes)	M12 (16 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1200	1200	1600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	750	780	1100
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3475	3NA3365	3NA3472
Rated current	A	800	2 x 500	2 x 630
Frame size to IEC 60269		4	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1448-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1437-2
Rated current	A	850	2 x 630	2 x 710
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5AAx	1GE38-4AAx	1GE41-0AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	10500	16000 / 1800 [9]	18400 / 2000 [9]

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The minimum current specified here is based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

9) For option L26 the low value applies.

Table 12- 11 Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	2GE41-1AAx	2GE41-4AAx	2GE41-6AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	630	710	900
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	500	560	710
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	900	1000	1250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	700	900	1000
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	1120	1380	1560
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	1092	1340	1516
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	850	1054	1294
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	1174	1444	1624
- Input current, max.	A	1800	2215	2495
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	2.8	2.8	3.0
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	16.2	19.0	19.9
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.56	1.56	1.56
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	73/76	73/76	73/76
Line connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		Per sub-cabinet: M12 (2 holes)	Per sub-cabinet: M12 (10 holes)	Per sub-cabinet: M12 (16 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	2400	2400	2400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	1700	1710	2130
Recommended protection				
- Line protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(with option L26)		3NA3475	3NA3475	3NA3365
Rated current	A	800	800	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		4	4	3
- Line and semiconductor protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(without option L26)		3NE1438-2	3NE1448-2	3NE1436-2
Rated current	A	800	850	2 x 630
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	2GE41-1AAx	2GE41-4AAx	2GE41-6AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	2 x 65	2 x 65	2 x 55
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2 x 10000	2 x 10500	2 x 1800

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The minimum current specified here is based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

12.3.2 Cabinet unit version C, 380 V - 480 V 3 AC

Table 12- 12 Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1CAx	1GE32-6CAx	1GE33-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V [1]	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V [2]	hp	125	150	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	210	260	310
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	205	250	302
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	178	233	277
Input current				
Rated input current [5]	A	229	284	338
- Input current, max.	A	335	410	495
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.9	3.8	4.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.23	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 50	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	225	225	300
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	315	350	500
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	2	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE32-1CAx	1GE32-6CAx	1GE33-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	3000	3600	4400

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

Table 12- 13 Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8CAx	1GE35-0CAx	1GE36-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	300	400	500
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	250	350	350
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	380	490	605
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	370	477	590
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	340	438	460
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	395	509	629
- Input current, max.	A	606	781	967
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.3	6.4	8.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	70/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 150	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	300	670
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1334-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1438-2
Rated current	A	500	630	800
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE33-8CAx	1GE35-0CAx	1GE36-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	4400	8000	10000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

Table 12- 14 Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5CAx	1GE38-4CAx	1GE41-0CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	400	450	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 400 V 1)	kW	315	400	450
- for I_L at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	600	600	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 460 V 2)	hp	450	500	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	745	840	985
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	725	820	960
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	570	700	860
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	775	873	1024
- Input current, max.	A	1188	1344	1573
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	380 V 3 AC -10 % to 480 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.6	10.1	14.4
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	70/73	70/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	3 x 185	4 x 150	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (8 holes)	M12 (8 holes)	M12 (10 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	600	600	1000
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	880
Recommended protection				
Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1448-2	3NE1436-2	3NE1437-2
Rated current	A	850	2 x 630	2 x 710
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GE37-5CAx	1GE38-4CAx	1GE41-0CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	10500	16000	18400

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 400 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 460 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

12.3.3 Cabinet unit version A, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC

Table 12- 15 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8AAx	1GF32-2AAx	1GF32-6AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	150	200	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	175	215	260
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	171	208	250
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	157	192	233
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	191	224	270
- Input current, max.	A	279	341	410
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	3.8	4.2	5.0
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	120	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 185
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	460	460

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8AAx	1GF32-2AAx	1GF32-6AAx
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3244-6	3NA3252-6	3NA3354-6
Rated current	A	250	315	355
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2
Rated current	A	250	315	350
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	2
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2400	3000	3600

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

Table 12- 16 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3AAx	1GF34-1AAx	1GF34-7AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V [1]	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	300	400	450
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V [2]	hp	250	350	450
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	330	410	465
- Base load current I_L [3]	A	320	400	452
- Base load current I_H [4]	A	280	367	416
Input current				
- Rated input current [5]	A	343	426	483
- Input current, max.	A	525	655	740
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	6.1	8.1	7.8
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.78	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [6]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	1200	1200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	HX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	750	750
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3352-6
Rated current	A	500	500	2 x 315
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	2
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1435-2
Rated current	A	500	500	560
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3AAx	1GF34-1AAx	1GF34-7AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	5200	5200	6200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

Table 12- 17 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8AAx	1GF37-4AAx	1GF38-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	400	500	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	315	450	500
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	600	700	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	500	700	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	575	735	810
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	560	710	790
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	514	657	724
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	598	764	842
- Input current, max.	A	918	1164	1295
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.5	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	8.7	12.7	14.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	1.48	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1200	1600	1600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	JX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	860	1150	1150
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 355	2 x 500	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	670	850	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8AAx	1GF37-4AAx	1GF38-1AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	8400	10500	10400 / 1800 [9]

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

9) For option L26 the low value applies.

Table 12- 18 Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	2GF38-6AAx	2GF41-1AAx	2GF41-4AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	630	710	1000
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	560	630	800
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	900	1000	1250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	800	900	1000
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	860	1070	1360
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	836	1036	1314
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	770	950	1216
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	904	1116	1424
- Input current, max.	A	1388	1708	2186
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	2.8	2.8	3.0
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	15.4	17.2	23.8
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.56	1.56	2.96
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	75/78	75/78	75/78
Line connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 185	2 x 240
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		Per sub-cabinet: M12 (2 holes)	Per sub-cabinet: M12 (2 holes)	Per sub-cabinet: M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	2400	2400	3200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	1700	1700	2620
Recommended protection				
- Line protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(with option L26)		3NA3352-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 315	2 x 500	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection		Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(without option L26)		3NE1435-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	560	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	2GF38-6AAx	2GF41-1AAx	2GF41-4AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	2 x 65	2 x 65	2 x 84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2 x 6200	2 x 8400	2 x 10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Minimum current required for reliably triggering protective devices.

12.3.4 Cabinet unit version C, 500 V - 600 V 3 AC

Table 12- 19 Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8CAx	1GF32-2CAx	1GF32-6CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	110	132	160
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	90	110	132
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	150	200	250
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	150	200	200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	175	215	260
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	171	208	250
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	157	192	233
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	191	224	270
- Input current, max.	A	279	341	410
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	3.8	4.2	5.0
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	69/73	69/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	120	2 x 70	2 x 95
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 185
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	300	300
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2	3NE1331-2
Rated current	A	250	315	350
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF31-8CAx	1GF32-2CAx	1GF32-6CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	2400	3000	3600

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 20 Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3CAx	1GF34-1CAx	1GF34-7CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	200	250	315
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	160	200	250
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	300	400	450
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	250	350	450
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	330	410	465
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	320	400	452
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	280	367	416
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	343	426	483
- Input current, max.	A	525	655	740
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	6.1	8.1	7.8
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.78	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	69/73	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 120	2 x 185	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	600	600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	HX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	670	670
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1435-2
Rated current	A	500	500	560
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF33-3CAx	1GF34-1CAx	1GF34-7CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	5200	5200	6200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 21 Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8CAx	1GF37-4CAx	1GF38-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	400	500	560
- for I_H at 50 Hz 500 V 1)	kW	315	450	500
- for I_L at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	600	700	800
- for I_H at 60 Hz 575 V 2)	hp	500	700	700
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	575	735	810
- Base load current I_L 3)	A	560	710	790
- Base load current I_H 4)	A	514	657	724
Input current				
- Rated input current 5)	A	598	764	842
- Input current, max.	A	918	1164	1295
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.5	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	500 V 3 AC -10 % to 600 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	8.7	12.7	14.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	1.48	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 240	3 x 185	4 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	8 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 6)	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	6 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	600	1000	1000
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	JX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	940	960
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	670	850	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GF35-8CAx	1GF37-4CAx	1GF38-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [7]	kA	65	84	84
Minimum short-circuit current [8]	A	8400	10500	10400

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 500 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 575 V 3 AC 60 Hz.

3) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

5) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

6) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

7) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

8) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.5 Cabinet unit version A, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC

Table 12- 22 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5AAx	1GH31-0AAx	1GH31-2AAx
Unit rating - for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1] - for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	 kW kW	 75 55	 90 75	 110 90
Output current - Rated current I_N - Base load current I_L [2] - Base load current I_H [3]	 A A A	 85 80 76	 100 95 89	 120 115 107
Input current - Rated input current [4] - Input current, max. - Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	 A A A	 93 131 1.1	 109 155 1.1	 131 188 1.1
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency - Electronic power supply	 V_{ACrms} Hz V_{DC}	 660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 to 63 Hz 24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	1.7	2.1	2.7
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.17	0.17
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/68	67/68
Line connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 50 4 x 240 M12 (2 holes)	 50 4 x 240 M12 (2 holes)	 70 4 x 240 M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 35 2 x 70 M12 (2 holes)	 50 2 x 150 M12 (2 holes)	 70 2 x 150 M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		 M12 (2 holes)	 M12 (2 holes)	 M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	 m	 300 / 450	 300 / 450	 300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version) - Width - Height - Depth	 mm mm mm	 800 2000 600	 800 2000 600	 800 2000 600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	FX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	460	460

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5AAx	1GH31-0AAx	1GH31-2AAx
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3132-6	3NA3132-6	3NA3136-6
Rated current	A	125	125	160
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	1
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1022-2	3NE1022-2	3NE1224-2
Rated current	A	125	125	160
Frame size to IEC 60269		00	00	1
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1050	1050	1200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 23 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5AAx	1GH31-8AAx	1GH32-2AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	132	160	200
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	150	175	215
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	142	171	208
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	134	157	192
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	164	191	224
- Input current, max.	A	232	279	341
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.8	3.8	4.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/73	67/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	70	95	120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	800
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	460	670	670
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3240-6	3NA3244-6	3NA3252-6
Rated current	A	200	250	315
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	2
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1225-2	3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2
Rated current	A	200	250	315
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5AAx	1GH31-8AAx	1GH32-2AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1600	2400	3000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 24 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6AAx	1GH33-3AAx	1GH34-1AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	250	315	400
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	260	330	410
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	250	320	400
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	233	280	367
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	270	343	426
- Input current, max.	A	410	525	655
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.0	6.1	8.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/73	67/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	800	800	1200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	780
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	355	500	500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	350	500	500
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6AAx	1GH33-3AAx	1GH34-1AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	3600	5200	5200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 25 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7AAx	1GH35-8AAx	1GH37-4AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V 1)	kW	450	560	710
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V 1)	kW	400	450	560
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	465	575	735
- Base load current I_L 2)	A	452	560	710
- Base load current I_H 3)	A	416	514	657
Input current				
- Rated input current 4)	A	483	598	764
- Input current, max.	A	740	918	1164
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.1	10.8	13.5
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 5)	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 5)	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 185	3 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1200	1200	1600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	780	840	1320
Recommended protection				
- Line protection				
(with option L26)		3NA3352-6	3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 315	2 x 355	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection				
(without option L26)		3NE1435-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	560	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7AAx	1GH35-8AAx	1GH37-4AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	84	84	85
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	6200	8400	10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 26 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 5

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1AAx	2GH41-1AAx	2GH41-4AAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V 1)	kW	800	1000	1350
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V 1)	kW	710	900	1200
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	810	1070	1360
- Base load current I_L 2)	A	790	1036	1314
- Base load current I_H 3)	A	724	950	1216
Input current				
- Rated input current 4)	A	842	1116	1424
- Input current, max.	A	1295	1708	2186
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.5	2.8	2.8
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	14.7	21.3	26.6
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.48	1.56	2.96
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	75/78	75/78
Line connection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC 4)	mm^2	4 x 150	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	8 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (4 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
- Recommended: IEC 5)	mm^2	3 x 185	2 x 185	3 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	6 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (3 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
Fixing screw		M12 (18 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length				
shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	1600	2400	3200
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		JX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	1360	1700	2620
Recommended protection				
- Line protection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(with option L26)		3NA3365-6	3NA3354-6	3NA3365-6
Rated current	A	2 x 500	2 x 355	2 x 500
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3
- Line and semiconductor protection			Per sub-cabinet:	Per sub-cabinet:
(without option L26)		3NE1334-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	2 x 500	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1AAx	2GH41-1AAx	2GH41-4AAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	85	2 x 65	2 x 84
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	10400 / 2000 [8]	2 x 8400	2 x 10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

8) For option L26 the low value applies.

Table 12- 27 Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 6

Order number	6SL3710-	2GH41-5AAx		
Unit rating - for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1] - for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	 kW kW	 1500 1350		
Output current - Rated current I_N - Base load current I_L [2] - Base load current I_H [3]	 A A A	 1500 1462 1340		
Input current - Rated input current [4] - Input current, max. - Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	 A A A	 1568 2406 3.0		
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency - Electronic power supply	 V_{ACrms} Hz V_{DC}	 660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 to 63 Hz 24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	29.0		
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	2.96		
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	75/78		
Line connection - Recommended: IEC [4] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	Per sub-cabinet: 4 x 150 8 x 240 M12 (4 holes)		
Motor connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	Per sub-cabinet: 3 x 185 6 x 240 M12 (3 holes)		
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		Per sub-cabinet: M12 (18 holes)		
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	 m	 300 / 450		
Dimensions (standard version) - Width - Height - Depth	 mm mm mm	 3200 2000 600		
Power block frame size		JX		
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	2700		
Recommended protection - Line protection (with option L26) Rated current Frame size to IEC 60269 - Line and semiconductor protection (without option L26) Rated current Frame size to IEC 60269	 A A	 Per sub-cabinet: 3NA3365-6 2 x 500 3 Per sub-cabinet: 3NE1334-2 2 x 500 2		

Order number	6SL3710-	2GH41-5AAx		
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	2 x 84		
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	2 x 1800		

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

12.3.6 Cabinet unit version C, 660 V - 690 V 3 AC

Table 12- 28 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5CAx	1GH31-0CAx	1GH31-2CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V 1)	kW	75	90	110
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V 1)	kW	55	75	90
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	85	100	120
- Base load current I_L 2)	A	80	95	115
- Base load current I_H 3)	A	76	89	107
Input current				
- Rated input current 4)	A	93	109	131
- Input current, max.	A	131	155	188
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.1	1.1
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	1.7	2.1	2.7
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.17	0.17
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/68	67/68
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC 5)	mm^2	50	50	70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC 5)	mm^2	35	50	70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	FX	FX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	225	225	225
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1022-2	3NE1022-2	3NE1224-2
Rated current	A	125	125	160
Frame size to IEC 60269		00	00	1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH28-5CAx	1GH31-0CAx	1GH31-2CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1050	1050	1200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 29 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5CAx	1GH31-8CAx	1GH32-2CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	132	160	200
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	110	132	160
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	150	175	215
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	142	171	208
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	134	157	192
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	164	191	224
- Input current, max.	A	232	279	341
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.1	1.35	1.35
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	2.8	3.8	4.2
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.17	0.36	0.36
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/68	67/73	67/73
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	95	120	2 x 70
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	2 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	70	95	120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 150	2 x 150
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	400
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		FX	GX	GX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	225	300	300
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1225-2	3NE1227-2	3NE1230-2
Rated current	A	200	250	315
Frame size to IEC 60269		1	1	1

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH31-5CAx	1GH31-8CAx	1GH32-2CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	1600	2400	3000

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 30 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6CAx	1GH33-3CAx	1GH34-1CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	250	315	400
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	200	250	315
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	260	330	410
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	250	320	400
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	233	280	367
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	270	343	426
- Input current, max.	A	410	525	655
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.35	1.35	1.4
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	5.0	6.1	8.1
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.36	0.36	0.78
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	67/73	67/73	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 95	2 x 120	2 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 240	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 70	2 x 95	2 x 120
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	4 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (1 hole)	M12 (1 hole)	M12 (2 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	400	400	600
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		GX	GX	HX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	300	300	670
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1331-2	3NE1334-2	3NE1334-2
Rated current	A	350	500	500
Frame size to IEC 60269		2	2	2

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH32-6CAx	1GH33-3CAx	1GH34-1CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	65	65	65
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	3600	5200	5200

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 31 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 4

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7CAx	1GH35-8CAx	1GH37-4CAx
Unit rating				
- for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	450	560	710
- for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	kW	400	450	560
Output current				
- Rated current I_N	A	465	575	735
- Base load current I_L [2]	A	452	560	710
- Base load current I_H [3]	A	416	514	657
Input current				
- Rated input current [4]	A	483	598	764
- Input current, max.	A	740	918	1164
- Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	A	1.4	1.4	1.5
Supply voltages				
- Line voltage	V_{ACrms}	660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min)		
- Line frequency	Hz	47 to 63 Hz		
- Electronic power supply	V_{DC}	24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	9.1	10.8	13.5
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	0.78	0.78	1.48
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75	72/75	72/75
Line connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 185	2 x 240	3 x 185
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	8 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (4 holes)
Motor connection				
- Recommended: IEC [5]	mm^2	2 x 150	2 x 185	3 x 150
- maximum: IEC	mm^2	4 x 240	4 x 240	6 x 240
- Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (3 holes)
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		M12 (2 holes)	M12 (2 holes)	M12 (18 holes)
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	m	300 / 450	300 / 450	300 / 450
Dimensions (standard version)				
- Width	mm	600	600	1000
- Height	mm	2000	2000	2000
- Depth	mm	600	600	600
Power block frame size		HX	HX	JX
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	670	670	940
Recommended protection				
- Line and semi-cond. protection		3NE1435-2	3NE1447-2	3NE1448-2
Rated current	A	560	670	850
Frame size to IEC 60269		3	3	3

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH34-7CAx	1GH35-8CAx	1GH37-4CAx
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	84	84	85
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	6200	8400	10500

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Table 12- 32 Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, Part 5

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1CAx		
Unit rating - for I_L at 50 Hz 690 V [1] - for I_H at 50 Hz 690 V [1]	 kW kW	 800 710		
Output current - Rated current I_N - Base load current I_L [2] - Base load current I_H [3]	 A A A	 810 790 724		
Input current - Rated input current [4] - Input current, max. - Current requirements for 24 V DC auxiliary supply	 A A A	 842 1295 1.5		
Supply voltages - Line voltage - Line frequency - Electronic power supply	 V_{ACrms} Hz V_{DC}	 660 V 3 AC -10 % to 690 V 3 AC +10 % (-15 % < 1 min) 47 to 63 Hz 24 (20.4 to 28.8)		
Power loss	kW	14.7		
Cooling air requirement	m^3/s	1.48		
Sound pressure level L_{pA} (1 m) at 50/60 Hz	dB(A)	72/75		
Line connection - Recommended: IEC [4] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 4 x 150 8 x 240 M12 (4 holes)		
Motor connection - Recommended: IEC [5] - maximum: IEC - Fixing screw	 mm^2 mm^2	 3 x 185 6 x 240 M12 (3 holes)		
Protective conductor connection Fixing screw		 M12 (18 holes)		
Max. motor cable length shielded / unshielded	 m	 300 / 450		
Dimensions (standard version) - Width - Height - Depth	 mm mm mm	 1000 2000 600		
Power block frame size		JX		
Weight (without options), approx.	kg	980		
Recommended protection - Line and semi-cond. protection Rated current Frame size to IEC 60269	 A 	 3NE1334-2 2 x 500 2		

Order number	6SL3710-	1GH38-1CAx		
Short-circuit current rating per IEC [6]	kA	85		
Minimum short-circuit current [7]	A	10400		

1) Rated output of a typical 6-pole standard induction motor based on I_L or I_H at 690 V 3 AC 50 Hz.

2) The base-load current I_L is based on a duty cycle of 110% for 60 s or 150% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

3) The base-load current I_H is based on a duty cycle of 150% for 60 s or 160% for 10 s with a duty cycle duration of 300 s (see "Overload capability").

4) The current values given here are based on the rated output current.

5) The recommendations for the North American market in AWG or MCM must be taken from the appropriate NEC (National Electrical Code) or CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) standards.

6) In conjunction with the specified fuses or circuit breakers.

7) Current required for reliable triggering of the protective devices.

Appendix

A

A.1 List of abbreviations

A	
A...	Alarm
AC	Alternating current
AI	Analog input
AO	Analog output
AOP	Advanced operator panel (with plain-text display)
B	
BI	Binector input
BICO	Binector/connector
BO	Binector output
C	
C	Capacitance
CAN	Serial bus system
CB	Communication board
CDS	Command data set
CI	Connector input
COM	Center contact on a changeover contact
CU	Control Unit
D	
DC	Direct current
DDS	Drive data set
DI	Digital input
DI/DO	Digital input/output bidirectional
DO	Digital output
E	
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
EN	European standard
ESD	Electrostatic devices
F	
F ...	Fault
FAQ	Frequently asked questions
FW	Firmware
H	
HW	Hardware

I	
I/O	Input/output
IEC	International electrical engineering standard
IGBT	Insulated gate bipolar transistor
J	
JOG	Jog mode
L	
L	Inductance
LED	Light-emitting diode
M	
M	Ground
MDS	Motor data set
N	
NC	Normally closed contact
NEMA	Standardization body in the USA (United States of America)
NO	Normally open contact
P	
p ...	Adjustable parameter
PDS	Power unit data set
PE	Protective earth
PROFIBUS	Serial data bus
PTC	Positive temperature coefficient
R	
r...	Visualization parameter (read-only)
RAM	Read and write memory
RFG	Ramp-function generator
RS 232	Serial interface
RS 485	Standard. Describes the physical characteristics of a digital serial interface.
S	
SI	Safety Integrated
STW	PROFIdrive control word
SW	Software
T	
TIA	Totally Integrated Automation
TM	Terminal Module
U	
UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.
V	
Vdc	DC link voltage
Z	
ZSW	PROFIdrive status word

A.2 Parameter macros

Parameter macro p0015 = G150 cabinet unit

This macro is used to make default settings for operating the cabinet unit.

Table A- 1 Parameter macro p0015 = G150 cabinet unit

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0400[0]	Encoder type selection	Vector	9999	User-defined	Vector
p0404[0]	Encoder configuration	Vector	200008h		Vector
p0405[0]	Square-wave encoder track A/B	Vector	9h	Bipolar, like A/B track	Vector
p0408[0]	Rotary encoder pulse no.	Vector	1024	1024 pulses per revolution	Vector
p0420[0]	Encoder connection	Vector	0x2	Encoder connection = terminal	Vector
p0500	Technology application	Vector	1	Pumps, fans	Vector
p0600	Motor temperature sensor for monitoring	Vector	0	No sensor	Vector
p0601	Motor temperature sensor type	Vector	0	No sensor	Vector
p0603	CI: Motor temperature	Vector	r4105	Sensor on TM31	TM31
p0604	Motor overtemperature alarm threshold	Vector	120	120 °C	Vector
p0605	Motor overtemperature fault threshold	Vector	155	155 °C	Vector
p0606	Motor overtemperature timer	Vector	0	0 s	Vector
p0610	Response to motor overtemperature condition	Vector	1	Alarm with reduction of I_max and fault	Vector
p0700[0]	Macro binector input (BI)	Vector	70005	PROFIdrive	Vector
p0864	BI: Infeed operation	Vector	1		Vector
p1000[0]	Macro connector inputs (CI) for speed setpoints	Vector	100001	PROFIdrive	Vector
p1001	CO: Fixed speed setpoint 1	Vector	300	300 rpm	Vector
p1002	CO: Fixed speed setpoint 2	Vector	600	600 rpm	Vector
p1003	CO: Fixed speed setpoint 3	Vector	1500	1500 rpm	Vector
p1083	CO: Speed limit in positive direction of rotation	Vector	6000	6000 rpm	Vector
p1086	CO: Speed limit in negative direction of rotation	Vector	-6000	-6000 rpm	Vector
p1115	Ramp-function generator selection	Vector	1	Extended ramp-function generator	Vector
p1120	Ramp-function generator ramp-up time	Vector	20	20 s	Vector
p1121	Ramp-function generator ramp-down time	Vector	30	30 s	Vector
p1135	OFF3 ramp-down time	Vector	10	10 s	Vector
p1200	Flying restart operating mode	Vector	0	Flying restart not active	Vector

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p1240	Vdc controller configuration	Vector	1	Vdc-max controller enabled	Vector
p1254	Vdc controller automatic ON level detection	Vector	1	Automatic detection enabled	Vector
p1280	Vdc controller configuration (V/f)	Vector	1	Vdc-max controller enabled	Vector
p1300	Open-loop/closed-loop control operating mode	Vector	20	Encoderless speed control	Vector
p1911	Number of phases to be identified	Vector	3	3 phases	Vector
p2051[0]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r2089[0]	ZSW1	Vector
p2051[1]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0063[0]	n-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[2]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0068[0]	I-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[3]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0080[0]	M-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[4]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r0082[0]	P-act unsmoothed	Vector
p2051[5]	CI: PROFIBUS PZD send word	Vector	r2131	FAULT	Vector
p2080[0]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p2080[1]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.1	Ready for operation	Vector
p2080[2]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.2	Operation	Vector
p2080[3]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p2080[4]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.4	No OFF2	Vector
p2080[5]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.5	No OFF3	Vector
p2080[6]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p2080[7]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2139.7	Alarm active	Vector
p2080[8]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2197.7	No setpoint/actual value deviation	Vector
p2080[9]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r0899.9	Control request	Vector
p2080[10]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2199.1	Comparison value reached	Vector
p2080[11]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r1407.7	M/I/P limiting not active	Vector
p2080[12]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	0		Vector
p2080[13]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2129.14	No alarm for motor overtemperature	Vector
p2080[14]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2197.3	Clockwise	Vector
p2080[15]	BI: PROFIBUS send status word 1	Vector	r2129.15	No Therm. alarm Power unit overload	Vector
p2088	PROFIBUS Invert status word	Vector	B800h		Vector
p2128[14]	Select fault/alarm code for trigger	Vector	7910	A7910: Alarm, motor overtemperature	Vector
p2128[15]	Select fault/alarm code for trigger	Vector	5000	A5000: Therm. alarm Power unit overload	Vector
p2153	Time constant revolutions actual value filter	Vector	20	20 ms	Vector
p4053[0]	TM31 analog inputs, smoothing time constant	TM31	0	0 ms	TM31
p4053[1]	TM31 analog inputs, smoothing time constant	TM31	0	0 ms	TM31

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p4056[0]	Type of analog inputs	TM31	2	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4056[1]	Type of analog inputs	TM31	2	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4076[0]	Type of analog outputs	TM31	0	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4076[1]	Type of analog outputs	TM31	0	Current 0...20 mA	TM31
p4071[0]	Signal analog output 0	TM31	r0063	Actual speed value smoothed	Vector
p4071[1]	Signal analog output 1	TM31	r0068	Absolute current actual value	Vector
p4100	Type of temperature sensor	TM31	0	Evaluation disabled	TM31
p4102[0]	Alarm threshold, temperature sensing	TM31	251 °C	When this value is exceeded, alarm A35211 is triggered.	TM31
p4102[1]	Fault threshold for temperature sensing	TM31	251 °C	When this value is exceeded, fault F35207 is triggered.	TM31
p7003	Winding system	Vector	1	Separate winding systems	Vector

Parameter macro p0700 = 5: PROFIdrive (70005)

This macro is used to set the PROFIdrive interface as the default command source.

Table A- 2 Parameter macro p0700 = 5: PROFIdrive

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	r2090.0	PZD 1 bit 0	Vector
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	r2090.1	PZD 1 bit 1	Vector
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	r2090.2	PZD 1 bit 2	Vector
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	r0722.2	CU DI2	CU
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	r2090.3	PZD 1 bit 3	Vector
p0854	Control request	Vector	r2090.10	PZD 1 bit 10	Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	999	Free telegram configuration	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	0		Vector
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	r2090.13	PZD 1 bit 13	Vector
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	r2090.14	PZD 1 bit 14	Vector
p1113	Setpoint inversion	Vector	r2090.11	PZD 1 bit 11	Vector
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	r2090.4	PZD 1 bit 4	Vector
p1141	Continue RFG	Vector	r2090.5	PZD 1 bit 5	Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	r2090.6	PZD 1 bit 6	Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	Vector	r2090.7	PZD 1 bit 7	Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	Vector	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	r2090.7	PZD 1 bit 7	Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	r0899.11	Pulses enabled	Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p4048.1	Invert DO1	TM31	1	Inverted	
p4038	DO8	TM31	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	1	Output	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p0700 = 6: Terminal block TM31 (70006)

This macro is used to set customer terminal block TM31 as the command source.

Table A- 3 Parameter macro p0700 = 6: Terminal block TM31

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	r4022.0	TM31 DI0	TM31
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	1		CU
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	1		Vector
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	r0722.2	CU DI2	CU
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	r4022.4	TM31 DI4	TM31
p0854	Control request	Vector	1		Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	999	Free telegram configuration	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1113	Direction of rotation reversal	Vector	0		TM31
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1141	Start RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	1		Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	Vector	0		Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	Vector	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	0		TM31
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	r0899.11	Pulses enabled	Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p4048.1	Invert DO1	TM31	1	Inverted	
p4038	DO8	TM31	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	1	Output	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p0700 = 7: NAMUR (70007)

This macro is used to set the NAMUR terminal block as the default command source.

Table A- 4 Parameter macro p0700 = 7: NAMUR

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	r4022.0	TM31 DI0	TM31
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	r4022.4	TM31 DI4	TM31
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	r4022.5	TM31 DI5	TM31
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	1		Vector
p0854	Control request	Vector	1		Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	999	Free telegram configuration	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	r4022.1	TM31 DI1	TM31
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	r4022.2	TM31 DI2	TM31
p1113	Direction of rotation reversal	Vector	r4022.6	TM31 DI6	TM31
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1141	Start RFG	Vector	1		Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	1		Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	Vector	0		Vector
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	Vector	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	0		TM31
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	r4022.3	TM31 DI3	TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	r0899.11	Pulses enabled	Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	r2139.3	Fault	Vector
p4048.1	Invert DO1	TM31	1	Inverted	
p4038	DO8	TM31	r0899.0	Ready for switching on	Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	1	Output	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p0700 = 10: PROFIdrive NAMUR (70010)

This macro is used to set the PROFIdrive NAMUR interface as the default command source.

Table A- 5 Parameter macro p0700 = 10: PROFIdrive NAMUR

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0840[0]	ON/OFF1	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0844[0]	No OFF2_1	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0845[0]	No OFF2_2	Vector	r0722.3	CU DI3	CU
p0848[0]	No OFF3_1	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0849[0]	No OFF3_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0806	Inhibit LOCAL mode	Vector	0		Vector
p0810	Changeover CDS bit 0	Vector	r2090.15		Vector
p0852	Enable operation	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0854	Control request	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p0922	PROFIdrive PZD telegram selection	Vector	20	PROFIdrive NAMUR	
p1020	FSW bit 0	Vector	0		Vector
p1021	FSW bit 1	Vector	0		Vector
p1035	MOP raise	Vector	0		Vector
p1036	MOP lower	Vector	0		Vector
p1113	Direction of rotation reversal	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p1140	Enable RFG	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p1141	Start RFG	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p1142	Enable nsetp	Vector	1	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p2103	Acknowledge fault_1	Vector	0	Assignment with p0922 = 20	Vector
p2104	Acknowledge faults_2	Vector	0		Vector
p2106	Ext. fault_1	Vector	r0722.1	CU DI1	CU
p2107	Ext. fault_2	Vector	1		Vector
p2112	Ext. alarm_1	Vector	r0722.0	CU DI0	CU
p2116	Ext. alarm_2	Vector	1		Vector
p0738	DI/DO8	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.8	Invert DI/DO8	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0739	DI/DO9	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.9	Invert DI/DO9	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0740	DI/DO10	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.10	Invert DI/DO10	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0741	DI/DO11	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.11	Invert DI/DO11	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	CU	1	Output	

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p0742	DI/DO12	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.12	Invert DI/DO12	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.12	Set DI/DO12 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0743	DI/DO13	CU	r0899.6	Switching on inhibited	Vector
p0748.13	Invert DI/DO13	CU	1	Inverted	
p0728.13	Set DI/DO13 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0744	DI/DO14	CU	1	+24 V	CU
p0748.14	Invert DI/DO14	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.14	Set DI/DO14 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p0745	DI/DO15	CU	r2138.7	Ack. fault	Vector
p0748.15	Invert DI/DO15	CU	0	Not inverted	
p0728.15	Set DI/DO15 input or output	CU	1	Output	
p2103	Acknowledge fault 1	TM31	0		TM31
p2104	Acknowledge fault 2	TM31	0		TM31
p4030	DO0	TM31	0		Vector
p4031	DO1	TM31	0		Vector
p4038	DO8	TM31	0		Vector
p4028.8	Set DI/DO8 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4039	DO9	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.9	Set DI/DO9 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4040	DO10	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.10	Set DI/DO10 input or output	TM31	0	Input	
p4041	DO11	TM31	0		TM31
p4028.11	Set DI/DO11 input or output	TM31	0	Input	

Parameter macro p1000 = 1: PROFIdrive (100001)

This macro is used to set the default setpoint source via PROFIdrive.

Table A- 6 Parameter macro p1000 = 1: PROFIdrive

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r2050[1]	PROFIdrive PZD2	Vector
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Parameter macro p1000 = 2: Terminal TM31 (100002)

This macro is used to set analog input 0 on customer terminal block TM31 as the setpoint source.

Table A- 7 Parameter macro p1000 = 2: TM31 terminals

Sink			Source		
Parameter	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameter**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r4055	AI0 TM31	TM31
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Parameter macro p1000 = 3: Motorized potentiometer (100003)

This macro is used to set the motorized potentiometer as the setpoint source.

Table A- 8 Parameter macro p1000 = 3: Motorized potentiometer

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r1050	Motorized potentiometer	Vector
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Parameter macro p1000 = 4: Fixed setpoint (100004)

This macro is used to set the fixed setpoint as the setpoint source.

Table A- 9 Parameter macro p1000 = 4: Fixed setpoint

Sink			Source		
Parameters	**Description**	**DO**	**Parameters**	**Description**	**DO**
p1070	Main setpoint	Vector	r1024	Active fixed setpoint	Vector
p1071	Main setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector
p1075	Supplementary setpoint	Vector	0		Vector
p1076	Supplementary setpoint scaling	Vector	1	100 %	Vector

Index

3

3-mass model, 566

A

A7850 – External alarm 1, 590
Accessory kit
  Original roof screws, 56
Acknowledge error from the AOP, 335
Actual speed value filter, 436
Acyclic communication, 351
  Determining drive object numbers, 359
  Error values in parameter responses, 356
  Parameter request and parameter response, 353
  Parameter request and response, 354
Additional customer terminal block TM31 (option G61), 189
Additional SMC30 Sensor Module (option K52), 188
Alarms, 589
Analog inputs, 121, 309
Analog outputs, 122, 460
AOP setpoint, 334
AOP30, 266
Application classes, 342
Armature short-circuit braking
  External, 495
  Internal, 497
Assembly
  Line connection from above, 67
  Motor connection from above, 67
Automatic restart, 482
Automatic speed controller optimization, 466
Auxiliary power supply, 230 V AC (option K74), 196
Auxiliary supply, 97
  230 V AC, 99
  24 V DC, 99
Auxiliary voltage, 123

B

B00, 216
B02, 218
B03, 218
Basic commissioning
  Enter the motor data, 270
  Entering the basic parameters, 275
  Entering the encoder data, 272
  Motor identification, 277
  Selecting the motor type, 270
  Settings for units that are connected in parallel, 256, 278
Basic information
  BICO technology, 295
  Binector input (BI), 296
  Binector output (BO), 296
  Command data set (CDS), 290
  Connector input (CI), 296
  Connector output (CO), 296
  Copy motor data set (MDS), 294
  Copying the command data set (CDS), 294
  Copying the drive data set (DDS), 294
  Data sets, 289
  Drive data set (DDS), 291
  Drive objects, 288
  Encoder data set (EDS), 292
  Interconnecting signals, 296
  Motor data set (MDS), 293
  Parameter categorization, 286
  Parameter types, 285
  Parameters, 285
Basic information about the drive system, 285
BICO technology, 295
  Interconnecting signals, 296
Bimetallic NC contact, 564
Binector input (BI), 296
Binector output (BO), 296
Blocking protection, 560
Brake control
  Extended, 550
  Simple, 512
Braking unit 25 kW (option L61), 152
Braking unit 50 kW (option L62), 152
Bypass
  Bypass with synchronizer with degree of overlapping, 542
  Bypass with synchronizer without degree of overlapping, 544
  Without synchronization, 546
Bypass function, 541

C

Cabinet anti-condensation heating (option L55), 147
Cabinet lighting with service socket (option L50), 146
Cable lengths, 87
Cable lugs, 86
CAN bus, 166
CBC10, 166
CBC10 Communication Board
  CAN bus, 166
CBE20, 169
CDS (command data set), 290
  Copy, 294
CDS changeover via AOP, 335
Center of gravity of the cabinet, 55
Certifications, 7
Changing the language, 331
Checklist
  Electrical installation, 70
  Mechanical installation, 48
Circuit breaker (option L26), 143
Clean Power version with integrated Line Harmonics Filter compact (Option L01), 126
Cleaning, 594
Closed-loop torque control, 449
Command data set, 290
Command sources
  General information, 284
  NAMUR, 305
  PROFIdrive, 301
  PROFIdrive NAMUR, 307
  TM31 terminals, 303
Communication
  Communication services, 402
  Used port numbers, 402
  via PROFIdrive, 340
Communication Board Ethernet CBE20 (option G33), 169
Communication interfaces
  Parallel operation, 405
Connecting the DC-link connections, 84
Connecting the PE busbars, 83
Connecting the power supply and the signal cables, 85
Connection cross-sections, 87
Connection for External Auxiliary Equipment (Option L19), 140
Connector input (CI), 296
Connector output (CO), 296
Control Interface Module
  Frame size FX, replacement, 601
  Frame size GX, replacement, 603
  Frame size HX, replacement, 605
  Frame size JX, replacement, 607
Control Unit CU320-2 DP, 99
Control Unit CU320-2 PN, 202
Control via PROFIBUS, 370
Crane transport aids, 56
  Removal, 56
CU320-2 DP, 100
CU320-2 PN, 203
CU320-2 PN Control Unit, 203
Current setpoint filters, 453
Customer terminal block, 116
Customer terminal block TM31 (option G60), 188
Cyclic communication, 347

D

Data sets, 289
Data transfer
  PROFINET, 383
Date of manufacture, 40
DC braking, 498
DCC, 28, 408
DDS (drive data set), 291
  Copy, 294
Declaration of compliance with the order, 7
Decrease Key, 333
Derating behavior at increased pulse frequency, 503
Derating data, 649
  Current derating as a function of the pulse frequency, 651
  Installation altitudes between 2000 m and 5000 m above sea level, 649
  Permissible output current as a function of the ambient temperature, 649
  Reduce the ambient temperature and the output current, 650
  Using an isolating transformer, 651
Design, 29
Determining drive object numbers, 359
Determinism, 380
Diagnostics, 576
  LEDs, 576
  Parameter, 584
Digital inputs, 119, 120
Digital inputs/outputs, 104, 106, 124, 207, 209
Digital outputs, 463
Direction of motor rotation, 90
Direction reversal, 411, 509
Disconnect the basic interference suppression module, 93
Downloading the firmware (operator panel), 645
Drive Control Chart, 408
Drive Control Chart (DCC), 28

Drive data set, 291
Drive objects, 288
DRIVE-CLiQ interface, 103, 206
DRIVE-CLiQ node must be connected, 85
Droop Function, 446
dv/dt filter compact plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L07), 129
dv/dt filter plus Voltage Peak Limiter (option L10), 133

E

EC declaration of conformity, 7
EDS (encoder data set), 292
Efficiency optimization, 473
Electrical connection of units connected in parallel, 82
Electromagnetic compatibility
  EMC compliant design, 79
  Introduction, 77
  Noise emissions, 78
  Operational reliability and noise immunity, 78
Electromagnetic fields, 22
Electrostatic sensitive devices, 23
EMERGENCY OFF category 0 (option L57), 148
EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton (option L45), 145
EMERGENCY STOP category 1 (option L59), 149
EMERGENCY STOP Category 1 (option L60), 151
Encoder data set, 292
Encoder with gear factor, 281
Energy-saving display, 516
Error values in parameter responses, 356
Essential service mode, 528
Ethernet interface, 171, 260
Extended brake control, 550
Extended monitoring functions, 554
External alarm 1, 590
External fault 1, 590
External fault 2, 591
External fault 3, 591
External supply, 97

F

F7860 – External fault 1, 590
F7861 – External fault 2, 591
F7862 – External fault 3, 591
Factory setting, 281
Fan
  Frame size FX, replacement, 625
  Frame size GX, replacement, 627
  Frame size HX, replacement, 629
  Frame size JX, replacement, 633
Fan voltage, adjustment, 91
Fast magnetization, 475
Faults, 589
Faults and alarms, 337, 589
  BICO interconnections, 300
  Forwarding, 300
  Propagation, 300
Faults and alarms, 337, 589
Features, 28
Field of applications, 27
Filtermatten, Austausch, 600
Firmware update, 644
Firmware, updating, 644
Fixed setpoints, 312
Fixed speed setpoints, 312
Floor levelness, 50
Flying restart, 485
  Fast flying restart, 488
  Fast flying restart with voltage acquisition via VSM10, 489
  with encoder, 489
  without encoder, 486
Forming the DC-link capacitors, 642
Friction characteristic curve, 493
Fuse
  Auxiliary power supply (-F11 / -F12), 637
  Fan -T1 -F10 / -T1 -F11, 637
  Internal 230 V AC supply (-F21), 637
  NH fuse, replacement, 638

G

G20, 166
G33, 169
G51, 172
G60, 188
G61, 189
G62, 189
Gear factor, 281

H

High overload, 654

I

I2t motor model, 565
IF1, 405
IF2, 405
Increase Key, 333
Increasing the output frequency, 500

Installation
Connection to the foundation, 57
Lifting the cabinet off the transport pallet, 54
Installation device, 597
Installation location, 49
Insulation Monitor (Option L87), 164
IO controller, 378
IO Device, 378
IO supervisor, 378
IT system, 93

J

Jog, 333
JOG, 333

K

K01, 195
K50, 178
K51, 187
K52, 188
K74, 196
K82, 198
K82, terminal module for activating Safe Torque Off and "Safe STOP 1, 198
K87, 199
K88, 201
K95, 202
Kinetic buffering, 478
Knife fuse
Replacement, 638
Know-how protection, 521
Activating, 523
Changing the password, 525
Copy protection, 526
Deactivate, 524
OEM exception list, 525
Replacing the device, 526
KTY, 564

L

L01, 126
L07, 129
L10, 133
L13, 137
L15, 137
L19, 140
L21, 142
L26, 143
L45, 145
L50, 146
L55, 147
L57, 148
L59, 149
L60, 151
L61, 152
L62, 152
L76, 162
L83, 162
L84, 162
L86, 163
L87, 164
Load monitoring, 554
LOCAL/REMOTE key, 332
Lock AOP LOCAL Mode, 335
Low overload, 653

M

M13, 67
M21, 63
M23, 64
M43, 64
M54, 64
M78, 67
Machinery directive, 7
Main Contactor (Option L13), 137
Main switch incl. fuses (option L26), 143
Maintenance, 594, 595
Maintenance and servicing, 593
MDS (motor data set), 293
Copy, 294
Mechanical connection of units connected in parallel, 58
Mechanical installation
Checklist, 48
Memory card
Slot, 114, 214
Menu
AOP diagnostics, 329
AOP30 settings, 323
Basic Commissioning, 320
Battery status, 330
Commissioning / service, 320
Complete commissioning, 320
Control settings, 323
Curve recorder, 321
Curve recorder settings, 326
Database contents, 330
Database statistics, 330
Database version, 329

Date format, 328
Defining the operation screen, 323
Device commissioning, 320
Display settings, 323
DO name display mode, 329
Drive commissioning, 320
Drive diagnostics, 321
Fault/alarm memory, 319
Keyboard test, 330
LED test, 330
Motor identification, 320
Operation screen, 316
Reset AOP settings, 329
Reset fan operating time, 320
Scaling to motor current, 329
Setting the date, 327
Setting the time, 327
Software Version, 329
Sprachauswahl/Language selection, 331
Structure, 315
Minimum cable lengths, 88
Minimum speed, 412
Monitoring Functions, 557
Motor changeover/selection, 491
Motor data identification, 467
Motor data set, 293
Motor identification, 466
Motorized potentiometer, 311
Mounting
Canopies and hoods, 62
Canopy to increase the degree of protection to IP21, 63
Hood to increase the degree of protection to IP23/IP43/IP54, 64

N

NAMUR
Outlet for external auxiliaries (option B03), 218
Separate 24 V DC power supply (option B02), 218
NAMUR terminal block (option B00), 216
NH fuse
Replacement, 638

O

OFF Key, 332
ON Key, 332
Online operation with STARTER, 374
Open actual speed value, 447
Operating hours counters, 506
Operation on a non-grounded system, 93
Operation screen, 316
Operator input inhibit / parameters inhibit key, 335
Operator panel, 266
Overview, 314
Option K95, 202
Option L01 Quick starting (option L76), 162
Option M90 (crane transport aids), 56
Option short codes, 41
Original roof screws, 56
Outgoing section for external auxiliary equipment for NAMUR (option B03), 218
Output terminals, 459
Overload capability, 653
Overload responses, 558
Overvoltage limitation (option L21), 142

P

Parallel operation of communication interfaces, 405
Parameter request and parameter response, 353
Parameter request and response, 354
Parameter reset, 281
Parameter reset via STARTER, 282
Resetting Parameters via AOP30, 281
Parameterization errors, 339
Permanent-magnet synchronous motors, 454
Power block
Crane lifting lugs, 598
Frame size FX, replacement, 609
Frame size GX, replacement, 612
Frame size HX, replacement, 615
Frame size JX, replacement, 620
Power connections, 86
Connecting the motor and power cables, 89
Preparation
Mechanical installation, 49
PROFIBUS, 365
Address switches, 110, 371
Bus terminating resistor, 109, 367
Connectors, 109, 366
Setting the address, 110, 370
Setting the PROFIBUS Address, 370
PROFIBUS connection, 108, 365
PROFIdrive, 340
Acyclic communication, 351
Application classes, 342
Controller, 341
Cyclic communication, 347
Device classes, 340
Drive unit, 341
Supervisor, 341

PROFIenergy, 384
Certification, 384
Commands, 387
PROFINET
Connection channels, 383
Data transfer, 383
PROFINET interface, 212
PROFINET IO, 378
Addresses, 380
Device name (NameOfStation), 382
IP address, 381
IP address assignment, 381
MAC address, 380
RT and IRT, 379
PROFINET IO with IRT, 380
PROFINET IO with RT, 380
Propagation, 300
Protecting power components, 557
Protective functions, 557
PT100, 564
PT100 evaluation unit (option L86), 163
PTC, 564
Pulse frequency wobbling, 504

Q

Quality, 29

R

Ramp-function generator, 414
Ramp-function generator tracking, 416
Rating plate
Date of manufacture, 40
Real-time communication, 379
Reference model, 443
Relay outputs, 125
Replacement
Automatic firmware update, 643
Control Interface Module, frame size FX, 601
Control Interface Module, frame size GX, 603
Control Interface Module, frame size HX, 605
Control Interface Module, frame size JX, 607
Crane lifting lugs, 598
Error messages, 643
Fan, frame size FX, 625
Fan, frame size GX, 627
Fan, frame size HX, 629
Fan, frame size JX, 633
Filter mats, 600
Installation device, 597
Operator panel, 640
Operator panel battery, 640
Power block, frame size FX, 609
Power block, frame size GX, 612
Power block, frame size HX, 615
Power block, frame size JX, 620
Replacing components, 600
Replacing the Backup Battery of the Cabinet Operator Panel, 640
Replacing the cabinet operator panel, 640
Residual risks, 25
Resonance damping, 424
Rotating measurement, 470
Shortened, 472
Runtime, 506

S

S5 – Selector for voltage/current AI0, AI1, 122
Safe Brake Adapter, 201
230 VAC, 201
Safe Brake Adapter 230 VAC (option K88), 201
Safe brake control, 201
Safety instructions
Electromagnetic fields, 22
Electrostatic sensitive devices, 23
General safety instructions, 19
Safety license for one axis (option K01), 195
Saving the Parameters, Permanently, 339
SBC (Safe Brake Control), 201
Separate 24 V DC power supply for NAMUR (option B02), 218
Serial interface (RS232), 112, 211
Service, 29
Setpoint addition, 410
Setpoint channel, 410
Setpoint sources, 309
Analog inputs, 309
Fixed speed setpoints, 312
General information, 284
Motorized potentiometer, 311
Setting the PROFIBUS Address, 370
Shield support, 116
Shipping and handling monitors, 51
Shock indicator, 51
Tilt indicator, 51
Shock indicator, 51
Shortened rotating measurement, 472
Signal connections, 116
Simple brake control, 512
Simulation operation, 507

SINAMICS Link, 391
Activation, 397
Bus cycle, 392
Commissioning, 394
Communication failure, 400
Configuration example, 398
Diagnostics, 400
Number of nodes, 392
Preconditions, 391
Receive data, 391
Receiving data, 396
Send data, 391
Sending data, 394
Topology, 393
Transmission time, 392
Sine-wave filter (option L15), 137
Skip frequency bands, 412
Slip compensation, 425
SMC30, 178
SMC30 Sensor Module Cabinet-Mounted (option K50), 178
SMC30
Connection examples, 186
Speed controller, 437
Speed controller adaptation, 444
Speed controller optimization, 470
Speed controller pre-control, 440
Speed limitation, 413
Stall protection, 561
STARTER, 220
Access point, 257
Commissioning, 224
Creating a project, 224
DEVICE, 258
Installation, 222
Online operation via PROFINET, 374
S7ONLINE, 258
Target device selection, 257
Transferring the drive project, 259
User interface, 223
STARTER via Ethernet, 260
Parameter, 265
Setting the IP Address of the drive, 262
Setting the IP address of the PG/PC interface, 261
Stationary measurement, 467
Storage, 47
Switching between clockwise and counter-clockwise rotation, 333
Synchronization, 514

T

TB30, 189
Technical data, 654
General, 647
Version A, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, 655
Version A, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, 669
Version A, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, 683
Version C, 380 ... 480 V 3 AC, 663
Version C, 500 ... 600 V 3 AC, 677
Version C, 660 ... 690 V 3 AC, 695
Technology controller, 538
Telegram selection, user defined, 348
Telegrams and process data, 347
Temperature sensor, 122
Temperature sensor connection
Control Interface Module, 563
Sensor Module, 563
TM31, 562
Temperature sensor evaluation, 562
3-mass model, 566
Bimetallic NC contact, 564
I2t motor model, 565
KTY, 564
PT100, 564
PTC, 564
Wire-breakage monitoring, 564
Terminal Board TB30 (option G62), 189
Terminal Module TM150, 172
Thermal monitoring, 558
Thermal motor models, 565
Thermal motor protection, 562
Thermistor Motor Protection Unit (Option L83/L84), 162
Tightening torques, 596
Tilt indicator, 51
Timeout monitoring, 335
TM150, 172
Connecting, 173
Forming groups, 571
Protective conductor connection and shield support, 175
Sensor failure in a group, 573
Temperature evaluation, 572
Temperature measurement, 568
Temperature sensor types, 569
TM31, 116, 188
TM31, connection overview, 118
TM31, front view, 117
TM54F, 199
TM54F Terminal Module, 199
TM54F Terminal Module (option K87), 199
Tool, 53, 76, 595
Torque limiting, 452

Transport, 45
Transport eyebolts, 56
Transport units
Connecting PE buses, 83
Connecting the DC-link connections, 84
Connecting the DRIVE-CLiQ nodes, 85
Connecting the signal cables, 85
Connecting the voltage supply, 85
Electrical connection, 82
Type plate, 39
Option short codes, 41

U

Ungrounded system, 93
Unit changeover, 510
Units connected in parallel
Mechanical connection, 58
Unpacking, 53

V

V/f control, 418
Vdc control, 477
Vdc_max control, 480
Vdc_min control, 478
Vector control
sensorless, 428
with encoder, 435
Vector speed/torque control with/without encoder, 427
Version A, Design, 30
Version C, Design, 33
Voltage boost, 421
at startup, 423
during acceleration, 423
permanent, 422
VSM10, 187
VSM10 Voltage Sensing Module (option K51), 187

W

Web server, 531
Login, 533
Logout, 534
Start page, 533
User-defined Web pages, 532
Wire-breakage monitoring, 564
Wiring principle, 34
Write protection, 519

X

X100, 103, 206
X101, 103, 206
X102, 103, 206
X103, 103, 206
X122, 104, 207
X126, 108
X127, 111, 210
X132, 106, 209
X140, 112, 211
X1400, 171
X150, 212
X451 (CAN bus), 168
X452 (CAN bus), 168
X520, 119
SMC30, 182
X521, 121
SMC30, 184
X522, 122
X530, 120
X531
SMC30, 184
X540, 123
X541, 124
X542, 125

Siemens AG
Industry Sector
Drive Technologies
Large Drives
Postfach 4743
90025 NÜRNBERG
GERMANY

Subject to change without prior notice
© Siemens AG 2003 - 2014

www.siemens.com/automation